

SACHHOC.COM

CHINH PHỤC

ĐIỂM CAO

TIẾNG ANH

DÙNG ĐỂ ÔN LUYỆN, KIỂM TRA,
ĐÁNH GIÁ KIẾN THỨC

6

SACHHOC.COM

CHINH PHỤC ĐIỂM CAO TIẾNG ANH 6

UNIT 1 MY NEW SCHOOL

A. VOCABULARY

- art	/a:t/ (n):	nghệ thuật
- boarding school	/'bɔ:ɹ.dɪŋ ,sku:l/ (n):	trường nội trú
- classmate	/'klæs.meɪt/ (n):	bạn học
- equipment	/'kwɪp mənt/ (n):	thiết bị
- greenhouse	/'grɪ:n.haʊs/ (n):	nhà kính
- judo	/'dʒu:.dʊʊ/ (n):	môn võ judo
- swimming pool	/'swɪm.ɪŋ ,pu:l/ (n):	hồ bơi
- pencil sharpener	/'pen.səl ʃɑ:p.pə.nər/ (n):	đồ chuốt bút chì
- compass	/'kʌm.pəs/ (n):	com- pa
- school bag	/'sku:l.bæg/ (n):	cặp đi học
- rubber	/'rʌb.ər/ (n):	cục tẩy
- calculator	/'kæl.kjə.leɪ.tər/ (n):	máy tính
- pencil case	/'pen.səl ,keɪs/ (n):	hộp bút
- notebook	/'nəʊt.bʊk/ (n):	vở
- bicycle	/'baɪ.sɪ.kəl/ (n):	xe đạp
- ruler	/'ru:lər/ (n):	thước
- textbook	/'tekst.bʊk/ (n):	sách giáo khoa
- activity	/æk'tɪv.ɪ.ti/ (n):	hoạt động
- Creative	/kri'eɪ.tɪv/ (adj):	sáng tạo
- excited	/ɪk'saɪ.tɪd/ (adj):	phấn chấn, phấn khích
- help	/help/ (n, v):	giúp đỡ, trợ giúp
- international	/,ɪn'tər'næʃ.ə.nəl/ (adj):	quốc tế
- interview	/'ɪn.tər.vju/ (n, v):	phỏng vấn
- knock	/nɑ:k/ (v):	gõ (cửa)
- overseas	/'oʊ.vər'sɪz/ (n, adj) (ở):	nước ngoài
- pocket money	/'pɑ:.kɪt ,mʌn.i/ (n):	tiền túi, tiền riêng
- poem	/'poʊ.əm/ (n):	bài thơ
- remember	/'rɪ.mem.bər/ (v):	nhớ, ghi nhớ
- share	/'ʃer/ (n, v):	chia sẻ
- smart	/'smɑ:rt/ (adj):	bảnh bao, sáng sủa, thông minh
- surround	/'sə'raʊnd/ (v):	bao quanh

B- GRAMMAR

I- Thì Hiện Tại Đơn (The present simple)

1. Cách dùng

- Dùng để diễn tả thói quen hoặc những việc thường xảy ra ở hiện tại
VD: We go to school every day
- Dùng để diễn tả những sự vật, sự việc xảy ra mang tính quy luật
VD: This festival occurs every 4 years
- Dùng để diễn tả các sự thật hiển nhiên, một chân lý, các phong tục tập quán, các hiện tượng tự nhiên
VD: The earth moves around the Sun
- Dùng để diễn tả lịch trình cố định của tàu, xe, máy bay.
VD: The train leaves at 8 am tomorrow

2. Dạng thức của thì hiện tại đơn

a. Với động từ “tobe” (am/ is/ are)

I	am		I	am not	
He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	is	+ danh từ/ tính từ	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	is not/ isn't	+ danh từ/ tính từ
You/we/ they/ Danh từ số nhiều	are		You/we/ they/ Danh từ số nhiều	are not/ aren't	
Ví dụ: I am a student She is very beautiful We are in the garden			Ví dụ: I am nowhere Miss Lan isn't my teacher My brothers aren't at school.		

Thể nghi vấn			Câu trả lời ngắn		
Am	I	+ danh từ/ tính từ	Yes,	I	am
			No,		am not
Is	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được		Yes,	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	is
			No,		isn't
Are	You/we/ they/ Danh từ số nhiều		Yes,	You/we/ they/ Danh từ số nhiều	are
			No,		aren't

Ví dụ:

- Am I in team A ?

=> Yes, you are./ No, you aren't.

- Is she a nurse?

=> Yes, she is./ No, she isn't.

- Are they friendly?

=> Yes, they are./ No, they aren't.

- Lưu ý:

Khi chủ ngữ trong câu hỏi là “you” (bạn) thì câu trả lời phải dùng “I” (tôi) để đáp lại.

b. Với động từ thường (Verb/ V)

Thể khẳng định		Thể phủ định		
I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ V nguyên mẫu	I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ do not/ don't	+ V nguyên mẫu
He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	+ V-s/es	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	+ does not/ doesn't	
Ví dụ: I walk to school every morning. My parents play badminton in the morning. She always gets up early. Nam watches TV every evening.		Ví dụ: They don't do their homework every afternoon. His friends don't go swimming in the evening He doesn't go to school on Sunday Her grandmother doesn't do exercise in the park		

Thể nghi vấn			Câu trả lời ngắn		
Do	I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ V nguyên mẫu	Yes,	I/ You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	do
			No,		don't
Does	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không		Yes,	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không	does
			No,		doesn't

	đếm được			đếm được	
Ví dụ: Do you often go to the cinema at weekends? => Yes, I do./ No, I don't. Does he play soccer in the afternoon? => Yes, he does/ No, he doesn't Do they often go swimming? => Yes, they do/ No, they don't.					

c. Wh- questions

Khi đặt câu hỏi có chuswas Wh- word (từ để hỏi) như Who, What, When, Where, Why, Which, How, ta đặt chúng lên đầu câu. Tuy nhiên, khi trả lời cho dạng câu hỏi này, ta không dùng Yes/ No mà cần đưa ra câu trả lời trực tiếp.

• Cấu trúc

Wh-word + am/is/are + S?	Wh-word + do/ does + S + V?
Ví dụ: Who is he? => He is my brother. Where are they? => They are in the playground.	Ví dụ: What do you do? => I am a student. Why does he cry? => Because he is sad.

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Trong câu ở thì hiện tại đơn thường có các trạng từ chỉ tần suất và chúng được chia thành 2 nhóm:

- Nhóm trạng từ đứng ở trong câu:
 - Always (luôn luôn) usually (thường xuyên), often (thường), sometimes (thỉnh thoảng), rarely (hiếm khi), seldom (hiếm khi), frequently (thường xuyên), hardly (hiếm khi), never (không bao giờ), regularly (thường xuyên)...
- ❖ Các trạng từ này thường đứng trước động từ thường, đứng sau động từ “to be” và trợ động từ

Ví dụ:

 - He rarely goes to school by bus
 - She is usually at home in the evening
 - I don't often go out with my friends
- Nhóm trạng từ đứng ở cuối câu:
 - Every day/ week/ month/ year (hàng ngày/ hàng tuần/ hàng tháng/ hàng năm)
 - Once (một lần), twice (hai lần), three times (ba lần), four times (bốn lần)...
- **Lưu ý:**

Từ “ba lần” trở lên ta sử dụng: số đếm + times

Ví dụ:

 - He phones home every week
 - They go on holiday to the seaside once a year.

4. Cách thêm s/es vào sau động từ

Trong câu ở thì hiện tại đơn, nếu chủ ngữ là ngôi thứ 3 số ít (He/ She/ It/ Danh từ số ít) thì động từ phải thêm đuôi s/es. Dưới đây là các quy tắc khi chia động từ

Thêm “s” vào đằng sau hầu hết các động từ	Ví dụ:	Work-works	Read-reads
		Love- loves	See - sees
Thêm “es” vào các động từ kết thúc bằng “ch, sh, x, s, z, o”	Ví dụ:	Miss- misses	Watch- watches
		mix- mixes	Go - goes
Đối với những động từ tận cùng là “y” + Nếu trước “y” là một nguyên âm (u,e,o,a,i)- ta giữ nguyên “y” + “s”	Ví dụ:	Play- plays	Fly-flies
		Buy-buys	Cry- cries

+ Nếu trước “y” là một phụ âm, ta đổi “y” thành “i” + “es”		Pay – pays	Fry- fries
Trường hợp ngoại lệ	Ví dụ:	Have – has	

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Hoàn thành bảng sau, thêm đuôi s/es vào sau các động từ sao cho đúng

V	V-e/es	V	Ve/es
Have (có)		Know (biết)	
Do (làm)		Take (lấy)	
Say (nói)		Think (nghĩ)	
Get (được)		Come (đến)	
Make (làm)		Give (cho)	
Go (đi)		Look (nhìn)	
See (nhìn thấy)		Use (dùng)	
Find (tìm thấy)		Need (cần)	
Want (muốn)		Seem (hình như)	
Tell (nói)		Ask (hỏi)	
Put (đặt)		Show (hiển thị)	
Mean (nghĩa là)		Try (cố gắng)	
Become (trở thành)		Call (gọi)	
Leave (rời khỏi)		Keep (giữ)	
Work (làm việc)		Feel (cảm thấy)	

Bài 2: Đặt các trạng từ chỉ tần suất vào vị trí đúng ở câu

1. He plays golf on Sundays (sometimes)
2. The weather is bad in November. (always)
3. We have fish for dinner. (seldom)
4. Peter doesn't get up before seven. (usually)
5. They watch TV in the afternoon (never)
6. My brother, Tony, is late for interview. (rarely)
7. He helps his father (always)
8. How do you go shopping? (often)
9. I don't do my homework after school (hardly)
10. The school bus arrives at seven. (every day)

Bài 3: Viết các câu sau ở thể khẳng định (+), phủ định (-) và nghi vấn (?)

1. (+) The girl often listens to pop music.
 (-) _____
 (?) _____
2. (+) I am from the capital of Vietnam, Ha noi.

- (-) _____
 (?) _____
 3. (+) _____
 (-) My father doesn't keep the greenhouse warm at night.
 (?) _____
 4. (+) _____
 (-) _____
 (?) Does Danny remember to phone his father on Sundays?
 5. (+) _____
 (-) They don't do their homework after school.
 (?) _____

Bài 4: Điền do, don't, does, doesn't vào chỗ trống trong các câu sau cho phù hợp

- My mother likes chocolate, but she _____ biscuits.
- _____ the children wear your uniform at your school?
- Lynn's father watches badminton on TV, but he _____ watch judo.
- Where _____ the Masons buy their fruits?
- _____ the cat like to sleep on the sofa?
- Dogs love bones, but they _____ love cheese.
- Where _____ Sam and Ben hide their pocket money?
- We eat pizza, but we _____ eat hamburgers.
- _____ Mrs. Miller read magazines?
- _____ the boys play cricket outside?
- Please _____ play with my food.
- She _____ the cleaning three times a week
- We _____ go out very much because we have a baby
- I _____ want to talk about my neighborhood any more.
- How much _____ it cost to phone overseas?

Bài 5: Khoanh tròn vào câu trả lời đúng

- We sometimes (read/ reads) books.
- Emily (go/goes) to the art club.
- It often (rain/ rains) on Sundays.
- Pete and his sister (wash/ washes) the family car.
- I always (hurry/ hurries) to the bus stop.
- She (speak/ speaks) four languages.
- Jane is a teacher. He (teach/ teaches) English.
- Those shoes (cost/ costs) too much.
- My sister (go/goes) to the library once a week.
- We both (listen/ listens) to the radio in the morning.

Bài 6: Sắp xếp các từ sau theo thứ tự đúng để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

- always/ at nine o'clock/ out of the garage/ in the morning/ drives/ his car/ he.
- a parking place/ near the shops/ they/ find/ rarely.
- fly/ with my parents/ to Florida/ sometimes/ I/ in spring.
- late/ comes/ she/ often/ to school/ in winter.
- meet/ at the sports ground/ they/ after dinner/ always/ their friends.
- enjoys/ swimming/ in our pool/ always/ in the morning/ she.
- mother/ On/ the/ my/ always/ washing/ does/ Mondays.
- out/ once/ put/ I/ dustbins/ week/ the/ a.
- a/ go/ with/ often/ walk/ dog/ for/ We/ our/
- sister/ ironing/ sometimes/ My/ the/ does.

Bài 7: Hãy chọn câu trả lời đúng cho các câu sau

- I _____ know the correct answer.
 A. am not B. not C. don't D. doesn't

2. They_____agree with my opinion.
A. are B. don't C. aren't D. do
3. Kathy usually_____in front of the window during the class.
A. sits B. sitting C. sit D. is sit
4. What does this word_____?
A. means B. meaning C. mean D. is mean
5. He_____share anything to me.
A. don't do B. isn't C. not D. doesn't
6. I come from Canada. Where_____you come from?
A. are B. do C. is D. not
7. Jane_____tea very often.
A. doesn't drink B. drink C. is drink D. isn't drink
8. How often_____you play tennis?
A. do B. are C. is D. play
9. Rice_____in cold climates
A. isn't grow B. don't grow C. aren't grow D. doesn't grow
10. I_____a compass and a calculator in Maths lesson.
A. am use B. use C. aren't use D. doesn't use

Bài 8: Chọn dạng đúng cho các động từ trong ngoặc

1. They_____hockey at school. (to play)
2. She_____poems. (not/ to write)
3. _____you_____English? (to speak)
4. My parents_____fish (not/ to like)
5. _____Ann_____any hobbies? (to have)
6. Andy's brother_____in a big buiding (to work)
7. _____Jim and Joe_____the flowers every week? (to water)
8. Yvonne's mother_____a motorbike. (not/ to write)
9. _____Elisabeth_____the door? (to knock)
10. What_____you_____in the school canteen? (buy)

II. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn (The present continuous)

1. Cách dùng

- Diễn đạt một hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói.
VD: I am eating my lunch right now.
- Diễn tả một hành động hoặc một sự việc nói chung đang diễn ra nhưng không nhất thiết phải thực sự diễn ra ngay lúc nói.
VD: I'm quite busy these days. I'm doing my assignment. (Dạo này tôi khá là bận. Tôi đang làm luận án)
- Diễn đạt một hành động sắp xảy ra trong tương lai gần. Thường diễn tả một kế hoạch đã lên lịch sẵn
VD: I am flying to London tomorrow. (Tôi sẽ bay sang Luân Đôn sáng ngày mai)
- Hành động thường xuyên lặp đi lặp lại gây sự bức mình, khó chịu cho người nói. Cách dùng này được dùng với trạng từ "always"
VD: He is always losing his keys. (Anh ấy cứ hay đánh mất chìa khóa)

2. Dạng thức của thì hiện tại tiếp diễn

a. Cấu trúc

Thể khẳng định			Thể phủ định		
I	am	+ V-ing	I	am not	+ V-ing
He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	is		He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	isn't	

You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	are		You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều	aren't	
Ví dụ: - I am reading a book. - She is swimming. - They are sleeping. - The dog is barking			Ví dụ: - I am not joking - She isn't drinking lemon juice. - We aren't going to school. - My parents are sleeping.		

Thể nghi vấn			Câu trả lời ngắn		
Am	I	+ V-ing	Yes,	I	am
			No,		am not
Is	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được		Yes,	He/ she/ it/ Danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được	is
			No,		isn't
Are	You/ We/ They/ Danh từ số nhiều		Yes,	You/ We/ They/ Danh từ	are

b. Wh- question

Khi đặt câu hỏi có chứa

Wh-word (từ để hỏi), ta đặt chúng ở vị trí đầu câu và đưa ra câu trả lời trực tiếp.

Wh- word + am/ is/ are + S + V-ing?

Ví dụ:

- Who is she talking to?
- She is talking to her mother.
- What are you studying?
- I am studying English.

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- Trong câu có các trạng từ chỉ thời gian:
now (bây giờ), right now (ngay bây giờ), at the moment (lúc này), at present (hiện tại), at this time (bây giờ), at + giờ cụ thể (at 12 o'clock)
- Trong câu có các từ như:
Look! (nhìn kìa), Listen (hãy nghe này), Keep silent! (Trật tự), Be careful! (Cẩn thận), Hurry up! (Hãy nhanh lên)...

Ví dụ:

- Now my sister is going shopping with my mother.
- Look! The train is coming.
- Listen! Someone is crying.
- Keep silent! The baby is sleeping.

4. Các quy tắc thêm -ing vào sau động từ

Các quy tắc

Ví dụ

Động từ kết thúc bởi “e”, ta bỏ “e” thêm “ing”	Have- having	Make- making
	Write - writing	Come- coming
Động từ kết thúc bởi “ee”, ta thêm “ing” mà không bỏ “e”	See- seeing	Agree - agreeing
Động từ kết thúc bởi “ie”, ta đổi “ie” thành “y” rồi thêm đuôi “ing”	Lie – lying	Die- dying
Động từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm (u,e,o,a,i) + 1 phụ âm, ta gấp đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm –ing.	Run- running	Stop - stopping
	Get - getting	Travel - travelling

5. Một số động từ không có dạng V-ing.

Những động từ sau đây chỉ dùng ở dạng đơn, không thêm đuôi V-ing.

Chỉ trạng thái: be, cost, fit, mean, suit.	VD: We are on holiday.
Nói về sự sở hữu: belong, have	VD: Sam has a cat.
Chỉ cảm giác: feel, hear, see, smell, taste, touch	VD: He feels the cold.
Nói về cảm xúc: hate, hope, like, love, prefer, regret, want, wish.	VD: Jane loves pizza.
Nói về nhận thức: believe, know, think (nghĩ về), understand.	VD: I believe you.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 9: Hoàn thành bảng sau, thêm đuôi –ing vào các động từ sao cho đúng

V	V-ing	V	V-ing
Have (có)		Help	
Do (làm)		Run	
Say (nói)		Write	
Go (đi)		Move	
Make (làm)		Play	
Take (lấy)		Stand	
Give (cho)		Talk	
Use (dùng)		Sit	
Come (đến)		Read	
Find (tìm thấy)		Speak	
Put		Open	
Leave		Draw	
Work		Walk	
Ask		Sell	
Follow		Watch	

Bài 10: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. Johnny and Mandy (is/am/are) cleaning the kitchen
2. I (is/am/are) reading a book at the moment.
3. It (is/am/are) raining
4. We (is/am/are) singing a new song.
5. The children (is/am/are) watching TV at breaktime.
6. My pets (is/am/are) sleeping now.
7. Aunt Helen (is/am/are) feeding the ducks on the farm.
8. My friend (is/am/are) buying a pencil sharpener.
9. He (is/am/are) studying Science.
10. They (is/am/are) doing their homework.

Bài 11: Viết các câu sau ở thể khẳng định (+), phủ định (-) và nghi vấn (?)

1. (+) We are working on the new show right now.

- (-) _____
 (?) _____
 2. (+) _____
 (-) I'm not talking on the phone at the moment.
 (?) _____
 3. (+) _____
 (-) _____
 (?) Is he running very fast?
 4. (+) Julia is baking a chocolate cake at the moment.
 (-) _____
 (?) _____
 5. (+) _____
 (-) _____
 (?) Are Tony and Kaity helping the teacher right now?

Bài 12: Nối câu hỏi ở cột A với câu trả lời ở cột B sao cho phù hợp

A	B
1. Are they having dinner?	a. Yes, she is.
2. Are you making a cup of tea?	b. He is cooking pasta
3. Is she making a cup of coffee?	c. No, he isn't.
4. What are you doing?	d. I'm going to Korea.
5. Is it raining?	e. No, they aren't.
6. What is he cooking for dinner?	f. My brother.
7. Where are you going on holiday?	g. No, it isn't.
8. Are we going into town?	h. Yes, we are.
9. Who is going to England?	i. I'm looking for a number in the phone book.
10. Is your father taking a bus to the kindergarten?	j. Yes, I am.

1.....- 2.....- 3.....- 4.....- 5.....- 6.....-7.....-8.....-9.....-10.....

Bài 13: Sắp xếp từ trong câu theo thứ tự đúng để tạo thành một câu hoàn chỉnh

- singing/ the/ birds/ are/ at/ . /5 am
- are/ at/ 7 am/ the/ dogs/ big/ barking.
- up/ at/ is/ 7.20 am/ getting/ Thompson/ . / Mrs.
- making/ she/ . / at/ breakfast/ her/ 7.40 am/ son's/ is
- 7.50 am/ is/ . / letters/ the/ the/ delivering/ at/ mailman
- his/ 7.55 am/ son/ washing/ Mrs/ . / is/ Thompson's/ face/ at
- are/ eating/ 8 am/ at/ family/ Thompsons/ together/ the / breakfast.
- blue/ 8.20 am/ work/ Thompson/ car/ is/ in/ at/ Mrs./ driving/ her.
- rope/ playground/ classmate/ is/ my/ in/ the/ . / skipping
- school/ sister/ is/ an/ my/ international/ studying/ in.

Bài 14: Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn

- Alexander _____ (study) for his exam at the moment.
- She _____ (not play) goft tomorrow.
- They _____ (make) dinner now.
- The company _____ (have) dinner now.

5. She _____ (eat) oysters for lunch right now.
6. David _____ (not fly) to Chicago next week.
7. I _____ (work) on a special report today.
8. We _____ (not cook) dinner this evening because we're eating out.
9. _____ (Tom drive) to work right now?
10. They _____ (not prepare) for the science exam at the moment.
11. When _____ (you/ have) lunch tomorrow?
12. _____ (they give) a party this weekend?
13. Susan _____ (make) the decision at 3 o'clock this afternoon.
14. What _____ (you do)?!
15. Which motel _____ (they stay) now?

Bài 15: Chọn động từ thích hợp cho dạng đúng của thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn và điền vào chỗ trống

read study post make speak draw come wait
sunbathe water

1. He is at the bank. He _____ money from his account.
2. He is in the library. He _____
3. He is in the garden. He _____ the flowers.
4. She is on the beach. She _____
5. He is in the post office. He _____ letter.
6. He is in the telephone box. He _____ a call.
7. We _____ English at the moment.
8. Look! David and Max _____ home.
9. She _____ for her boyfriend now.
10. I _____ to a dentist.

Bài 16: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, đặt câu ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn

1. (they/ learn new things?)
2. (when/ he/ start work?)
3. (why/ I/ stay/ at home?)
4. (it/ get dark?)
5. (the dog/ not/ play with a ball)
6. (why/ it/ rain now?)
7. (how/ she/ travel?)
8. (where/ you/ work?)
9. (what/we/ watch?)
10. (I/ take too much cake?)

III- Các động từ *study, have, do, play*

1. Chức năng

Do Kết hợp với các danh từ chỉ hoạt động giải trí hoặc các môn thể thao trong nhà, không liên quan tới trái bóng, thường mang tính cá nhân và không mang tính chiến đấu ganh đua.

	Ví dụ: Do yoga (tập yoga) Do ballet (múa ba-lê)
Play	Kết hợp với các danh từ chỉ môn thể thao liên quan tới trái bóng hoặc một vật tương tự trái bóng như trái cầu/ quả cầu, có tính chất ganh đua với đối thủ khác. Ví dụ: Play football Play tennis
Study	Đứng trước các danh từ chỉ một môn học, một lĩnh vực, một đề tài nghiên cứu hoặc một loại bằng cấp, nhằm diễn đạt việc ai đó nỗ lực học hoặc nghiên cứu một loại kiến thức nào đó. Ví dụ: study English study History
Have	Đứng trước các danh từ để diễn đạt “ai đó sở hữu cái gì đó” hoặc chỉ sự việc đang có. Ví dụ: Have a car have breakfast

2. Phân biệt động từ *Do, Play, Go*.

Bên cạnh hai động từ “do” và “play” được nhắc ở trên, động từ “go” cũng là một động từ thường được dùng với các danh chỉ các môn thể thao.

Tuy nhiên “go” thường đi với cấu trúc V-ing, mang tên một môn thể thao hay hoạt động giải trí nào đó như: go swimming, go diving...

Dưới đây là bảng các danh từ phổ biến đi với do-play-go

Do	Play	Go
Do aerobics	Play badminton	Go bowling
Do archery	Play baseball	Go climbing
Do athletics	Play basketball	Go cycling
Do ballet	Play chess	Go dancing
Do gymnastics	Play cricket	Go jogging
Do judo	Play darts	Go riding
Do karate	Play football	Go skating
Do kung-fu	Play goft	Go skiing
Do Taekwondo	Play hockey	Go swimming
Do yoga	Play rugby	Go surfing
Do taichi	Play tennis	Go walking
Do wrestling	Play table tennis	Go sailing
Do weight-lifting	Play volleyball	Go diving

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 17: Chọn đáp án đúng nhất điền vào chỗ trống

- James is_____judo in the playground with his friends and he is very excited.
A. studying B. doing C. playing D. have
- Keep quiet! Jessica___a headache so she is sleeping in her bedroom.
A. does B. plays C. studying D. has
- My father is___a cup of coffee with his colleague in the living room now.
A. plays B. study C. doing D. having
- Williams always_____breakfast with bread, egg and milk before coming to school.
A. has B. plays C. studies D. does
- Tiffany and Rosy usually help their mom_____the chores at the weekend.
A. study B. do C. playing D. have
- She usually_____English vocabulary every morning.
A. doing B. having C. studies D. plays
- My brother_____basketball with his friends three times a week
A. does B. has C. plays D. study

8. Helen rarely_____a chat with her pen friend in American.
 A. does B. has C. studies D. plays
9. Frank is_____Maths at the moment to prepare for the final exam.
 A. studying B. doing C. playing D. has
10. My brother doesn't_____badminton in the evening
 A. play D. do C. have D. study

Bài 18: Điền “do/play/go” vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp

1. He used to_____jogging every morning whe he was a young boy.
 2. This summer, Tim is going to_____horseback riding.
 3. You play rugby on a pitch. Where do you_____badminton?
 4. Steven and his son_____hiking in woods every summer.
 5. I don't have much free time but sometimes I_____soccer with my friends.
 6. Tell me, where are you going to_____skiing this winter?
 7. I_____fishing on Saturdays and I_____yoga on Sundays
 8. Karate is a great exercise for me but learning how to_____karate well takes a lot of time.
 9. Whe don't we_____a set of tennis?
 10. He wants to_____sailing between the Hawaiian islands in this summer.

Bài 19:

Chọn từ thích hợp điền vào bảng sau

Science school lunch		cycling	aerobics	table tennis	swimming	
Vietnamese	bowling	sailing		big eyes	volleyball	dancing
Breakfast	gymnastics	rugby		a house		history a headache
Judo	chess	physics	golf	karate	yoga	

study	have	do	play	go

Bài 20:
 đúng của động từ,

Wake(s) up – open(s) – speak(s)- take(s) – do(es) – cause(s) – play(s)- close(s)- live(s)- drink(s)

Chọn và cho dạng
 điền vào chỗ trống

1. Ann_____handball very ball
 2. I never_____coffee
 3. The swimming pool_____at 7:00 in the morning.
 4. It_____at 9:00 in the evening.
 5. Bad driving_____many accidents.
 6. My parents_____in a very small flat.
 7. My students_____a little English.
 8. The Olympic Games_____place every four years.

9. They are good students. They always _____ their homework
 10. I always _____ early in the morning.

Bài 21: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc Hiện tại tiếp diễn

1. Every Monday, Sally (drive) _____ her kids to football practice.
 2. Shhhhh! Be quiet! John (sleep) _____
 3. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It (rain) _____
 4. I hate living in Seattle because it (rain, always) _____
 5. I'm sorry I can't hear what you (say) _____ because everybody (talk) _____ so loudly.
 6. Jane (go) _____ to bed at 10 o'clock on weekdays.
 7. Our train (leave) _____ at 9.25
 8. The bus sometimes (arrive) _____ in the morning.
 9. Archie (not use) _____ his computer at the moment.

I. Put the words with the underlined part into the correct column.

<i><u>Monday</u></i>	<i><u>month</u></i>	<i><u>some</u></i>	<i><u>don't</u></i>	<i><u>love</u></i>	<i><u>come</u></i>
<i><u>club</u></i>	<i><u>hungry</u></i>	<i><u>lunch</u></i>	<i><u>homework</u></i>	<i><u>subject</u></i>	<i><u>only</u></i>
<i><u>study</u></i>	<i><u>home</u></i>	<i><u>rubber</u></i>	<i><u>notebook</u></i>	<i><u>rode</u></i>	<i><u>past</u></i>
<i><u>one</u></i>	<i><u>overseas</u></i>	<i><u>go</u></i>	<i><u>mum</u></i>	<i><u>poem</u></i>	<i><u>borrow</u></i>
<i><u>other</u></i>	<i><u>wonderful</u></i>	<i><u>Sunday</u></i>	<i><u>country</u></i>	<i><u>video</u></i>	<i><u>lower</u></i>

<i>/əʊ/</i>	<i>/ʌ/</i>
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

II. Put the words below into the correct verb group.

<i>drawing</i>	<i>painting</i>	<i>basketball</i>	<i>football</i>	<i>volleyball</i>	<i>badminton</i>
<i>Maths</i>	<i>Science</i>	<i>English</i>	<i>Physics</i>	<i>homework</i>	<i>pop music</i>
<i>lessons</i>	<i>breakfast</i>	<i>lunch</i>	<i>dinner</i>	<i>judo</i>	<i>exercise</i>
<i>History</i>	<i>Geography</i>	<i>vocabulary</i>	<i>the piano</i>	<i>the guitar</i>	<i>Vietnamese</i>

1. **play:** _____
 2. **do:** _____
 3. **have:** _____
 4. **study:** _____

III. School subjects.

A. Do you know the subjects? What are their Vietnamese equivalents?

1. Art: _____
 2. English: _____
 3. Geography: _____
 4. History: _____
 5. Maths: _____
 6. Music: _____
 7. PE (Physical Education): _____
 8. Science: _____
 9. ICT (Information and Communication Technology): _____

IV. Write the -ing form of the verb.

1. watch _____
2. listen _____
3. swim _____
4. go _____
5. have _____
6. skip _____
7. ride _____
8. sit _____

V. Complete the sentences with the -ing form of the verbs. Use short forms.

Example: Come round to my place - we're *listening* to music. (listen)

1. Look! The dog _____ in the river! (swim)
2. Don't disturb me! I _____ a good book. (read)
3. She _____ her holiday. (enjoy)
4. They _____ a computer game. (play)
5. You _____ your homework. (do)
6. Look! The girls _____ in the schoolyard. (skip)
7. Ssh! They _____ in the library. (study)
8. Listen! Someone _____ at the door. (knock)

VI. Complete the sentences with *am*, *is* or *are*.

1. **A:** Where's Jack?
 B: He playing football.
2. **A:** Let's play table tennis.
 B: Sorry. We _____ having dinner now.
3. **A:** Where are Linda and Kate?
 B: They _____ shopping.
4. **A:** Are you OK?
 B: Yes, I _____ having great fun.
5. **A:** Please help me.
 B: Sorry. I _____ reading a book.
6. **A:** Can I talk to Lan?
 B: She isn't at home. She _____ riding her bike.

VII. Put the words in the correct order.

1. my/ I/ doing/ homework/ love.
2. to/ cinema/ They/ going/ like/ the.
3. watching/ don't/ We/ TV/ like.
4. like/ sister/ reading/ doesn't/ My/ magazines.
5. dad/ music/ enjoys/ My/ to/ listening/ country.
6. enjoy/ on/ They/ photos/ taking/ holiday.

VIII. Match the questions and answers. Write the answer in each blank.

- | | |
|-----------------------------|---|
| 1. Are they cooking dinner? | a. No, they aren't. They're cooking dinner. |
| 2. Is he disturbing you? | b. No, I'm not. |

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| 3. Are you listening to music? | c. No, I'm not. I'm doing my English homework. |
| 4. Are they watching TV? | d. Yes, he is. He loves Italy. |
| 5. Are you doing your Maths homework? | e. No, they aren't. They're watching TV. |
| 6. Is he enjoying his holiday? | f. No, he isn't. |

IX. Match the questions and answers. Write the answer in each blank.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1. What are you watching? | a. I like programmes about History. |
| 2. What kind of programmes do you watch? | b. To my friend's house. |
| 3. Where are you going? | c. Every day. |
| 4. Where does she live? | d. A programme about animals. |
| 5. Who are you talking with? | e. A friend from school. |
| 6. How often do you ride your bicycle to school? | f. 24, High Street. |

X. Complete the sentences with the present simple or the present continuous form the verbs.

- They often_____their parents in the holidays. (visit)
- I really_____cooking. (like)
- He can't speak on the phone because he_____a shower. (have)
- Look at that man. He_____a horse. (ride)
- We sometimes_____to the cinema on Sunday. (go)
- I_____about three DVDs a week. (watch)
- We_____tennis now. (play)
- Right now we_____French. (speak)
- I sometimes_____the guitar in a band. (play)
- When_____Susie usually_____her homework? (do)
- I_____German. (not understand)
- _____they_____chocolate ice cream? (like)

XI. Make sentences using the words and phrases given to write an article about Nguyen Binh Khiem Primary School.

- Nguyen Binh Khiem Primary School/ District 1/ Ho Chi Minh City.
- It/ have/ 36 classes/ over 800 students.
- School/ have/ contest called "Students Love Science".
- 180 second, third, fourth graders/ enter/ contest.
- School/ make/ each school day/ exciting day/ the students.

TEST 1 UNIT 1

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. hi | B. my | C. five | D. in |
| 2. A. <u>bu</u> t | B. <u>lun</u> ch | C. <u>stu</u> dent | D. <u>u</u> p |
| 3. A. <u>da</u> y | B. <u>la</u> ke | C. <u>ta</u> ll | D. <u>pl</u> ane |
| 4. A. <u>re</u> staurant | B. <u>ri</u> ver | C. <u>w</u> ell | D. <u>le</u> ft |
| 5. A. office | B. behind | C. clinic | D. picture |

II. Choose the word or phrase that is best completes each unfinished sentences below.

- I have Math lessons_____Monday and Friday.
A. on B. in C. at D. from
- His new house_____on Tran Phu Street.

- A. is B. are C. am D. A&C
3. Mai brushes_____teeth every morning.
A. his B. my C. her D. your
4. We are traveling to the countryside_____bus.
A. on B. in C. from D. by
5. He goes to school_____five o'clock_____the morning.
A. on/in B. for/at C. in/on D. at/in
6. Mai_____dressed at six thirty every morning.
A. does B. brushes C. gets D. lives
7. Minh goes to school_____12.45 every afternoon.
A. in B. at C. on D. to
8. My father is an_____. He works in a big factory.
A. teacher B. doctor C. farmer D. engineer
9. _____is your brother? - He is thirteen.
A. What time B. How far C. How old D. How long
10. My teacher lives_____a big city.
A. in B. on C. at D. to
11. This is Lan._____house is new.
A. My B. Your C. Her D. His
12. Nam and Minh_____playing soccer in the yard at the moment.
A. do B. is C. are D. does
13. What time does Nga_____every morning?
A. gets up B. get up C. get D. gets
14. He_____breakfast at six o'clock every mornings
A. have B. having C. has D. to have
15. Our classroom is_____the second floor.
A. from B. in C. at D. on
16. How many chairs_____there in the house?
A. do B. is C. are D. does
17. What time_____every morning?
A. do Mai gets up B. does Mai gets up
C. does Mai get up D. does get Mai up
18. We play games_____the afternoon.
A. on B. in C. at D. to
19. _____your parents do? - They are workers.
A. How does B. What does C. What do D. Who
20. How many floors_____your school have?
A. do B. does C. is D. are

III. Put the words below into the correct verb group.

pop music	football	lessons	breakfast	English	homework
Vietnamese	the piano	History	Geography	vocabulary	the guitar
badminton	Physics	drawing	painting	basketball	volleyball
exercise	dinner	Maths	Science	lunch	judo

Play	Do	Have	Study
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			
.....			

IV. Fill in the blanks with available words in the box.

am is are do does have

- What _____ you usually do at break time?
- Mr. Minh _____ our favourite teacher. He teaches English.
- How _____ you go to school every day, Nhan?
- Cuong _____ Minh's best friend.
- My brother _____ doing his homework now.
- They _____ going to open a new library.
- _____ you hungry?
- Where _____ you go shopping?
- _____ your sister like pop music?
- Hoa _____ watching a video clip on YouTube now.
- I _____ having dinner at my friend's house.
- We often _____ Math lessons on Wednesday and Friday.

V. Give the correct form of the words in the blank (Using the present simple and present continuous).

- Lan (*not have*) many friends in her new school.
- Hung (*come*) from Vinh but he (*stay*) with his relatives in Ho Chi Minh city at the moment.
- We (*not drive*) to work every day. We (*go*) by bus.
- Who you (*talk*) to on the phone now, Minh?
- Where your new friend (*live*) , Nga?
- She (*live*) on Hang Bai street.
- you (*be*) in class 7A?
- No, I (*be*) in class 7D.
- Look! Jane (*play*) the guitar. This afternoon, she will play table tennis.
- I (*not talk*) to her at present
- How often she (*go*) fishing?
- She (*go*) once a year.
- (*Be*) your friends students?
- Yes, they (*be*)

VI. Give the correct form of the verbs in the blank space (Using the present simple and present continuous).

- Where (*be*) _____ your brothers?

- They (*study*) _____ in the library.
2. Minh usually (*play*) _____ volleyball after school.
Now he (*play*) _____ volleyball in the sports ground.
3. Children shouldn't (*stay*) _____ up late.
4. Next Sunday is Nga's birthday. She (*invite*) _____ some friends for her birthday party.
5. He enjoys (*collect*) _____ stamps and coins.
6. Next year, my sister (*be*) _____ a teacher.
7. I (*do*) _____ my Math homework at the moment.
8. Let's (*go*) _____ to the English club.

VII. Read then answer the questions:

This is my friend. Her name is Linh. She goes to school from Monday to Saturday. Her school is on Nguyen Cao Thang Street and it is big. It has five floors. Linh's classroom is on the third floor. She is in grade 6 class 6A. There are thirty-two pupils in her class.

Linh starts her classes at 2 o'clock in the afternoon and finishes them at 4:30. On Monday, she has Math, Literature and English. After school, Linh plays badminton, but her friend, Lien doesn't play it; she plays volleyball. Linh goes home at 5:30.

Questions:

- Where is Linh's school?
.....
- How many floors does her school have?
.....
- Which class is she in?
.....
- What time does she start her classes?
.....
- Does Lien play badminton?
.....

VIII. Read then Check True (T) or False (F):

I'm Ba. I'm a student. Every day, I get up at six o'clock, then I have breakfast at half past six. I go to school at ten to seven. My school is in the city. I live in a small house with my parents. My mother is a doctor. She works in a hospital. My father is a worker. He works in a factory. My parents go to work by motorbike.

- Ba gets up at six o'clock.
- He has breakfast at six fifteen.
- His school is in the countryside.
- His father works in a factory.

IX. Read and choose the best answer.

Hoa is going on (1) this summer. First, she is going (2) Ha Long Bay, Ho Chi Minh Mausoleum (3) Hoi An Ancient town (4) five days. She is going to stay (5) her uncle in Ha Noi. (6), she is going to stay in a hotel in Hue for two days. She is going to see the (7) and Thien Mu (8)

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| 1. A. vacation | B. season | C. school | D. house |
| 2. A. visit | B. to visit | C. visits | D. visiting |
| 3. A. or | B. because | C. and | D. but |
| 4. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. for |
| 5. A. with | B. up | C. for | D. after |
| 6. A. and | B. Then | C. Because | D. Finally |
| 7. A. beach | B. River | C. Citadel | D. Lake |

8. A. museum B. Temple C. Stadium D. Pagoda

X. Read the passage and complete the table.

I'm Linh, Pham Thuy Linh. I am a new pupil of Class 7A in Nguyen Du Secondary School. I am thirteen and I come from Hoa Binh. I have a brother and a sister. There are 500 pupils at a high school in Hoa Binh. I live with my aunt at 20 Le Loi Street. She often brings me to school by motorbike every day. It is more than two kilometers from my aunt's house to my school. It takes us ten minutes to go there. My telephone number is 5871374.

SURVERY FORM

Family name:..... Brothers and sisters:

Name(s):..... Address:.....

Age: Telephone number:.....

Grade:..... Distance:.....

School:..... How to travel:.....

XI. Read the passage carefully and answer the questions.

The Vietnamese students take part in different after - school activities. Some students play sports. They often play soccer, table tennis or badminton. Sometimes they go swimming in the swimming pools. Some students like music, drama and movies. They often practice playing musical instrument in the school music room. They join in the school theater group and usually rehearse plays. Some are members of the stamp collector's club. They often get together and talk about their stamps. A few students stay at home and play video games or computer games. Most of them enjoy their activities after school hours.

1. Which sports do some students often play?
.....
2. How often do they go swimming?
.....
3. Where do some students often practice playing musical instruments?
.....
4. How often do they rehearse plays?
5. What do the members of the stamp collector's club often do?
.....
6. Do Vietnamese students enjoy their activities?

VII. Rearrange the sentences.

1. house/ is/ the market/ far/ to/ from/ how/ it/ Trang's?
.....
2. lives/ street/ grandparents/ he/ Hoang Quoc Viet / his / on/ with.
.....
3. many /old / students/ my/ have/ doesn't/ class.
.....
4. Mrs/ the boy/ to/ who/ Quyen/ talking/ is?
.....
5. new / Hoa's/ small/ school/ is.
.....
6. goes/ bus/ Hoang/ day/ work/ Mr./ every/ to/by.
.....
7. new/ from/ one/ is/ house/ his/ how/ different/ Minh's/ old?
.....

8. because/ children/ is/ she/ Mrs.Diep/ misses/ unhappy/ her.

TEST 2 (UNIT 1)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. nice | B. bicycle | C. rides | D. live |
| 2. A. mine | B. history | C. exercise | D. library |
| 3. A. <u>c</u> ome | B. <u>m</u> onth | C. <u>m</u> other | D. <u>o</u> pen |
| 4. A. hope | B. <u>h</u> omework | C. <u>o</u> ne | D. <u>p</u> ost |
| 5. A. brother | B. jud <u>o</u> | C. <u>g</u> oing | D. <u>r</u> ode |
| 6. A. <u>s</u> ubject | B. cl <u>u</u> b | C. <u>p</u> ut | D. <u>l</u> unch |
| 7. A. science | B. like | C. music | D. ice |
| 8. A. <u>f</u> un | B. <u>s</u> tudent | C. <u>h</u> ungry | D. <u>s</u> un |
| 9. A. <u>t</u> eacher | B. <u>ch</u> ess | C. <u>l</u> unch | D. <u>s</u> chool. |
| 10. A. <u>f</u> arm | B. <u>a</u> fter | C. <u>w</u> alk | D. <u>c</u> lass |

II. Choose the correct answers.

11. Phong is wearing a school _____.
A. shoes B. uniform C. bag D. hats
12. I am having a Maths lesson but I forgot my _____. I have some difficulty.
A. calculator B. bicycle C. pencil case D. pencil sharpener
13. In Physics, we have a lot of _____.
A. books - to have B. homework - to do C. science - to study D. vocabulary - to play
14. _____ morning exercise is good for you.
A. Doing B. Studying C. Playing D. Having
15. At lunchtime, you can _____ lunch in the school canteen.
A. go B. be C. have D. do
16. Mai and Hoa _____ their bicycles to school from Monday to Friday.
A. rides B. ride C. is riding D. are riding
17. Nam's new school _____ a large .
A. has - playground B. have - playgrounds C. is having - playgrounds D. are having - playground
18. I often _____ my homework _____ school.
A. study - at B. am doing - after C. do - after D. does - before
19. In the afternoon, I _____ books _____ the library.
A. am reading - at B. read - in C. reads - at D. are reading - in
20. Look! They _____ badminton with their friends.
A. play B. plays C. playing D. are playing
21. What is your _____ subject at school?
A. nice B. favourite C. liking D. excited
22. _____ Students live and study in a/an _____ school. They only go home at weekends..
A. international B. small C. boarding D. overseas
23. In the afternoon, students _____ many interesting clubs.
A. join B. do C. play D. have
24. Creative students _____ drawings and paintings in the _____ club.
A. do - sport B. join - English C. do - art D. play - judo
25. We are excited _____ the first day of school.
A. at B. about C. with D. in
26. My parents often help me _____ my homework.
A. with B. about C. at D. in

27. Nam _____ football now. He's tired..
A. doesn't play **B.** plays **C.** is playing **D.** isn't playing
28. Listen! Someone _____ at the door.
A. knocks **B.** knock **C.** is knocking **D.** are knocking
29. My brother and I _____ our bicycles to school now.
A. ride **B.** am riding **C.** are riding **D.** is riding
30. Mr. Khang _____ our class Maths.
A. teach **B.** teaches **C.** does **D.** starts

III. Fill the blanks with am, is, are, do, does, have.

31. How _____ you go to school every day?
 32. _____ you hungry?
 33. _____ your brother like pop music?
 34. Where _____ you go shopping?
 35. I _____ having lunch with my new friends.
 36. Now Mai _____ watching a video clip about science.
 37. Nam and Duy _____ not doing their homework.
 38. We often _____ Maths lessons on Mondays.
 39. Mr. Minh _____ our favourite teacher. He teaches Science.
 40. What _____ you usually do at break time?

IV. Match the questions in column A with the answers in column B.

Answer	A	B
	41. Do you like pop music? 42. When does school start? 43. What is your favourite subject at school? 44. What do you usually do at break time? 45. How many students does the school have? 46. What is your school day like? 47. What are you doing now? 48. Do you wear your school uniform when you go to school? 49. What time do they go home? 50. How do you get to school every day?	a. I read in the library. b. Maths. c. It's very interesting. d. Yes, I do. e. We are having a History lesson. f. Over 800 students. g. Yes, of course. h. At 4 o'clock every day. i. By bicycle. j. School starts again next Tuesday.

V. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

51. They/ often/ morning exercise/ do.
52. Nam/ play football/ school team.
53. My sister/ play/ piano/ weekends/ at.
54. I/ study/ Maths/ English/ History/ Mondays/ on.
55. We/ eat lunch/ school canteen/ lunch time/ in.
56. We/ read/ library/ break time/ at.
57. wear/ uniform/ school/ every day.

58. Today/ Mai/ not/ wear/ uniform.

59. I/ excited/ first day/ school/ at.

60. Susan's favourite teacher/ Science teacher.

TEST 3 UNIT 1

I. Put the words into the correct column depending on the sound of the letter(s) in bold.

mother, wonderful, judo, money, go, come, notebook, hungry, borrow, rubber, homework, video, brother, month, some, rode, club, hope, post, compass, home, lunch, Sunday, love, study, subject, overseas, lower, open, country

/əʊ/	/ʌ/

II. Circle the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. <u>money</u> | <u>sorry</u> | <u>morning</u> | <u>story</u> |
| 2. <u>now</u> | <u>grow</u> | <u>down</u> | <u>town</u> |
| 3. <u>study</u> | <u>student</u> | <u>studio</u> | <u>stupid</u> |
| 4. <u>house</u> | <u>about</u> | <u>hour</u> | <u>country</u> |
| 5. <u>lunch</u> | <u>fun</u> | <u>judo</u> | <u>sun</u> |

III. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>u</u> niform | b. comp <u>u</u> ter | c. st <u>u</u> dent | d. j <u>u</u> do |
| 2. a. <u>s</u> ubject | b. <u>s</u> ure | c. <u>s</u> urround | d. <u>s</u> ee |
| 3. a. <u>e</u> xcited | b. n <u>i</u> ce | c. lib <u>r</u> ary | d. liv <u>i</u> ng |
| 4. a. <u>s</u> chool | b. tea <u>ch</u> er | c. <u>c</u> heap | d. wat <u>ch</u> ing |
| 5. a. <u>t</u> each | b. sp <u>e</u> ak | c. br <u>e</u> ak | d. <u>r</u> ead |

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- How is your first week _____ school?
a. on b. at c. for d. to
- My brother often helps me _____ my homework.
a. at b. about c. for d. with
- Megan is _____ badminton with her friends in the schoolyard.
a. having b. studying c. playing d. doing
- The villa is _____ by pine trees.
a. surrounded b. built c. covered d. grounded
- We do _____ in the gym every afternoon.
a. table tennis b. football c. judo d. homework
- _____ does Jane have science? ~ On Monday and Friday.

- a. Where b. What c. When d. What time
7. Nowadays, students often use _____ in mathematics lessons.
a. rubbers b. calculators c. pencils d. dictionaries
8. My cousin goes to a _____ school, so she only comes home at weekends.
a. boarding b. private c. public d. international
9. You look really _____ in your new uniform!
a. excited b. smart c. healthy d. interesting
10. _____ your parents give you pocket money?
a. Is b. Are c. Do d. Does

V. Put the words into the right column.

music lessons judo football housework homework history lunch
English aerobics vocabulary exercise the piano geography
breakfast sports science drawings badminton subjects English lesson
paintings dinner the violin basketball karate maths

play	do	have	study

VI. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

uniforms boarding library classmates
equipment excited international creative

- Vy and Phong are _____ about their first day at secondary school.
- Phong and Duy are in the same class at school. They are _____.
- Most schools require children to wear school _____.
- My sister is very _____. She is very good at painting pictures _____.
- A _____ school is a school where students study and live during the school year.
- AIS is an _____ school in Vietnam. It provides American education.
- The school gym has lots of new, modern _____.
- In the _____, you can read books and papers or borrow them to read at home.

VII. Put the verbs into the correct form. Use Present Simple.

- They _____ (play) football and basketball at school.
- My father _____ (read) the newspaper every morning.
- We _____ (have) English, Maths and Science on Monday.
- She never _____ (do) her homework.
- I _____ (go) swimming twice a week.
- Cars _____ (be) more expensive than motorbikes.
- Jane always _____ (have) breakfast at 6 o'clock.

- 8 He usually _____(watch) TV after dinner.
9. London _____(be) a very big country.
10. I _____(be) a student and my parents _____(be) teachers.

VIII. Complete the sentence with the negative form of the present continuous. Use short forms.

1. They _____(help) the teacher right now.
2. She _____(stay) in a hotel.
3. I _____(travel) a lot these days.
4. We _____(study) science at present.
5. The children _____(play) football in the playground.
6. Bob _____(watch) the news on TV.
7. My parents _____(talk) to the teacher at the moment.
8. The sun _____(shine) today.

IX. Complete the sentence with the present simple or present progressive form of the verb in brackets.

1. I _____(look) for Jack. Do you know where he is?
2. You _____(know) a lot about computers.
3. They _____(do) maths homework now.
4. Mark often _____(play) tennis at the weekend.
5. Just a minute, I can't hear you. I _____(listen) to the radio.
6. Bob _____(watch) the news on TV every morning.
7. Be quiet! The children _____(study) in the room.
8. Mark _____(not do) homework on Saturdays.
9. Wake up! The teacher _____(ask) you a question.
10. We _____(not work) at the moment. We're on a break.

X. Complete the sentence with the correct form of the verb.

1. Children often _____(use) a computer for school work.
2. _____(Jane/ watch) TV now?
3. Mark _____(not go) to school on Friday afternoon.
4. Look! The cat _____(eat) your breakfast.
5. _____(you/ study) IT at school?
6. I _____(not listen) to music, I _____(play) a computer game at the moment.
7. Put on a raincoat. It _____(rain). It _____(rain) a lot in summer.
8. Where are the children? ~ They _____(read) books in the library.

XI. Match the questions with the answers.

- | | |
|---|--|
| _____ 1. Who are you waiting for? | a.No, they are sleeping. |
| _____ 2. What do you do at break time? | b.By bicycle. |
| _____ 3. Where are you going? | c.To buy some bread. |
| _____ 4. Do you play sports after school? | d.My friends. |
| _____ 5. Are they watching television? | e.Five days a week. |
| _____ 6. Why is he going out? | f. Home. |
| _____ 7. How often do you go to school? | g.Yes, I do. |
| _____ 8. How do you go to school? | h.I go out and play in the playground. |

XII. Choose the word which best fits each gap.

My dream school is a quiet school (1) _____ we have just two or three hours a day, in the morning. Then, in the afternoon, we can do many (2) _____ like singing, dancing, playing soccer, basketball, rugby. We won't have tests and marks either. The teachers will not (3) _____ homework, so we can do whatever we want after school. In my dream school, we can also choose the (4) _____ we want: for example, you're not going to learn mathematics or physics if you hate (5) _____. So it's a free school where you can learn with calm and serenity and you can make (6) _____ friends during afternoon

activities!

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. a. what | b. where | c. when | d. how |
| 2. a. subjects | b. actions | c. activities | d. acts |
| 3. a. give | b. take | d. do | d. get |
| 4. a. class | b. classrooms | c. classmates | d. classes |
| 5. a. it | b. them | c. her | d. him |
| 6. a. much | b. few | c. any | d. lots of |

XIII. Read and answer questions.

Hi, I'm Linda. I'm in the sixth grade. Today is my first day at secondary school. In the morning I put on my new uniform and get my new bag.

My best friend and I walk to school together. We are both very nervous and excited. When we get school, we are shown into our classroom with our new teacher. It is quite scary because I don't know most of the children. Then we go to our first lesson. We have lots of different subjects and the lessons are really fun. My favourite subjects are art and English.

I really like my new school, all my teacher are lovely, the lessons are really interesting and I enjoy my first day. I can't wait to go back tomorrow!

1. What grade is Linda in?
2. Who does she go to school with?
3. How does they go to school?
4. Why does Linda feel scary?
5. What are her favourite subjects?
6. Does she enjoy her first day at school?

XIV. Use the prompts to write full sentences. Use Present Continuous.

- | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. I/ do my homework | _____ |
| 2. Bella/ talk on the phone | _____ |
| 3. We/ listen to CDs now | _____ |
| 4. The children/ ride to the park | _____ |
| 5. It/ rain very hard now | _____ |
| 6. She/ bake a chocolate cake | _____ |
| 7. You/ dance very beautifully | _____ |
| 8. Mark and his friends/ have lunch | _____ |

XV. Put the words in order to make a sentence.

1. secondary/ first/ your/ at/ school/ is/ how/ week?
2. lessons/ many/ have/ on/ how/ you/ do/ Friday?
3. art/ creative/ are/ drawings/ students/ the/ some/ doing/ in/ club
4. school/ at/ English/ we/ have/ classes/ don't/ today
5. homework/ you/ doing/ maths/ are/ your?

6. children/ first/ on/ most/ school/ excited/ are/ day/ of/ the

XVI. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning as the first.

1. What is your favorite subject?

→ What subject _____

2. There are 35 students in my class.

→ My class _____

3. Mai live near her school.

→ Mai's house isn't _____

4. Mary plays the piano very well.

→ Mary is good _____

5. Do you like physics?

→ Are you interested _____

6. The school has a computer room and a library.

→ There _____

UNIT 2 MY HOME

A- VOCABULARY

- town house	/ 'taʊn ,haʊs/ (n):	nhà phố
- country house	/ ,kʌn.tri 'haʊs/ (n):	nhà ở nông thôn
- villa	/ 'vɪl.ə/ (n):	biệt thự
- stilt house	/stɪltz ,haʊs / (n):	nhà sàn
- apartment	/ə 'pɑ:rt.mənt/ (n):	căn hộ
- living room	/ 'lɪv.ɪŋ ,ru:m/ (n):	phòng khách
- bedroom	/ 'bed.ru:m/ / 'bed.rʊm/ (n):	phòng ngủ
- kitchen	/ 'kɪtʃ.ən/ (n):	nhà bếp
- bathroom	/ 'bæθ.ru:m/ / 'bæθ.rʊm/ (n):	nhà tắm
- hall	/ hɑ:l/ (n):	phòng lớn
- attic	/ 'æt.ɪk/ (n):	gác mái
- lamp	/ læmp/ (n):	đèn
- toilet	/ 'tɔɪ.lɪt/ (n):	nhà vệ sinh
- bed	/ bed/ (n):	giường
- cupboard	/ 'kʌb.əd/ (n):	tủ chén
- wardrobe	/ 'wɔ:r.droʊb/ (n):	tủ đựng quần áo
- fridge	/ frɪdʒ/ (n):	tủ lạnh
- poster	/ 'pəʊ.stər/ (n):	áp phích
- chair	/ tʃeər/ (n):	ghế
- air-conditioner	/ 'eər kən.dɪʃ.ə.nər/ (n)	máy điều hòa không khí
- table	/ 'teɪ bəl/ (n):	bàn
- sofa	/ 'səʊ.fə/ (n):	ghế trường kỷ, ghế sofa
- behind	/ bɪ'hænd/ (pre):	ở phía sau, đằng sau
- between	/ bɪ'twɪn/ (pre):	ở giữa
- chest of drawers	/ ,tʃest əv 'drɔ:rz/ (n):	ngăn kéo tủ
- crazy	/ 'kreɪ.zi/ (adj):	kì dị, lạ thường
- department store	/ dɪ'pɑ:rt.mənt ,stɔ:r/ (n):	cửa hàng bách hóa
- dishwasher	/ 'dɪʃ ,wɑʃ.ər/ (n)	máy rửa bát (chén) đĩa

- furniture	/ˈfɜːnɪ tʃər/ (n):	đồ đạc trong nhà, đồ gỗ
- in front of	/ɪn ˈfrʌnt ʌv/ (pre):	ở phía trước, đằng trước
- messy	/ˈmes.i/ (adj):	lộn xộn, bừa bộn
- microwave	/ˈmaɪ.kroʊ.weɪv/ (n):	lò vi sóng
- move	/muːv/ (v):	di chuyển, chuyển nhà
- next to	/ˈnekst tu/ (pre):	kề bên, ở cạnh
- under	/ˈʌn dəər/ (pre):	ở bên dưới, phía dưới

B. GRAMMAR

I- There is/ there isn't và There are/ there aren't (có.../ không có....)

1. Chức năng

a. Dùng để giới thiệu rằng có cái gì, ai đó ở đâu trong hiện tại

There is/ There are... có nghĩa là có nhưng không có ý sở hữu, không thuộc về ai, chỉ là có, hiện diện.

Thể	Dạng	Cấu trúc	Lưu ý
Khẳng định	Số ít	There is/ There's + danh từ số ít/ danh từ không đếm được (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác) Ví dụ: - There is a cooker on the table. - There is no sugar in my coffee cup.	+ Trước danh từ đếm được số ít, cần dùng a/ an/ one. + Trước danh từ không đếm được, không dùng a/an nhưng có thể dùng no (không), a little (một ít), some (1 ít), much (nhiều), a lot of (rất nhiều)
	Số nhiều	There are/ There're + danh từ số nhiều (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác) Ví dụ: - There are twenty members online now. - There are a lot of baggars in Vietnam.	+ Trước danh từ số nhiều thường có các số từ như two, three, four... hoặc many, a few, some, a lot of, no.
Thể phủ định	Số ít	There is not + danh từ đếm được số ít (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác) There is not any + danh từ không đếm được (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác) Ví dụ: - There is not any fat in this skim milk. - There isn't any money in my wallet.	+ There are not = There aren't + Trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều, có thể thêm từ "any"
	Số nhiều	There are not/ There aren't + danh từ số nhiều (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác) Ví dụ: - There aren't many xich los in District 1. - There aren't any desks in this room.	

Thử nghĩ vấn	Số ít	Is there + danh từ đếm được số ít (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác)? Is there any + danh từ không đếm được (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác)? Yes, there is./ No, there isn't. Ví dụ: - Is there any milk in the fridge? - Is there anyone home?	+ Thêm “any” trước các danh từ không đếm được + Không dùng “any” trước các danh từ đếm được số ít.
	Số nhiều	Are there any + danh từ số nhiều (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác)? Yes, there are/ No, there aren't. Ví dụ: Are there any eggs in the kitchen?	+ Trước các danh từ đếm được số nhiều, có thể thêm từ “any”

b. Dùng để hỏi về số lượng hoặc vật

Cấu trúc:

How many + danh từ đếm được số nhiều + are there (+ cụm từ chỉ vị trí/ thành phần khác)?

Trả lời:

-
- Nếu có 1 ta trả lời: There is one.
- Nếu có từ 2 trở lên, ta trả lời: There are + số lượng

Ví dụ:

How many people are there in your classroom?

There are forty-seven people.

How many people are there in her family?

There are four people.

2. Cách thêm đuôi “s” vào danh từ số nhiều

Chỉ những danh từ đếm được mới có dạng số nhiều. Để chuyển danh từ từ số ít sang số nhiều ta làm như sau:

Thêm “s” vào cuối hầu hết các danh từ	a flower – flowers a book – books an apple - apples
Danh từ có tận cùng bằng “s, sh, ss, ch, x, o” ta thêm “es” vào cuối danh từ đó	Tomato- tomatoes Bus – buses Box- boxes
Danh từ gốc nước ngoài hoặc danh từ tóm lược tận cùng bằng “o” thì chỉ thêm “s”	Radio – radios Photo – photos Piano - pianos
Danh từ tận cùng bằng “y” thì bỏ “y” và thêm “ies”	Baby- babies Country – countries Fly- flies
Danh từ tận cùng bằng nguyên âm + “y” thì thêm “s” như bình thường	Boy – boys Day – days Monkey – monkeys
Danh từ tận cùng bằng “f” hoặc “fe” thì bỏ “f”/ “fe” rồi thêm “ves”	Knife- knives Leaf- leaves

Life – lives
Shelf – shelves
Wife – wives
Wolf – wolves

3. Các dạng đặc biệt của danh từ số nhiều

Để không bị nhầm lẫn khi làm dạng bài tập **There is/ There are...**, các em cần lưu ý dạng đặc biệt của một vài danh từ đếm được số nhiều dưới đây:

Danh từ số ít	Dạng số nhiều	Danh từ	Dạng số nhiều
A man	Men	A tooth	Teeth
A woman	Women	A child	Children
A person	People	A mouse	Mice
A foot	feet	A goose	Geese

Ngoài ra, có một vài danh từ có dạng số nhiều và số ít giống nhau như sau:

Danh từ số ít	Dạng số nhiều
A sheep	sheep
A deer	Deer
A moose	Moose
A fish	Fish

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Điền **There is/ There are** vào chỗ trống

- _____ a vase on the table
- _____ lots of books on the shelf
- _____ 12 cushions on the sofa
- _____ a big wardrobe in my sister's bed room.
- _____ many children in the yard
- _____ no cake left on the table.
- _____ a laptop on the desk.
- _____ a lot of noisy children in the classroom
- _____ a little milk on the table
- _____ a few difficult problems on the quiz
- _____ mice in the kitchen.
- _____ a lot of salt in the sauce
- _____ rubbish on the floor.
- _____ some dictionaries in the classroom.
- _____ a museum next to the park.

Bài 2: Khoanh vào câu trả lời đúng

- (There isn't/ There aren't) any pets in the school.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) tables for all the guests
- (There isn't/ There aren't) furniture in this room.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) police officers on the street.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) time for this.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) any cookies left.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) a place for us to stay
- (There isn't/ There aren't) any jam left.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) three telephones at the airport.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) lots of computers in room 202.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) many people in the hall.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) any legs left.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) eight children in the school.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) a horse in the field.
- (There isn't/ There aren't) any water in the swimming pool.

Bài 3: Với các từ cho sẵn, viết câu hỏi và câu trả lời ngắn

Ví dụ: *any/ Brazilian footballers/ in your favorite team?*

=> *Are there any Brazilian footballers in your favorite team?*

Yes, there are.

1. an museum park/ near here?

No, _____

2. a ceiling fan/ in your house?

Yes, _____

3. any famous football teams/ in your country?

Yes, _____

4. any interesting places/ in your house?

No, _____

5. a microwave/ in your kitchen?

No, _____

6. a dog/ in the supermarket?

No, _____

7. any ice-cream/ in the fridge?

Yes, _____

8. many windows/ in the house?

Yes, _____

9. any cheese/ in my sandwich?

No, _____

10. Any quiz programmes/ on TV tonight?

Yes, _____.

Bài 4: Mỗi câu dưới đây có một lỗi sai, tìm và sửa lỗi sai sau đó viết lại câu cho đúng

1. There isn't some water in the glass. _____

2. There are a three children talking with the teacher. _____

3. Are there some airconditioner in the attic? _____

4. Is there any windows in this classroom? _____

5. There aren't some pencils in the pencil case. _____

6. There is some people in the backyard. _____

7. There are any pictures on the wall. _____

8. Is there some boy in the living room? _____

9. There are any magazines on the table. _____

10. There are a biscuit on the plate. _____

Bài 5: Điền some/any/an/ an vào chỗ trống

1. There are _____ people in the street.

2. There is _____ cinema on the right.

3. There isn't _____ dishwashers in the country house.

4. There aren't _____ rivers running through the town centre.

5. There is _____ bar called Moe's.

6. There are _____ chests of drawers in our apartment.

7. Is there _____ chocolate in the kitchen?
8. There's _____ airport next to the city.
9. Are there _____ tourists in this villa?
10. Is there _____ office near here?

II- Giới từ chỉ vị trí (Preposition of place)

1. Các giới từ chỉ vị trí phổ biến

Above /ə'baʊ/ (prep.): phía trên, bên trên	Across /ə'krɒs/ (prep.): ở bên kia	Between /bi'twi:n/ (prep.): ở giữa, nằm ngay chính giữa
Behind /bi'haɪnd/ (prep.): ở đằng sau	Beside /bi'saɪd/ (prep.): bên cạnh	Under /'ʌn.də/ (prep.): ở bên dưới
Opposite /'ɒp.ə.zɪt/ (prep.): đối diện	In /ɪn/ (prep.): ở trong, nằm bên trong	In front of /ɪn frʌnt əv/ (prep.): ở phía trước
Near /nɪə/ (prep.): gần, không cần chính xác khoảng cách và cũng không hẳn ở bên cạnh	Next to /nekst tə/ (prep.): bên cạnh	On /ɒn/ (prep.): ở trên (có tiếp xúc bề mặt)

2. Vị trí của giới từ

Giới từ chỉ vị trí thường đứng sau động từ to be và đứng trước danh từ.

▣ Cấu trúc

- The + danh từ + to be + giới từ + the + danh từ

Ví dụ:

- The Cookie is on the plate. (Cái bánh ở trên cái đĩa.)

3. a/is/my/garden / there / big / house / behind.
4. many/ how /students / there / school / Lan's / in / are/?
5. front/a/house / there / of /yard / your /is/ in / small/ ?

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Điền There is/ There are/There isn't/ There aren't/ Is there/ Are there vào các câu sau sao cho đúng.

1. _____ many people standing outside the department store
2. _____ a big group of people looking at things in the museum.
3. _____ a small cat playing with some toys.
4. (A) How many ceiling lights _____
(B) There are two ceiling lights.
5. (A) Are there two birds in the tree?
(B) Yes, _____
6. _____ three people in the classroom: two students and one teacher.
7. (A) _____ taxi waiting for us?
(B) Yes, _____
8. (A) _____ any sinks in the bathroom?
(B) No, _____
9. _____ four chairs and one table in the dining room.
10. (A) _____ anything I can do to help?
(B) Yes, _____
11. Why _____ so many cars parked near the library?
12. _____ great action movie playing at the theater. Do you want to see it?
13. I don't see any buses. Why _____ any buses?
14. (A) a good reason why he is late?
(B) Yes, _____
15. _____ any English exams that we have to study for next week.
16. Please wait here for a moment. _____ something I have to get in my car.

A. PHONETICS

I, Ticks (✓) the correct column for the underlined part of the word.

	/s/	/z/	/iz/
Does			
gets up			
Goes			
Has			
Lives			
Looks			
Plays			
Starts			
Finishes			
Misses			

Speaks			
Teaches			
Writes			
Thinks			
Watches			
Washes			
Sings			
Walks			
Sits			
moves			
rooms			
houses			
Chairs			
Attics			
Desks			
buildings			
apartments			
Chests			
laptops			
Clocks			

II. Put the words or phrases in the correct columns. Some words have more than one answer.

your bag school the shelves my desk Spain work
the fridge the wall a party my bedroom home the floor

in	at	on
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		

III. Look at the picture. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

on between above in front of under in next to behind

- There are some plates _____ the sink.
- There is a cat _____ the rug.
- There is a pair of shoes _____ the sofa.
- There are some flowers _____ the curtains.
- There is a man _____ the cooker.
- There is a door _____ the cupboard.
- There is a blue coat _____ a red and a green coat in the wardrobe.
- There is a picture _____ the bed.

IV. Circle the correct answer.

- Here is/ There are* two English girls in my school.
- Is there/ Are there* a good film on tonight?
- There isn't/ There aren't* a hall in my house.
- There is/ There are* a lot of chairs in the classroom.
- Is there/ Are there* blue curtains in your room? T

6. *There isn't/ There aren't* a lot of people in the cinema.

V. Complete the sentences with *There is* or *There are*.

1. _____ a desk in my room.
2. _____ green curtains in his room.
3. _____ a sandwich on the table.
4. _____ a book on the floor.
5. _____ six children in the room.
6. _____ nice posters in our classroom.
7. _____ a cat on my bed.
8. _____ thirty-six children in my class.

VI. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *there is* or *there are*.

1. _____ "a TV in your room?"
_____ - "No, ."
2. _____ "a car in the garage?"
_____ - "Yes, ."
3. _____ "two beds in your room?"
_____ - "No, ."
4. _____ "a sofa in your living room?"
_____ - "Yes, ."
5. _____ "a lot of books in your bedroom?"
_____ - "Yes, ."
6. _____ "a hall in your house?"
_____ - Yes, ."
7. _____ "a lot of sandwiches in the kitchen?"
_____ - "No, ."
8. _____ "a lot of tables and chairs in your classroom?"
_____ - "Yes, ."

VII. Write the conversations using the words below.

Example: a new pencil case in your bag/ old.

_____ **A:** *Is there a new pencil case in your bag?*

_____ **B:** *No, there isn't. There's an old pencil case.*

1. _____ five DVDs on the table/ three.

A: _____

B: _____

2. a man in the garden/ a woman.

A: _____

B: _____

3. six books in that bag/ seven.

A: _____

B: _____

4. lots of cars in the street/ one car.

A: _____

B: _____

5. thirty children in your class/ thirty-five

A: _____

B: _____

VIII. Reorder the words and write the sentences.

1. TV/ big/ a/ there's. _____

2. city/ beautiful/ a/ Ha Noi/ is. _____
3. student/ Mai/ new/ a/ is. _____
4. good/ a/ he/ friend/ is. _____
5. dog/ it's/ friendly/ a. _____
6. ten/ are/ desks/ small/ there. _____
7. new/ four/ there/ cars/ are. _____
8. green fields/ are/ there. _____
9. are/ two/ pizzas/ there/ big. _____
10. DVD player/ is/ new/ a/ there. _____

IX. Read the email, match the sentences halves below, and write the answer in each blank.

Hello Andrew,

There is picture of my new bedroom. It's not very big. There's a bed, a desk, and a chair. There are two window. The curtains are new. On the desk there is a computer and a photo of my dog, Blackie. There are six posters in my room. There are animals on all the posters. The posters are beautiful.

Best wishes

Daniel

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. In Daniel's room | a. Daniels' desk. |
| 2. Daniel's room | b. there's a bed, a desk and a chair. |
| 3. There are two windows with new | c. a dog |
| 4. There's a computer on | d. is not very big. |
| 5. Daniel's pet is | e. lots of animals. |
| 6. The dog's name | f. in Daniels' room. |
| 7. There are posters | g. is Blackie |
| 8. On the posters there are | h. curtains |

X. Make sentences from the given words or phrases.

1. There/ a bed/ corner/ the room.
2. Shelves/ above/ the closet.
3. Wardrobe/ the center/ the room.
4. Table/ between/ two chairs.
5. Lamp/ next/ the bed.
6. Table/ the right/ the wardrobe.
7. There/ some pictures/ the wall.
8. There/ a window/ the left-side/ the room.
9. Bed/ opposite/ the door.
10. There/ some bottles/ the shelf.

XI. Write sentences about your living room, your kitchen and your bedroom.

1. In the living room, there's a sofa, there are two _____
2. In the _____

In the _____

XII. Read Nadia's text about her messy desk. Write a similar text.

My desk is really messy! My pen is in my dictionary. My pencil case is on my school bag, and my pencils are on the school bag, too. My English book is behind the computer, My ruler is in my English book. My cat is on the computer. Where is my red pen? No idea!

Answer:

XIII. Read the description of Susan's ideal room. Describe your ideal room.

In my ideal room, there's a big bed and there are yellow curtains. There are a lot of posters of pop stars and horses. There's a nice desk. On the desk, there's a computer with a big screen. There are two chairs, and there are lots of shelves for my books and DVDs. There is also a good stereo.

Answer:

In my ideal room there is..... There are.....

TEST 1 UNIT 2

I. Put the words into THREE groups (/s/, /z/ and /iz/)

tables	chopsticks	wardrobes	beds	fridges	dishes
desks	houses	rooms	lamps	posters	sinks
toilets	apartments	laptops	buildings	books	clocks

/s/	/iz/	/z/

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. A. ph <u>o</u> to | B. m <u>o</u> torbike | C. h <u>o</u> me | D. w <u>o</u> rk |
| 2. A. d <u>a</u> ngerous | B. tr <u>a</u> vel | C. m <u>a</u> n | D. tr <u>a</u> ffic |
| 3. A. h <u>e</u> lp | B. l <u>e</u> ft | C. m <u>a</u> rket | D. int <u>e</u> rse <u>c</u> tion |
| 4. A. tr <u>u</u> ck | B. <u>u</u> nload | C. t <u>u</u> rn | D. l <u>u</u> nch |
| 5. A. polic <u>e</u> man | B. sign | C. bike | D. spider |

III. Choose the best answer.

1. How many windows_____in your class?
- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|
| A. are there | B. there are | C. there isn't | D. there aren't |
|--------------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|

2. They often play soccer in the _____.
A. school gate B. schoolyard C. schoolmate D. schoolwork
3. Which word has three syllables?
A. table B. telephone C. window D. bench
4. Those _____pens and pencils.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
5. _____meadows on the way.
A. There is B. There are C. There has D. There have
6. Is this your favorite class? _____.
A. Yes, this is. B. No, there isn't C. Yes, I think so. D. No, it doesn't.
7. There are five people in _____family.
A. they B. their C. them D. theirs
8. Tell me something _____your family.
A. about B. Φ C. over D. on
9. Go and _____a bath!
A. wash B. make C. do D. have
10. Close the door _____; it's cold in here.
A. Φ B. up C. to D. have
11. My house is opposite _____the park.
A. from B. of C. Φ D. to
12. Which word has four syllables?
A. literature B. chemistry C. history D. physics
13. How _____money do you want?
A. many B. much C. little D. a lot of
14. _____do they work? - They work in a big hospital.
A. Who B. When C. What D. Where
15. What are those? _____CDs.
A. This is B. These are C. They are D. That is
16. What's the date today ? - It is _____June.
A. twelve B. twelfth C. twelve of D. the twelfth of
17. How many windows are there in your house? - _____six.
A. There is B. There are C. There has D. There have
18. _____is Phong ? - He's in the living room.
A. When B. Where C. Who D. What
19. Which verb adds _es in the third person?
A. go B. write C. sleep D. tell
20. _____a clock in your room?
A. Are there B. Is there C. Have there D. Has there

IV. Use the words in the box to complete the below sentences.

favorite	washing machine	dishwasher	interesting
lovely	modern	kitchen	

1. My mother is cooking in the_____.
2. Picture-books are very_____.
3. She puts her dirty clothes in the_____.
4. Apple is my_____fruit.
5. It's the most_____car.
6. _____is a machine that washes dishes.
7. What a_____girl!

V. Fill in the blank with: *in, on, to, under, behind, near.*

Ex: The book is on the table.

1. They are waiting_____front of the theater.
2. The lamp is next_____the picture.
3. The picture is_____the wall.
4. Can you see the cat_____the picture?
5. The child is hiding_____a tree.
6. The armchairs aren't far from the television. They are_____the television.
7. The water flows_____the bridge.

VI. Complete the sentences with *There is* or *There are.*

1. _____ thirty-five students in my class.
2. _____ nice posters in our classroom.
3. _____ green curtains in his room.
4. _____ six children in the room.
5. _____ a sofa in the living room.
6. _____ dishes on the floor.
7. _____ a ceiling fan in the bedroom.
8. _____ some pictures in my room.
9. _____ a big window in the living room.
10. _____ two sinks in my bathroom.

VII. Fill in the blanks with *in, on, at, behind, in front of, from ... to*

Ex: I play games *in* the afternoon.

1. They often go swimming_____Sunday.
2. The meeting will last_____7 a.m_____5 p.m.
3. She will be 13_____her next birthday.
4. We are playing chess_____the moment.
5. It's often rainy_____July.
6. My birthday is_____September 3rd.
7. The party will start_____seven o'clock_____the evening.
8. He was born_____April 2002.
9. The dog is_____the shelf.
10. Our teacher is_____the blackboard.

VIII. Fill in the blanks with *is, are, isn't, aren't, do, does, where.*

1. We_____staying at my cousin's house in Vung Tau.
2. _____they have the right things for the kitchen?
3. Where_____you live, Phong?
4. _____does your uncle live?
5. How many rooms_____there in the hotel?
6. There_____any chairs in the kitchen. We need five chairs.
7. Which house_____you want to live in? A town house or a country house?
8. There_____any furniture in my bedroom. I need many things.
9. In my house, there_____four bedrooms.
10. What_____Mrs. Brown need for the living room?

IX. Read the passage carefully and answer the questions below.

Hoa's family lives in a beautiful house in the country. There are many flowers in front of her house. Behind the house, there is a well. To the right of the house, there is a rice-paddy and to the left of the house, there are tall trees. It's very quiet here and Hoa loves her house very much.

Hoa's father is a worker. He works in a big factory. Everyday, he travels to work by motorbike. He works in his factory from Monday to Friday. He doesn't work on Saturdays and Sundays.

Questions:

1. Does Hoa live in town?
.....
2. What are there in front of her house?
.....
3. Is there a paddy field to the right of the house?
.....
4. What does Hoa's father do?
.....
5. How does he travel to work?
.....
6. When does he work in the factory?
.....

X. Read then answer the questions.

Hello, I am Trung. This is my school. It is small and old but it is beautiful. Behind the school, there is a big yard. After school in the afternoon, we often play soccer there. The yard is clean and there are many trees and flowers there. My friends and I sit under these trees every morning to review our lessons. My school has two floors and fifteen classrooms. My classroom is on the first floor. There are forty-three teachers in my school. They are good teachers. I love them and I love my school very much.

1. Is Trung's school big?
.....
2. What is there behind his school?
.....
3. What do Trung and his friends play after school?
.....
4. Where do Trung and his friends sit every morning to review their lessons?
.....
5. How many teachers are there in his school?

XI. Add "is, are, a, an, some, any" to make a correct sentence.

Ex: *There/ pencil/ in/ the/ box.*
 There is a pencil in the box.
 There/ bananas/ in/ the fridge.
 There are some bananas in the fridge.

1. There/ book/ on/ the table.
=>
2. There/ shoes/ under/ the chair.
=>
3. There/ not/ TV/ in/ his room.
=>
4. There/ not/ pens/ on/ my desk.
=>
5. There/ boy/ behind/ that tree.
=>
6. There/ girls/ in front of/ the house.
=>
7. There/ not/ telephone/ in her office.

=>

8. There/ not/ chairs/ downstairs.

=>

XII. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. house/ a/ Minh/ lake/ a/ lives/ in/ near.

=>

2. yard/ front/ school/ There/ big/ of/ is/ our/ in/ a.

=>

3. many/ right/ the/ museum/ Are/ flowers/ the/ there/ to/ of/?

=>

4. next/ photocopy/ What/ store/ there/ the/ is/ to /?

=>

5. hospital/ father/ in/ the/ city/ 2yiy/ a/ works/ in.

=>

6. there/ family/ many/ in/ are/ How/ Linh's/ people/ ?

=>

7. his/ friend/ in/ family/ My/ Hanoi/ doesn't/ with/ live.

=>

8. brushes/ six/ gets/ her/ o'clock/ Hoa/ at/ up/ teeth/ and.

=>

9. on/ floor/ classroom/ the/ is/ Our/ first.

=>

10. Minh's/ six/ There/ in/ rooms/ house/ are.

=>

XIII. Translate these sentences into English.

1. Có một cái xe đạp ở trước căn nhà.

=>

2. Có vài trái táo trong tủ lạnh.

=>

3. Không có (một) cái ghế bành (nào) trong phòng này.

=>

4. Không có cuốn sách nào trên bàn giấy của tôi.

=>

TEST 2 (UNIT 2)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. be <u>d</u> s | B. clo <u>ck</u> s | C. wa <u>ll</u> s | D. ta <u>b</u> les |
| 2. A. gra <u>n</u> dp <u>a</u> rents | B. bro <u>th</u> ers | C. un <u>c</u> les | D. fa <u>th</u> ers |
| 3. A. mo <u>th</u> ers | B. ce <u>n</u> tres | C. au <u>n</u> ts | D. co <u>s</u> ins |
| 4. A. ci <u>t</u> ies | B. wa <u>t</u> ches | C. di <u>s</u> hes | D. ho <u>u</u> ses |
| 5. A. bo <u>o</u> ks | B. roo <u>m</u> s | C. wa <u>l</u> ls | D. pi <u>ll</u> ows |
| 6. A. clo <u>ck</u> s | B. villa <u>s</u> | C. ta <u>b</u> les | D. cha <u>i</u> rs |
| 7. A. be <u>d</u> | B. te <u>l</u> evision | C. che <u>s</u> t | D. toi <u>l</u> et |
| 8. A. fri <u>d</u> ge | B. li <u>gh</u> t | C. li <u>v</u> ing | D. pi <u>c</u> ture |
| 9. A. po <u>s</u> ter | B. so <u>f</u> a | C. o <u>w</u> n | D. lap <u>t</u> op |
| 10. A. roo <u>m</u> | B. bo <u>o</u> k | C. doo <u>r</u> | D. loo <u>k</u> |

II. Choose the correct answers.

16. There are a lot of things _____ in Da Lat .

- A. see B. to see C. seeing D. to seeing
17. It is called the Tiger room _____ there is a big tiger on the wall.
- A. because B. so C. but D. like
18. I live _____ my parents and my younger sister in a town house _____ Ha Noi.
- A. with - at B. at - at C. of - in D. with - in
19. We are moving _____ a new house _____ the city centre soon.
- A. to - in B. at - at C. to - from D. from - in
20. We live in a town house, but our grandparents live in a _____ house.
- A. villa B. country C. apartment D. city
21. There are two lights _____ the ceiling.
- A. at B. in C. on D. between
22. There is a family photo _____ the wall.
- A. on B. at C. in D. next
23. There _____ four chairs and a table _____ the middle of the room.
- A. is - on B. is - in C. are - at D. are - in
24. We need some chairs _____ the kitchen.
- A. with B. for C. at D. on
25. There are some dirty dishes _____ the floor.
- A. in B. with C. on D. for
26. There aren't any pillows _____ the bed.
- A. in B. on C. behind D. in front of
27. My bedroom is _____ the bathroom.
- A. under B. on C. in D. next to
28. I'd _____ study hard for the exam.
- A. better B. like C. be D. do
29. There are clothes on the floor – it's _____.
- A. interesting B. mess C. messes D. messy
30. There _____ a big fridge _____ the corner.
- A. is - on B. is - in C. are - in D. are - on
31. There are many chairs in the kitchen, _____ there is only one in my bedroom.
- A. so B. because C. but D. in
32. My bedroom is small but it has a _____ window.
- A. big B. small C. interesting D. old
33. Where _____ the living room?
- A. is B. are C. do D. does
34. Where _____ the books? Are they _____ the bookshelf?
- A. is - on B. is - in C. are - in D. are - on
35. _____ there any furniture _____ your new living room?
- A. Is - in B. Is - at C. Are - in D. Are - on
- III. Fill the blanks with *is, are, isn't, aren't, do, does, where*.**
36. In my house there _____ four bedrooms.
37. Where _____ you live, Nam?
38. We _____ staying at my uncle's house in Da Lat.
39. How many rooms _____ there in the hotel?
40. What _____ Mrs. Brown need for the living room?
41. _____ they have the right things for the kitchen?
42. There _____ any furniture in my bedroom. I need many things.
43. There _____ any chairs in the kitchen. We need four chairs.

44. _____does your aunt live?
 45. Which house_____you want to live in - a town house or a country house?

V. Complete each of the following sentences with the correct preposition.

46. The kitchen is _____to the bathroom.
 47. We live_____a town house.
 48. Is there a picture_____the wall?
 49. There is a ceiling fan _____the bedroom.
 50. My town house is _____the city centre.

VI Rewrite the following sentences keeping the same meaning.

51. There are many chairs in the kitchen.
 The kitchen _____
 52. Nam lives in the city.
 Nam doesn't _____
 53. There are four people in my family: my parents, my brother and me.
 I live _____
 54. The television is in front of the picture.
 The picture is _____
 55. I don't watch TV in any other rooms but the living room.
 I only _____

VI. Choose the best answer to complete the text.

You can't see our house (56) here because it is (57)_____the church. When you walk up Prince Street, it is (58)_____the left, next (59)_____the Black Cat Café.
 My room is upstairs (60)_____the right. I have a desk (61)_____front (62)_____the window. And I like looking out because our house is (63)_____the park. My desk is (64)_____the bed (65)_____the wardrobe.

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 56. A. from | B. behind | C. on | D. in |
| 57. A. in | B. behind | C. on | D. between |
| 58. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. under |
| 59. A. in | B. at | C. on | D. to |
| 60. A. in | B. behind | C. on | D. next |
| 61. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. next |
| 62. A. about | B. of | C. on | D. with |
| 63. A. near | B. on | C. next | D. from |
| 64. A. on | B. in | C. between | D. at |
| 65. A. on | B. and | C. in | D. behind |

VII. Read the email, and then decide whether the questions are true (T), false (F) or not mentioned (NM).

Hi Marco,

We are moving to our new flat on Saturday. The flat has only two bedrooms, and it has a small garden at the back. It's good for me because it's near my school and the city centre.

When you come in the front door, there's a long hall with a bathroom at the other end. The door on the right goes into the kitchen with the dining room behind it. The next room is the living room. It's a comfortable, sunny room and from there you can walk straight out into the garden.

After that there's my parents' bedroom, and finally you come to my bedroom. It's next to the bathroom. I'm writing this email on my computer at my desk under the window. All my furniture is in my room now and it looks good.

Love
 Alice

66. The flat doesn't have a garden. _____
 67. Alice walks to school. _____
 68. The dining room is behind the kitchen. _____
 69. Her parents' bedroom is next to the bathroom. _____
 70. Her bedroom doesn't have a window. _____

TEST 3 UNIT 2

I. Put the words into the correct column depending on how the ending is pronounced.

rooms	houses	dogs	lamps	toilets	beds	tables
apartments	books	chairs	televisions	boxes	pictures	baths
dishes	fridges	cookers	chopsticks	lights	vases	windows
photos	parents	clothes	wishes	sandwiches	attics	villas
plants	walls	tablecloths	shelves	classes	tourists	

/z/	/s/	/iz/
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____

II. Circle the word that has the ending pronounced differently.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|---------|-----------|
| 1. boys | lessons | cats | pictures |
| 2. places | messages | houses | clothes |
| 3. sinks | bags | laptops | students |
| 4. fridges | kisses | watches | wardrobes |
| 5. plates | posters | trees | songs |

III. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. light | b. fridge | c. sink | d. kitchen |
| 2. a. lamp <u>s</u> | b. window <u>s</u> | c. desk <u>s</u> | d. plant <u>s</u> |
| 3. a. <u>l</u> ook | b. <u>c</u> ook | c. <u>b</u> ook | d. <u>r</u> oom |
| 4. a. p <u>o</u> ster | b. ch <u>o</u> pstick | c. s <u>o</u> fa | d. wardr <u>o</u> be |
| 5. a. <u>h</u> oney | b. <u>h</u> ouse | c. <u>h</u> our | d. <u>h</u> otel |

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Don't stand _____ the TV I'm trying to watch this programme.
 a. behind b. next to c. under d. in front of
- You should never stand _____ a tree when it is raining,
 a. at b. under c. between d. on
- My mother is in the _____ baking a cake for my birthday.
 a. bathroom b. dinning room c. kitchen d. bedroom
- Please turn the _____ on. It's so hot in here.
 a. fan b. light c. television d. faucet
- The Tay and Nung people mostly live in _____ made of wood and bamboo.
 a. apartments b. stilt houses c. town houses d. villas
- In our dining room, _____ four chairs and a table. We have breakfast there every morning.
 a. there is b. there are c. there isn't d. there aren't
- _____ any children in the playground right now.

- a. There is b. There are c. There aren't d. There isn't
8. I like my bedroom best. It's my _____ room.
- a. beautiful b. comfortable c. wonderful d. favourite
9. My room is so _____! Dirty clothes, toys, books are all over the floor!
- a. messy b. crazy c. tidy d. cozy
10. 'Where do you live?' '_____',
- a. On the floor. b. In the kitchen.
- c. In a town house. d. Next to the bookshelf.

V. Put the words into the correct groups.

bathroom lamp town house sofa wardrobe shelf villa kitchen

dishwasher dining room stilt house bed microwave chest of drawers

apartment bedroom air-conditioner country house living room fridge

Types of building	Rooms	Furniture	Equipment
_____			_____
_____			_____
_____			_____
_____			_____
_____			_____
_____			_____

VI. Parts of the house. Unscramble the letters, then complete the passage.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------|---------------|-------|
| 1. ergnad | _____ | 5. nviligomor | _____ |
| 2. amrhoobt | _____ | 6. gnidinrmoo | _____ |
| 3. moordeb | _____ | 7. citta | _____ |
| 4. hcnekit | _____ | 8. ragega | _____ |

I like my big house. It has got two _____ upstairs, my parents' one and mine. Upstairs also there is a _____ where I wash and brush my teeth. Downstairs there is a _____ big where my mother cooks and prepares meals, a _____ to eat altogether and a _____ where we watch TV or sit and relax. Outdoors my parents park their cars in the _____, and we have a beautiful _____ with a lot of flowers and trees. My house also has an _____ where we store lots of old things.

VII. Complete the sentence with the correct preposition *in*, *on* or *at*.

- I've got a computer _____ my bedroom.
- Do you live _____ a house or an apartment?
- He is sitting _____ a sofa _____ the corner of the sitting room.
- There is such a mess _____ the kitchen!
- The dog is sleeping _____ the carpet.
- We live _____ the 3rd floor _____ 53 Pine Street _____ London.
- Jane is waiting for a bus _____ the bus stop.

8. Are there any pictures _____ the walls _____ the living room?
9. We are staying _____ the Roosevelt Hotel _____ New York City.
10. My camera is _____ a box _____ a shelf _____ the bedroom closet.

VIII. Underline the correct preposition.

1. Don't sit *in/ on/ under* this stool. It's broken.
2. My grandma is sitting *in/ on/at* the armchair *on/ next/ beside* the fireplace.
3. Simon likes to stay *in/ on/ at* bed all Sunday morning.
4. We live *on/ in/ at* an apartment *on/at/ into* a very busy road.
5. I put my book *in/ on/ over* the table *in/ at/ on* the dining room.
6. There is a clock *under/ next to/ above* the teacher's desk.
7. He always hides the key *on/at/under* the doormat.
8. Mary is sitting *under/ between/ behind* her parents. They are watching TV.
9. On a bus, passengers sit *in front of/ behind/ between* the driver.
10. You can see children's books *in/ on/ at* the bookshelf *to/ at/ in* the corner.

IX. Complete the sentences with *There is* or *There are*.

1. _____ 25 students in the class.
2. _____ a big wardrobe in my sister's room.
3. _____ a computer and a TV in my room.
4. _____ good programs on television.
5. _____ some furniture in my bedroom.
6. _____ four eggs in the fridge.
7. _____ a lot of water in the bottle.
8. _____ no paper in the printer.

X. Complete the questions with *Is there* or *Are there*. Then write short answers.

1. _____ many shops in your town? Yes, _____.
2. _____ a post office near here? No, _____.
3. _____ a table and chairs in the kitchen? Yes, _____.
4. _____ any trees in your garden? No, _____.
5. _____ a book under the table? Yes, _____.
6. _____ any girls in the class? Yes, _____.
7. _____ any coffee in the cup? No, _____.
8. _____ a lot of children in the yard? No, _____.

XI. Put the verbs into the correct tenses.

1. It _____ (snow) quite hard – perhaps we shouldn't go out tonight.
2. My mother _____ (not like) buying food in supermarkets.
3. Sorry, I'm busy at the moment. I _____ (do) my homework.
4. Sue _____ (not listen) to music in her room now. She's outside.
5. They _____ (not eat) meat on Fridays.
6. The teacher _____ (often/ give) us a lot of homework.
7. How often _____ (you/ go) to the gym to work out?
8. Listen! What language _____ (they/ speak)?
9. We usually _____ (take) a bus to school, but this week we _____ (go) by car.
10. Helen and Toro _____ (not wait) for the bus at the moment.

XII. Put the verbs into the correct tense form.

1. I don't like the garden in winter time. There _____ (be) any flowers.
2. There _____ (be) some new furniture in the living room.
3. _____ (you/ get) up early in the morning?

4. The students _____ (not prepare) for the science exam at the moment.
5. _____ (there/ be) a student called Andrea in this class?
6. Listen! Someone _____ (play) the guitar. It _____ (sound) great.
7. You _____ (look) sad. What's the matter?
8. What _____ (you/ look) for? – My pen.
9. Jack _____ (not spend) much time on reading.
10. Susan often _____ (drive) to the beach when the weather _____ (be) nice.

XIII. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. There are only 20 _____ in my class. (study)
2. Some _____ students do drawings and paintings in the art club. (create)
3. The class is _____; students do not stop talking to each other. (noise)
4. Your room is a _____; please pick up your toys. (messy)
5. Every day, students learn English with English _____ teacher. (speak)
6. In the afternoon, they can join many _____ clubs. (interest)
7. My house is warm and _____. (comfort)
8. Kids are not allowed to use _____ in math class. (calculate)
9. What is your _____ room, Tony? (favour)
10. I'm so _____ about my first day at school. (excite)

XIV. Match the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| _____ 1. Where do you live? | a. Five. |
| _____ 2. Who do you live with? | b. Between the study and the stairs. |
| _____ 3. How many rooms are there? | c. In a town. |
| _____ 4. What's in the living room? | d. Yes. There's one next to the window. |
| _____ 5. Where is your room? | e. My bedroom. |
| _____ 6. Is there a television in your room? | f. A sofa set, a television and a lamp. |
| _____ 7. What is your favourite room? | g. My parents and sister. |
| _____ 8. Are there any pictures in the kitchen? | h. Yes. There's a big one on the wall opposite my bed. |

XV.

Read the text carefully, then answer the

questions.

THIS IS MY HOUSE!

Hello! My name is Peter and this is my house.

My house is quite big. It has got two floors – a ground floor and a first floor. It has also got an attic and a basement. On the ground floor, there is a kitchen, a living room, a big dining room and a bathroom. On the first floor, there are three bedrooms, one bathroom and a big corridor. My bedroom is between my parents' bedroom and the bathroom. My sister's bedroom is in front of mine.

I love my bedroom, but I also like the attic. In the attic I keep some of my books and my old toys. I like to spend my time there because it is very spacious and there is a big sofa there where I sometimes take a nap.

At the back of the house, there is a garage where my parents park the family car, and a lovely garden with many green spaces, flowers, two swings and a small swimming pool.

I love my house! It's very comfortable and cozy.

- spacious (adj): *rộng rãi*

- cozy (adj): *ấm cúng*

1. Is Peter's house big or small?
2. How many rooms are there on the ground floor? What are they?
3. Where is Peter's bedroom?
4. Why does Peter like to be in the attic?

5. Where is the garage?
6. Is the swimming pool in the garden?
7. Does Peter like his room?

XVI. Fill in each gap with a word from the box.

stand music curtain bookshelf next rug favourite there

My (1)_____ room is our living room. It is rather big and warm. There is a big window with lots of pot plants and green and yellow (2)_____. In our living room, (3)_____ is a green sofa and two green armchairs. There is a big yellow (4)_____ on the floor. A modern floor light (5)_____ in the right corner of the room. (6)_____ to the sofa there is a small coffee table with a vase of flowers. By the wall there is a big table with six brown chairs. We have a television and a (7)_____ with a lot of books and pictures. We also have a CD player on the shelf.

I often watch TV, listen to (8)_____ or read books there. I really like my living room.

XVII. Read the passage and then decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

I live in a house near the sea. It's an old house, about 100 years old, and it's very small. There are two bedrooms upstairs but no bathroom. The bathroom is downstairs next to the kitchen and there's a living room where there's a lovely old fireplace. There's a garden in front of the house. The garden goes down to the beach and in spring and summer there are flowers everywhere. I live with my parents, and we have a lot of visitors. My city friends often stay with me. I love my house for many reasons: the garden, the flowers in summer, the fire in winter, but the best thing is the view from my bedroom window.

1. The author lives in the seaside.
2. There is no bathroom in her house.
3. The house has got two floors and four rooms.
4. There are flowers in the garden in front of the house.
5. Her family rarely has visitors.
6. The author likes her bedroom's window view best.

XVIII. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. My house has got five rooms.
→ There _____
2. The bus station isn't far from the new shopping center.
→ The bus station is _____
3. There isn't a telephone in the living room.
→ We _____
4. The house is behind the trees.
→ There are trees _____
5. There are only a few biscuits in the packet.
→ There aren't _____
6. There are two bathrooms in that house.
→ That house _____
7. I like the kitchen most.
→ My favourite _____
8. Is there a garden in front of the house?
→ Does the house _____

UNIT 3 MY FRIENDS

A. VOCABULARY

- arm	/ɑ:rm/ (n):	cánh tay
- ear	/ɪər/ (n):	tai
- eye	/aɪ/ (n):	mắt
- leg	/leg/ (n):	chân
- nose	/noʊz/ (n):	mũi
- finger	/'fɪŋ·gər/ (n):	ngón tay
- tall	/tɔl/ (a):	cao
- short	/ʃɔrt/ (a)	ùn, thấp
- big	/bɪg/ (a):	to
- small	/smɔl/ (a):	nhỏ
- active	/'æktɪv/ (adj):	hăng hái, năng động
- appearance	/ə'pɪər·əns/ (n):	dáng vẻ, ngoại hình
- barbecue	/'bɑ:·bɪ,kju/ (n):	món thịt nướng barbecue
- boring	/'bɔ:·rɪŋ/ (adj):	buồn tẻ
- choir	/kwɑɪər/ (n):	đàn đồng ca
- competition	/'kɒmpɪ'tɪʃən/ (n):	cuộc đua, cuộc thi
- confident	/'kɒn fɪ dənt/ (adj):	tự tin, tin tưởng
- curious	/'kjʊər·i·əs/ (adj):	tò mò, thích tìm hiểu
- gardening	/'gɑ:d·nɪŋ/ (v):	làm vườn
- firefighter	/'faɪər,fai·tər/ (n):	lính cứu hỏa
- fireworks	/'faɪər,wɜ:ks/ (n):	pháo hoa
- funny	/'fʌn i/ (adj):	buồn cười, thú vị
- generous	/'dʒen·ə·rəs/ (adj):	rộng rãi, hào phóng
- museum	/mju'zi·əm/ (n):	viện bảo tàng
- organise	/'ɔ: gə,naɪz/ (v):	tổ chức
- patient	/'peɪ·fənt/ (adj):	điềm tĩnh
- personality	/'pɜ:·sə'næl·i·tɪ/ (n):	tính cách, cá tính
- prepare	/'prɪ'peər/ (v):	chuẩn bị
- racing	/'reɪ.sɪŋ/ (n):	cuộc đua
- reliable	/'rɪ'laɪ·ə·bəl/ (adj):	đáng tin cậy
- serious	/'sɪr.i.əs/ (adj):	ng nghiêm túc
- shy	/ʃaɪ/ (adj):	bẽn lẽn, hay xấu hổ
- sporty	/'spɔ:r.tɪ/ (adj):	dáng thể thao, khỏe mạnh
- volunteer	/'vɔl·ən'tɪr/ (n):	tình nguyện viên
- zodiac	/'zɔud·i,æk/ (n)	cung hoàng đạo

B. GRAMMAR

I. Động từ “be” và “have” dùng để miêu tả (verb be and have for descriptions)

1. Với động từ “tobe”

a. Cấu trúc

Chúng ta thường sử dụng động từ tobe để miêu tả ngoại hình hoặc tính cách.

Dạng khẳng định			Dạng phủ định		
I	+ am ('m)	+ tính từ	I	+ am not	+ tính từ

We/ you/ they/ danh từ số nhiều	+ are ('re)		We/ you/ they/ danh từ số nhiều	+ are not (aren't)	
She/ he/ it/ danh từ số ít	+ is ('s)		She/ he/ it / danh từ số ít	+ is not (isn't)	
Ví dụ : - I am confident. (I'm confident). (Tôi tự tin). - They are clever. (They're clever). (Họ thông minh). - She is beautiful. (She's beautiful) (Cô ấy xinh đẹp).			Ví dụ : - I am not curious. (I'm not curious) (Tôi không tò mò) - We are not funny. (They aren't funny.) (Họ không khôi hài.) - He is not generous. (= He isn't generous). (Anh ấy không hào phóng)		

Một vài tính từ dùng để miêu tả người phổ biến.

Miêu tả tính cách		Miêu tả ngoại hình	
active hăng hái, năng động	talkative hoạt ngôn, nói nhiều	slim mảnh khảnh	thin gầy
boring buồn tẻ	generous rộng rãi, hào phóng	well-built to lớn, khỏe mạnh	Pretty xinh
confident tự tin, tin tưởng	hard- working chăm chỉ	good-looking ưa nhìn	handsome đẹp trai
curious tò mò, thích tìm hiểu	shy bẽn lẽn, hay xấu hổ	attractive hấp dẫn	Ugly xấu

2. Với động từ “ have”

a. Cấu trúc

Chúng ta thường dùng “ have” để miêu tả ngoại hình.

Dạng khẳng định			Dạng phủ định		
I/ we/ you/ they/ Danh từ số nhiều	+ have	+ a (an) + tính từ + bộ phận cơ thể	I/ we/ you/ They/ Dạng số nhiều	+ don't have	+ (a/an) + tính từ + bộ phận cơ thể
She/ he/ it/ danh từ số ít	+ has		She/ he/ it/ danh từ số ít	+ doesn't have	
Ví dụ : - I have long hair. (Tôi có mái tóc dài) - The cat has green eyes. (Con mèo có đôi mắt màu xanh lá cây).			Ví dụ : - You don't have big eyes. (Cậu không có đôi mắt to.) - He doesn't have broad shoulders. (Anh ấy không có đôi mắt rộng.)		

Dạng nghi vấn				Câu trả lời ngắn		
Do	I/ we/ you/	+ have	+ (a/an) + tính từ + bộ phận cơ	Yes	I/ we/	Do

	they/ danh từ số nhiều		thế?	No	you/ they/ Danh từ số nhiều	don't
Does	She/ he/ it/ danh từ số ít			Yes,	she/ he/ it/ danh từ số ít	Does
				No,		doesn't
Ví dụ : - Do you have even teeth? (cậu có hàm răng đều không?) - Does your father have a round face? (Bố cậu có khuôn mặt tròn không?)				Ví dụ : - Yes, I do/ No, I don't. - Yes, he does./ No, he doesn't.		

* Với câu hỏi wh- question, ta đặt từ(cụm từ) để hỏi lên trên đầu câu. Tuy nhiên, câu trả lời không dùng Yes/ No mà đưa ra câu trả lời trực tiếp.

Ví dụ :

- What colour eyes does he have?

=> He has brown eyes.

- What sort of hair does she have?

=> She has wavy hair.

b. Một vài cụm danh từ phổ biến dùng để miêu tả ngoại hình.

an oval face Khuôn mặt trái xoan	even teeth Hàm răng đều	short spiky hair Đầu đinh	thin lips Đôi môi mỏng
a round face Khuôn mặt tròn	curly hair Mái tóc xoăn	bushy eyebrows Đôi lông mày rậm	small ears Đôi tai nhỏ
a broad nose Mũi to	wavy hair Tóc bồng bênh	fong legs Đôi chân dài	brown eyes Đôi mắt nâu
a narrow nose Mũi nhỏ nhắn	straight hair Tóc thẳng	full lips Đôi môi đầy đặn	small mouth Miệng nhỏ chúm chím

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1 : Điền am/ is/ are/ have/ has vào chỗ trống.

1. They a big nose
2. She thin
3. An elephant.....four legs and a big trunk.
4. His sisters.....beautiful.
5. Sakda.....short hair.
6. I very tall.
7. The rabbits short tails.
8. The elephants.....fat legs.
9. The child rad hair and very white skin.
10. It..... a long neck.
11. The parrots.....green.

Bài 2 : Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. short/ dark/ has/ hair./ Slena Gomez.
2. Tom/ thin/ are/ and Peter/ and tall.
3. They/ have/ don't/ hair./ dark/ short.
4. Short/ sisters/ are/ very/ my.
5. Cristiano/ Ronaldo/ short/ has. hair./ dark
6. are/ babies/ lovely/ the/.

7. She/ long/ curly/ has/ hair.
8. long/ hair/ is/ her/ very/ and/ curly.
9. she/ have/ eyes/ big/ doesn't.
10. long/ straight/ hair/ have/ I.

Bài 3 : Hoàn thành các câu sau với các từ cho sẵn

friendly curly shy well- built lazy
funny tall handsome long intelligent

1. One of my friends has straight hair, and another has wavy hair. But I have hair.
2. My classmate is veryhe loves to tell jokes in class.
3. His grandfather has a....., grey beard.
4. She doesn't like working. She is.....
5. He exercises at the gym three or four days every week. He is very.....
6. I'm not short. I'm
7. My little sister doesn't like to meet new people . She is very.....
8. My mother is very beautiful and my father is
9. Her cousin likes to meet new people and make a lot of friends. He is very.....
10. She has a high IQ. She's very.....

Bài 4 : Sắp xếp các từ sau vào nhóm, một từ có thể vào nhiều nhóm.

black blonde red curly straight
brown short/ long green tall weak talkative
intelligent silly generous quiet friendly
stupid strong fat thin blue

Eyes	Hair	Body	Hair

II. Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn diễn tả tương lai(the present tenses for future)

Trước tiên hãy mở lại trang.....của Unit 1 để cùng nhớ lại cách dùng và cấu trúc câu của thì hiện tại đơn và thì hiện tại tiếp diễn nhé.

Có thể thấy cả hai thì hiện tại đơn và thì hiện tại tiếp diễn đều có thể dùng để diễn tả những hành động , sự việc, trong tương lai. Hãy cùng so sánh sự khác biệt qua bảng dưới đây:

Thì hiện tại đơn	Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn
Nói về lịch làm việc, thời gín biểu..... (chẳng hạn như giao thông công cộng, phim....)	Nói về những hành động đã chuẩn bị kế hoạch sẵn, thường có thời gian cụ thể hoặc một kế hoạch lớn, quan trọng đã quyết định làm, thường có thời gian xác định.
Ví dụ : - What time does the train leave tomorrow? Ngày mai đoàn tàu sẽ khởi hành lúc mấy giờ? - The film starts at 8.15 this evening.	Ví dụ : - What time are you leaving tomorrow? Ngày mai bạn sẽ đi lúc mấy giờ? - I'm going to the cinema this evening. Tối nay tôi sẽ đi xem phim.

Cuốn phim sẽ bắt đầu lúc 8h15 tối nay.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 5 : Chia động từ thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về những dự định, kế hoạch trong tương lai.

1. Sue (come) to see us tomorrow.
2. I (not work) this evening.
3. My friends (travel) to York at the weekend.
4. She (leave) at 3 o'clock .
5. Our grandmother (visit) us at Christmas.
6. He (pick) me up at one o'clock.
7. I (visit) my grandmother next summer.
8. What we (prepare) for dinner?
9. Where you (go) for your vacation.
10. My father (drive) to Manchester on Friday.

Bài 6 : Dựa vào gợi ý trong ngoặc, hãy trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây để nói về kế hoạch vào tuần sau của Ms. Kim. Đừng quên sử dụng cấu trúc câu thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.

1. What is Kim doing on Monday evening? (to meet Tom)
2. What is she doing on Tuesday afternoon? (to look after Carol's kids)
3. What is she doing on Tuesday evening? (play badminton)
4. What is she doing on Wednesday morning? (see the dentist)
5. What is she doing on Wednesday evening? (work late)
6. What is she doing on Thursday afternoon? (pick up Jen from the airport)
7. What is she doing on Friday evening? (go to a concert)
8. What is she doing on Saturday morning? (go on a sight-seeing tour with Jen).
9. What is she doing on Saturday evening? (organise a party)
10. What is she doing on Sunday morning? (take Jen to the airport)

Bài 8: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, viết lại câu ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn.

1. The girls/ play/ tennis/ tomorrow?
2. You/ meet/ your friends/ at the airport/ later?
3. John and Paula / have lunch/ at two o'clock?
4. Lucas/ start/ the project/ today?
5. Camila/ buy/ an ipod/ soon?

Bài 9. Chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất để hoàn thành các câu sau:

1. (Are you doing/ Do you do) anything later? I thought we could go out.

2. The lesson (is beginning/ begins) soon so we need to get back to college.
3. Susan (is meeting/ meets me) for lunch later.
4. The match (is kicking off/ kicks off) at 3.00.
5. What time (is your meeting starting/ does your meeting start) later?
6. I (am visiting/ visit) my Nan next Sunday.
7. I (am finishing/ finish) work early today as I have an appointment at the dentist.
8. I've just phoned the centre and the door (are opening/ open) at 1.00.
9. Sandra (is seeing/ see) Sarah at the railway station tomorrow.
10. The train (is arriving/ arrives) at 10 am tomorrow morning.

Bài 10. Chọn câu trả lời đúng

1. I a letter now
A. write B. am writing C. am writting
2. Jane to bed at 10 o' clock on weekdays.
A. goes B. is going C. go
3. I am in London this summer. I English.
A. learn B. am learning C. learning
4. we our friends next week.
A. are meeting B. meeting C. met
5. My brothers letters every week.
A. writes B. are writing C. write
6. The bus sometimes in the morning .
A. is arriving B. arrive C. arrives
7. James is a student. But he this week.
A. works B. work C. is working
8. Lions in Africa.
A. are living B. live C. is living
9. Our train at 9.25
A. leaves B. leave C. is leaving
10. She to the cinema tonight.
A. is going B. goes C. gos

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 11 : Điền vào chỗ trống are, is, has, have sao cho phù hợp.

There (1) many pupils in my class. Some of them (2) my friends. I (3) two very good friends. Tom and Judy. Tom (4) 11 years old. He (5) red hair. Judy (6) long brown hair. She (7) very pretty. We all (8) bicycles. Tom (9) a computer too. But Judy and I don't (10) one. I love my family very much. My dad (11) very clever. He (12) many books, My mother (13) a doctor. My brother (14) a student in the university and my little brother (15) a baby. He (16) very fat and (17) big blue eyes.

Bài 12: Điền vào chỗ trống các từ “am- is- are- am not- isn't- aren't- have- has” sao cho thích hợp.

1. I _____ a student. I _____ lots of friends. I _____ a popular person at school.
2. My brother _____ very young. He _____ only one year old. He doesn't _____ any hair.
3. The man _____ young. He _____ sixty- seven. He _____ gray hair.
4. We _____ a new car. Our car _____ very old. It _____ black.
5. My mother _____ at home. She _____ at the dentist.
6. She _____ a problem. She _____ a toothache.
7. We _____ ready for the exam. We _____ afraid of it.
8. I _____ lots of clothes. I _____ lucky.
9. The children _____ at the park. They _____ at home.
10. My daughter _____ six years old. She _____ a teenager.
11. We _____ a beautiful garden. It _____ full of flowers.

12. My father _____ at home. Today _____ Monday and he _____ at work.

Bài 13: Chọn từ thích hợp nhất điền vào chỗ trống.

hardworking	clever	honest	kind
reave	independent	generous	quiet

1. My friend Rainia is _____. She is good at learning things.
2. My father is very _____. He has lots of new ideas.
3. My sister Marisa is _____. I'm opposite. I'm very outgoing.
4. My brother Jorge is very _____. He can do everything by himself.
5. I'm not a very _____ person. I hate doing homework.
6. My neighbor is a good person. She has been very _____ to me.
7. I'm an _____ person. I think it is important to tell the truth.
8. My boyfriend is very _____. He is always buying me nice things!

Bài 14: Chia động từ trong ngoặc thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc thì hiện tại tiếp diễn sao cho phù hợp.

1. The train _____ at 9 at night. (arrive)
2. Giovanni _____ to spend the weekend with us. (come)
3. What time _____ you _____ to fireworks competition on Wednesday? (go)
4. What time _____ the film _____? (start)
5. _____ the concert _____ at 7 or 8? (begin)
6. We _____ a dinner party on Friday and we want to invite you. (have)
7. Most shops in Spain _____ until 10 a.m. (open)
8. What time _____ the horse racing _____? (finish)
9. Where _____ you _____ in Bangkok? (stay)
10. My taekwondo class _____ next week. (start)
11. Our flight _____ in London at 4 o'clock in the afternoon. (land)
12. Everything's arranged. We _____ house this Saturday. (move)
13. We _____ at the museum this afternoon at four. (meet)
14. I'm sorry. I can't meet up this weekend. We _____ to Wales. (go)
15. We _____ the gardening at 6 tomorrow morning. (do)
16. This is terrible film Tony! When _____ it _____? (finish)
17. The library _____ in five minutes and I have four books to return. (close)
18. After this lesson, I _____ a friend at McDonald's for a burger and a chat. (see)
19. _____ you _____ your motorbike tonight? I want to borrow it. (use)
20. The plane _____ at 10a.m. (leave)

I. Rewrite the sentences, using *have* or *has* face.

Example: Her face is round. → She has a round face.

1. My hair is black. _____
2. Mrs. Huyen's eyes are round and black. _____
3. His eyes are blue. _____
4. Her cheeks are chubby. _____
5. Miss Huong's face is round. _____
6. Miss Thanh's legs are long. _____

II. Fill in each blank with the correct verb.

1. She _____ an oval face.
2. _____ Mai's hair long or short? - It _____ short.
3. Mai _____ short black hair.
4. He _____ tall and thin.
5. Tan an athlete. He _____ very strong.

6. What _____ those?
7. What color _____ those bikes?
8. What color _____ Nam's eyes?

III. Match the halves of each sentence, and write the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
1. We're leaving		a. homework this afternoon, but then I'm free.
2. Are you cleaning your		b. room this evening?
3. Jenny's coming to		c. to the cinema with Tom tomorrow evening.
4. Martin is going		d. my party on Saturday!
5. I'm doing my		e. for London next Sunday.

IV. Fill in each blank with the correct adjective from the box.

hard-working *boring* *funny* *talkative* *friendly*
shy *creative* *confident* *clever* *kind*

1. It is _____ to sit on the plane with nothing to read.
2. I'm not very _____ at Maths. I often make mistakes in calculations.
3. Everyone is _____ to me. They often help me when I need.
4. She is often _____ at school, and she always gets good marks.
5. The teacher wants the students to feel _____ about asking questions when they don't understand.
6. She always has a _____ smile with everyone.
7. Children are often _____ of people they don't know.
8. He's a little bit _____; he likes to talk a lot.
9. It's a really _____ film; everyone laughs a lot.
10. She's very _____ - she writes poetry and paints.

V. Put the words into the correct order to form the questions, and then write short answers.

1. you/ are/ dinner/ to/ coming/ - no.
Are you coming to dinner? - No, I'm not.
2. playing/ the/ are/ next/ you/ game/ in/ - no.
3. they/ tomorrow/ driving/ to/ London/ are - yes.
4. going/ evening/ to/ is/ cinema/ she/ the/ tomorrow - yes.
5. at/ they/ home/ evening/ this/ are/ eating - no.

VI. Match the questions and answers, and write the answers in the blanks.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. What are you doing on Sunday? | a. Jenny - she's visiting her mum. |
| 2. Are you helping John tomorrow? | b. At the station, I think. |
| 3. What's Sarah doing tomorrow? | c. No, we aren't playing any more matches this month. |
| 4. Where's John meeting us? | d. No, certainly not. He never helps me. |
| 5. Who isn't coming to the party tomorrow? | e. I'm working until lunchtime. |
| 6. Are you playing football next Monday? | f. She's playing in the basketball tournament. |

VII. Complete the text. Use the present simple.

My best friend

My best friend is Hannah. She (1. live) _____ next door to me. We (2. go) _____ to the same school but we are in different classes.

I (3. walk) _____ to school but Hannah (4. go) _____ by bike, because she always (5. get up) _____ late. After school we (6. finish) _____ our homework first, then we (7. listen) _____

_____to our favourite music. I (8. like)_____R&B, but Hannah (9. hate)_____it. She (10. think) _____it's boring. She (11. love)_____rock music.

VIII. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

Lan is a student in grade 6. She is tall and thin. She is light but she is not weak. She has oval face and chubby cheeks. Her hair is long and black. Her nose isn't big. It's small. She has brown eyes and white teeth. She's very nice.

1. Lan has long black hair. _____
2. She is thin and weak. _____
3. Her cheeks are chubby. _____
4. Her nose is big. _____
5. Her eyes are black. _____
6. She has white teeth. _____

IX. Write questions and short answers.

Example: you/ play football/ this afternoon - yes.

A: Are you playing football this afternoon?

B: Yes, I am.

1. she/ cook a meal/ for lunch - no
2. they/ have a holiday/ in August - no
3. you/ play computer games/ tonight - yes.
4. he/ draw pictures about Hoi An/ tomorrow - no.
5. we/ have a campfire/ the weekend - yes.

X. Read the diary and write what Sarah is doing each evening.

Monday	go to volleyball practice
Tuesday	work on Biology project for school with Tom
Wednesday	do a writing course
Thursday	buy Tom's present
Friday	meet Monica
Saturday	go to Tom's party!

On Monday evening, she's going to the volleyball practice.

TEST 1 UNIT 3

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

1. A. girl B. history C. television D. listen
2. A. home B. how C. go D. old
3. A. eat B. brakfast C. read D. teacher
4. A. school B. door C. stool D. room
5. A. sit B. engineer C. thirty D. window

II. Fill in each blank with a suitable verb.

1. What color _____ Nam's eyes?
2. What _____ those?
3. She _____ an oval face.
4. - _____ Mai's hair long or short?
- It _____ short.

5. Ngan_____short black hair.
6. What color_____those bikes?
7. He_____tall and thin.
8. Toan_____an athlete. He_____very strong.

III. Give the correct form of verb at the simple tense and the continuous tense.

1. Sit down! A strange dog..... (run) to you.
2. My mom often..... (buy) meat from the butcher's.
3. My brothers (not/ drink) coffee at the moment.
4. Look! Those people..... (climb) the mountain so fast.
5. That girl (cry) loudly in the party now.
6. These students always (wear) warm clothes in summer.
7. What..... (you/ do) in the kitchen?
8. I never..... (eat) potatoes.
9. The 203 bus (set off) every fifteen minutes.
10. Tonight, we..... (not/go) to our teacher's wedding party.
11. Jane_____ (play) the piano at present.
12. Hurry up! We_____ (wait) for you.

IV. Read the text then give the correct form of verb.

It (0. be) is Sunday evening and my friends and I (1. be) Jane's birthday party. Jane (2. wear) a beautiful long dress and (3. stand) next to her boyfriend. Some guests (4. drink) wine or beer in the corner of the room. Some of her relatives (5. dance) in the middle of the room. Most people (6. sit) on chairs, (7. enjoy) foods and (8. chat) with one another. We often (9. go) to our friends' birthday parties. We always (10. dress) well and (11. travel)..... by taxi. Parties never (12. make)..... us bored because we like.

V. Read the passage carefully.

Nga is a good pupil. She is eleven. She is in grade 6. Every day, she gets up at six o'clock. After getting up, she washes her face, brushes her teeth. Then, she has breakfast with her family (her father, her mother and her brother). Her father is a doctor. He is forty- two years old. Her mother is a nurse. She is thirty- nine. Tam is her brother. He is a student. Nga goes to school after she gets dressed at 6.30. Her school is big. It has third floor and her classroom is on the second floor.

A. Choose True (T) or False (F)

Statements	True (T)	False (F)
1. Nga's father is a doctor.		
2. Nga goes to school at 6 o'clock.		
3. Her mother is a teacher.		
4. Tam is a student.		

B. Answer the questions.

1. Which grade is Nga in?
.....
2. What time does she get up?
.....
3. Is her school big?
.....
4. Where is her classroom?

.....
VI. Read the text carefully then answer the following questions.

Loan is twelve years old. She is in grade 6. She lives in a house in the city with her mother, father and sister. Their house is next to a bookstore. In the neighborhood, there is a restaurant, a market and a stadium. Loan's father works in the restaurant. Her mother works in the market. Loan goes to school at six fifteen in the morning. She has classes from six forty-five to eleven.

1. How many people are there in Loan's family?

→.....

2. What is next to her house?

→.....

3. What time do her classes start?

→.....

4. What time do you go to school everyday?

→.....

VII. Read the passage, then answer the questions.

Trung is a pupil in class 7A. His full name is Pham Quoc Trung. He is 13 years old now, but he will be 14 on his next birthday. Trung lives with his parents at 2/34 Nguyen Trai Street. Trung's house isn't large but it's very comfortable. It has a bright living room, two lovely bedrooms and a large, modern bathroom and kitchen. There is a small yard in front of his house. Trung's mother grows flowers in the yard. According to Trung, his house is the nicest house.

1. What does Trung do?

.....

2. What class is he in?

.....

3. What's his family name?

.....

4. What's his address?

.....

5. Is Trung's house big?

.....

6. How many rooms are there in his house?

.....

7. Is there a yard in front of his house?

.....

8. Are there any flowers in the yard?

.....

VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first.

Ex: *There are twenty classes in our school*

→ ***Our school has twenty classes.***

1. Our school has forty-two classrooms.

There

2. The bakery is to the left of my house.

→My house

3. Huyen walks to school every afternoon.

→Huyen goes

4. Does your class have forty students?

→Are?

IX. Write the correct sentences using the cue words.

1. He/ often/ have/ breakfast/ late.
.....
2. You/ do/ the housework/ at the moment?
.....
3. I/ not/ go/ to school/ on weekends.
.....
4. John's girlfriend/ wear/ a red T-shirt/ now.
.....
5. They/ like/ beer or wine?
.....
6. What/ he/ usually/ do/ at night?
.....
7. The teacher/ never/ lose/ his temper.
.....
8. Why/ you/ listen/ to music/ loudly now?
.....

TEST 2 (UNIT 3)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------|-------------|
| 1. A. kind | B. confident | C. nice | D. like |
| 2. A. request | B. project | C. neck | D. exciting |
| 3. A. foot | B. book | C. food | D. look |
| 4. A. finger | B. leg | C. neck | D. elbow |
| 5. A. creative | B. think | C. idea | D. big |

II. Choose the correct answers.

6. Can you _____ me the apple, please?
A. move B. pass C. have D. turn
7. Mai is _____ the phone, chatting _____ friends.
A. on - to B. on - on C. to - with D. to - to
8. She is always _____ at school, and helps other students with their homework.
A. hard B. hardly C. hard-working D. work hard
9. Diana is in the art club. She likes painting pictures, and everyone enjoys them. She is very _____.
A. shy B. kind C. funny D. creative
10. The film is very _____, and we can't see all of it.
A. exciting B. boring C. wonderful D. easy
11. Our class is going to _____ a picnic at the zoo on Saturday. Would you like to come with us?
A. have B. take C. pass D. go
12. It's _____ to go home. It's so late.
A. now B. sure C. time D. like
13. Please turn _____ the lights. The room is so dark.
A. with B. at C. in D. on
14. Can you _____ the tables and chairs _____ the next room? There are some more students.
A. move - to B. take - in C. move - in D. take - on
15. Daisy is very _____ to take the test. She is a very good student.
A. kind B. confident C. friendly D. talkative
16. I like reading "Muc Tim" very much. It's my _____ magazine.
A. nice B. quick C. funny D. favourite
17. My close friend, Mai, has a _____ face and _____ hair.

- A. big - black B. small - short C. round - black D. short - long**
18. My best friend is kind and _____. He often makes me laugh.
- A. funny B. nice C. shy D. boring**
19. My brother has _____ short _____ hair.
- A. a - straight B. Ø - long C. Ø - curly D. a - black**
20. On Sunday Nam _____ his parents in the field as usual.
- A. helps B. help C. is helping D. helping**
21. On Saturday Tom's parents _____ him _____ London to see the new film.
- A. are taking - to B. taking - to C. are going - to D. are going - in**
22. Next summer I am working as a _____ teacher in a village near Hoa Binh City.
- A. good B. nice C. favourite D. volunteer**
23. The Summer Camp is for students _____ between 10 and 15.
- A. age B. aged C. aging D. ages**
24. We are visiting a milk farm to see _____ they _____ milk, cheese, and butter.
- A. why - do B. Ø - do C. how - make D. how - do**
25. Linda has _____ hair an big _____ eyes.
- A. blonde - small B. a black - blue C. blonde - blue D. black - long**

III. Read the text about Alice and correct the sentences.

This is Alice. She's English and she's from London. She's thirteen years old. She has fair hair and brown eyes. She has a small nose. Her favourite colours are red, white and blue.

26. Alice is French. _____
27. She's from Manchester. _____
28. She's 14. _____
29. She has black hair and brown eyes. _____
30. Her favourite colours are red, white and yellow. _____

V. Write questions for the underlined part.

41. They are visiting a milk farm on Saturday.
-
42. I'm going to the judo club with my brother.
-
43. I'm not going to your party because I visit my grandparents.
-
44. We're working on our school project.
-
45. She understands things very quickly and easily.

VI. Complete the text with the words in the box.

she's	fair	long	athlete	British
arms	plays	eyes	swimmer	legs

Vicky Gates is a professional football player. She has (46) _____, (47) _____ hair and blues eyes. She has long legs and very strong (48) _____. Vicky is American.

Anita Mather is a professional sportswoman. She (49) _____ basketball. She has very long (50) _____ and (51) _____ very tall.

Joana Smith is an international (52) _____. She has short, fair hair and green eyes. She's short but she has very big shoulders. She's (53) _____.

Jo Kelly is an (54) _____. She has long, dark hair and blue (55) _____. She has very long legs. Jo is from Nigeria.

TEST 3 UNIT 3

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

1. a. please b. read c. head d. teacher
2. a. ears b. eyes c. hands d. cheeks
3. a. funny b. curious c. chubby d. lunch
4. a. confident b. kind c. nice d. reliabe
5. a. shy b. pretty c. curly d. pony

II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. My kids spend hours chatting_____ the phone_____their friends.
a. at - with b. on - to c.to - with d. in - about
2. Could you turn the television_____? I want to watch the news.
a. on b. off c.down d. up
3. My best friend_____a round face and big eyes.
a. have b. has c.is d. gets
4. My brother is really_____. He always does his homework.
a. hard-working b. serious c.confident d. patient
5. When eating, most Vietnamese people hold chopsticks in their right_____.
a. arm b. leg c. finger d. hand
6. Which do you prefer, straight hair or _____hair?
a. long b. blonde c. curly d. thick
7. The kids are _____their tricycles around the playground.
a. playing b. riding c. taking d. driving
8. Norman is very shy, but his brother is_____.
a. easygoing b. calm c.patient d. outgoing
9. _____explain this grammar for me, please? ~ Sure.
a. Can you b. Could you please c. Would you like d. Would you mind
10. Would you like to come for dinner tonight? - _____
a. Yes, certainly. b. I'd love to. Thanks. c. Not at all. d. No, thanks.

III.Fill in each blank to find names of parts of the body.

y	n_s_	m__th	e_r
		h__d	_h_e_s
t__t_	_ac_	_lb_w	_e_
		n__k	b_c_
_a_d	f_n_e		
_o_s	_n_e		

IV. Complete the sentences with the words in part I.

1. You use your_____to see.

2. You use your _____ to hear.
3. You use your _____ to talk, smile and eat.
4. You have one _____ in the middle of your face. You use it to smell.
5. Your hair, eyes, nose, mouth and ears are on your _____.
6. You have two _____. You use them to walk.
7. You have two _____. They have your hands at the end.
8. You have five _____ on each hand and five _____ on each foot.
9. If your _____ hurt, you should go to dentist.
10. Put a scarf around your _____ when it's cold.

V. Rewrite the sentences, use with verb *have* or *has*.

Ex: My hair is short and curly.

→ I have short curly hair.

1. His face is round. → _____
2. My teeth are small and even. → _____
3. Her nose is straight. → _____
4. Their eyes are dark brown. → _____
5. Our hair is curly and black. → _____
6. Julia's mouth is very wide. → _____

VI. Rewrite the sentences, use with verb *be* (*am*, *is* *are*).

Ex: She has blue eyes.

→ Her eyes are blue.

1. Isabel has rosy cheeks. → _____
2. I have long blonde hair. → _____
3. He has a thin face. → _____
4. They have dark skin. → _____
5. Her dog has a short tail. → _____
6. My sister has long legs. → _____

VII.

Use *am*, *is*, *are*, *have* or *has* to complete the sentences.

1. I _____ tail and thin. I _____ brown eyes and dark hair. I _____ serious and friendly.
2. My father _____ a very hard-working person. He _____ tail and rather fat. He _____ a round face and a cheerful smile. He _____ a moustache. His hair _____ short and curly.
3. My sister _____ beautiful. She _____ slim and tall. She _____ rosy cheeks and blue _____ eyes. She _____ blonde wavy hair. Her nose _____ straight and her teeth white and even. She _____ very funny and intelligent.
4. My twin brothers _____ quite short. They _____ short brown hair. Their eyes _____ dark and they _____ glasses. My brothers _____ very active and cheerful.

VIII. Match the adjectives on the left with their opposites on the right.

- | | |
|-----------------------|----------------|
| _____ 1. generous | a. rude |
| _____ 2. hard-working | b. interesting |
| _____ 3. outgoing | c. dishonest |
| _____ 4. intelligent | d. unfriendly |
| _____ 5. serious | e. mean |
| _____ 6. polite | f. lazy |
| _____ 7. friendly | g. impatient |
| _____ 8. kind | h. stupid |
| _____ 9. careful | i. cruel |
| _____ 10. honest | j. careless |
| _____ 11. patient | k. shy |
| _____ 12. boring | l. funny |

IX. Complete the sentences with the correct adjectives from the box.

sporty	confident	curious	cheerful	generous
shy	reliable	talkative	sensitive	outgoing

1. Don't say unkind things to her – she's very _____.
2. Tom is very _____. He gives money to charity every month.
3. William never stops talking in class. He's very _____.
4. The new girl in my class is so _____. She's afraid to talk in front of us.
5. You can trust Miller with a secret. He's a _____ man.
6. Harry loves partying, meeting people and talking to them. He's so _____.
7. Ann is such a _____ girl. She is always laughing and smiling.
8. Jim is always sure of his own abilities. He's so _____.
9. My best friend Matt is really _____. He plays badminton, basketball and football very well.
10. My sister is very _____. She wants to know everything!

X. Read and circle the right adjectives.

1. Donata is very *friendly/ rude*. She has a lot of friends.
2. Mona is very *reliable/ creative*. She always has new ideas.
3. Ann is a bit *interesting/ boring*. She never has anything interesting to say.
4. Jully is very *funny/ shy*. She likes telling jokes.
5. Anna is very *serious/sensitive*. She cries quickly whenever she watches a romance movie.
6. Lucy is very *outgoing/ generous*. She likes meeting and talking to people.
7. Joana is very *hard-working/ lazy*. She never helps with the housework.
8. Jane is very *nervous/ impatient*. She becomes annoyed if she has to wait for something or someone.
9. Mathew is very *active/ helpful*. He likes to play sport or do physical things.
10. Helen is a *quiet/ curious* person. She isn't very talkative.

XI. Circle the correct form of the verb to complete each sentence.

1. The train *arrives/ is arriving* at 4 o'clock in the afternoon.
2. My mother *comes/ is coming* to spend the weekend with us.
3. When do you *take/ are you taking* your holiday this summer?
4. What time *does the film start/ is the film starting*?
5. Most shops in Spain *don't open/ aren't opening* until 10.
6. I *finish/ am finishing* work early today as I have an appointment at the dentist
7. The school *finishes/ is finishing* at three thirty in the afternoon.
8. I can't see you tonight, Jane. I *go/ am going* to the theater with Mike.
9. Quickly children! Class *starts/ is starting* in five minutes.
10. We *fly/ are flying* to Spain on a school trip next month.

XII. Fill in each blank with a correct preposition.

1. _____ Saturday, I help my parents _____ the field.
2. They are working _____ a milk farm tomorrow.
3. The camp is for kids aged _____ ten and fifteen.
4. Would you like to go to the movies with me _____ Sunday evening?
5. The children are spending a week _____ a summer camp.
6. Nikita likes to read books _____ English.
7. He never takes part _____ team sports.
8. Joana is _____ the phone, chatting _____ her friend.

XIII. Underline the correct form.

1. We *stay/ are staying* in a lovely hotel near a beach.
2. My Dad *reads/ is reading* two books every week.
3. *Do you know/ Are you knowing* my friend Cindy?

4. I *see/ am seeing* the head teacher after class.
5. What *do you do/ are you doing* tomorrow afternoon?
6. Our flight *lands/ is landing* in New York at a quarter to nine.
7. Wait a minute, she *speaks/ is speaking* to someone on her mobile.
8. A lot of people *speak/ are speaking* Spanish in the USA.
9. He *takes/ is taking* Sally out for dinner tonight.
10. Jaime usually *eats/ is eating* cold cereal for breakfast, but today he *eats/ is eating* oatmeal instead.
11. We *go/ are going* to Spain for our next holiday.
12. The restaurant *opens/ is opening* at 19.30 tonight.

XIV. Choose the word which best fits each gap.

Wickedly Wonderful is a small summer (1)_____in the UK for children aged 6 to 13 years old. The children (2)_____a week outdoors at the camp, making new friends and learning new activities (3) _____ having a lot of fun. (4)_____the summer camp, they sail, horse ride, kayak, enjoy games on the beach and the beach (5)_____, swim, surf, go crabbing and ride bikes. Children will enjoy holidays with Wickedly Wonderful, and (6)_____are holidays that they will remember forever!

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. a. term | b.course | c.camp | d. holiday |
| 2. a. take | b.spend | c.use | d. pass |
| 3. a. which | b.what | c.where | d. while |
| 4. a. At | b. In | c.On | d. During |
| 5. a. firingcamp | b. campfire | c.firecamp | d.firingcamp |
| 6. a. this | b.that | c.these | d. those |

XV. Read the passage and answer the questions.

Hi, my name's Mai. And this is a picture of me and my friend Vy. Vy is the girl who has a bow in her hair. She is a pretty girl with dimpled cheeks. She and I first met at primary school and we became great friends. She is kind, jolly and helpful. We are classmates again this year and we go to school together each morning.

Vy likes to joke and play games. She lives near my house. In the evenings, we usually meet at my house. We sit in the garden and read story books. Vy is good at Mathematics. So, she often helps me with my Mathematics homework. At the moment, Vy and I are doing our English project in my room. We both like English. This Sunday morning we are going to our school English club.

I hope Vy and I will be in the same class again next year. I like her very much and she is my best friend.

1. Who is the girl on the right of the picture?
2. Are Mai and Vy in different classes now?
3. Where did they first meet?
4. What is Vy like?
5. What does Vy like?
6. What do Vy and Mai usually do in the evenings?
7. Where are they now?
8. What are they doing this Sunday morning?

XVI. Read the passage and do the tasks below

My name's Quan. One of my best friends is Phong. He is my classmate and we always go to school together.

Phong is twelve. He's tall and rather thin. He has short curly black hair and brown eyes. Phong is funny and outgoing. I like being with him because he always makes me laugh. He is also very sporty and plays football and basketball very well. We often play basketball and football at the weekend. He loves music and he plays the guitar. I don't play any instruments but I love music too. Phong doesn't like computer games. He likes playing with his friends in the street.

Phong is a very good student. His favourite subject is Maths. He's not good at Science but he studies hard to pass it.

A. Tick (✓) True or False.

	True	False
1. Quan and Phong are studying in the same class.	☐	☐
2. Phong is tall and not fat.	☐	☐
3. Phong's hair is straight and black.	☐	☐
4. Phong likes playing sport.	☐	☐
5. Quan likes to play the guitar.	☐	☐
6. Phong likes Science most.	☐	☐

B. Choose the correct answers.

- How old is Phong?
 - 9
 - 10
 - 11
 - 12
- What does Phong look like?
 - He is tall and thin.
 - He is tall and fat.
 - He is funny and outgoing.
 - He likes to play the guitar.
- Phong has_____.
 - long black hair and brown eyes
 - curly black hair and brown eyes
 - black eyes and short hair
 - brown eyes and straight black hair
- What is he like?
 - He is tall and thin
 - He likes sports.
 - He is funny and outgoing.
 - His hair is short and curly.
- What instrument does Phong play?
 - football and basketball
 - the guitar
 - computer games
 - Maths and Science
- What subject is Phong very good at?
 - Maths
 - Science
 - Maths and Science
 - Computer

XVII. Order the words to make sentences.

1. going/ on/ we/ to/ the shopping mall/ Saturday/ are.
2. me/ please/ can/ dictionary/ lend/ you/ a?
3. like/ join/ for/ would/ us/ dinner/ you/ tonight/ to?
4. at/ I/ spending/ week/ a/ camp/ am/ a/ summer.
5. mother/ black/ hair/ straight/ has/ my/ long.
6. friendly/ because/ don't/ I/ Joana/ she/ like/ isn't.

TEST YOURSELF 1

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. come B. month C. mother D. open
2. A. hope B. homework C. one D. post
3. A. brother B. judo C. going D. rode
4. A. cities B. watches C. dishes D. houses

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------|-----------|-------------|
| 5. A. grandparents | B. brothers | C. uncles | D. fathers |
| 6. A. books | B. walls | C. rooms | D. pillows |
| 7. A. finger | B. leg | C. neck | D. elbow |
| 8. A. writes | B. makes | C. takes | D. drives |
| 9. A. request | B. project | C. neck | D. exciting |
| 10. A. Thursday | B. thanks | C. these | D. birthday |

II. Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D).

- There are two lights_____the ceiling.
A. in B. at C. on D. between
- There_____four chairs and a table_____the middle of the room.
A. are – in B. are – at C. is – on D. is – in
- They are moving_____a new apartment_____the city centre soon.
A. at – at B. from – in C. to – in D. to – from
- There are some dirty dishes_____the floor.
A. on B. with C. in D. for
- My bedroom is_____the bathroom.
A. under B. in C. on D. next to
- There aren't any pillows_____the bed.
A. from B. on C. behind D. in front of
- Can you_____me the book, please?
A. move B. pass C. have D. turn
- Nga is_____the phone, chatting_____friends.
A. on – to B. on – on C. to – with D. to – to
- My best friend is kind and_____. He often makes me laugh.
A. funny B. nice C. shy D. boring
- The film is very_____and we can't see all of it.
A. Wonderful B. easy C. exciting D. boring
- The summer camp is for students_____between 10 and 15.
A. age B. aged C. aging D. ages
- Mary has_____hair and big_____eyes.
A. blonde, small B. a black, blue C. blonde, blue D. black, long
- Next summer, I am working as a_____teacher in a village near Hoa Binh city.
A. volunteer B. nice C. good D. favourite
- She is always_____at school and helps other students with their homework.
A. hard B. hardly C. hard-working D. work hard
- Our class is going to_____a picnic at the zoo on Saturday. Would you like to come with us?
A. have B. take C. pass D. go
- It's_____to go home. It's so late.
A. now B. sure C. time D. like
- Please turn_____the lights. The room is so dark.
A. in B. on C. off D. at
- At break time, I go to the library and_____books.
A. go B. read C. play D. listen
- Listen! Someone_____at the door.
A. knock B. knocks C. is knocking D. are knocking
- Nam_____football now. He's tired.
A. doesn't play B. plays C. is playing D. isn't playing
- We are excited_____the first day of school.

- A. at B. with C. about D. in
22. My parents often help me _____ my homework.
A. at B. with C. about D. in
23. I am having a math lesson but I forgot my _____. I have some difficulties.
A. calculator B. bike C. pencil case D. pencil sharpener
24. In the afternoon, students _____ many interesting clubs.
A. join B. do C. play D. read
25. School _____ at 4.30 p.m every day.
A. finish B. finishes C. go D. have

III. Complete the sentences with the *Present simple* or the *Present continuous* form of the verbs.

- They often (visit) _____ their parents in the holidays.
- We (speak) _____ French at the moment.
- I (watch) _____ TV about 3 hours a day.
- My family usually (go) _____ to the movies on Sunday.
- Look at the girl! She (ride) _____ a horse.
- We (play) _____ tennis now.
- Minh sometimes (practise) _____ the guitar in his room.
- _____ you (like) _____ chocolate ice cream?
- I really (like) _____ cooking.
- Hung can't answer the phone because he (take) _____ a shower.

IV. Fill in each blank with a suitable verb.

- She _____ an oval face.
- _____ Mai's hair long or short?
- It _____ short.
- He _____ tall and thin.
- Toan _____ an athlete. He _____ very strong.
- Ngan _____ short black hair.
- What color _____ those bikes?
- What color _____ Nam's eyes?
- What _____ those?

V. Complete the passage with a suitable preposition.

We have English lessons (1) _____ Room 12. There are 24 tables for students and one desk for the teacher. (2) _____ the walls, there are a dots of posters of England. There's a cupboard at the front of the room and (3) _____ the cupboard, there is a TV and DVD player. Sometimes we watch films. There are some bookshelves (4) _____ the classroom. _____ the shelves, there are a lot of English books. Our books are (6) _____ the teacher's desk. He wants to look at our homework. Our school bags are (7) _____ the floor, and there is some food (8) _____ the school bags. It's now 5.30 pm. We are (9) _____ home, but our teacher is (10) _____ school. He often stays late to prepare for tomorrow's lessons.

VI. Reorder the words and write the meaning sentences.

- city / beautiful / a / Ho Chi Minh / is.
.....
- green fields / there / are.
.....
- dog / it's / friendly / a.
.....
- student / Minh / new / a/ is.
.....

5. television / big / a / there's.

.....

6. new / four / there / cars / are.

.....

7. are / two / pizzas / there / big.

.....

8. ten / are / desks / small / there.

.....

TEST YOURSELF 1

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|-----------|----------|
| 1.A. project | B. leg | C. evening | D. neck | |
| 2.A. judo | B. elbow | C. nose | D. blond | |
| 3.A. gets | B. brings | C. takes | D. stops | |
| 4.A. mouth | B. house | C. country | D. about | |
| 5. | A. with | B. mouth | C. thanks | D. three |

II. Put the plural nouns from the box into the correct column based on the pronunciation of the final s/es.

<i>classes</i>	<i>boards</i>	<i>books</i>	<i>couches</i>	<i>telephones</i>
<i>parents</i>	<i>students</i>	<i>engineers</i>	<i>baskets</i>	<i>doors</i>
<i>lamps</i>	<i>benches</i>	<i>desks</i>	<i>bookcases</i>	<i>erasers</i>
<i>armchairs</i>	<i>tables</i>	<i>teachers</i>	<i>years</i>	<i>windows</i>

/s/	/z/	/iz/
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		

III. Find which word does not belong in each group. Then read the words aloud.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1.A. fridge | B. cooker | C. microwave | D. sofa |
| 2.A. family | B. teacher | C. engineer | D. doctor |
| 3.A. his | B. her | C. you | D. your |
| 4.A. classrooms | B. students | C. teachers | D. streets |
| 5.A. television | B. Internet | C. telephone | D. city |
| 6.A. father | B. mother | C. brother | D. student |
| 7.A. Hello | B. Hi | C. Good night | D. Good afternoon |
| 8.A. Bye | B. Goodbye | C. Good night | D. Good afternoon |
| 9.A. chair | B. apartment | C. villa | D. house |
| 10.A. confident | B. sport | C. hard-working | D. creative |

IV. Write the school things.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. s _ a _ _ e _ e r | 2. r _ _ _ _ | 3. _ _ m _ _ _ s | 4. _ i _ _ _ l e |
| 5. n _ _ e _ _ _ _ | 6. d _ _ _ | 7. _ _ _ c _ _ _ _ _ r | 8. t _ _ _ _ o _ _ |

V. Complete the sentences with the words given in the box.

<i>buy souvenirs</i>	<i>go camping</i>	<i>go to a disco</i>	<i>swim</i>
<i>have an ice cream</i>	<i>play games</i>	<i>take photos</i>	<i>do</i>

- When we _____ we sleep in a tent.
- Do you want to _____ and dance?
- Can he _____ with his new camera?

4. It's hot! I want to _____ in the sea.
5. Would you like to _____? The chocolate ones are good.
6. You can _____ a treasure hunt at our summer camp.
7. I sometimes _____ like table tennis.
8. You can _____ at the shop in the town.

VI. Underline the correct words.

1. In the morning I *get up/ go to bed* at 6 am.
2. At 6.30 I have *lunch/ breakfast* with Mum and Dad.
3. I *go to/ finish* school at 6.45.
4. After school, I *make/ do* my homework.
5. Sometimes I *play/ have* computer games or go online.
6. I often *listen to/ watch* music in the evening.
7. On Saturday, I *have/ go out* with my friends.

VII. Complete the sentences with the verbs in the present simple.

start not watch have not have speak not do

1. You _____ a nice dog.
2. I _____ any brothers or sisters, but I have five cousins.
3. We _____ TV in the summer, but we play games in the park.
4. _____ homework on Sunday evenings.
6. We _____ Vietnamese.
7. They _____ school at 7 o'clock.

VIII. Underline the correct words.

1. My brother *walk/ walks* to school with his friends.
2. Sue *don't/doesn't* like football.
3. *Do/ Does* he speak French?
4. Our teacher *give/ gives* us homework every day.
5. She *go/ goes* to school in London.
6. My mum and dad *don't/ doesn't* work on Saturdays.
7. There *is/ are* two English girls in my school.
8. *Is/ Are* there a good film on tonight?
9. There *is/ are* a lot of chairs in the classroom.
10. *Is/ Are* there chairs in your room?

IX. Arrange the words to make correct sentences.

1. books/ are/ on/ there/ bookshelf/ many/ the.
2. many/ there/ how/ in/ are/ books/ school bag/ your?
3. television/ the/ there/ a/ living room/ in/ is.
4. forty-five/ class/ students/ there/ my/ are/ in.
5. living room/ tables/ in/ there/ the/ are/ two.
6. many/ there/ in/ how/ are/ the/ doors/ classroom?

X. Complete the questions with the verbs in the present simple.

1. When _____ they (finish) _____ school?
2. What subjects _____ you (study) _____?

3. What sports_____they (do)_____at school?
4. _____you (like)_____Maths?
5. Where_____they (live)_____?
5. Who_____you (sit)_____next to at school?

XI. Read the letter from George. Choose the correct answer: A, B or C.

Dear Sergio,

How (1)_____you? (2)_____you want to know about a typical day at my school? I always (3)_____to school with my brother and my friend Steve. School starts at 7 o'clock. (4)_____the morning, we have five lessons, usually different subject. Then we have lunch. I (5)_____have lunch at school, often I go home. In the afternoon, there (6)_two lessons. My favourite subject is Geography. After school, we often play football. What about you?

Bye for now,

George

- | | | |
|------------|----------|------------|
| 1.A. do | B. go | C. are |
| 2.A. Does | B. Do | C. Are |
| 3.A. walk | B. walks | C. walking |
| 4.A. On | B. In | C. At |
| 5.A. don't | B. not | C. doesn't |
| 6.A. have | B. is | C. are |

XII. Underline the correct words.

1. This week, he is *learning*/ *learns* how to speak in public.
2. In the summer, I *am swimming*/ *swim* at the swimming pool.
3. What *is she doing*/ *does she do* at the moment?
4. I can't talk now. I *am having*/ *have* dinner.
5. *Are you watching*/ *Do you watch* TV right now?
6. We *are staying*/ *stay* at the beach every summer.

XIII. Match the questions in column A with the answers in column B.

Answer	A	B
	1. What are those? 2. Where's your house? 3. Where does he live? 4. What time does she get up? 5. When do classes start? 6. How does she go to work? 7. Does she live in town? 8. Is it noisy in town? 9. Does Nam walk to school? 10. Are there any stores opposite your house?	a. He lives in town. b. By motorbike. c. No, she lives in the country. d. It's on Nguyen Trai Street. e. Yes, there are. h. At six in the morning. g. They're video game rooms. h. Yes, it is. i. No, he goes to school by bike. j. At 7 in the morning.

XIV. Match the questions and answers, and write the in each blank. Then answer practise the short exchanges.

Answer

A

1. What are you reading?
2. How many books do you read a month?
3. Are you wearing your new jeans?
4. Do you often wear jeans?
5. How many hours a day do you watch TV?
6. What are you watching at the moment?

B

- a. No, they're my old jeans
- b. About two or three hours.
- c. Yes, most of the time.
- d. It's a film about London.
- e. No, that's his sister.
- f. The Lord of the Rings.

7. Is Ben playing the piano?

g. Yes, she always plays from 4 until 5.

8. Does she usually play in the afternoon?

h. One or two.

XV. There is ONE mistake in each sentence, find and correct it.

1. What time she start work?

2. Nam live in a house in the country.

3. Are there a flower garden behind the house?

4. There is the supermarket near my house.

5. How many floors does your school there have?

6. There is an temple old near our house.

7. How does Mr. Dong travels to work?

8. After dinner, she do her homework.

9. She goes to school by a bus.

10. These people live on the Nguyen Trai Street.

XVI. Complete each sentence so that it means the same as the sentence above.

1. My sister goes to school on foot.

My sister _____ .

2. The garden is behind Lan's house.

There is _____ .

3. The bank is not far from the post office.

The bank is _____

4. There are many flowers in our garden.

Our garden _____ .

5. Ba lives in town.

Ba doesn't _____ .

XVII. Rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1. near/ house/ is/ your/ there/ post office/ a?

2. school/ go/ your/ do/ to/ how/ students/ country/ in?

3. go/ by/ to/ they/ bicycle/ school.

4. work/ to/ city/ your/ in/ how/ people/ do/ travel?

5. motorbike/ by/ people/ travel/ work/ to.

6. there/ post office/ front/ your school/ in/ is/ of/ a?

7. Hoa/ country/ her parents/ lives/ in/ with/ the.

8. There/ beautiful garden/ left/ Ba's house/ a/ to/ is/ the/ of.

TEST YOURSELF 1

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

1. a. lamps b. desks c. lights d. legs
2. a. brother b. nose c. sofa d. poster
3. a. careful b. class c. city d. cupboard
4. a. kitchen b. children c. chat d. choir
5. a. subject b. music c. study d. lunch

II. Choose the correct answers a, b, c, or d.

1. The boy is sitting_____the computer. He is playing computer games.
a. under b. next to c. behind d. in front of
2. The school year in Viet Nam starts_____September 5th.
a. in b. on c. at d. since
3. Students live and study in a_____school. They only go home at weekends.
a. secondary b. international c. boarding d. private
4. My best friend is very _____. He plays football and basketball very well.
a. friendly b. sporty c. lovely d. funny
5. Jane is healthy because she does _____ every day.
a. football b. yoga c. basketball d. badminton
6. _____ There are so many new words in the passage. Can I use a_____to help me?
a. calculator b. ruler c. dictionary d. notebook
7. _____are your friends coming for the party tonight? ~ About 7 o'clock.
a. What b. Where c. What time d. How often
8. 'What are you doing this Saturday?'
'I'm_____camping with some friends.'
a. having b. going c. doing d. playing
9. 'How is your first day at school?'
a. By bicycle. b. Five days a week. c. That sounds great. d. Really exciting.
10. 'Would you like to go for a drink?' '_____
a. Oh sorry, I can't. b. No, I wouldn't. c. Not at all. d. My pleasure.

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense form.

1. Mark and Sam_____ (train) for the football game next week.
2. Where is Mai? ~ She_____ (skip) with her friends in the schoolyard.
3. _____ (you/ play) football after school?
4. There_____ (be) a bed, a bookcase, a table and two chairs in my room.
5. She_____ (not have) a pretty face, but she_____ (have) beautiful blue eyes.
6. _____ (Tom/ ride) his bike to school tomorrow morning?

IV. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Ella is very _____ and gets along well with everyone. (friend)
2. Please be _____ with those vases. Don't break them. (care)
3. Alisa is so _____. She talks too much in class, (talk)
4. We had a lot of _____ at Sandra's party. (funny)
5. Keep yourself _____ by eating well and exercising regularly. , (health)
6. We are going to Han River to watch fireworks _____. (compete)

V. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find and correct it.

1. I live in a apartment on Nguyen Trai Street. _____

2. Listen! Someone knocks at the door.
3. What do you doing tomorrow?
4. There is some new furnitures in the living room.
5. My mother have short curly hair and big blue eyes.
6. Would you like going to the movies tonight?

VI. Match sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| _____ 1. Where does your brother live? | a. Oh I'd love to! |
| _____ 2. What does he look like? | b. He's a bit boring. He really doesn't like anything. |
| _____ 3. What's he like? | c. No, thanks. I'm full. |
| _____ 4. What does he like? | d. Orange Juice, please. |
| _____ 5. Would you like something to eat? | e. He's shortish with dark brown hair. |
| _____ 6. Would you like to have dinner with me on Friday? | f. Yes, sure. |
| _____ 7. Can you pass me that book, please? | g. In Da Nang. |
| _____ 8. What would you like to drink? | h. He's friendly and easy-going. |

VII. Choose the word which best fits each gap.

From: huy@gmail.com

To: harrysmith@gmail.com

Subject: Hi friend!

Hi Harry,

Nice to meet you! My name is Huy and I am fifteen years old. I live in Ho Chi Minh City with my parents, my little sister Hanh and a bull dog Rocky. We live in a house on Hung Vuong Street. My house (1) _____ three bedrooms and a small garden.

I live (2) _____ my school so I walk to school every day. I like my school and my favorite subjects are Math and Science. I also like to work with computers. What about you? What subject do you like (3) _____ school?

My best friends are Nam and Quan and we are in the (4) _____ class. After school I often go to the school canteen with my friends. The canteen has got wi-fi so we can chat (5) _____ while eating or drinking and then usually we go home and do our homework. At the weekend, I play sports with my friends. We play football and basketball and sometimes we go (6) _____.

Write soon and tell me about yourself, your friends and your family.

Best wishes,

Huy

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|----------------|
| 1. a. have | b. has | c. is | d. are |
| 2. a. next | b. in front | c. near | d. far from |
| 3. a. at | b. on | c. in | d. for |
| 4. a. any | b. very | c. some | d. same |
| 5. a. offline | b. online | c. inline | d. outline |
| 6. a. swim | b. to swim | c. swimming | d. to swimming |

VIII. Read the text and write True (T) or False (F).

FIRST YEAR CAMP July 2nd - July 8th for 5th - 6th Graders

We have designed a camp for rising 5th and 6th Graders. It's not only great fun, but a great way to meet new friends! The week is very busy with arts, crafts, music, swimming, hiking, games, adventure, worship and LOTS of fun!

ROCK CLIMBING CAMP July 9th - July 16th Minimum age 13

This week will focus primarily on learning how to safely rock climb and rappel. This week will include hiking, camping, outdoor cooking, climbing, and rappelling. ALL climbing and safety equipment is provided. If you have climbing shoes, you are welcome to bring them, but please do not bring any other equipment. Join us for a great week of FUN in the outdoors!

ART CAMP July 16th - July 22nd for 7th - 12th Graders

The week will be filled with workshops in photography, drawing, pottery, drama, calligraphy, music, painting, and much more... All of this is in addition to games, swimming, worship, free time, movies, hikes in the woods and spending time with a great staff! Eat, play, create!

1. The First Year Camp is for kids aged between 10 and 12.
2. Children will rock climb at the First Year Camp.
3. Children must bring climbing shoes when they join the Rock Climbing Camp.
4. Children under 13 can't join the Rock Climbing Camp.
5. At Art Camp, children learn to write, draw, paint, make pottery and so on.
6. Children at Art Camp learn in workshops all the time.

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first.

1. Her eyes are brown and big.
She _____
2. My house has a living room, a kitchen, a bathroom and two bedrooms.
There _____
3. Phong likes Maths most.
Phong's _____
4. James is hard-working and smart.
James isn't _____
5. What is your address?
Where _____
6. Do you want to go for a drink?
Would _____

UNIT 4: NEIGHBOURHOOD

A. VOCABULARY

- statue	/'stætʃ·u/ (n):	tượng
- square	/skweər/ (n):	quảng trường
- railway station	/'reɪl.wer ,steɪ.ʃən/ (n):	nhà ga
- cathedral	/kə'ti·drəl/ (n):	nhà thờ

- memorial	/mə'mɔːr.i.əl/ (n):	đài tưởng niệm
- left	/left/ (n, a):	trái
- right	/raɪt/ (n, a):	phải
- straight	/streɪt/ (n, a):	thẳng
- narrow	/'ner.ʊ/ (a):	hẹp
- noisy	/'nɔɪ.zi/ (a):	ồn ào
- crowded	/'kraʊ.dɪd/ (a):	đông đúc
- quiet	/'kwaɪ.ɪt/ (a):	yên tĩnh
- art gallery	/'ɑːt ˌgæl.ər.i/ (n):	phòng trưng bày các tác phẩm nghệ thuật
- backyard	/'bæk'jɑːrd/ (n):	sân phía sau nhà
- cathedral	/kə'θiːdrəl/ (n):	nhà thờ lớn, thánh đường
- convenient	/kən'veɪnjənt/ (adj):	thuận tiện, thuận lợi
- dislike	/dɪs'laɪk/ (v):	không thích, không ưa, ghét
- exciting	/ɪk'saɪ.tɪŋ/ (adj):	thú vị, lý thú, hứng thú
- fantastic	/fæn'tæs.tɪk/ (adj):	tuyệt vời
- historic	/hɪ'stɔːrɪk/ (adj):	cổ, cổ kính
- inconvenient	/.ɪn'kən'veɪnjənt/ (adj):	bất tiện, phiền phức
- incredibly	/.ɪn'kred.ə'bli/ (adv):	đáng kinh ngạc, đến nỗi không ngờ
- modern	/'mʌd.ən/ (adj):	hiện đại
- pagoda	/pə'ɡoʊ.də/ (n):	ngôi chùa
- palace	/'pæl.əs/ (n):	cung điện, dinh, phủ
- peaceful	/'piːs.fəl/ (adj):	yên tĩnh, bình lặng
- polluted	/pə'lut/ (adj):	ô nhiễm
- suburb	/'sʌb.ɜːrb/ (n):	khu vực ngoại ô
- temple	/'tem.pəl/ (n):	đền, điện, miếu
- terrible	/'ter.ə.bəl/ (adj):	tồi tệ
- workshop	/'wɜːkʃɑːp/ (n)	phân xưởng (sản xuất, sửa chữa...)

B. GRAMMAR

SO SÁNH HƠN CỦA TÍNH TỪ (COMPARATIVE ADJECTIVES)

Ta sử dụng so sánh hơn của tính từ để so sánh giữa người (hoặc vật) này với người (hoặc vật) khác. Trong câu so sánh hơn, tính từ sẽ được chia làm hai loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn, trong đó:

- tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết. Ví dụ: tall, high, big...
- tính từ dài là những tính từ có 2 âm tiết trở lên. Ví dụ: expensive, intelligent...

1. Cấu trúc câu so sánh hơn

Đối với tính từ ngắn	Đối với tính từ dài
S+ to be+ adj+ er+ than+ S2	S+ to be+ more+ adj+ than + S2
Với tính từ ngắn, thêm đuôi "er" vào sau tính từ.	Với tính từ dài, thêm "more" vào trước tính từ.
Ví dụ: - China is bigger than India. (Trung Quốc rộng hơn Ấn Độ.) - Lan is shorter than Nam. (Lan thì thấp hơn Nam.) - My house is bigger than your house. (Nhà của tôi to hơn nhà của bạn.) - His pen is newer than my pen. (Bút của anh ấy mới hơn bút của tôi)	Ví dụ: - Gold is more valuable than silver. (Vàng có giá trị hơn bạc.) - Hanh is more beautiful than Hoa. (Hạnh thì xinh hơn Hoa.) - Your book is more expensive than his book. (Quyển sách của bạn đắt hơn của anh ấy.) - Exercise 1 is more beautiful than exercise 2. (Bài tập số 1 khó hơn bài tập số 2)

Lưu ý:

Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh hơn, ta thêm “much” hoặc “far” trước hình thức so sánh.

Ví dụ:

Her boyfriend is much/ far older than her.

(Bạn trai của cô ấy lớn tuổi hơn cô ấy rất nhiều.)

II. Cách sử dụng tính từ trong câu so sánh hơn.

1. Cách thêm đuôi -er vào tính từ ngắn

Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 phụ âm=> thêm đuôi er	old- older	near- nearer
Tính từ kết thúc bởi nguyên âm e => chỉ cần thêm đuôi “r”	nice- nicer	
Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm (u, e, o, a, i) + 1 phụ âm => gấp đôi phụ âm cuối và thêm đuôi -er	big- bigger	hot- hotter
	fat- fatter	fit- fitter
Tính từ kết thúc bởi “y”, dù có 2 âm tiết vẫn là tính từ ngắn => bỏ “y” thêm đuôi - “ier”	happy- happier	
	pretty- prettier	

Note:

Một số tính từ có hai âm tiết kết thúc bằng “et, ow, le, er, y” thì áp dụng quy tắc thêm đuôi như tính từ ngắn.

Ví dụ: quiet -> quieter

clever -> cleverer

simple -> simpler

narrow -> narrower

2. Một vài tính từ đặc biệt

Với một số tính từ sau, dạng so sánh hơn của chúng không theo quy tắc trên.

Tính từ	Dạng so sánh hơn
Good (tốt)	better
Bad (tệ)	worse
Far (xa)	Farther/ further
Much/ many (nhiều)	More
Little (ít)	less
Old (già)	Older/ elder

3. Phân biệt “older” và “elder”

“older” và “elder” đều dùng được như 2 tính từ so sánh hơn, khi muốn so sánh tuổi tác của hai đối tượng. Tuy nhiên, “elder” được dùng khi muốn so sánh tuổi của các thành viên trong gia đình. “Elder” không được dùng trong mẫu “elder than”.

Trong mẫu câu so sánh hơn với “than”, luôn dùng “older”	My brother is older than me.=> đúng My brother is elder than me. => sai
Khi so sánh 2 vật, luôn dùng “older”.	This house is older than all the others in the street.
Khi so sánh 2 người, cần cân nhắc xem hai người có cùng gia đình không.	Nếu cùng gia đình: My elder brother doesn’t live with my parents. Nếu không cùng gia đình: The older girl is taking care of the younger.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ trong bảng sau:

Tính từ	So sánh hơn	Tính từ	So sánh hơn
Cheap (rẻ)		Old (già)	
Cold (lạnh)		Near (gần)	
Thin (gầy)		Bad (tệ)	
Good (tốt)		Fat (béo)	

Fast (nhanh)		Ugly (xấu xí)	
Big (to)		Clever (thông minh)	
High (cao)		Close (gần)	
Long (dài)		Safe (an toàn)	
Pretty (xinh xắn)		Far (xa)	
Heavy (nặng)		Large (rộng)	
Narrow (hẹp, nhỏ)		Noisy (ồn ào)	

Bài 2: Hoàn thành câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ dài

- The princess is _____ than the witch. (beautiful)
- The red shirt is better but it's _____ than the white one. (expensive)
- Being a firefighter is _____ than being a builder. (dangerous)
- This armchair is _____ than the old one. (comfortable)
- The new fridge is _____ than the old one. (convenient)
- Health is _____ than money. (important)
- This film is _____ than that film. (exciting)
- She is _____ than My Tam singer. (popular)
- Carol is _____ than Mary. (beautiful)
- French is _____ than Chinese. (difficult)
- The red car is _____ than the blue one. (inconvenient)
- The palace in my country is _____ than this one. (modern)
- This pagoda is _____ than that one. (historic)
- This movie is _____ than that one. (terrible)
- The city centre is _____ than the suburb. (polluted)
- China is _____ than Vietnam. (crowded)
- This novel is _____ than that one. (boring)

Bài 3: Sắp xếp các từ sau thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

- bigger/ one/ Nam's/ than/ new/ old/ is/ his/ school
- taller/ Huy/ brother/ is/ than/ his
- one/ This/ more/ than/ that/ chair/ is/ comfortable
- city/ in/ the/ Living/ is/ more/ than/ countryside/ living/ in/ the/ peaceful/
- is/ intelligent/ his/ friend/ He/ more/ than
- city/ country/ quieter/ the/ The/ is/ than
- art gallery/ she/,/ her family's/ Incredibly/ dislikes
- and/ located/ statue/ a temple/ a/ railway station./ The/ is/ between
- the/ is/ a/ near. /There/ cathedral/ square
- backyard/ workshop/ in/ My father's/ is/ the

Bài 4: Viết câu so sánh hơn, dùng các từ gợi ý.

- Nam/ tall/ Thang _____
- My house/ big/ his house. _____
- Mai/ young/ her sister. _____
- Mr. Ha/ fat/ Mr. Tuan _____

5. My brother/ strong/ me. _____
6. I / short/ Hoa. _____
7. Phuong's room/ large/ Lan's room. _____
8. Ms. Linh / beautiful/ Ms. Huyen. _____
9. This exercise/ difficult/ that exercise. _____
10. My toys/ nice/ your toys. _____

Bài 5: Viết lại bắt đầu bằng từ đã cho sao cho câu không thay đổi.

1. This exercise is easier than that one.
=> That exercise is _____
2. The black car is cheaper than the red car.
=> The red car _____
3. This film is more interesting than that one.
=> That film is _____
4. This river is longer than that one.
=> That river is _____
5. Miss Lan is older than Miss Nga.
=> Miss Nga is _____
6. My kitchen is smaller than yours.
=> Your kitchen _____
7. Her old house is bigger than her new one.
=> Her new house _____
8. The black dress is more expensive than the white one.
=> The white dress _____
9. According to me, English is easier than Maths.
=> According to me, Maths _____
10. This computer works better than that one.
=> That computer _____

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 6: Viết dạng so sánh hơn của những từ trong ngoặc.

1. There is nothing (exciting)_____than going on a trip.
2. Your tee- shirt looks (fantastic)_____with this skirt!
3. Which do you like (good)_____, fish or meat?
4. Your car is (fast)_____than mine!
5. Gold is (valuable)_____ than silver.
6. New York is (large)_____than Seattle.
7. I think geography is much (easy)_____than science.
8. No need to go any (far)_____!
9. Which is (big)_____, a tiger or a lion?
10. Mike is (tall)_____than John, my ex-boyfriend.
11. I'd like to have (long)_____hair. It's too short now.
12. Climbing mountains is (dangerous)_____than hiking.
13. He was (lucky)_____in his (late)_____life than in his youth.
14. We need to buy a (big)_____table but it has to be (cheap)_____than the one we saw yesterday.
15. I think Madonna is (famous)_____than Janet Jackson.
16. It's (far)_____to the bank than I thought.
17. I'll talk to my mother. Her advice will be (useful)_____than yours.
18. I'm much (good)_____at tennis than my (old)_____sister.
19. Life is (complicated)_____than you believed it to be.
20. I'm a bit (thin)_____than my brother but he's (tall)_____.

Bài 7: Chỉ ra và sửa lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau:

1. Cats are popularer than snakes as pets.

2. My mom is more strict than your mum.
3. Pigs are more intelligent as other animals.
4. Your mobile phone is more trendy than mine.
5. Turtles are slow than crocodiles.
6. Disneyland is interestinger than any other amusement park.
7. Elephants are heavier than pigs.
8. Jack is now more happy than he used to be.
9. Bears are more rare than snakes.
10. The tourist company was farer down the street than I had thought.

Bài 8: Hãy chọn từ, cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề A, B, C thích hợp nhất cho khoảng trống của câu.

1. David was than John.
A. more good B. go C. better
2. This building is.....than that one.
A. beautifuler B. beautiful C. more beautiful
3. Dorothy promised to be.....with her money.
A. carefuler B. more careful C. careful
4. New York's population is than San Francisco's.
A. large B. larger C. more large
5. This old machine is.....than we thought.
A. powerfuler B. powerful C. more powerful
6. We've got ... time than I thought
A. little B. more little C. less
7. People are not friendly in big cities. They are usually... than in small towns.
A. friendly B. more friendly C. friendlier
8. Mary is 10 years old. Julie is 8 years old. Mary is ... than Julie.
A. older B. elder C. more old
9. The road is ... than the motorway.
A. narrow B. narrower C. more narrow
10. It's ... than it looks.
A. badder B. worse C. more bad

Bài 9: Hoàn thành các câu sau với các tính từ cho sẵn.

1. Her daughter is her (beautiful)
2. Summer is.....spring. (hot)
3. That dog is it looks. (dangerous)
4. Today, people arethey are in the past. (polite)
5. It istodayit was yesterday. (cold)
6. Our hotel was.....all the others in the town. (cheap)
7. Everest is.....any other mountain.(high)
8. I prefer this chair to the other one. It's.....(comfortable)
9. There is nothing.....going swimming in hot weather.(good)
10. Her voice is..... her sister's. (beautiful)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. film | B. city | C. nice | D. police |
| 2. A. big | B. wide | C. quite | D. exciting |
| 3. A. cheap | B. <u>sleepy</u> | C. <u>near</u> | D. <u>peaceful</u> |
| 4. A. <u>heavy</u> | B. <u>sea</u> | C. <u>team</u> | D. <u>street</u> |
| 5. A. noisy | B. expensive | C. house | D. <u>post</u> |

II. Write the comparative for of these adjectives.

1. strong *stronger than*
2. crowded *more crowded than*
3. tall _____
4. noisy _____
5. pretty _____
6. happy _____
7. short _____
8. big _____
9. modern _____
10. friendly _____
11. good _____
12. bad _____

III. Use the words and write comparison.

Example: France/ Italy. (large)

France is larger than Italy.

1. Scotland/ Athens. (cold)
2. Chinese/ English. (difficult)
3. Jennifer Lopez/ Madonna. (pretty)
4. Football/ volleyball. (good)
5. A novel/ a short story. (long)

IV. Complete the following sentences with the comparatives of the adjectives.

1. This chair is _____ than that chair. (comfortable)
2. Your flat is _____ than mine. (large)
3. Love is _____ than money. (important)
4. Iron is _____ than wood. (heavy).
5. My Physics course is _____ than my Math course. (difficult)
6. The Nile River is _____ than the Mississippi. (long)
7. The dog is _____ than a cow. (intelligent)
8. My mother's cooking is _____ than my father's. (good)
9. My father's cooking is _____ than my mother's. (bad)
10. This dress is _____ than that one. (pretty)
11. A horse is _____ than a man. (strong)
12. A rose is _____ than a weed. (beautiful)

V. Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. Which river is _____, the Red River or the Mekong River? (long)
2. Which country is _____, China or Viet Nam? (big)
3. Which animals are _____, dogs or dolphins? (intelligent)
4. Which animals are _____, cats or horses? (fast)
5. Which is _____, water or oil? (heavy)
6. Which month in Viet Nam is _____, October or December? (cold)
7. Which language is _____, Chinese or English? (difficult)
8. Which city is _____, London or Rome? (old)
9. Which city is _____, New York or Paris? (big)
10. Which mountain is _____, Mount Everest or Mount Fuji? (high)

VI. Write sentences using the words or phrases given.

Example: Her new school/ big/ her old school.

Her new school is bigger than her old school.

1. My father/ old/ Uncle Hung.
2. She/ tall/ her mother.
3. Winter/ cold/ spring.
4. Ha Noi Opera House/ big/ Hai Phong Opera House.
5. A house in the city centre/ expensive/ a house in the suburb.
6. My neighbourhood/ crowded/ your neighbourhood.
7. Travelling by train/ comfortable/ travelling by coach.
8. Mai/ young/ her sisters.
9. Hue/ historic/ Hoi An.
10. Living in the country/ peaceful/ living in the city.

VII. Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the adjectives in brackets.

1. Our theater is _____ than our cinema. (big)
2. Museums are _____ than art galleries. (interesting)
3. The market is _____ than the shopping centre. (cheap)
4. The amusement park is _____ than the swimming pool. (noisy)
5. The French restaurant in our town is _____ than the Italian restaurant. (expensive)
6. Sundays are _____ than Saturdays. (boring)
7. My mum is _____ than my dad. (busy)
8. My new school is _____ than my old school. (modern)

VIII. Complete the second sentence with the correct form of the opposite adjective.

1. The museum is bigger than the art gallery.
The art gallery _____ the museum.
2. The sports centre is more expensive than the swimming pool.
The swimming pool _____ the sports centre.
3. The market is older than the shopping centre.

- The shopping centre _____ the market.
4. The skate park is noisier than the amusing park.
The amusing park _____ the skate park.
5. The food here is worse than my cooking!
My cooking _____ the food here!
6. The kitchen is darker than the living room.
The living room _____ the kitchen.
7. I'm quieter than my brother.
My brother _____ I am.
8. My computer is newer than my mobile phone.
My mobile phone _____ my computer.

IX. Read the following passage, and then answer the questions.

London and Rome are the two old cities in Europe. Rome is older than London, it is about 800 years older than London. But London is bigger than Rome in area and population. In general, London is colder than Rome in winter and cooler than Rome in summer. Rome is wetter than London and nearer the sea than London.

Notes: - area = diện tích
 - in general = nhìn chung
 - Europe = châu Âu

1. Which city is older?
2. Which city is bigger in area and population?

3. Is London hotter than Rome?
4. Which city has got more rain?
5. Which city is nearer the sea?

X. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

I live in a small village called Northville. There are about 2000 people here. I love the village (1) _____ it is very quiet and life is slow and easy. The village is always clean; people look (2) _____ it with great care. The air is always clean, too. People are much friendlier here than in a city because everyone (3) _____ the others, and if someone has a problem, there are always people who can help.

There are only a few things that I don't like about Northville. One thing is that we have not got many things to do in the evening; we haven't got (4) _____ cinemas or theaters. The other thing is that people always talk about (5) _____, and everyone knows what everyone is doing. But I still prefer village life to life in a big city.

XI. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

Lan goes to Nha Trang with her family on holiday now. She stays at a hotel on the side of the beach. In the early morning, she goes to the sea and swims for an hour. Then she has breakfast in a canteen on the beach to enjoy fresh air in the morning. In the afternoon, she takes some photos of the sights. She is staying in Nha Trang for four days and takes of a lot of nice photos. She is buying some postcards and souvenirs for her friends. It is an enjoyable holiday because she has a lot of fun.

1. Where does Lan go on holiday now?
2. What does she do in the early morning?
3. What does she do in the afternoon?
4. How long is she staying in Nha Trang?
5. Why is her holiday enjoyable?

XII. Rearrange the words and phrases to make meaningful sentences

1. an/ pagoda/ village/ go/ old/ my/ has.
2. railway-station/ not/ small/ a/ that/ town/ has/ got.
3. one/ Mr. and Mrs. Brown/ only/ have/ car/ got.
4. building/ school/ new/ has got/ my/ a.
5. many/ got/ city/ lakes/ that/ has/ beautiful.
6. London/ parks/ has/ famous/ got/ many.
7. any/ city/ museums/ your/ has/ got?
8. art galleries/ not/ town/ has/ got/ this/ any.
9. buildings/ old/ got/ Hue/ pagodas/ and/ many/ has.
10. a/ house/ has/ got/ garage/ your?

XIII. Rewrite the sentences using the words in brackets. Do not change the meaning of the sentences and do not change the form of the words given.

Example: Tom is taller than Mary. (SHORT)

Mary is shorter than Tom.

1. The Central Post Office is bigger than this District Post office. (SMALL)
2. The skyscraper is higher than our office building. (LOW)
3. My neighbourhood is noisier than your neighbourhood. (QUIET)
4. Alice is slimmer than Daisy. (FAT)
5. The Riverview Hotel is cheaper than the Palace Hotel. (EXPENSIVE)
6. A house in the city is more expensive than a house in the country. (CHEAP)
7. The air in the city is more polluted than the air in the country. (FRESH)

8. Life in the city is more interesting than life in a small village. (BORING)

XIV. Write sentences about the city tour of Ha Noi, using the words and phrases given.

1. Ha Noi/ capital of Viet Nam. It/ history/ more than 1,000 years.

2. First/ go/ President Ho Chi Minh's Mausoleum/ see/ stilt house/ where/ he lived/ 1958/ 1969.

3. Then/ go/ One-Pillar Pagoda. It/ a pagoda/ over the water/ middle/ a square lake.

4. After that/ have a chance/ visit/ Tran Quoc Pagoda/ on the shore/ West Lake.

5. Then/ have lunch/ restaurant/ the Old Quarter.

6. Finally/ go/ Hoan Kiem Lake/ heart/ soul/ Ha Noi.

TEST 1 UNIT 4

I. Choose the words into two groups (/i:/ and /i/).

friendly	historic	busy	sleepy	police	river
peaceful	convenient	exciting	beach	sea	village
street	leave	sit	city	milk	teen
thing	slim	cheap	meal	noisy	see

/i:/	/i/

II. Which one is different?

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>l</u> ove | B. <u>h</u> otel | C. <u>m</u> other | D. <u>b</u> rother |
| 2. A. <u>l</u> ake | B. <u>p</u> lace | C. <u>p</u> addy | D. <u>s</u> tadium |
| 3. A. <u>s</u> ore | B. <u>s</u> ister | C. <u>f</u> actory | D. <u>p</u> icture |
| 4. A. <u>r</u> ice | B. <u>r</u> iver | C. <u>c</u> ity | D. <u>v</u> illage |
| 5. A. <u>s</u> ing | B. <u>m</u> ine | C. <u>h</u> it | D. <u>s</u> it |

III. Give the correct form of tense in the blank.

Ex: She (come)_____tomorrow morning.

She **will come** tomorrow morning.

- Hoa always (help)_____her parents on their farm in her free time.
- Our summer vacation (start)_____in June and (last)_____for almost three months.
- What do you like (do)_____during your vacation?
- It's ten to seven. Hurry up or you (be)_____late for work.
- We (go)_____swimming every afternoon.
- Hoa (have)_____breakfast with her uncle now.
- He (not come)_____to the party tomorrow night.
- They (talk)_____about Hoa's work at the moment.

IV. Give the correct form of comparative in the blank.

Ex: Nam is _____ than his sister. (*tall*)

Nam is **taller** than his sister.

1. Mr. Tan works _____ hours than my father. (*many*)
2. Summer vacation is the _____ vacation. (*long*)
3. Vietnamese students have _____ vacations than American students. (*few*)
4. He drinks _____ wine than Mr. Hai. (*little*)
5. Christmas is one of the _____ vacations in America. (*important*)
6. This old woman has _____ money than all of her daughters. (*much*)
7. Bill is _____ than you. (*good*)
8. These shoes are _____ than those shoes. (*expensive*)

V. Supply the correct comparative form of adjective in brackets.

Ex: He is (intelligent) **more intelligent** than his brother

1. I have never had a (*delicious*) _____ meal than that.
2. This shirt is too small. I need a (*large*) _____ size.
3. It's (*cheap*) _____ to go by car than to go by train.
4. A new house is (*expensive*) _____ than an old one.
5. His job is (*important*) _____ than mine.
6. Nobody is (*happy*) _____ than Miss. Snow.
7. John is much (*strong*) _____ than I thought.
8. Benches are (*comfortable*) _____ than arm-chairs.
9. Bill is (*good*) _____ than you thought.
10. Sam's conduct is (*bad*) _____ than Paul's.

VI. Read the passage carefully then answer the questions below.

Hi, my name is Linh. I'm eleven years old. I'm a pupil. I get up at half past five. After brush my teeth and wash my face, I take a shower and get dressed. I have my breakfast, then I leave the house at half past six and go to school. The school is near my house, so I walk. Classes start at seven and end at half past eleven. I walk home and have lunch at twelve o'clock.

Questions:

1. How old is Linh?
.....
2. What does she do?
.....
3. Does he get up at five thirty?
.....
4. What time does she go to school?
.....
5. Does she go to school by bike?
.....
6. Do classes start at seven?
.....
7. What time do classes end?
.....

VII. Read the passage carefully.

A new shopping mall is opening in Nam's neighborhood today. It is very different from the present shopping area. All the shops are under one roof. That will be very convenient, especially during the hot and humid summer months. Customers will shop in comfort and won't notice the weather.

Some people in the neighborhood, however, are not happy about the changes. The owners of the small stores on Tran Phu Street think the mall will take their business. Some of the goods in the new stores will be the same as the ones in the small shops, but the stores in the mall will offer a wider selection of products, some at cheaper prices.

The residents and store owners have been concerned about the new mall for a few months. They have organized a community meeting in order to discuss the situation.

1. True or False? Check (✓). Then correct the false sentences and write them in your exercise book.

T F

- a) The mall is open six days a week.
.....
- b) There are more than 50 stores in the mall.
.....
- c) Everyone in the neighborhood is pleased with the new mall.
.....
- d) It will be more comfortable to shop in the mall than in the present shopping area.
.....
- e) Some of the stores on Tran Phu Street may have to close.
.....

2. Answer.

- a) What is special about the new shopping mall?
.....
- b) What facilities are available in the shopping mall?
.....
- c) What do the small store owners think about the new shopping mall?
.....
- d) What kinds of goods will the stores in the mall offer?
.....

VIII. Read the letter then answer the questions below.

July 2nd

Dear Tim,

Thanks for your letter. I am very glad to hear that you are fine. I am fine, too. It's really interesting to know about vacations of American students.

You are right. We have fewer vacations than American students. Each year, we just have about four vacations. We have a day off for Independent Day on September 2nd, two days off on April 30th and May Day. Our most important vacation is Tet. Tet holiday often lasts for nine or ten days. Our longest vacation is summer vacation. It last for almost three months. We usually spend time with our families. We don't have vacation for Easter, Thanksgiving and Christmas, but we also celebrate them.

Please write and tell me your last summer vacation.

Your friend,

Hoa

- 1. Do Vietnamese students have more or fewer vacations than America students?
.....
- 2. How many vacations do Vietnamese students have? What are they?
.....
- 3. Which vacation is the longest?
.....
- 4. Which vacation is the most important?

.....
5. How long does Tet holiday last?
.....

6. What does Hoa do during her vacation?
.....

7. Do Vietnamese students have Christmas vacation?
.....

IX. Write the comparative sentences using the cues.

Ex: My house/ small/ her house

→ My house is smaller than her house.

1. Lan/ tall/ Hoa
.....

2. This book/ thick/ that book
.....

3. The chair/ short/ the table
.....

4. These boxes/ big/ those boxes
.....

5. Miss Trang/ young/ her sister
.....

6. These buildings/ high/ those buildings
.....

7. The boys/ strong/ the girls
.....

8. I/ old/ my brother
.....

X. Make questions with *How* and write the answers using suggestion.

Ex: Hoa/ go/ the museum/ bike

- How does Hoa go to the museum?

→ She goes to the museum by bike.

1. Nam/ go/ the post office/ bike
.....

2. Nga and Lan/ go school/ school bus
.....

3. your father/ travel/ Ha Noi/ plane
.....

4. the children/ go/ the zoo/ bus
.....

5. you and your friends/ go/ the stadium/ foot
.....

6. Mrs. Lien/ go/ the market/ motorbike
.....

TEST 2(UNIT 4)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. **A.** arrive

B. quickly

C. historic

D. city

2. **A.** teens

B. see

C. coffee

D. street

3. **A.** convenient

B. evening

C. exciting

D. eve

4. **A.** expensive **B.** opposite **C.** those **D.** noisy
 5. **A.** ideal **B.** cinema **C.** exciting **D.** difficult

III. Choose the correct answers.

11. Is there a theatre _____ your neighbourhood?
A. in **B.** on **C.** at **D.** with
12. _____ the second turning _____ the right.
A. Take - in **B.** Take - on **C.** Get - in **D.** Get - on
13. _____.
A. show - road **B.** show - street **C.** tell - road **D.** tell - way
14. The map _____ that the art gallery is nearer than the cathedral. Shall we go there first?
A. speaks **B.** asks **C.** says **D.** talks
15. A _____ is a place where we go to buy stamps or send letters.
A. library **B.** post office **C.** cinema **D.** school
16. The air in this area is _____ with smoke from factories.
A. polluted **B.** fresh **C.** noisy **D.** clean
17. There are many shops near here, so the streets are very busy and _____ during the day.
A. noise **B.** narrow **C.** quiet **D.** noisy
18. It is _____ to live far from the market and the supermarket.
A. easy **B.** inconvenient **C.** convenient **D.** comfortable
19. The people in Hoi An are incredibly _____ and _____.
A. friendly – help **B.** friendly - helpful **C.** friendship - helpless **D.** friend - helpfully
20. The weather is nice, so I enjoy doing _____ activities.
A. outdoor **B.** inside **C.** outdoors **D.** boring
21. The cinema is _____ the corner of the street.
A. on **B.** in **C.** at **D.** into
22. Going by taxi is more _____ than going by bus.
A. cheaper **B.** faster **C.** easier **D.** expensive
23. The streets in the Old Quarter in Ha Noi are not wide. They are _____.
A. exciting **B.** noisy **C.** narrow **D.** quiet
24. A _____ is a place where we can buy medicines, soap, and make-up.
A. chemist's **B.** grocer's **C.** square **D.** temple
25. David's exam results are _____ than Nick's.
A. good **B.** well **C.** better **D.** important
26. Janet is not happy because her results in the competition are _____ than her sister's.
A. bad **B.** good **C.** better **D.** worse
27. _____ people own motorbikes now than ten years ago.
A. Many **B.** Much **C.** More **D.** Some
28. This type of car is _____ economical than that type.
A. more **B.** much **C.** many **D.** as
29. _____ go past the traffic lights, and _____ turn left.
A. First - than **B.** First - then **C.** Then - first **D.** Finally - then
30. London, the capital city of England, is a _____ city with many old buildings, and beautiful parks.
A. history **B.** historic **C.** largest **D.** larger

III. Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

31. The Mekong River is _____ the Mississippi River. (short)
 32. The Caribbean Sea is _____ the Mediterranean Sea. (large)

33. Mt. Everest is _____ Mount Fuji. (high)
34. Africa is _____ North America. (big)
35. Europe is _____ South America. (small)
36. The streets in Da Nang are _____ and _____ than those in Hue. (noisy/crowded)
37. Canada is _____ the United States in area. (big)
38. Indonesia is _____ Japan in population. (large)
39. Fruit is _____ for your health _____ candy. (good)
40. This exercise is _____ that one. (easy)

IV. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

Many people who work in London prefer to live outside it, and to go to their offices, factories or schools everyday by train, car or bus, even though this means they have to get up earlier in the morning and come home later in the evening.

One advantage of living outside London is that houses are cheaper. Even a small flat in London without a garden costs quite a lot to rent. With the same money, one can get a little house in the country with a garden of one's own.

Then, in the country one can rest from the noise and hurry of the town. Although one has to get up earlier and spend more time in trains or buses, one can sleep better at night, and during weekends. In summer evenings one enjoys the fresh, clean air of the country. If one likes gardens, one can spend one's free time digging, planting, watering and doing the hundred and one other jobs which are needed in a garden.

41. What do many people who work in London prefer?
42. What is one advantage of living outside London?
43. What can a person enjoy when he lives in the country?
44. What can a person get in the country with the same money of a small flat in London?
45. What can a person with the interest in gardening do in the country?

TEST 3 UNIT 4

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. <u>peaceful</u> | b. <u>pleasure</u> | c. <u>sleepy</u> | d. <u>cheap</u> |
| 2. a. exciting | b. quiet | c. wide | d. terrible |
| 3. a. <u>crowded</u> | b. <u>interested</u> | c. <u>bored</u> | d. <u>polluted</u> |
| 4. a. <u>shops</u> | b. <u>theatres</u> | c. <u>streets</u> | d. <u>parks</u> |
| 5. a. <u>narrow</u> | b. <u>crowd</u> | c. <u>now</u> | d. <u>about</u> |
| 6. a. live | b. wide | c. bicycle | d. exciting |
| 7. a. <u>feet</u> | b. <u>seat</u> | c. <u>near</u> | d. <u>team</u> |
| 8. a. <u>busy</u> | b. city | c. think | d. terrible |
| 9. a. <u>great</u> | b. <u>heat</u> | c. <u>cheek</u> | d. <u>peaceful</u> |
| 10. a. historic | b. expensive | c. office | d. finally |

II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. What is there _____ our neighborhood?
a. in b. on c. at d. from
2. Turn left _____ the traffic lights and the restaurant is _____ your right
a. in - on b. at - in c. at - on d. on - in
3. _____ the second turning on the right and then go straight.

- a. Cross b. Get c. Turn d. Take
4. He is much _____ now, but he's still taking medication.
a. good b. gooder c. better d. more better
5. The air in many cities is heavily _____ with vehicle exhaust fumes.
a. polluted b. crowded c. wasted d. contained
6. I'm just going to the _____ to buy some medicines and bandage.
a. cinema b. chemist's c. restaurant d. grocery
7. My neighborhood is very _____ because everything is near my house.
a. convenient b. exciting c. comfortable d. inconvenient
8. _____ go to the museum this weekend? - Good idea!
a. Let's b. Why don't c. Shall we d. Could you
9. Living in a city is _____ convenient than living in the countryside.
a. a lot b. much c. many d. more
10. - Is there a supermarket in your neighborhood?
- _____.
a. No, it isn't. The supermarket is near my house.
b. Yes. There it one not far from my house.
c. There is a supermarket in my neighborhood.
d. The supermarket is opposite the park.

III. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

convenient historic peaceful fantastic modern
boring noisy narrow polluted

1. I don't like living in a big city. It's _____ day and night and the air is so _____.
2. The streets in Hoi An ancient town are _____ and no cars are allowed.
3. For young people, it's really _____ in the country. It'd be more fun living in town.
4. We really enjoy staying here. The beach is _____ and the weather is very nice.
5. There is a supermarket in my neighborhood, so it's very _____ to go shopping for food.
6. Without noise and daily stress, life in the countryside is more _____ and healthier.
7. There are many _____ buildings and offices in Ho Chi Minh City.
8. Vietnam's most _____ city is Hue. It was the home of the Nguyen Kings and it has many palaces and monuments.

V. Complete the sentences with the correct comparative form of the words in the box.

friendly useful important cold crowded
bad high exciting thin narrow

1. In Canada, January is _____ than March.
2. I think that good health is _____ than money.
3. You look _____. Have you lost weight?
4. I couldn't get a seat in the restaurant. It was _____ than usual.
5. Mountains are _____ than hills.
6. I think that people who live in villages are _____ than people in big cities.
7. My exam results were _____ than I expected.
8. I think New York is _____ than Houston.
9. These trousers are too wide. Do you have any that are _____?
10. I like my new dictionary. It is _____ than the last one.

VI. Choose the correct adjectives to complete the sentences.

1. The road is not _____ (wide/ narrow) enough for two cars to pass comfortably.
2. Inside the cathedral, it's _____ (noisy/ peaceful) and quiet.
3. Those shoes are really _____ (cheap/ expensive) - they only cost £25.
4. My house is rather far from my school, so it's a bit _____ (convenient/ inconvenient).
5. Kids always find Christmas _____ (exciting/ boring). They are always looking forward to Christmas.
6. The air in the countryside is fresh and _____ (polluted/ unpolluted).
7. Hoi An is a(n) _____ (old/ modern) town near Da Nang.
8. There are a lot of shops nearby, so the streets are always busy and _____ (noisy/ quiet) during the day.

VII. Complete the sentences with the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets. Add *than* where necessary.

1. I think she is still ill. She looks even _____ last week. (bad)
2. Her job is a lot _____ mine. (stressful)
3. He thinks Charlie Chaplin is _____ Mr Bean. (funny)
4. I can't study in this room. It's too noisy. I'm going to find a _____ place. (quiet)
5. Smart phones make our lives _____ and _____. (easy - convenient)
6. Life in a city is a lot _____ life in the countryside. (good)
7. My Math class is _____ my English class. (boring)
8. I like this school because it is _____ the other one. (big)
9. A car is much _____ a bike. (expensive)
10. We need _____ actors for this film. (young)

VIII. Supply the comparative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. I find war films _____ than romantic films. (boring)
2. He is _____ than I thought him to be. (clever)
3. My exam results were _____ than I expected. (bad)
4. Which one of these cities is _____ from us - Tokyo or Berlin? (far)
5. Jim Carrey's latest film is _____ than the previous one. (funny)
6. Ho Chi Minh City is _____ than Da Nang. (polluted)
7. I think living in the city is _____ than living in the country. (good)
8. The house is much _____ than the flat we had in London. (spacious)
9. Today's weather will be 5 degrees _____ than yesterday's. (hot)
10. The seafood here is _____ than the seafood in Ha Noi. (delicious)

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first sentence, using the adjective in capitals.

1. The first question was easier than the second one. (DIFFICULT)
The second question _____
2. The black coat is smaller than the brown one. (BIG)
The brown coat _____
3. The chair isn't as comfortable as the sofa. (COMFORTABLE)
The sofa _____
4. Jim's suitcase was lighter than Jack's suitcase. (HEAVY)
Jack's suitcase _____
5. His homework was better than mine. (BAD)
My homework _____
6. The big television is more expensive than the small one. (CHEAP)
The small television _____
7. The Royal Hotel is more old-fashioned than the Holton Hotel. (MODERN)

The Holton Hotel _____

8. The weather yesterday was worse than it is today. (GOOD)

The weather today _____

9. People in the city aren't as friendly as those in the country. (FRIENDLY)

People in the country _____

10. Life in the city is more interesting than life in the country. (BORING)

Life in the country _____

X. Put the verbs into the correct tense form.

1. I _____ (have) a great time in Hoi An at present
2. There _____ (be) always a lot of traffic, day and night.
3. My friend, Michelle, and I _____ (spend) five days in Hoi An last year.
4. Outside the sun _____ (shine) so I'm off to get some fresh air.
5. We usually _____ (stay) at home for a holiday, but this holiday we _____ (travel) abroad.
6. _____ (be) there any bookstores in your neighborhood?
7. My grandma _____ (not like) living in the city.
8. How _____ (I/ get) to the railway station? - Go straight ahead then turn left.
9. Where _____ (you/ go) now? - We _____ (go) to Tan Ky House.
10. _____ (be) there a post office nearby? - No. There _____ (be) no post offices near here.

XI. Fill in each gap with a word from the box.

attractions house lies many tourist famous as visit

The ancient town of Hoi An (1) _____ on the Thu Bon River, 30km south of Da Nang. It was formerly a major trading center in Southeast Asia between the 16th and 17th centuries. Hoi An is (2) _____ for its old temples, pagodas, small tile-roofed houses and narrow streets.

One of the main (3) _____ of Hoi An is the Japanese Covered Bridge, which was built in the 16th century and is still well-preserved. All visitors to Hoi An are recommended a (4) _____ to the Cantonese Assembly Hall, which was built in 1855 and still keeps (5) _____ precious objects. Another attractive address to tourists is Tan Ky (6) _____, which was constructed nearly two centuries ago as a house of a Vietnamese merchant.

In recent years, Hoi An has become a popular (7) _____ destination in Vietnam. In 1999, it was certified by UNESCO (8) _____ a World Cultural Heritage Site.

XII. Choose the word which best fits each gap.

Newquay is small town (1) _____ the Atlantic coast in the south of England. It has got great beaches and is the (2) _____ place to surf in the UK.

In Newquay, there are lots of other things to do as (3) _____ as surfing. If you like water sports, you can go kayaking, water-skiing or coasteering. Coasteering is different because it is rock climbing, jumping into the sea and swimming in the same activity, but you (4) _____ always go with a special instructor.

If you like animals you can also visit the Blue Reef Aquarium and (5) _____ a lot of different fish and even sharks. You can also go (6) _____ on the beach or visit Newquay Zoo. Come and see for yourself.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. a. in | b. on | c. at | d. to |
| 2. a. good | b. better | c. best | d. goodest |
| 3. a. well | b. much | c. soon | d. far |
| 4. a. shall | b. may | c. could | d. should |
| 5. a. see | b. like | c. get | d. look |
| 6. a. horse ride | b. horse riding | c. riding horse | d. ride horse |

XIII. Read the passage. Then answer the questions.

Hi Friends!. My name's Sandra and I live in Hilltown. It is a small town in the south of England. About 9,000 people live here.

There are many shops in the town and there are three supermarkets. You can buy everything you need in the town. There are two banks, a post office, a police station and a library, too. You can find a big market where you can buy fresh fruit, vegetables, meat and dairy products. I like going to the market with my mum. There is a park in the town centre. In the park children can play because there is a playground. In our town you can find some restaurants and cafés. My favorite café is Icecave. It's in Park Street and the ice cream is fantastic here!

There are three elementary schools and two high schools in Hilltown. My school is in MillStreet. Next to our school there is a sports centre. Every Wednesday afternoon, we play badminton.

I like living in Hilltown because it is a calm, neat place and people are friendly.

1. Where is Hilltown?
2. How many people are there in the town?
3. Are there any parks in the town?
4. What can you buy in the market
5. What café does she like best?
6. How many schools are there in Hilltown?
7. How often does she play badminton?
8. Does Sandra like her town? Why?

XIV. Read the passage and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

I live in a wonderful neighbourhood. It is quiet but very convenient. There is a grocery store; I go there when I want to buy something quick to prepare. Also, there are other shops such as a bakery, two restaurants, and a bookstore. I am very satisfied of having a bookstore in my neighbourhood because I love reading books. Near my house, there is a small park. It's a place where people meet and socialise. My father and I go jogging around the park every morning. My neighbourhood is great but there are no schools nearby. The hospital is also far away, but in general it is a nice place to live.

1. The neighbourhood is very noisy.
2. There are no restaurants in the neighbourhood.
3. The school is far away from the neighbourhood.
4. The writer doesn't want a bookstore in his neighbourhood.
5. You can buy food in the grocery store.
6. There is a large park in the neighbourhood.
7. The writer likes to live in his neighbourhood.

XV. Rearrange the words or phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. we/ first/ where/ go/ this morning/ shall?
2. the cafeteria/ and/ a cold drink/ let's/ get/ to/ go.
3. like/ you/ the countryside/ do/ living/ in?

4. neighbourhood/ post office/ in/ there/ your/ a/ is?
5. me/ you/ the way/ could/ the Japanese Bridge/ to/ tell/ please?
6. houses/ are/ there/ historic/ Hoi An/ many/ ancient town/ in.
7. polluted/ smoke/ the air/ is/ with/ factories/ from.
8. much/ than/ living in a big city/ expensive/ is/ living in the countryside/ more

XVI. Rewrite the sentence so that it contains the word in capitals.

1. How about playing volleyball for a change? (SHALL)
2. Do you want to go for lunch now? (WOULD)
3. Can you tell me the way to the nearest post office? (HOW)
4. The first question in the test was easier than the second one. (DIFFICULT)
5. I expected my exam results to be better. (THAN)
6. The bookstore is at the side of the grocery store. (NEXT)
7. Dave doesn't earn as much money as his wife. (MORE)
8. Could you close that window, please? (MIND)

UNIT 5: NATURAL WONDERS OF THE WORLD

A. VOCABULARY

- plaster	/ˈplæs.tər/ (n):	miếng băng dán
- walking boots	/ˈwɑː.kɪŋ buts/ (n):	giày ống đi bộ
- painkiller	/ˈpeɪn.kɪl.ər/ (n):	thuốc giảm đau
- sun cream	/ˈsʌn ˌkriːm/ (n):	kem chống nắng
- scissor	/ˈsɪz.ər/ (n):	cái kéo
- sleeping bag	/ˈsliː.pɪŋ ˌbæg/ (n):	túi ngủ
- backpack	/ˈbæk.pæk/ (n):	ba lô
- compass	/ˈkʌm.pəs/ (n)	la bàn
- desert	/dɪˈzɜːt/ (n)	sa mạc
- mountain	/ˈmaʊn.tən/ (n):	núi
- lake	/leɪk/ (n):	hồ nước
- river	/ˈrɪv.ər/ (n):	sông
- forest	/ˈfɒr.əst/ (n):	rừng
- waterfall	/ˈwɔː.tər.fɔːl/ (n):	thác nước
- Antarctica	/ænˈtɑːr.k.tɪ.kə/ (n):	châu Nam cực
- boat	/boʊt/ (n):	con thuyền
- boot	/buːt/ (n):	giày ủng

- cave	/keɪv/ (n):	hang động
- cuisine	/kwɪ'zi:n/ (n):	kỹ thuật nấu ăn, nghệ thuật ẩm thực
- diverse	/'daɪ.vɜrs/ (adj):	đa dạng
- essential	/'esɪnʃəl/ (adj):	rất cần thiết
- island	/'aɪ.lənd/ (n):	hòn đảo
- rock	/ræk/ (n):	hòn đá, phiến đá
- thrilling /	'θrɪl.ɪŋ/ (adj) (gây):	hồi hộp
- torch	/tɔrtʃ/ (n):	đèn pin
- travel agent's	/'træv.əl eɪ.dʒənt/(n)	công ty du lịch
- valley	/'væl.i/ (n):	thung lũng
- windsurfing	/'wɪnd,sɜr.fɪŋ/ (n):	môn thể thao lướt ván buồm
- wonder	/'wʌn.dər/ (n):	kỳ quan

B. GRAMMAR

I. So sánh nhất với tính từ ngắn (superlative of short adjectives)

Ta sử dụng so sánh nhất để so sánh người (hoặc vật) với tất cả người (hoặc vật) trong nhóm. Trong câu so sánh nhất, tính từ sẽ được chia làm hai loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn, trong đó

- Tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết. Ví dụ: tall, high, big,...
- Tính từ dài là những tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên. Ví dụ: expensive, intelligent,...

1. Cấu trúc câu so sánh nhất đối với tính từ ngắn

Cấu trúc	S + tobe + the + adj + -est + (Danh từ)
Ví dụ	- Russia is the biggest country in the world. (Nga là đất nước lớn nhất trên thế giới) - My school is the biggest in the city. (Trường của tôi lớn nhất trong thành phố.) My father is the oldest person in my family (Bố tôi là người lớn tuổi nhất trong nhà) - Quang is the tallest in his class - (Quang là người cao nhất trong lớp học của anh ấy)
Lưu ý	Để nhấn mạnh trong câu so sánh nhất, ta thêm "much" hoặc "by far" vào sau hình thức so sánh. Ví dụ : He is the smartest <u>by far</u> . - (Anh ấy thông minh nhất, hơn mọi người nhiều)

2. Cách sử dụng tính từ ngắn trong câu so sánh nhất

a. Cách thêm đuôi -est vào tính từ ngắn

Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 phụ âm, thêm đuôi -est	old - oldest near - nearest cold- coldest tall - tallest new - newest
Tính từ kết thúc bởi nguyên âm "e", chỉ cần thêm đuôi "st"	nice – nicest
Tính từ kết thúc bởi 1 nguyên âm (u,e,o,a,i) + 1 phụ âm, gấp đôi phụ âm cuối và thêm đuôi -est	big - biggest hot - hottest fat- fattest fit-fittest
Tính từ kết thúc bởi "y", dù có 2 âm tiết vẫn là tính từ ngắn, bỏ "y" và thêm đuôi "iest"	happy - happier busy – busiest pretty – prettiest easy – easiest early - earliest

Lưu ý:

Một số tính từ có 2 âm tiết nhưng có tận cùng là "y, le, ow, er" thì áp dụng quy tắc thêm đuôi -est của tính từ ngắn.

Ví dụ: simple - simplest

narrow-narrowest

clever-cleverest

b. Một vài tính từ bất quy tắc

Với một số tính từ sau, dạng so sánh nhất của chúng khác với các tính từ khác.

Tính từ	Dạng so sánh nhất
Good (tốt)	best
Bad (tệ)	Worst
Far(xa)	Farthest/furthest
Much/many(nhiều)	Most
Little (ít)	Least
Old (già)	Oldest/ eldest

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh nhất của các tính từ sau:

Tính từ	So sánh nhất	Tính từ	So sánh nhất
Short (ngắn)		Bad (xấu, tệ)	
Nice (đẹp)		Little (ít)	
Happy (hạnh phúc)		Much (nhiều)	
Dry (khô)		Funny (buồn cười)	
Big (to)		Fat (béo)	
Thin (gầy)		Cheap (rẻ)	
Good (tốt)		Lazy (lười)	

Bài 2: Cho dạng đúng so sánh nhất của tính từ trong ngoặc

- Ho Chi Minh City is (big) city in Viet Nam.
- Lan is (thin)of the three sisters.
- The Amazone River is (long)..... river in the world.
- Hanh is(clever) student in class.
- It's(short) day of year.
- Who's(good) tennis player in your country?
- Who is (tall) person in your family?
- December is (cold).....month of the year in my country.
- Ethan is (happy)..... boy that I know.
- Where are(nice)beaches in your country?

Bài 3: Chọn đáp án thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống.

- My sister is..... person in my family.
A. young B. younger than C. the youngest
- I think Federer is..... tennis player in the world.
A. good B. better than C. the best
- Winter is.....season of the year in Europe.
A. cold B. colder than C. the coldest
- Our house is..... in the street.
A. bigger B. the biggest C. more big
- He is.....of four children.
A. older B. the oldest C.more old
- man in the world is 120 years old.
A. the oldest B. the older C. More old
- Everest is..... mountain in the world.
A. highest B. the highest C. the higher
- Sam is a terrible footballer. He'splayer in the team.
A. the best B. the baddest C. the worst

9. What's.....city in the world?
A. the large B. the largest C. largest
10. You are girl in our class.
A. the funny B. the funniest C. the funnier

Bài 4: Sắp xếp trật tự các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. /all /Tom's /the /of/is/cleanest/room
.....
- 2./Sienkiewicz / writers/, /is /the /Polish /greastest /one. /Of/all
.....
3. /one /of /is /the /in /world. /Egypt/oldest /countries/the
.....
4. /world, /second /is /the /the /Canada/country/in/largest
.....
5. /worst /was /us. /time /for /Winter/the
.....
6. /ugliest /know /is /town /I. /It /the
.....
- 7./country /road /is /widest /in /the. /This/the
.....
8. /is /the / world? /What/animal/smallest in /the
.....
9. /animal /Is /whale /or /the /the / in /world? /the/elephant/biggest/ the
.....
10. /worst /am /student. /I/in/the /class
.....

Bài 5: Dựa vào các từ gợi ý, viết câu so sánh nhất.

1. The Amazon River/ long/ river/ world.
.....
2. Everest/ high/ mountain/ world.
.....
3. My father/tall/family.
.....
4. Ngoc/ good/ our school.
.....
5. Bill/nice/of the class
.....
6. August/hot/month of the year
.....
7. This restaurant/good/in town
.....
8. Peter/bad/singer
.....
9. Will Smith / rich/ actor.
.....
10. Susan/ short/of the three.
.....

B. Động từ khuyết thiếu "must"

Động từ khuyết thiếu (Modal verbs) là động từ nhưng lại không chỉ hành động mà nó chỉ giúp bổ nghĩa cho động từ chính. Nó thường đứng sau chủ ngữ và đứng trước một động từ nguyên thể không có "to".

1. Cấu trúc câu với "Must"

Thể	Thể khẳng định	Thể phủ định
-----	----------------	--------------

Cấu trúc	S+must+V	S+ mustn't+ V
Chức năng	- Diễn đạt sự cần thiết, bắt buộc ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai - Đưa ra suy luận mang tính chắc chắn, yêu cầu được nhấn mạnh	"mustn't" có ý nghĩa chỉ sự cấm đoán.
Ví dụ	-I must pick up my mom at 5pm. (Tôi phải đón mẹ tôi vào lúc 5 giờ chiều) -You must be here before 8 a.m. (Bạn phải ở đây trước 8h sáng.) - You must be hungry after work hard. (Chắc bạn sẽ đói sau khi làm việc chăm chỉ.)	- The boy musn't play baseball in that garden. (Thằng bé không được phép chơi bóng chày trong khu vườn ấy) - You mustn't walk on the grass. (Cấm đi trên cỏ)

Note:Khi muốn diễn tả ý nghĩa "không cần thiết" người ta sử dụng "need not" (needn't)

Ví dụ:

Must I do it now? – No, you needn't. Tomorrow will be soon enough.

(Tôi có phải làm ngay bây giờ không? - Không, không cần đâu. Ngày mai làm cũng được.)

2. Phân biệt "must" và "have to"

Trong tiếng anh , MUST và HAVE TO đều mang nghĩa là "phải", dùng để diễn tả sự cưỡng bách, bắt buộc . Tuy nhiên sự khác biệt về cách dùng của hai động từ khuyết thiếu này được thể hiện ở dưới bảng sau:

• Thể khẳng định

must + v	have/has to + V
Mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói (mang tính chủ quan)	Mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài, do luật lệ, quy tắc hay người khác quyết định (mang tính khách quan)
Ví dụ: -I must finish the exercises. (Tôi phải hoàn thành bài tập.) - (Situation: I'm going to have a party.) Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống người nói sắp có một bữa tiệc, nên cần phải hoàn thành bài tập để đi dự tiệc.	Ví dụ: -I have to finish the exercises. (Tôi phải hoàn thành bài tập.) - (Situation: Tomorrow is the deadline.) Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống, ngày mai là hạn cuối cùng để hoàn thành bài tập nên người nói phải hoàn thành bài tập.

• Thể phủ định

mustn't+ v

Diễn tả V cấm đoán

Ví dụ:

-You must not eat that.

(Bạn không được phép ăn cái đó.)

- (Situation: It's already stale.)

Câu có thể được nói trong tình huống thức ăn đã thiu rồi, cho nên người nói cấm đoán người nghe không được ăn món đó.

don't/ doesn't have to + V

Diễn tả ý không cần thiết phải làm gì

Ví dụ:

1. You do not have to eat that.

(Bạn không cần phải ăn thứ đó.)

2. (Situation: I can see you dislike that.)

Câu này có thể được nói trong tình huống người nói thấy người kia không thích ăn món đó, do vậy không bắt buộc người đó phải ăn.

Bài 6: Đọc các câu sau, viết T (True) nếu câu đúng, F (False) nếu câu sai

1. You must wash your hands before lunch.....

2. You mustn't listen to your parents.

3. You must break the windows at school.
4. You must take a shower every day.
5. You mustn't eat fruit and vegetables every day.
6. You must eat lots of sweets if you want to lose some weight.
7. You must feed your dog every day.
8. You mustn't fight in the playground.
9. You must eat in class.
10. You mustn't be late.

Bài 7: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu "must" hoặc "mustn't" vào chỗ trống.

1. You..... tidy up room.
2. It's late. You make so much noise.
3. You..... smoke.
4. We..... be home by 9 o'clock. The film starts at 9:15.
5. You..... do your homework.
6. I finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.
7. Passengers talk to the driver whilst the bus is in motion.
8. You..... play with fire.
9. This is a dangerous tour. Children be accompanied by an adult.
10. You..... be home on time.
11. People..... stand on this bus.
12. You..... cheat in a test.
13. We..... do more exercise to stay fit.
14. You..... turn the music too loud.
15. There be something wrong with the engine of this car.
16. You..... help in the house.
17. We give up when we are so close.
18. You..... annoy your little sister.
19. This was a nice evening. We..... meet again.
20. You..... bite nails.

Bài 8: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu "must" hoặc "have to" vào chỗ trống thích hợp.

1. The sign says "Stop". You stop here.
2. The teacher said: "You do all exercises on page 21 in Look Ahead."
3. I help little brother more. My father said so.
4. I take these medicines. The doctor said so.
5. I write lines as a punishment because I threw the shoe of my neighbour through the window.
6. Sorry, I can't come. I clean my room. I can't live in such a mess anymore.
7. He clean the classroom because he had been throwing papers on the ground.
8. "You help me", said the mysterious woman to the detective.
9. "The rules be obeyed at all times!" shouted the headmaster.
10. "I go. Otherwise I'll miss my train."
11. I be home at one o'clock. Otherwise, my mother will kill me.

Bài 9: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu "mustn't" hoặc "don't have to" vào chỗ trống thích hợp.

1. There is a "No turn right" sign. You turn right.
2. The sign says "No smoking". You smoke here.
3. You have an appointment for this doctor. You can go and see him when you want.
4. You tell me. I already know.
5. The big boss will be at the meeting. You be late.
6. You can help me if you want to but you.....
7. You park your car there. That's the Director's place.
8. This area is off limits to everybody. You come here unless you are invited.
9. You to wear a tie in this company but they prefer it if you do.

10. You..... criticize David. He's doing the best he can.
11. You..... drive there. You can take the train.
12. You..... play tennis to enjoy watching tennis matches.
13. You..... buy me presents though I always appreciate it when you do.
14. It's really important to remember. You..... forget.
15. You..... tell anybody. It is a big secret.
16. We are already late. We waste any more time.
17. This is a sterile area. It must be kept clean. You..... bring any food or drink in here.
18. You..... come at 8.00. Come at whatever time suits you.
19. You..... smoke in this area. It is forbidden.
20. I go back again. The treatment is finished.
21. Jeans are not allowed in this company. You wear jeans.
22. You..... be mad to work here but it helps!
23. You..... buy the text book for this course, you can borrow mine.
24. You..... smoke in a gas station.
25. This bus is free! You buy a ticket.
26. You..... enter the park if your dog is not on a leash.

Bài 10: Điền mustn't hoặc needn't vào chỗ trống.

1. I take the umbrella. It won't rain.
2. I cross this bridge. It's closed.
3. We be late. The train will leave in 10 minutes.
4. You hurry. We have plenty of time
5. You smoke in here. It's forbidden. Look at that sign.
6. We have enough diesel, so we stop here.
7. You come if you don't want to.
8. They do the washing up, they have a dishwasher
9. You show this e-mail to anyone else. I'll trust you
10. The students forget their homework.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 11: Chọn đáp án thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống

1. Mexico is very city
A. large B. larger than C. the largest
2. I usually get up my brother.
A. Early B. earlier than C. the earliest
3. Sue's wearing a
A. New B. newer than C. the newest
4. A book is a thing to carry when you go on a trip.
A. heavy B. heavier than C. the heaviest
5. Antarctica is Spain
A. cold B. colder than C. the coldest
6. Her eyes are mine.
A. Pretty B. prettier than C. the prettiest
7. My desk is David's.
A. Tidy B. tidier than C. the tidiest
8. A lot of people drink milk.
A. Hot B. hotter than C. the hottest
9. A continent is a country.
A. Big B. bigger than C. the biggest
10. The moon is planet to earth.
A. The closest B. closest C. closer than

Bài 12: Khoanh vào phương án trả lời đúng.

1. There are 10 houses on our street. Our house is the (biggest/ bigger) one.

2. My brother sings better than I do, but I play guitar (the best/ better) than he does.
3. This is (better/ the best) song I have ever heard!
4. Tom is (stronger/ the strongest) than I am.
5. Out of all the students in our class, I am (the shortest/ shorter)
6. Everyone says that my sister is (the best looking/ better looking) than I am.
7. She is (the best looking/ better looking) girl in our school.
8. Your apartment is (cleaner/ the cleanest) than mine.
9. The weather was much (warmer/ the warmest) in England than in Spain last week.
10. John is (younger/ the youngest) than David.

Bài 13: Chọn Must hoặc Can điền vào chỗ trống.

1. That's ridiculous- yoube joking.
2. That's the phone-who..... it be?
3. They haven't eaten for hours- they.....be starving.
4. I'm busy this morning, but I see you this afternoon if you like.
5. You..... enter the country without a visa.
6. They're two hours late- there..... be something wrong.
7. She left two hours ago, so she..... have arrived by now.
8. My doctor says I..... lose some weight.
9. Do you smell something burning?

Bài 14: Khoanh vào đáp án đúng.

1. Weeat sweets in the classrooms.
A. Can B. must C. mustn't D. don't have to
2. I...do my homework. My teacher said so.
A. Can B. mustn't C. have to D. don't have to
3. This is the smoking room at this airport. You.....smoke in this room.
A. Must B. mustn't C. can D. don't have to
4. I..... listen to the music I like. My parents like it too.
A-Can't B.must C. mustn't D.don't have to
5. I..... watch TV late at night. My parents say I must go to bed early.
A-Can't B.must C. can D.don't have to
6. We.....be quiet
A-Must B.mustn't C.hasto D.don't have to
7. You..... speak on the mobile phone on an aeroplane.
A-Can B.must C. mustn't D.don't have to
8. You..... put the rubbish into the bin
A-Must B.mustn't C.hasto D.don't have to
9. You..... take photos in this museum. It's against the ruler.
A.Must B. can C. mustn't D. don't have to
10. You..... make noise in this area.
A. Can B. must C. mustn't D. don't have to

I. Use the correct form of the adjectives.

1. _____city in Canada is Toronto. (large)
2. February is _____month of the year. (short)
3. Mt. Everest is _____mountain in the world. (high)
4. Russia is _____country in the world. (large)
5. George is _____student in the class. (bad)
6. New York is _____city in the world today. (large)
7. The story you told was _____of all (funny)
8. The Pacific is _____ocean in the world. (large)
9. January is _____month of the year. (cold)

10. Which is _____ way from here to London? (good)

II. Complete the sentences with the correct form of comparatives or superlatives of the adjectives.

1. The Great Wall of China is the world's (long) _____ structure.
2. Ho Chi Minh City is the (big) _____ city in Viet Nam.
3. The Nile River is the (long) _____ river in the world.
4. Burj Khalifa in Dubai is the world's (tall) _____ building.
5. Fansipan is the (high) _____ mountain in Viet Nam.
6. Russia is the (big) _____ country in the world.
7. China has the (big) _____ population in the world.
8. Petronas Twin Towers in Kuala Lumpur is (tall) _____ than Sears Tower in Chicago.
9. Mexico City is (big) _____ than Tokyo.
10. The Mekong River is (long) _____ than the Red River.

III. Complete the text about the London Underground. Use *must* or *mustn't*.

When you travel on the London Underground, you (1) _____ smoke. You (2) _____ always buy a ticket and if you have a travel card, you (3) _____ use it on the same day. When a train arrives at the station, you (3) _____ stand back. You (5) _____ be polite to the staff.

IV. Write the sentences to show what you must do in these situations, using the words given in the brackets.

Example: I've got an awful headache. (take/ aspirin)

I must take an aspirin.

1. My hair is too long. (go/ barber's)
2. The kitchen is in a mess. (tidy it up)
3. I've got an awful toothache. (go/ dentist's)
4. I eat too many sweets. (stop eating)
- _____
5. I've got a pile of dirty clothes. (wash them)
- _____
6. I'm getting too fat. (lose weight)
- _____
7. My chair is broken. (buy a new one)
- _____
8. My bicycle is very dirty. (wash it)
- _____
9. I've got a terrible cold and a cough. (go/ doctor's)
- _____
10. I've written three important letters. (go/ post office)

V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the word following letter.

Dear Mary,

I'm very glad to know that you are going to visit Ha Noi this summer. Would you like me to tell you something (1) _____ Ha Noi before you go?

Well, Ha Noi is a cultural and political center of Viet Nam. In Ha Noi, you can find ancient houses and modern buildings. Ha Noi is a large city now, and there are many places worth (2) _____. You can visit Ho Chi Minh's Mausoleum, One-Pillar Pagoda, Kiem Lake and West Lake. Besides, you can enjoy the

Vietnamese food, (3) , grilled fish, spring rolls, steamed rolls and "pho" - a special dish of Viet Nam. However, I would like to recommend that you (4)___visit Ha Long Bay and Sa Pa because these places attract a lot of visitors due to their magnificent caves, beautiful limestone islands and natural landscapes in Ha Long Bay and their tribal villages, nice mountain slopes and jungles streams in Sa Pa.

I am looking forward to seeing you in Ha Noi and I hope you (5)___have a nice holiday in Viet Nam.

Love

Lan

- | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|------------|---------|
| 1.A. about | B. of | C. at | D. in |
| 2.A. seeing | B. see | C. seen | D. saw |
| 3.A. as | B. of | C. such as | D. such |
| 4.A. can | B. should | C. would | D. may |
| 5.A. have to | B. may | C. will | D. must |

VI. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

Ba Be Lake is the largest lake in Viet Nam. It is a mountainous area, nearly 250 km from Ha Noi. When you get to the entrance of Ba Be National Park, you have another 16 kilometre drive through the park to arrive at the small village "Pac Ngoi" of Tay Minority You can stay overnight in a local stilt house.

The next day you can get on your boat and have a trip on Ba Be Lake. You can enjoy the wonder landscape. During the boat trip can visit some caves and the Dau Dang Waterfall. You can also watch the local communities with their daily life.

- 1.What is Ba Be Lake?
- 2.Where is it?
- 3.How can we visit the small village "Pac Ngoi" of Tay Minority?
- 4.What can we visit during the boat trip on Ba Be Lake?
- 5.What can we watch the local communities?

VII.Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

Tra Co Beach in Quang Ninh province is 9 kilometers from Mong Cai. It has the (1)_____and the most romantic beach in Viet Nam. Tourists can enjoy the (2)___of white sand beaches and green sea water all year (3)_____. Visitors can (4)___enjoy the sunset or sunrise in Con Mang islet. You can visit Tra Co Communal House, Linh Khanh Pagoda, and Tra Co Church. If tourists want some fresh (5)___, they can find it from fishing boats. They can take part in "Tra Co Festival" from May 30 to June 6.

- | | | | |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1.A. long | B. longer | C. longest | D. much longer |
| 2.A. beauty | B. beautiful | C. of beauty | D. pretty |
| 3.A. over | B. long | C. round | D. longer |
| 4.A. be | B. be able | C. then | D. also |
| 5.A. seafood | B. menu | C. air | D. water |

VIII. Read the passage, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

Ayers Rock or Uluru is 860 metres above the sea level. You have to walk 9.4 kilometres around the base of Uluru. In 1958 it was declared the national park. You are mostly to see many kinds of birds and reptiles and more than 400 types of plants in the national parks. There is evidence to show that the Aboriginal people have lived in Central Australia for at 30,000 years. Uluru's rock art was 5,000 years old. In 1873, William Gosse became the first European to see Uluru, naming it after Sir Henry Ayers, the Chief Secretary of South Australia. Each year more than 250,000 people visit the park from all over the world.

True/ False

1. Ayers Rock is 860 metres under the sea water.
2. Ayers Rock became a national park in 1958.
3. There are not many types of birds and reptiles in the national park.
4. The Aboriginal people have lived there for a very long period of time.
5. Every year over a quarter of million visitors come to the national park from all over the world.

IX. Read the texts about geographical features of South America, and give the correct answer.

River

The Amazon is a very big river. It is more than 6,400 kilometers long. It flows through Peru, Colombia, Ecuador, and Brazil. There is more water in this river than any other river in the world.

Lake

Lake Titicaca is on the border between Bolivia and Peru. It is 3,810 metres above sea level. It is also a deep lake, in places about 180 metres deep. This lake is almost a small sea. It is more than 190 kilometres long and about 80 kilometres wide. There are also 41 islands in the lake.

Waterfall

The Angel Falls in Venezuela is nearly 1,000 metres high. In very hot weather the water can evaporate before it reaches the bottom.

Desert

The Atacama Desert in Chile is about 1,000 kilometres long. It is also 15 million years old. It is very dry: on average there is 1 mm of rain per year.

Rainforest

The Amazon Rainforest covers a billion acres including the countries Brazil, Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador and Peru. It produces about 20% of the planet's oxygen. More than 50% of the world's species of plants, insects and animals live in the Amazon rainforest.

1. How long is the Amazon?
2. What countries does it flow through?
3. Is it the biggest river in the world?
4. Where is Lake Titicaca?
5. How long is it? How wide is it?
6. How many islands are there in the lake?
7. How high is the Angel Falls in Venezuela?
8. Where is the Atacama Desert?
9. How long is the Atacama Desert?
10. How old is the desert?
11. What countries does the Amazon Rainforest cover?
12. How many species of plants, insects and animals live in the Amazon rainforest?

VIII. American National Parks: Read the texts and answer the questions.

A. The Colorado Rockies.

The Rocky Mountains were the home of the Apache, Blackfoot and Sioux Indians. They stretch from Alaska to New Rockies. The Rockies are high! The Colorado Rockies are the tallest. People call them "the roof of America" because the tops of the mountain here are 4,401 m. The Colorado Rockies are a popular area to go mountain climbing, fishing, hunting and skiing.

B. Yellowstone National Park.

This is in Wyoming and is older than the other national parks in America. It is famous for its hot springs and for its grizzly bears. Some of the bears are very big. They are 700 kg.

Answer the questions.

1. Who lived in the Rocky Mountains?
2. Why do we call the Rockies "the roof of America"?
3. How high are the tallest mountains in the Rockies?
4. What is Yellowstone famous for?
5. Is Yellowstone National Park the oldest national park in America?

XI. Write full sentences, using the suggested words and phrases given.

1. Mexico City/ big/ city/ world.
2. My brother's room/ big/ my room.
3. London/ small/ Tokyo.
4. Hung/ short/ Ba.
5. Fansipan/ high mountain/ Viet Nam.
6. Nam/ tall/ boy/ his class.
7. Hoa/ beautiful/ girl/ village.
8. The pagoda/ tall/ the temple.

TEST 1 UNIT 5

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. finger | B. lip | C. light | D. thin |
| 2. A. <u>be</u> an | B. <u>pe</u> a | C. <u>me</u> at | D. <u>he</u> avy |
| 3. A. <u>de</u> sert | B. <u>me</u> ter | C. <u>te</u> nt | D. <u>ne</u> ver |
| 4. A. <u>do</u> zen | B. <u>bo</u> x | C. <u>bo</u> ttle | D. <u>bo</u> dy |
| 5. A. <u>f</u> arm | B. <u>ba</u> r | C. <u>ta</u> ll | D. <u>ca</u> r |

II. Choose the best answer.

1. Sarah is _____ at Chemistry than Susan.

- | | | | | |
|--|---------|---------|-----------|---------|
| | A. good | B. well | C. better | D. best |
|--|---------|---------|-----------|---------|
2. I don't work so hard_____my father.
A. so B. as C. than D. more
 3. Sam is the_____student in my class.
A. tall B. most tall C. taller D. tallest
 4. No one in my class is_____beautiful_____her.
A. as / as B. more / as C. as / than D. the / more
 5. Going by train isn't_____convenient as going by car.
A. so B. as C. more D. A & B are correct.
 6. The test is not_____difficult_____it was last month.
A. as / as B. so / as C. more / as D. A & B are correct.
 7. Peter usually drives_____Mary.
A. more fast B. fast than C. faster than D. B & C are correct.
 8. She cooked_____than you.
A. well B. more good C. better D. more well
 9. This film is_____interesting than that film.
A. most B. less C. as D. so
 10. My salary is_____his salary.
A. high B. more high C. higher than D. more higher than
 11. He works_____we do.
A. harder B. as hard as C. harder D. so hard as
 12. No one in this class is_____Jimmy.
A. so tall as B. tall than C. the tallest D. more tall than
 13. Apples are usually_____oranges.
A. cheap than B. more cheap C. the cheapest D. cheaper than
 14. I know him_____than you do.
A. better B. more well C. good D. the best
 15. Marie is not_____intelligent_____her sister.
A. more / as B. so / so C. so / as D. the / of
 16. The Sears Tower is_____building in Chicago.
A. taller B. the more tall C. the tallest D. taller and taller
 17. Your bike is 3 times_____.
A. as fastly as mine B. as fast as me C. as fast as mine D. faster than mine
 18. The fatter I become, the_____I run.
A. quicker B. more slowly C. slower D. more fast
 19. He learns English_____than we do.
A. badly B. badlier C. more badly D. worse
 20. Their house is_____beautiful than mine
A. as B. more C. much D. so

III. Match column A with column B.

A	B	
1. do	A. sick people	1. _____
2. raise	B. the housework	2. _____
3. grow	C. in a primary school	3. _____
4. work	D. for a newspaper	4. _____
5. take care of	E. vegetables	5. _____
6. write	F. in a factory	6. _____
7. teach	G. cattle	7. _____

IV. Use the words in the box to complete the sentences below.

painters doctor teacher farmer journalists dentist pianist

1. She teaches the children in a school. She is a _____.
2. He takes care of people's teeth. He is a _____.
3. They paint pictures. They are _____.
4. He grows vegetables on the farm. He is a _____.
5. She plays piano. She is a _____.
6. He take care of sick people. He is a _____.
7. They write articles for a newspaper. They are _____.

V. Arrange these words in the box to divide 2 groups: Nouns or Adjectives

vegetables party cheap expensive family high dress lovely
apartment awful dinner tub good interesting big suitable

- Nouns: party,
- Adjectives: high,

VI. Complete the sentences below using the correct form of adjectives.

Ex: - Lan is _____ Hoa. (tall)

Lan is taller than Hoa.

- Armchairs are _____ chairs. (comfortable)

Armchairs are more comfortable than chairs.

1. A new house is _____ an old one. (expensive)
2. Motorbikes are _____ bicycles. (fast)
3. My television is _____ his television. (modern)
4. Summer is _____ Spring. (hot)
5. Jane is _____ her sister. (beautiful)
6. Skirts are _____ dresses. (cheap)
7. Her English is _____ my English. (good)
8. A bicycle is often _____ a car in busy cities. (convenient)

VII. Complete the sentences below using the superlative form of adjectives.

Ex: - Nam is _____ student in his class. (young)

Nam is the youngest student in his class.

- These toys are _____ in the toy store. (expensive)

These toys are the most expensive in the toy store.

1. Nile River is _____ river in the world. (long)
2. This book is _____ of these books. (interesting)
3. Ho Chi Minh City is _____ city in Viet Nam. (big)

4. They are _____ students in my class. (good)
5. These house are _____ in the village. (beautiful)
6. Winter is _____ season in the year. (cold)
7. Airplane is _____ means of transport. (fast)
8. He is _____ person in the meeting. (important)

VIII. Complete the sentences with *must* or *mustn't*.

1. You _____ help your mother with the heavy box.
2. It's very cold. You _____ go out.
3. You _____ look after the house when your parents are awaff
4. You _____ wash your face in the morning.
5. You _____ take your umbrella because it's raining.
6. You _____ drink that milk, it's very hot.
7. You _____ make noise in the class.
8. It's dangerous, you _____ touch that wire.
9. You _____ be rude to your teacher.
10. In the class, you _____ study hard.

IX. Give the correct form of superlative.

1. This is a **TALL** building.
→ This is the _____ building in London.
2. That was an **EASY** exercise.
→ That was the _____ exercise of the test.
3. This is a **COMFORTABLE** armchair.
→ This is the _____ armchair in this shop.
4. This is a **BIG** cheese burger.
→ This is the _____ cheese burger of the McDonald's Company.
5. That was a very **BAD** conversation.
→ That was the _____ conversation I have had.
6. That was a **DIFFICULT** exercise.
→ That was the _____ exercise of the test.
7. He's got a **GOOD** pen.
→ He's got the _____ pen of the class.
8. This is an **INDIFFERENT** pupil
→ This is the _____ pupil of my class.
9. He is a **FUNNY** boy.
→ He is the _____ boy in the world.
10. He is **LESS** young than the others.
→ He is the _____ young student of my class.

X. Choose the word (A, B, C, or D) that best fits each of the blank spaces.

We live in the suburbs, and it's just too (1) _____! There aren't (2) _____ shops, and there are certainly (3) _____ clubs or theaters. (4) _____ a lot of parks, good schools, and very (5) _____ crime: but nothing ever really happens here. I would really love (6) _____ downtown.

(suburb (n) : ngoại thành)

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. noisy | B. noisily | C. quiet | D. quietly |
| 2. A. much | B. many | C. more | D. a lot of |
| 3. A. not | B. nothing | C. none | D. no |
| 4. A. Has | B. Having | C. There is | D. There are |
| 5. A. little | B. less | C. many | D. lots of |

6. A. to live B. living C. to living D. a & b

XI. Read the following passage and choose the item (A, B, C, or D) that best answers each of the questions about it.

My neighborhood is very convenient - it's near the shopping center and the bus station. It is also safe. But those are the only good things about living downtown. It is very noisy - the streets are always full of people! The traffic is terrible, and parking is a big problem! I can never park on my own street. I'd like to live in the suburbs.

1. What does the word 'convenient' in line 1 mean?
A. close to something B. beautiful
C. far from other places D. noisy
2. What does the word 'it' in line 2 refer to?
A. the author's neighborhood B. shopping center
C. bus station D. downtown
3. It's easy to _____.
A. find a place to park B. live in the suburbs
C. move to another place D. go to the bus station
4. The author _____.
A. likes to live in the suburbs
B. thinks that his/ her neighborhood is too quiet
C. thinks that living in the suburbs is very convenient
D. feels that his/her neighborhood is not safe
5. Which of the following is true?
A. The author's neighborhood is inconvenient.
B. The author doesn't want to move to anywhere.
C. It's too difficult for the author to find a place to park his/her car.
D. Living downtown is better than living in the suburbs.

XII. Use the structure "What + (a/ an) + adj + noun!" to make exclamative sentences.

Ex: - The girl is very beautiful. → *What a beautiful girl!*

1. The weather is very awful. →
2. The meal is very delicious. →
3. The boy is very clever. →
4. The pictures are very colorful. →
5. The dress is very expensive. →
6. The milk is sour. →

XIII. Give the correct form of comparison.

0. He is (intelligent) student I have ever met.

→ *He is **the most intelligent** student I have ever met.*

1. It's (difficult) decision I've ever made in years.

→

2. Mr. Bush is (delightful) person I have ever known.

→

3. Dick is (careful) of the three workers.

→

4. Peter is (tall) student in my class.

→

5. What's (good) film you have ever seen?

→

6. She is (old) child in the family.

-
 7. He is (intelligent) student in my class.
 →
 8. Of the two sisters, Linda is (beautiful).
 →
 9. It is (interesting) book I have ever read.
 →
 10. This is (big) house I have ever seen.
 →

TEST 2 (UNIT 5)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>r</u> ed | B. <u>t</u> ent | C. <u>e</u> nd | D. <u>f</u> orest |
| 2. A. <u>l</u> ake | B. <u>b</u> ag | C. <u>t</u> ake | D. <u>n</u> ature |
| 3. A. <u>i</u> sland | B. <u>p</u> laster | C. <u>c</u> ost | D. <u>l</u> ongest |
| 4. A. <u>m</u> ap | B. <u>a</u> rea | C. <u>h</u> at | D. <u>p</u> lan |
| 5. A. <u>p</u> ost | B. <u>c</u> ost | C. <u>q</u> uestion | D. <u>c</u> oast |

II. Choose the correct answers.

11. Tra Co beach is _____ beach in Viet Nam.
 A. long B. longer C. longest D. the longest
12. Mount Everest is the highest mountain _____ the world.
 A. in B. on C. at D. of
13. The islands in Ha Long Bay are named _____ things around us.
 A. in B. after C. with D. at
14. It is often rainy in Hue, _____ remember to bring an umbrella.
 A. but B. or C. so D. must
15. Which city is _____: Ha Noi or Ho Chi Minh City?
 A. large B. larger C. largest D. the largest
16. "Do you finish packing"? – "Yes. All my things are in my _____"
 A. back B. backpack C. back pack D. plaster
17. Ha Long Bay is Vietnam's _____ wonder.
 A. most beautiful natural B. most natural beautiful
 C. the most beautiful natural D. the most natural beautiful
18. The Amazon _____.
 A. Rainforest B. Rainy Forest C. Wet Forest D. Wetter Forest
19. _____ is a large thick bag for sleeping in, especially when you are camping.
 A. A sleeping bag B. A sleep bag C. A sleepy bag D. A bag for sleeping
20. If we had a _____, we wouldn't get lost.
 A. backpack B. ruler C. compass D. painkiller
21. You _____ travel alone to the mountain. Always go in a group.
 A. must B. mustn't C. do D. don't
22. People think Ayers Rock is _____ in the evening when it is red.
 A. good B. better C. best D. the best
23. You _____ take a lot of warm clothes when you go to Sa Pa in winter.
 A. must B. mustn't C. can D. can't
24. Ba Be Lake is the largest _____ lake in Viet Nam.
 A. fresh B. freshwater C. water D. mount
25. The Imperial City in Hue is the greatest _____.

- A.tourist attraction B.tourist attractions C.tour attraction D.attraction tourist
26. Ha Long Bay is the number one _____ in Viet Nam.
- A.nature wonder B.natural wonder C.wonderful nature D.wonder nature
27. You _____ be late for school. It's against the school regulations.
- A. must B.mustn't C.can D.can't
28. You _____ all necessary things along with you before you start your trip.
- A.takes B.won't take C.must take D.mustn't take
29. The boat trip to Ca Mau, the southern tip of Viet Nam, was _____ experience of my life.
- A.good B.better C.best D.the best
30. You must remember to bring a _____ - it's very useful when you go into a cave because it's very dark there.
- A.scissors B.torch C.clock D.compass

III. Match a travel item in column A with its meaning in column B, and write the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
	31. compass	a) a large thick bag for sleeping in, especially when you are camping.
	32. backpack	b) medicine used to reduce or remove physical pain.
	33. sleeping bag	c) a device for finding direction, with a needle always pointing north
	34. painkiller	d) a device used for cutting materials such as paper, cloth or hair
	35. scissors	e) a large bag used to carry things on your back

IV. Match the questions in column A with the answers in column B, and write the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
	36. What things can you do in Hue?	a) It's Fansipan.
	37. What is the highest mountain in Viet Nam?	b) Travelling by bus is the best way.
	38. What is the other name for Ayers Rock?	c) In Ninh Binh Province, about 130 km southwest of Ha Noi.
	39. Where is Cuc Phuong National Park?	d) We can visit many museums, art galleries, and temples.
	40. What is the best way of travelling in a city?	e) Uluru. Local people call it Uluru.

V. Complete the following passage, using the words in the box.

study landscapes familiar water seen
wavesbeach considered moving clouds

Mui Ne is located 24 km north-east of the city of Phan Thiet. It is a fishing village as well as a (41) _____ tourism area in Binh Thuan Province. It is found on Highway N0. 706, and is famous for sweeping sand dunes and beautiful rows of palm trees. The (42) _____ is shallow and sloped, the (43) _____ is clean and blue and the sun rarely hides behind (44) _____.

Besides beaches and sand dunes, there are also beautiful (45) _____ such as Suoi Tien (Fair Spring), the Ong Hoang Building, and the Poshanu Cham Tower.

It has long been (46) _____ the "Hawaii" of Viet Nam. It has (47) _____ roads under coconut trees, a beautiful beach and cliffs. The typical scenery of this place lies in the (48) _____ lines of golden sand, and when they are (49) _____ from distance, they look like moving (50) _____.

VI. Read the passage, and answer the questions.

The Amazon River in South America is an amazing and important river for the planet.

The Amazon River carries more water than any other river in the world. In fact, the Amazon River is responsible for twenty percent of fresh water that flows into the world's oceans.

The Amazon River is the second longest river in the world (the Nile River in Africa is the longest), and about 6,400 km long.

The Amazon River has the largest area of land that flows into the river, and more tributaries than any other river in the world - more than 200 tributaries.

51. How many percentage of fresh water flowing into the world's oceans is the Amazon River responsible for?

52. Does the Amazon River carry more water than any other river in the world?

53. How long is the Amazon River?

54. What is the longest river in the world?

55. How many tributaries does it have?

VII. Use the following sets of words and phrases to write complete sentences.

56. Phu Quoc Island/ large/ island/ Viet Nam.

57. Cuc Phuong National Park/ old/ national park/ Viet Nam.

58. Cat Tien National Park/ large/ national park/ Viet Nam.

59. Landmark 72 in Ha Noi/ high/ building/ Viet Nam.

60. Asia/ big/ continent/ world.

VIII. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

61. Ho Chi Minh City with the population of over 8 million is bigger than any other cities in Viet Nam.

Ho Chi Minh City is the

62. Angel Falls is over 1,000 feet higher than any other falls in the world.

Angel Falls is _____

63. Lake Superior in North America is a freshwater lake; it is larger than any other freshwater lakes in the world.

Lake Superior in North America is _____

64. Remember to bring the compass: if not we will get lost in the forest.

You must

65. Take a waterproof coat during your trip to Fansipan Mountain because it is rainy there.

You _____

66. It is very important that you arrive on time at school.

67. It is very dangerous to walk alone after 10 pm in that park.

You _____

68. Taking a boat trip around the islands in Ha Long Bay is the most important thing of the trip.

You _____

69. Antarctica is colder than any other place in the world.

Antarctica is _____

70. It is wrong of us to write on the walls or tables in our classroom.

We _____

TEST 3 UNIT 5

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>f</u> orest | b. <u>w</u> onder | c. <u>r</u> ock | d. <u>l</u> ost |
| 2. a. <u>c</u> ave | b. <u>b</u> ay | c. <u>v</u> alley | d. <u>l</u> ake |
| 3. a. <u>bo</u> ots | b. <u>sc</u> issors | c. <u>c</u> aves | d. <u>mo</u> untains |
| 4. a. <u>d</u> iverse | b. <u>i</u> sland | c. <u>s</u> cissors | d. <u>r</u> ight |
| 5. a. <u>b</u> each | b. <u>c</u> heese | c. <u>ch</u> ange | d. <u>ch</u> emistry |

II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Ha Long Bay is famous _____ its scenic rock formations.
a. to b. with c. for d. by
- Titov island in Ha Long Bay was named _____ a Russian cosmonaut, Ghermann Titov.
a. for b. with c. after d. by
- You _____ look at other students' work. It's against the rules.
. must b. should c. shouldn't d. mustn't
- The Sahara is the third largest _____ in the world.
a. island b. desert c. valley d. mountain
- When hiking overnight, don't forget to bring the _____. It will keep you warm at night.
a. sleeping bag b. hiking boots c. sun cream d. painkillers
- The Amazon River is _____ river in the world.
a. the wider b. wider than c. the widest d. widest
- _____ is the coldest place in Vietnam?
a. Who b. What c. Which d. When
- Peter must _____ this essay today. He's going out tomorrow.
a. finish b. finishes c. finishing d. to finish
- Which is _____, the West Lake or the Sword Lake?
a. large b. larger c. largest d. the largest
- The Grand Canyon is one of the natural _____ of the world.
a. materials b. sights c. scenery d. wonders

III. Write the names of natural wonders.

waterfall lake forest cave desert island valley river

- | | |
|---|-------|
| 1. A large area of land where there is almost no water, rains, trees, or plants | _____ |
| 2. A large area of water that flows towards the sea | _____ |
| 3. A large area of water that is surrounded by land | _____ |
| 4. A piece of land that is completely surrounded by water | _____ |
| 5. A place where a stream or river falls down from a high place | _____ |
| 6. A large area of land that is covered with a lot of trees | _____ |
| 7. A low area of land between mountains or hills | _____ |
| 8. A large hole in the side of a hill or under the ground | _____ |

IV. Complete the sentences with the words from the box.

plasters	painkillers	suncream	sleeping bag	walking boots
scissors	compass	tent	torch	waterproof coats

1. A _____ is a warm bag that you sleep in, especially when camping.
2. A _____ is a temporary shelter you use when you go camping.
3. Have you got any _____? I've cut my finger.
4. Don't shine your _____ straight into my eyes!
5. She took some strong _____ for her headaches.
6. You should put _____ on your skin to protect it from the harmful effects of the sun.
7. We are going hiking this weekend, so I need a new pair of _____.
8. A _____ shows you which direction is north.
9. _____ will keep you safe and dry, whether you're spending a day out in the rain.
10. Could you pass me those _____, please. These don't cut very well.

V. Fill the blanks with the comparative and superlative degrees of the following words.

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
1. high		
2. narrow		
3. good		
4. bad		
5. exciting		
6. far		
7. big		
9. large		
10. lazy		
11. many/ much		
12. little		

VI. Complete the sentences with the superlative form of the words listed below.

high delicious boring good dirty rich valuable bad large dry

1. That was _____ movie I've ever seen. I almost walked out in the middle.
2. Pizza is _____ food in the world!
3. Harry is _____ student in our class. He gets the top grades in every course.
4. The Pacific Ocean is _____ ocean in the world. It covers about 170 million square kilometers.
5. The Atacama desert is _____ desert in the world. It receives just 1 mm of rain per year.
6. He is _____ speaker I have ever heard. Half the audience fell asleep during his speech.
7. Mount Everest is _____ mountain in the world.
8. That is _____ painting in the art gallery. It's worth a million dollars.
9. Switzerland is one of _____ countries in the world.
10. Arthur hates to clean. He has _____ apartment I've ever seen.

VII. Write the superlative form of the words given.

1. One World Trade Center is _____ (tall) building in the United States.
2. My mother is _____ (good) cook in the world.
3. Terrence Tao is _____ (intelligent) person in the world.
4. Where are _____ (nice) beaches in your country?
5. Hawaii is _____ (interesting) place I've ever been to.
6. Dave is _____ (untidy) person in class.

7. July is generally _____(hot) month of the year.
8. The blue whale is PhuQuoc is _____(heavy) animal on earth.
9. Phu Quoc is _____(large) island in Vietnam.
10. I think it is one of _____(boring) war films I've ever seen.

VIII. Put the adjectives in the correct form (comparative or superlative).

1. Lake Baikal in Russia is _____lake in the world. (deep)
2. Which is _____, the Sahara Desert or the Gobi Desert? (hot)
3. With a high of 979 meters (3,212 ft), Angel Falls is the world's _____waterfall. (high)
4. Mount Kilimanjaro in Africa is _____than Mount Everest in Asia. (low)
5. The Yangtze is _____river in Asia. It is 6,385 kilometers long. (long)
6. Greenland is _____island in the world. It is about 2,2 million km². (large)
7. The River Thames is much _____than the Nile. (short)
8. The Atacama Desert in Chile is the world's _____desert. (dry)
9. The Amazon Rainforest covers an area 25 times _____than Britain. (big)
10. Waikiki Beach is one of _____beaches in Hawaii. (popular)

IX. Complete the text with the most suitable form of the adjectives in brackets.

London is one of (1) _____(large) cities in the world. Its population is(2) _____(low) than Tokyo and Shanghai, but it is one of (3) _____(popular) tourist destinations of all. London is probably (4) _____(famous) for its museums, galleries, palaces and other sights, but it also includes a (5) _____(wide) range of peoples, cultures and religions than many other places. People used to say that it was (6) _____(dirty) city too, but it is now much (7) _____(clean) than it was. It now has some of (8) _____(good) restaurants in Europe too.

X. Write the comparative and superlative form of the adjectives in brackets.

1. That apartment block is _____(ugly) one I've ever seen.
2. It is _____(enjoyable) to read the story than to see the film.
3. Which is _____(high), Mount Everest or K2? - Mount Everest.
4. Antarctica is one of _____(cold) places on earth.
5. Buying things from plastic is _____(bad) than buying things from recycled paper.
6. At present, Son Doong Cave is _____(famous) cave in Quang Binh province.
7. This flat is nicer, but it's _____(far) from the city center than the other one.
8. The boat trip was _____(good) experience of my life.

XI. Match the questions with the answers.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. What is Tuan Chau? | a. Visit Dragon Bridge, Ba Na Hill, Marble Mountain, and relax on beautiful beaches. |
| 2. Where is Mount Everest? | b. They can get there by boat. |
| 3. What is the highest mountain in Vietnam? | c. It's an island in Ha Long City. |
| 4. How can visitors get to the Falls? | d. It's Uluru. |
| 5. What is the other name for Ayres Rock? | e. It's Fansipan. |
| 6. What can we do in Da Nang? | f. It's on the border between Nepal and China. |
| 7. How far is Ha Long Bay from Hanoi? | g. Tent, sleeping bag, torch, sun cream and First Aid Kit. |
| 8. What must you bring when going camping? | h. It's about 170km. |

XII. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

The Ha Long Bay is (1) _____ in Quang Ninh Province in Vietnam. The name of the bay is roughly translated to descending dragon in Vietnamese. The bay is a UNESCO World Heritage (2) _____ and is

lined by over a 1600 limestone islands and islets.

Legend has it that, when the Vietnamese were protecting their territory (3)_____invaders, they offered prayers to their gods who then sent dragons as the protectors of the place. (4)_____the invaders were approaching via sea, the dragons spat out Jewels creating islands that lined the bay and obstructed the ships and boats of the invaders.

Ha Long Bay is one of the (5)_____popular tourist destinations and is visited by hundreds of thousands of tourists each year. You can opt for a (6)_____cruise, that will take you as close to a lot of these islets.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. a. visited | b. located | c. followed | d. discovered |
| 2. a. Nature | b. Sight | c. Wonder | d. Site |
| 3. a. from | b. with | c. to | d. by |
| 4. a. What | b. Where | c. When | d. Which |
| 5. a. much | b. many | c. more | d. most |
| 6. a. train | b. boat | c. plane | d. bus |

XIII. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

Victoria Falls is one of the Seven Natural Wonders of the world. It is the largest waterfall in the world. It is 1.7 kilometers wide and 108 meters high. Victoria Falls is located on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe, and travelers can access the falls through either Livingstone, Zambia or Victoria Falls, Zimbabwe. The Zambezi River, which originates in northern Zambia, serves as the fall's water source.

Victoria Falls was discovered by the Scottish explorer Dr. David Livingstone in 1855. He named the falls after Queen Victoria. The locals called the falls Mosi-oa-Tunya meaning "the smoke that thunders". Long before you even see the waterfalls you can hear the roaring of the water!

The months of June and July are probably the best time to view the falls. The water levels are still high enough to showcase the splendor of the falls, but the amount of water is less creating less spray and more visibility of the falls.

1. Where is Victoria Falls?
2. How high is the falls?
3. Is Victoria Falls the world's highest waterfall?
4. What is the other name for Victoria Falls?
5. Who discovered the falls?
6. When is the best time to visit the falls?

XIV. Complete the passages with the words from the box.

means limestone as width found largest much

Son Doong cave is world's (1)_____cave, located in Quang Binh province, Vietnam. It was (2)_____by a local man named Ho Khanh in 1991 and was recently discovered in 2009 by British cavers, led by Howard Limbert. The name "Son Doong" cave (3)_____ "mountain river cave". The cave was created 2-5 million years ago by river water eroding away the (4)_____underneath the mountain.

At about 9 kilometers in length, 200 meters in (5)_____and 150 meters in height, Son Doong Cave is (6)_____larger than Deer Cave in Malaysia and has replaced Deer Cave to take pole position

(7)_____ the world's largest cave.

XV. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given.

1. The film is not as interesting as the novel was. (more)
The novel _____
2. I've never read a worse book than this. (ever)
This is the _____
3. Travelling by bus is cheaper than travelling by train. (more)
Travelling by train _____
4. The other people in my office are much younger than me. (far)
I am _____
5. No students in the class is more intelligent than John. (most)
John _____
6. The table and the desk are the same size. (big)
The table _____
7. I thought the station was nearer. (than)
The station _____
8. I've never had a better friend than you. (the)
You are _____

UNIT 6: OUR TET HOLIDAY

A. VOCABULARY

- flower	/ 'flaʊ·ər/ (n):	hoa
- firework	/ 'faɪr.wɜ:k/ (n):	pháo hoa
- lucky money	/ 'lʌk i 'mʌn i/ (n):	tiền lì xì
- apricot blossom	/ 'eɪ.pri.kɑ:t 'blas·əm/ (n):	hoa mai
- peach blossom	/ pitʃ 'blas·əm/ (n)	hoa đào
- make a wish:		ước một điều ước
- cook special food:		nấu một món ăn đặc biệt
- go to a pagoda:		đi chùa
- decorate	/ 'dek·ə,reit/ (v):	trang trí, trang hoàng
- decorate our house:		trang trí nhà của chúng ta
- plant trees:		trồng cây
- watch fireworks:		xem pháo hoa
- hang a calendar:		treo một cuốn lịch
- give lucky money:		cho tiền lì xì
- do the shopping:		mua sắm
- visit relative:		thăm người thân
- buy peach blossom:		mua hoa đào
- clean furniture:		lau chùi đồ đạc
- calendar	/ 'kæl ən dər/ (n):	lịch
- celebrate	/ 'sel·ə,breɪt/ (v):	kỉ niệm
- cool down	/ kul daʊn/ (v):	làm mát
- Dutch	/ dʌtʃ/ (n, adj):	người /tiếng Hà Lan
- empty out (v):		đổ (rác)
- family gathering (n):		sum họp gia đình
- feather	/ 'feð·ər/ (n):	lông (gia cầm)

- first-footer	/ˈfɜːstˈfʊt/ (n):	người xông nhà (đầu năm mới)
- get wet (v):	bị ướt	
- Korean	/kəˈriən/ (n, adj):	người/tiếng Hàn Quốc
- remove	/rɪˈmuːv/ (v):	rủ bỏ
- rooster	/ˈruːstər/ (n):	gà trống
- rubbish	/ˈrʌbɪʃ/ (n):	rác
- Thai	/taɪ/ (n, adj):	người/tiếng Thái Lan
- wish	/wɪʃ/ (n, v):	lời ước

B. GRAMMAR

1. Should (nên) và Shouldn't (không nên) dùng để đưa ra lời khuyên

Should là động từ khuyết thiếu, do đó nó không cần chia theo các ngôi và luôn cần một động từ nguyên thể không "to" đi đằng sau

Thể	Thể khẳng định + Thể phủ định	Thể nghi vấn
Chức năng	Dùng để diễn tả lời khuyên, hay ý nghĩ điều gì là đúng, nên làm hoặc không nên làm.	Dùng để hỏi ý kiến hay yêu cầu một lời khuyên.
Cấu trúc	s + should/ shouldn't + V + (các thành phần khác).	Should + s + V + (các thành phần khác)? Yes, s + should. No, s + shouldn't.
Vi dụ	We should brush our teeth twice a day. (Chúng ta nên đánh răng hai lần một ngày.) We shouldn't waste water. (Chúng ta không nên lãng phí nước.)	Should we buy a new car? (Chúng ta có nên mua một chiếc ô tô mới không?) Yes, we should. (Có, chúng ta nên mua.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Đọc câu và điền should/shouldn't vào chỗ trống sao cho hợp lý.

- Tom.....eat so many lollipops. It's bad for his teeth.
- He's fifteen. Hedrive a car.
- Pregnant women smoke as it can damage the baby.
- Wego somewhere exciting for our holiday.
- People..... drive fast in the town centre.
- You..... ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.
- I buy the dress or the skirt?
- She tell lies.
- That's a fantastic book. Youread it
- The doctor said: youeat healthy food. You eat fast food. You watch so much TV. You walk 1 hour a day. You drink fruit juice and water. Youdrink wine or beer.
- You..... be so selfish.
- I don't think yousmoke so much.
- You..... exercise more.
- I think I you try to speak to her.
- You are overweight. Yougo on a diet.
- Where..... we park our car?
- You..... never speak to your mother like this.
- The kidspend so much time in front of the TV.
- I tell her the truth or should I say nothing?
- I think wereserve our holiday in advance.

Bài 2: Nối câu ở cột A (tình huống) với cột B (lời khuyên) sao cho hợp lý.

Cột A	Cột B
1. It's too far to walk.	a. You should learn the language before you go.
2. Someone doesn't know which way to go.	b. You should ask a policeman.
3. Someone is going to live overseas.	c. You should wear an overcoat.
4. It's going to be a cold day.	d. You should pay by cheque.
5. Someone is feeling hot and has a headache.	e. You should call the police.
6. Someone has seen somebody breaking into a shop window.	f. You should see a doctor.
7. Someone hasn't got any money with them.	g. You should take a rest.
8. It's raining.	h. You should take a taxi.
9. Someone has to get up early in the morning.	i. You should set your alarm clock.
10. Someone is tired out.	j. You should take an umbrella.

1..... 2..... 3..... 4..... 5.....
6..... 7..... 8..... 9..... 10.....

Bài 3: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

- up/I / smoking/. / should/ give
.....
- I/ not/?/ tell/ her/ or/ Should
.....
- think/should/I/take/you/easy/. / it
.....
- What/should/time/come/?/I
.....
- Jeff/ much/. /work/ so/ shouldn't
.....
- We/ our/ take/ should/ umbrellas/.
.....
- don't/ accept/ this/ Anita/ job/. / think /I /should
.....
- you/ should/ sure/ we/ Are/ it/?/ do
.....
- What /should/ is/ do/ home/, /go/ you
.....
- speak/ should/ think/ to/ Do/ police/?/ you/ the/I
.....

Bài 4: Dựa vào các gợi ý dưới đây để đưa ra lời khuyên cho mỗi tình huống sau.

Take medicine / take up swimming/ worry about it/ eat so much sweets/ do little jobs or go babysitting/ ask your teacher to explain it again/ study harder/ watch too much television/ i practice a lot/ get up earlier

- We are often late for school.

.....
2. My friends laugh at me because I don't have expensive clothes.
.....

3. My mother has a terrible headache.
.....

4. don't understand how to give advice in English.
.....

5. My brother gets very bad marks at school.
.....

6. We're going to write a Maths test tomorrow.
.....

7. My sister can't swim and she wants to go to Greece next summer.
.....

8. I always feel tired
.....

9. My friends love eating and they're very fat.
.....

10. I want to buy some new clothes but I don't have any money.
.....

Bài 5: Chọn động từ thích hợp trong bảng dưới đây để điền vào chỗ trống.

clean eat fasten go stay study take visit watch

1. If you have time you shouldthe National Museum.

2. When you are driving a car, you shouldyour seatbelt.

3. When you play football, you shouldthe ball .

4. It's late and you are tired. You should to bed.

5. You should..... your teeth at least twice a day.

6. It's too far from here. You shoulda taxi to get there.

7. If you want to pass the exam, you should..... more.

8. He wants to lose weight, so he shouldless

9. It's raining now. I think you should an umbrella.

10. He is ill. He should..... at home.

Bài 6: Dựa vào các gợi ý sau, viết câu với cấu trúc should hoặc shouldn't.

1.(eat between meals) **You**

2.(go on a diet) **You**

3.(get exercise) **You**

4.(drink soda) **You**

5.(eat more vegetables) **You**

6.(eat apple) **You**

7.(eat too much bread) **You**

8.(only drink plain water) **You**

9. (eat too much chocolate) **You**

10. (change your health habits) **You**

B . Will (sẽ) và Won't (sẽ không) dùng để nói về dự định trong tương lai

Will và Won't cũng là động từ khuyết thiếu, do đó nó không cần chia theo các ngôi và luôn cần một động từ nguyên thể không "to" đi đằng sau.

Thể	Thể khẳng định + Thể phủ định	Thể nghi vấn
Chức năng	Dùng để nói về tương lai, dự định, dự đoán, lời hứa chắc chắn.	Đưa ra lời đề nghị, yêu cầu, lời mời.
Cấu trúc	s + will/ won't + V + (các thành phần khác).	Will/Shall + s + V + (các thành phần khác)?

Ví dụ	My family will visit our relatives at Tet. (Gia đình mình sẽ đi thăm họ hàng vào dịp Tết.) My mother will buy me some new clothes. (Mẹ tớ sẽ mua cho tớ một vài bộ quần áo mới.) I promise I will come back. (Tôi hứa tôi sẽ trở lại.)	Will you have a cup of coffee? (Anh dùng một tách cà phê nhé?) Where shall we meet tonight? (Tối nay, chúng ta gặp nhau ở đâu?) Will you empty the garbage can, please? (Bạn làm ơn hãy đổ thùng rác nhé?) Shall I pick you up? (Tôi đón bạn nhé?)
--------------	---	---

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 7: Điền Will/ won't vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

1. Theylet you come with him because they hate him.
2. Icross the ocean for you.
3. But Ido it because I am curious.
4. he come with us?
5. You..... get a new dress tomorrow.
6. Igo to South Africa. I want to go to China.
7. you be at home this afternoon.
8. No, II have a meeting at 4 o'clock.
9. Jim.....go to school tomorrow. He's ill.
10. If my parents give me some money. I.....buy clothes
11. Don't get up, Ianswer the phone
12. If you eat too much you..... put on weight.
13. Don't stay out too late, you..... get up on time.
14. I don't think shepass the exam, she isn't very good.
15. You may as well go home now, Ibe back for hours.
16. Go to bed and youfeel better tomorrow.
17. It's Mary's birthday next month. Shebe 18.
18. They are on holiday for two weeks so theybe here tomorrow.
19. they want dinner?
20. If the weather is ok, the plane..... leave on time.

Bài 8: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. (Will/ Shall) we have breakfast now ?
2. Are you sure it (will/ shall) be easy ?
3. (Will/ Shall) she have sugar in her tea ?
4. Do you think he (will/ shall) do it for me ?
5. When (will/ shall) we know the result ?
6. How long (will/ shall) they stay ?
7. What (will/ shall) we do now ? We are lost.
8. I hope they (will/ shall) be ready by 10.
9. (Will/Shall) I wait for you?
10. She (will/shall) turn 16 next June.
11. (Will/Shall) the messenger wait for the reply.
12. (Will/ Shall) I carry this bag for you?
13. He(Will/ Shall) be talking all the time without doing anything.
14. This machine((will/shall) work well without giving you any trouble.
15. (Will/ Shall) you give me your dictionary.
16. (Will/ Shall) you be kind enough to lend me your car?
17. On receipt of this letter you (will/ shall) leave for Mumbai at once.
18. (Will/ Shall) you come with me?
19. Tell him that he (will/ shall) never repeat that mistake.

20.(Will/ Shall) I put the heating on?

I. Put the words in the correct column according to the pronunciation of the underlined part.

communication	pronunciation	comparison	sound
tradition	<u>sh</u> ould	hou <u>s</u> e	be <u>s</u> t
per <u>s</u> on	<u>sh</u> ow	blo <u>ss</u> om	<u>sw</u> im
<u>s</u> chool	cl <u>ass</u>	wi <u>sh</u>	<u>sh</u> opping
spe <u>ci</u> al	<u>sm</u> ile	<u>sh</u> e	<u>s</u> ugar
<u>s</u> ure	<u>sh</u> y	<u>Engli</u> sh	<u>n</u> ation
roo <u>st</u> er	<u>sh</u> rimp	su <u>cc</u> ess	<u>d</u> ish
appea <u>r</u> ance	<u>p</u> atient	ru <u>bb</u> ish	int <u>er</u> national

/s/	/ʃ/
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|----------------------|
| 1.A. spe <u>ci</u> al | B.s <u>pr</u> ing | C.s <u>h</u> e | D.s <u>u</u> gar |
| 2.A. <u>ch</u> eer | B. <u>ch</u> ild | C. pe <u>ch</u> | D. <u>ch</u> orus |
| 3.A. tra <u>di</u> tion | B. con <u>di</u> tion | C. ce <u>le</u> bration | D. que <u>s</u> tion |
| 4.A. blo <u>ss</u> om | B. disc <u>us</u> sion | C. roo <u>st</u> er | D. compa <u>ss</u> |
| 5.A. ri <u>c</u> e | B. <u>c</u> elebrate | C. <u>c</u> alendar | D. <u>s</u> mile |

III. Put the words from the box in the appropriate rows of verbs.

<i>a pagoda</i>	<i>special food</i>	<i>peach blossoms</i>	<i>the house</i>	<i>decorations</i>
<i>old teachers</i>	<i>front door</i>	<i>a church</i>	<i>pine tree</i>	<i>flowers</i>
<i>relatives</i>	<i>the LED lights</i>	<i>apricot blossoms</i>	<i>friends</i>	<i>a calendar</i>
<i>home village</i>	<i>the living room</i>	<i>traditional food</i>	<i>flower market</i>	<i>a temple</i>

Go to _____

decorate _____

hang _____

buy _____

visit _____

cook _____

IV. Fill in each blank with "should" or "shouldn't".

- The students_____make so much noise.
- The film is interesting. You_____go and see it.

3. Tom_____drive carefully. The traffic is very heavy.
4. You_____smoke so much.
5. You_____give up smoking.
6. You_____spend more time on your homework.
7. The English girl wants to live in Viet Nam. She_____learn Vietnamese.
8. He_____drink so much coffee before bedtime.
9. Tom has a bad toothache. He_____go to the dentist's.
10. You_____go to bed so late every night.

V. Read the passage and then decide whether the sentences a True or False.

Viet Nam's New Year is known as Tet. It begins between January twenty-first and nineteenth. The exact date changes from year to year. Tet lasts ten days. The first three days are the most important. Vietnamese people believe that what people do during those days will influence the whole year. As a result, they make every effort to avoid arguments and smile as much as possible. Vietnamese people believe that the first person through the door on New Year's Day can bring either good or bad luck. Children receive lucky money as they do in other countries.

1. Tet occurs in late January or early February. _____
2. There are two weeks for Lunar New Year. _____
3. People should not argue with each other at Tet. _____
4. The first visitor on New Year's Day brings good or bad luck. _____
5. Only children in Viet Nam get lucky money. _____

VI. Read the passage, and answer the questions.

It's Christmas Day now. Mr. and Mrs. Brown are buying some presents for the family and their friends. They have got a new TV set and some records for dancing. Mr. and Mrs. Green live in Scotland and they are staying the Browns in London at Christmas. Mr. Green is decorating the Christmas tree in the sitting-room. Mrs. Green is putting some Christmas and colourful lights on it. All people are very happy.

1. What are Mr. and Mrs. Brown doing?
2. Where are Mr. and Mrs. Green staying?
3. What is Mr. Green doing?
4. What is Mrs. Green doing?

VII. Read the following passage, and decide the statements below are True (T) or False (F).

On Christmas Eve, everything is hurried and busy. Offices and public buildings close at one o'clock, but the shops stay open later. Most big cities, especially London, are decorated with colored lights across the streets and enormous Christmas trees. The trains, and buses are crowded with people traveling from all parts of the country to be at home for Christmas.

In the homes, there is a great air of expectation. The children are also decorating the house with colored lights. Christmas cards - with the words "Merry Christmas to You" or "Wishing You a Merry Christmas and Prosperous New Year", or "With the Compliments of the Season", etc. - are arranged on shelves, tables, and sometimes hung around the walls.

Meanwhile, the housewife is probably busy in the kitchen getting things ready for the next day's dinner. The Christmas turkey is being prepared, the pudding is inspected and the cake is got out of its tin.

In small towns and villages, one may still see carol-singers who come and stand in front of the house and sing or play Christmas carols. They collect money in a Christmas box. The money collected is to help old people.

1. The shops close at one o'clock on Christmas Eve. _____
2. Colored lights are decorated across streets in big cities. _____

3. People expect to be at home on Christmas Eve. _____
4. Trains and buses are almost empty on Christmas Eve. _____
5. Colored lights are also decorated at homes. _____
6. Christmas cards only have wishes for Christmas. _____
7. Turkey and pudding are traditional food at Christmas. _____
8. We can see carol-singers in the countryside. _____
9. The carol-singers collect money for themselves. _____
10. The money collected is used for a good purpose. _____

VIII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

It is a custom for all (1)_____ of a Chinese family to be present at home on the Eve of Chinese New Year for the family gathering. This custom is meant to show the unity of the family for the (2)_____ new year. On the (3)_____ five days of the Chinese New Year, no one in the family is allowed to sweep the floor. The Chinese believe that sweeping the floor (4)_____ drive away all good (5)_____ that the New Year can bring.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------|------------|---------------|
| 1. A. people | B. members | C. friends | D. characters |
| 2. A. to come | B. come | C. comes | D. coming |
| 3. A. one | B. first | C. next | D. all |
| 4. A. should | B. must | C. will | D. mustn't |
| 5. A. luck | B. money | C. news | D. time |

IX. Write two paragraphs about how people in Viet Nam and in Japan celebrate the New Year, using the information from the table.

Aspects	The Vietnamese	The Japanese
<i>Preparations</i>	- clean the house - decorate the house with peach blossoms and apricot blossoms - cook special foods	- clean the house - decorate the house with pine trees - cook special foods
<i>Activities on New Year's Eve</i>	- meet together and wait for the New Year to come - exchange good wishes - give lucky money to children - go to the pagoda	- watch TV and listen to the bell ringing - visit the pagoda
<i>Foods and clothes</i>	- eat <i>banh chung</i> or <i>banh tet</i> - put on best clothes or traditional clothes	- eat special foods and drink rice wine - wear kimonos or special dress
<i>People to celebrate with</i>	- among family members	- among family members

TEST 1 UNIT 6

I. Put the words into two groups (/ s / and / f /).

special	sure	school	wish	should	show
dish	shopping	rooster	summer	spring	success
blossoms	sound	smile	person	rubbish	rice

/ s /	/ ʃ /

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the others.

1. A. bread B. coffee C. meat D. tea
2. A. bath B. bathe C. great D. make
3. A. leave B. read C. ready D. week
4. A. hungry B. ppil C. Sunday D. up
5. A. but B. come C. so D. much

III. Choose the best answer

1. Hoa doesn't havefriends in Ha Noi.
A. much B. lots C. a lot D. any
2. How..... is it from your house to school?
A. often B. many C. far D. distance
3. How old will you.....on your next birthday?
A. be B. are C. am D. is
4. What.....lovely living room!
A. a B. an C. the D. -
5. The apartment at number 79 is.....of the three ones.
A. good B. the best C. best D. better
6. American students take part.....different activities at recess.
A. at B. on C. to D. in
- 7.....do you study in the library after school? - Once a week.
A. How often B. How far C. How many D. How long
8. Many young people enjoy.....community service.
A. do B. to do C. doing D. does
- 9.....is your telephone number?
A. When B. Which C. What D. How
10. Her birthday isFriday, August 20th.
A. at B. on C. in D. of
- 11.....you have a test tomorrow morning?
A. Will B. Do C. Are D. does
11. She will have a partyher birthday.
A. for B. on C. in D. to
12. What's your ?
A. birthday B. day of birth C. date of birth D. birth of day
13. Will he be free? -
A. No, he won't B. No, he doesn't C. No, he isn't D. No, he will
14. We will our old friends next Sunday.

- A. to meet B. meet C. meeting D. meets
- 15 you like a cup of tea?
- A. Would B. Will C. What D. does
17. He looks different.....his father.
- A. at B. with C. from D. to
18. Students have two.....each day.
- A. 20 - minutes breaks C. 20 - minute breaks
- B. 20 - minute break D. 20 minutes break
19. The United States' Library of Congress is one of thelibraries in the world.
- A. larger B. largest C. larger than D. large
- 20..... novels are very interesting.
- A. These B. This C. That D. It

IV. Give the correct form of the verbs in the simple future.

- _____ (they / come) tomorrow?
- When _____ (you / get) back?
- If you lose your job, what _____ (you / do)?
- In your opinion, _____ (she / be) a good teacher? -
- What time _____ (the sun / set) today?
- _____ (she / get) the job, do you think?
- _____ (David / be) at home this evening?
- What _____ (the weather / be) like tomorrow?
- There's someone at the door, _____ (you / see) it?
- How _____ (he / get) here?

V. Fill in the blank with *should* or *shouldn't*

Ex: Children ***should*** drink lots of milk.

- You _____ help your mother with the housework.
- _____ I go to the doctor? – Yes, you _____.
- Students _____ go to school late.
- She _____ brush her teeth after every meal.
- You _____ drink beer. It's not good for your health.
- _____ they stay up late? – No, they _____.
- We eat a lot of fruit and vegetables.
- Children _____ work too much.

VI. Give the correct form of the verbs.

- They _____ (do) it for you tomorrow.
- My father _____ (call) you in 5 minutes.
- We believe that she _____ (recover) from her illness soon.
- I promise I _____ (return) from school on time.
- If it rains, he _____ (stay) at home.
- You _____ (take) me to the zoo this weekend?
- I think he _____ (not come) back his hometown.

VII. Using "should" or "shouldn't" to make the correct sentences.

Ex: - You ***shouldn't study***. (You/study) so hard. Have a holiday.
 - I enjoyed that play. We ***should go***. (We/go) to the theatre more often.

- _____ (You/park) here. It's not allowed.
- What _____ (I/cook) for breakfast this morning?
- _____ (You/wear) a raincoat. It's raining outside.
- _____ (You/smoke). It's bad for you.

5. _____(We/arrive) at the airport two hours before the flight.
6. _____(I/send) now or later?
7. Do you think _____(I/apply) for this post?
8. What do you think _____(I/write) in this space on the form?
9. _____(I/eat) any more cakes. I've already eaten too much.
10. This food is awful. _____(We/complain) to the manager.

VIII. Complete the passage with the words in the box.

titles order it find should are both librarian show

How do you (1) _____ a book in the library? You (2) _____ look in the card index. These card (3) _____ the subjects. They are in alphabetical (4) _____. There (5) _____ two sets of cards in the library. One is authors and the other is (6) _____. If you know (7) _____ the author's name and the title of the book, you can find (8) _____ very easy. If the book isn't on the shelf, ask the (9) _____ to get it for you.

- card index (n): *bộ phiếu thư mục*
- title: *tên sách*
- author (n): *tác giả*

IX. Give the correct form of the verbs then answer the questions.

From about nine in the morning until four in the afternoon, Mr. Tuan (work) _____ in the fields with his brother. They (grow) _____ some rice, but their main crop (be) _____ vegetables. From twelve to one o'clock, Mr. Tuan (rest) _____ and (eat) _____ lunch. At four in the afternoon, they (come) _____ back home. Mr. Tuan (feed) _____ the animals again. Then he (clean) _____ the buffalo shed and the chicken coop. His work usually (finish) _____ at six.

1. What does Mr. Tuan do from nine in the morning until four in the afternoon?
.....
2. Who does he work with?
.....
3. What do they grow?
.....
4. What is their main crop?
.....
5. What does Mr. Tuan do from twelve to one o'clock?
.....
6. What time do they come back home?
.....
7. What time does his work usually finish?
.....

X. Make the correct sentences using suggestions.

1. She/ hope/ that/ Mary/ come/ party/ tonight.
.....
2. I/ finish/ my report/ 2 days.
.....
3. If/ you / not/ study/ hard/,/ you/ not/ pass/ final/ exam.
.....
4. You/ look/ tired,/ so/I/ bring/ you/ something/ eat.
.....
5. you/ please/ give/ me/ lift/ station?
.....

.....
XI. Make questions with the underlined words.

1. Our school year starts on September 5th.
.....

2. Summer vacation lasts for three months.
.....

3. The longest vacation is summer vacation.
.....

4. I usually visit my grandparents during my vacation.
.....

5. My mother works eight hours a day.
.....

6. Mr. Robinson is an English teacher.
.....

TEST 2 (UNIT 6)

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. decorate B. market C. resolution D. celebrate

2. A. smile B. so C. spring D. noise

3. A. travel B. parent C. hand D. bad

4. A. love B. pagoda C. mother D. come

5. A. lucky B. shy C. why D. by

II. Choose the correct answers.

11. Do you believe that the first footer _____ us good or bad luck?

A. must take B. should bring C. can make D. can bring

12. Students _____ copy their classmates' work.

A. should B. shouldn't C. must D. not

13. People in Laos _____ water over one another.

A. give B. throw C. take D. bring

14. The American _____ a midnight kiss with someone they love.

A. share B. take C. brings D. celebrate

15. People in many countries in the world often wear their _____ clothes on the New Year Day.

A. tradition B. traditional C. ordinary D. summer

16. On New Year's Day, children in Korea make a _____ to their parents or elders and wish them a long and healthy _____.

A. bow - live B. friend - lives C. bows - lives D. bow - life

17. I wish you a _____ life and _____ health.

A. long - best B. big - good C. long - good D. happy - bad

18. We should help our mothers _____ the table after the meal.

A. make B. to make C. clear D. to clearing

19. I will _____ my lucky money in my piggy bank.

A. keep B. spend C. borrow D. give

20. At Tet, many people present rice to wish _____ enough food throughout the year.

A. in B. at C. for D. with

21. We shouldn't play music _____ after midnight.

A. careful B. right C. loud D. easy

22. Some Vietnamese people don't eat shrimps _____ New Year's Day.

A. in B. on C. at D. during

23. The Times Square Ball begins its fall _____ millions of voices countdown the final seconds of the year.

24. A. when B. during C. throughout D. because
Children should help their parents_____their house_____flowers and pictures.
- A. repaint - with B. make - more beautiful C. decorate - in D. decorate - with
25. New Year's Eve is a night when members of a family often get_____.
A. together B. another C. other D. others
26. January 1st is a day when people in Europe and America_____New Year.
A. see B. remember C. celebrate D. spend
27. On New Year's Day, children_____lucky money_____red envelope.
A. get - in B. ask - on C. take - at D. have - with
28. In London people cheer and sing when the clock_____midnight on New Year's Eve.
A. gets B. strikes C. see D. goes
29. People believe that_____water over people will_____. a lot of rain in the New Year.
A. throw - bring B. throwing - bring C. to throw - bringing D. throwing - bringing
30. On New Year's Day, many people put on their best clothes and go to_____or visit their_____.
A. houses - friends B. pagodas - relatives C. pagoda - relative D. the main room - friend

III. Match a word or phrase in column A with its meaning in column B.

Answer	A	B
	1. eve 2. decorate 3. gathering 4. piggy bank 5. celebrate	a. a small box often in a shape of a pig that children use for saving money in. b. to do something special or enjoyable on an important day. c. the day or evening before an important event. d. a time when people come together e. to add something in order to make a thing more beautiful to look at.

IV. Choose the questions in column A with the answers in column B.

Answer	A	B
	1. When will we visit the pagoda? 2. Will we buy 'banh chung' for Tet? 3. Will you spend all your lucky money 4. What will you do to help your parents before Tet? 5. What shouldn't we do during Tet?	a. Well, I keep it in my piggy bank. b. We shouldn't play games all day. c. No, we will cook them ourselves. d. On the first day of Tet e. I help my father to repaint and decorate our house.

V. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following test.

There are many Chinese festivals in Hong Kong. The Western New Year starts on the first day of January but the Chinese begin New Year on the first day of the first moon of the Chinese calendar. Before New Year's Day comes, people clean and decorate their houses, (1)_____a lot of traditional food and go shopping for presents and new clothes. New Year's Eve is the time (2)_____every family gathers its members together for dinner.

People (3)_____the New Year with a music performance and a firework display to light up the sky.

On New Year's Day, they visit their friends and relatives. The children get lucky money in red envelopes. Many people go to the (4)_____to wish for good health and good luck. Chinese people in Hong Kong celebrate the New Year with (5)_____and happiness.

1. A. take B. bring C. cook D. sell
2. A. when B. after C. before D. during
3. A. meet B. see C. end D. celebrate
4. A. houses B. pagodas C. family D. camps
5. A. hopeful B. hopeless C. hope D. hoping

VI. Read the text, and then choose the correct answers.

The most important celebration holiday in China is the Lunar New Year. At this time, shops are closed. People celebrate by having parties, by paying friendly phone calls to their neighbours, and by visiting the temples or pagodas to promises for the New Year. Children walk through the streets, carrying colourful lanterns and paper figures. Fireworks are also set off to light up the sky.

The time of the New Year is also the time at which Chinese people decorate their homes. For example, the windows, which are made of thick paper are torn down, and new ones are put up. This is also the time during which people pay their debts. Everyone tries to settle all his bills before the beginning of the New Year. Before New Year's Eve, people make their homes attractive by decorating them with flowers and plants, and hanging brightly-coloured decorations.

1. This passage as a whole is _____ about .
A. paying debts B. China C. the Chinese New Year D. New Year's promises
2. The Lunar New Year is _____.
A. an important Chinese holiday B. the time for having large meals
C. a special time for children D. the time when no one is in debt
3. What can we infer from the passage?
A. The Chinese have only one holiday.
B. The Chinese New Year is happy.
C. The Chinese New Year celebration lasts seven days.
D. People don't go to church during the Chinese New Year.
4. Which of these sentences is NOT true?
A. Fireworks are set off to light up the sky.
B. Chinese houses are made of paper.
C. Chinese people pay debts at New Year's.
D. People also decorate the windows.
5. How can people make their homes attractive?
A. By decorating them with flowers and plants.
B. By decorating them with brightly-coloured decorations.
C. By hanging brightly-coloured decorations outside their homes.
D. By decorating them with flowers and plants, and hanging brightly-coloured decorations.

TEST 3 UNIT 6

rest.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>d</u> ecorate | b. <u>c</u> alendar | c. <u>c</u> elebrate | d. <u>c</u> lean |
| 2. a. <u>s</u> hopping | b. <u>s</u> ugar | c. <u>s</u> ure | d. <u>s</u> ummer |
| 3. a. <u>c</u> entre | b. <u>s</u> pecial | c. <u>d</u> ecide | d. <u>r</u> ice |
| 4. a. <u>p</u> resent | b. <u>s</u> ound | c. <u>s</u> weet | d. <u>s</u> ea <u>s</u> on |
| 5. a. <u>b</u> lossom | b. <u>c</u> hess | c. <u>m</u> essy | d. <u>p</u> assio <u>n</u> |

III. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. <u>s</u> hould | b. <u>a</u> round | c. <u>h</u> ouse | d. <u>s</u> ound |
| 2. a. <u>s</u> hout | b. <u>f</u> lower | c. <u>b</u> ow | d. <u>t</u> hrow |
| 3. a. <u>s</u> ure | b. <u>s</u> hout | c. <u>s</u> ing | d. <u>w</u> ish |

4. a. peach b. sweets c. eat d. feather
 5. a. celebrate b. cousin c. city d. cinema

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Vietnamese people usually return to their families _____ Tet.
 a. in b. on c. for d. during
- When the clock strikes midnight, colorful fireworks light _____ the sky.
 a. in b. up c. on d. over
- You shouldn't _____ things on the first day of Tet.
 a. make b. hang c. break d. cook
- Tet is the _____ time of the year.
 a. busy b. busier c. busiest d. most busy
- Tet is the biggest and most important _____ in Vietnam.
 a. festival b. decoration c. occasion d. tradition
- Tet is coming. We _____ clean and decorate our house.
 a. should b. shouldn't c. mustn't d. are
- I always _____ my grandparents a long life and good health.
 a. celebrate b. wish c. make d. bring
- The _____ is the first person to enter your house in the New Year.
 a. relative b. first cousin c. first footer d. rooster
- '_____ do Vietnamese people prepare for Tet?' 'They decorate their houses and cook special food.'
 a. What b. Where c. How d. How often
- 'In which country do people throw water at one another?' '_____
 a. Scotland b. Thailand c. The USA d. Denmark

V. Complete each sentences with an appropriate word.

- The Vietnamese _____ Tet in late January or early February.
- Children _____ their grandparents health and longevity.
- Tet is a time for family _____.
- Thousands of people gathered to _____ fireworks.
- Children receive _____ money in red envelopes.
- They believe that the first _____ on New Year's Day decides the family luck.
- New Year's _____ is on December 31.
- We _____ our house with flowers and plants.
- One tradition in Thai New Year is to throw _____ over people.
- Children _____ eat lots of sweets - it's not good for their teeth.

VI. Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions.

- The Vietnamese celebrate Tet _____ different times each year.
- Tet is the busiest time _____ the year.
- _____ New Year's Eve, people gather to watch the New Year fireworks.
- Vietnamese people always make their houses look beautiful _____ Tet.
- Tet is a time _____ family gatherings.
- This year, Vietnamese people celebrate Tet _____ February.
- Tet often falls _____ late January and early February.
- One tradition in Thai New Year celebration is to throw water _____ people.

VII. Mai is talking about her family's plans for Tet. Complete the sentences with the simple future (will + infinitive) and the suitable verbs from the box.

buy make clean visit celebrate cook go decorate give hang

- This year the Vietnamese _____ Tet in the middle of February.

2. My father_____our house with flowers and plants.
3. My grandma and my aunts_____Chung cakes.
4. My mother_____a lot of special food.
5. We_____apricot blossoms and kumquat trees.
6. My brother_____new calendars, lanterns and scrolls.
7. My sister and I _____ the house and furniture.
8. On the first days of Tet, my family _____ our relatives.
9. My parents_____us lucky money in the morning of the first day.
10. On the first day of Tet, we _____to the pagoda to pray for a good year.

VIII. Write sentences about what these children will do or won't do this New Year.

1. Hoa/ clean the furniture.
Hoa will clean the furniture.
2. Nga/ help her mother cook special food
3. Phong/ not buy fireworks
4. Vy and My/ wear their new dresses
5. Huy and Nam/ not go out to watch fireworks
6. Nguyen/ visit his grandparents
7. Nhu/ keep her lucky money in her piggy bank.
8. Minh/ not play card games

IX. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. Vietnamese people _____(celebrate) the Lunar New Year every year.
2. This Tet, my family _____(not buy) Chung cakes. We will make them.
3. Look! Mr. Quang _____(repaint) his house to welcome Tet.
4. You shouldn't _____(wear) white clothes on the first day of Tet.
5. People spend a few days _____(clean) their houses before Tet.
6. Tet _____(occur) in late January or early February.
7. _____(they/ give) a New Year party this weekend?
8. Phong loves _____(eat) traditional food during Tet.

X. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Tet is coming. It's our New Year _____. (celebrate)
2. Easter is one of the best times for a family _____. (gather)
3. They wish each other good _____for the New Year. (lucky)
4. You should keep _____by eating well and exercising regularly. (health)
5. Shrimps move backwards and you will not _____in the New Year. (success)
6. I will help my father with the house _____. (decorate)
7. Everybody around is cheering and singing _____. (happy)
8. Banh Chung is made of _____rice, pork and green bean. (stick)

XI. Match a sentence in column A to a response in column B.

A

B

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. What should we do on New Year's Eve? | a. My family will travel to Thailand. |
| 2. Will we buy peach blossoms this New Year, Mom? | b. Thanks a lot. May all your wishes come true! |

- | | |
|--|---|
| 3. I wish you a healthy new year! | c. On the first day of Tet. |
| 4. Do you go home at Tet? | d. We should go out to watch fireworks. |
| 5. Shall we have a dinner party on New Year's Eve? | e. For three days. |
| 6. What will you do during Tet holiday? | f. OK. Yes, let's. I'll make a cake. |
| 7. When will we visit grandparents, Dad? | g. No. We'll buy apricot blossoms. |
| 8. How long will we stay at grandparents' house? | h. Yes. Tet is a time for family reunion. |

XII. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

New Year is one of the most important (1)_____ in the United States. On New Year's Eve, most people go to the parties. At twelve o'clock at night, everyone says "Happy New Year" and they (2) _____ their friends and relatives good luck. New Year's parties usually last a long time. Many people don't go home (3) _____ morning. Another holiday, Halloween, is mainly for children. On this holiday children (4) _____ as witches, ghosts or other characters. Most children go (5)_____ house to house and say "Trick or Treat", asking for candy or fruit. If the people at the house do not give them candy, the children will play a trick on them. But this (6)_____ ever happens. Most people give them candy or fruit.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. a. competitions | b. festivals | c. decorations | d. traditions |
| 2. a. wish | b. exchange | c. bring | d. play |
| 3. a. in | b. on | c. for | d. until |
| 4. a. put | b. make | c. dress | d. set |
| 5. a. from | b. in | c. to | d. for |
| 6. a. mostly | b. hardly | c. usually | d. always |

XIII. Read the text carefully. Then answer the questions.

Lunar New Year, or Tet, is the biggest and most important festival in Vietnam. Tet often falls between late January and early February.

A great deal of excitement still builds up well before Tet. Streets are decorated with coloured lights and red banners. Shops are full of goods. People are busy buying gifts, cleaning and decorating their houses and cooking traditional foods.

Homes are often decorated with plants and flowers at this time. Peach blossom is traditional at Tet in the North while apricot blossom is traditional in the South. One of Tet's most special foods is bank chung, which is made of sticky rice, green beans and fatty pork.

On the days of Tet, people visit other family members or friends and they exchange New Year's wishes. Children receive their "lucky money" inside red envelopes. Many people go to pagodas to pray for a happy new year for themselves and their families. Both children and adults take part in games and various forms of entertainment. Tet is really a time of fun and festivals throughout the country.

1. When does Tet occur?
2. What do people do to prepare for Tet?
3. Where is apricot blossom the symbol of Tet?
4. What is Banh Chung made of?
5. What do children receive during Tet?
6. On the days of Tet, what do Vietnamese people go to pagodas for?

XIV. Read the passage and decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

New Year's Eve, 31st December, is a time for the British to eat, drink and party when they celebrate the

beginning of a New Year. Many people go to Trafalgar Square in London or a street party in their city. Others visit friends or go to pubs and restaurants, which are very crowded on that night.

There is a great atmosphere when everyone waits for Big Ben to strike midnight. Then people kiss and hold hands to sing the traditional Scottish song *Auld Lang Syne*. Many people also light fireworks at midnight. The main tradition is 'First Footing'. This means the first person to come into your house after midnight should be a tall dark-haired man. He should bring a piece of coal, some bread, salt or a bottle of whisky to bring good luck to the family.

A lot of people also make New Year's Resolution; they promise to do things like stop smoking or 'do more exercise' in the New Year. January 1st (and 2nd in Scotland) is a public holiday so their people can recover from their celebrations.

1. On New Year's Eve everyone stays at home.
2. People sing a traditional song at midnight.
3. There are no fireworks on New Year's Eve.
4. It is good luck for a blonde woman to be your first visitor after midnight.
5. Lots of people promise to change in the New Year.
6. New Year's Day is a public holiday in Britain.

XV. Rewrite these sentences, using *must*, *mustn't*, *should*, *shouldn't*.

1. Parking in this street is prohibited.
You _____
2. It's not a good idea to swim immediately after a meal.
You _____
3. It's really important to take this medicine three times a day.
You _____
4. It's a good idea to listen to the weather forecast before going camping.
You _____
5. It's a good for you to take exercise every day.
You _____
6. It's very important not to drink the water there. It will make you ill.
You _____
7. It's not good to eat lots of sweets.
You _____
8. It's against the rules to use your mobile phone in class.
You _____

TEST YOURSELF 2

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------|------------------------|
| 1. A. big | B. wish | C. fish | D. high |
| 2. A. pag <u>o</u> da | B. t <u>o</u> rch | C. <u>o</u> verseas | D. s <u>o</u> fa |
| 3. A. t <u>e</u> mple | B. m <u>e</u> ssy | C. d <u>e</u> corate | D. d <u>e</u> partment |
| 4. A. m <u>u</u> seum | B. w <u>i</u> nd <u>s</u> urfing | C. s <u>u</u> rround | D. d <u>i</u> verse |
| 5. A. t <u>h</u> rilling | B. t <u>h</u> en | C. t <u>h</u> rough | D. t <u>h</u> read |

II. Choose the correct answers.

6. Hoi An is a _____ city and it is famous for its old buildings, shops, pagodas and houses.
A. history B. historic C. historian D. young
7. My neighbourhood is great for outdoor activities _____ it has beautiful parks, sandy beaches and fine weather.
A. because B. so C. but D. and
8. "What are the people there _____?" - "They are very friendly."

- A. love** **B. liking** **C. like** **D. look**
 9. Ha Noi is _____ exciting than Viet Tri City.
A. much **B. much more** **C. more much** **D. only more**
 10. The Nile River is the _____ river in the world, _____ the Amazon is the widest.
A. long - so **B. long - because** **C. longer - but** **D. longest - but**
 11. The Himalayas, a mountain range, is _____ with forests and many kinds of plants and animals.
A. large **B. wide** **C. diversity** **D. diverse**
 12. If you want to go to the Himalayas, I think you _____ take a waterproof coat because it is cold and rainy there.
A. must **B. mustn't** **C. can** **D. can't**
 13. The meeting is very important, so you _____ be late!
A. must **B. mustn't** **C. should** **D. shouldn't**
 14. You _____ take all necessary things along with you before you start the trip.
A. should **B. shouldn't** **C. mustn't** **D. can**
 15. Tet is _____ for family gatherings.
A. time **B. the time** **C. a time** **D. times**
 16. Do you think the _____ time to plant trees is spring?
A. good **B. better** **C. best** **D. well**
 17. In the cinema we _____ eat or drink anything.
A. must **B. should** **C. shouldn't** **D. can**
 18. We _____ keep quiet in the library so that everyone can enjoy reading books.
A. should **B. shouldn't** **C. can** **D. can't**
 19. Many foreign visitors come to Ha Long Bay because of its natural _____.
A. beauty **B. beautiful** **C. pretty** **D. wonder**
 20. You can have the meaning of a new word by looking it _____ in a dictionary.
A. in **B. up** **C. on** **D. at**
 21. The Himalayas _____ the world's highest mountain - Mount Everest.
A. have **B. get** **C. takes** **D. contains**
 22. New Year is one of four important _____ in the United States.
A. parties **B. events** **C. festivals** **D. celebration**
 23. Is it true that Ha Noi is _____ city in Viet Nam?
A. the large **B. largest** **C. larger** **D. the largest**
 24. Your vocabulary will get _____ by reading a lot of books.
A. nicer **B. better** **C. easier** **D. higher**
 25. " _____ " - "It's one of the most beautiful beaches in the world." .
A. What is My Khe Beach in Da Nang like?
B. What does My Khe Beach in Da Nang look like?
C. How does My Khe Beach in Da Nang look?
D. What does My Khe Beach in Da Nang like?

III. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers the question about the passage.

Thanksgiving Day is a holiday that Americans celebrate the honor of everything the country offered to their ancestors, who were among the first immigrants to the United States. When they first came to America, they saw that there were enough food and opportunity for everyone. They were even helped by the Indians, who taught them how to grow all kinds of new vegetables, such as corn and yams, or sweet potatoes.

On Thanksgiving Day, it is traditional to eat a big meal together. Americans eat food that was found here by their ancestors. They usually eat turkey with sweet potatoes, Indian corn bread, and have pumpkin pie for dessert.

Every Thanksgiving Day, a giant parade is held by one of the most famous department stores in New York. It is an annual event. And at the end of the parade, children can even see Santa Claus, who is visiting from the North Pole. Santa Claus is invited to remind children and parents that Christmas is not far away.

26. Thanksgiving Day is celebrated_____.
- A. to honor the new country B. to remind people of cold winter
C. to honor their ancestors D. to remind people of Indians
27. The first white people to America were helped by Indians_____.
- A. to know how to grow new vegetables B. to have more opportunities
C. to form the new nation D. All are correct
28. The traditional meal on Thanksgiving Day is_____.
- A. a big meal with turkey, Indian corn bread, and pumpkin pie
B. everything they have
C. food provided by the Indians
D. food provided by Santa Claus
29. What is the main activity in New York on Thanksgiving Day?
- A. A giant parade is held by one of the most famous department stores.
B. A big march by Santa Claus.
C. A giant parade is held by Santa Claus, children and their parents.
D. A giant parade is held by the Indians.
30. Santa Claus is invited to the parade on Thanksgiving Day_____.
- A. to remind everyone that New Year is not far away
B. to remind everyone that a new Thanksgiving Day is coming
C. to remind everyone that Christmas is not far away
D. to remind everyone of their ancestors

IV. Write the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

31. Antarctica is colder than any other places in the world.
Antarctica is _____.
32. Doing morning exercises every morning is good for you.
You _____.
33. My father has a plan to repaint our house before Tet.
My father _____.
34. Fansipan is higher than any other mountains in Indochina (Viet Nam, Laos, and Cambodia).
Fansipan is _____.
35. Nam is the tallest student in his class.
Nobody in Nam's class _____.

V. Write the correct sentences, using the words or phrases given.

36. Tomorrow/ Hoa/ buy/ flowers/ her father's birthday.
37. Nobody/ my class/ better/ Maths/ Minh.
38. Twelve o'clock/ night/ everyone/ say "Happy New Year"/ they/ their friends/ relatives/ good luck.
39. How often/ you/ go fishing/ your father?
40. New market/ inconvenient/ because/ it/ far/ our flat building.

VI. Fill in each gap in the passage with one suitable word from the box.

<i>have</i>	<i>give</i>	<i>decorate</i>	<i>first</i>	<i>envelopes</i>
<i>wishes</i>	<i>shopping</i>	<i>festival</i>	<i>gatherings</i>	<i>love</i>

Tet is a national and family (41)_____. It is an occasion for every Vietnamese to (42)_____ a good time while thinking about the last year and the next year. At Tet, people (43)_____ streets and public buildings, almost all shops are crowded with people (44)_____ for Tet. Tet is a time for family (45)_____. At home, everything is tidy; people cook special food. First-footing is made when the (46)_____ visitor comes, and parents give children lucky money in red (47)_____. Tet is also a time for peace and (48)_____. During Tet, friends, relatives, and neighbours (49)_____ each other their best (50)_____ for the new year.

TEST YOURSELF 2

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. a. historic | b. exciting | c. island | d. firework |
| 2. a. calendar | b. celebrate | c. decorate | d. school |
| 3. a. wonder | b. compass | c. brother | d. forest |
| 4. a. beach | b. teach | c. feather | d. peaceful |
| 5. a. clothes | b. fireworks | c. scissors | d. mountains |

II. Choose the correct answer a, b, c, or d.

- People often clean and decorate their houses _____ Tet.
a. during b. after c. before d. on
- Turn left at the first traffic lights, and you'll see the supermarket straight _____.
a. away b. ahead c. aside d. again
- Mekong River is _____ river in South East Asia.
a. long b. longer c. longest d. the longest
- You _____ speak during the exam - it's forbidden.
a. should b. shouldn't c. must d. mustn't
- Some of her paintings are displayed at the local _____.
a. art gallery b. museum c. stadium d. hospital
- The Vietnamese _____ Tet at different times each year.
a. decorate b. watch c. celebrate d. welcome
- _____ we go out for dinner tonight? - Great!
a. Must b. Can c. Will d. Shall
- _____ does Tet last? ~ About 10 days.
a. When b. How long c. What time d. How often
- Life in the countryside is _____. There aren't many things to do there.
a. interesting b. inconvenient c. boring d. noisy
- 'Can you tell me the way to Tan Ky House please?'
'_____. Go straight, then turn right.'
a. Certainly b. Let's go c. Good idea d. My pleasure

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

- Everybody _____ (cheer) and _____ (sing) happily at the moment.
- Sorry, I can't come. I _____ (be) very busy tomorrow.
- _____ (they/ play) football this weekend?
- Most students _____ (not go) to school on Saturday.
- You must _____ (take) a boat ride around the island.
- After _____ (get) up, children get dressed in new clothes and say wishes to their parents.

IV. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

- The weeks before Tet is the _____ time of the year. (busy)

- The street is always _____ with pedestrians and traffic. (crowd)
- The Grand Canyon is one of the _____ wonders of the world. (nature)
- Is living in the city _____ than living in the countryside? (good)
- On the first day of Tet, we dress _____ and go to pagodas. (beauty)
- Red symbolizes luck and _____.(happy)

V. There is a mistake in each sentence. Find and correct it.

- Vietnamese people prepares for Tet several weeks beforehand.
- Mount Everest is the most highest mountain in the world.
- Da Nang is very interested. I really like it.
- They'll go abroad next year, will they?
- You look tired. You should work so hard.
- If you read more, your vocabulary will get gooder every day.

VI. Read these passages, then do the tasks.

Mary, aged 17, Glasgow

In Scotland, we celebrate Hogmanay at New Year. Last year I went to Edinburgh, our capital city, to the Hogmanay Street Party. It was epic! There were lots of cool bands. The fireworks were amazing too. I'm going again this year. My resolutions for this year are to be nicer to my little brother, spend less money on clothes and stop biting my nails.

Ben, 16, Brighton

What are my plans? Well, I'm going swimming with my parents on the New Year's Day swim this year. It's freezing cold in the water but it is a fun way to start the year. Quite a lot of people meet on Brighton beach for this first swim of the year. I hope it doesn't snow! My resolutions are to do my homework on time, eat less junk food and save up for a motorbike!

Sophie, 18, Newcastle upon Tyne

This New Year's Eve I'm going to the centre of Newcastle with my sisters and friends to see in the new year. I love being in a crowd when the clocks strike midnight. Everyone kisses each other at twelve o'clock. Then we all sing a song called 'Auld Lang Syne' - it's really funny because nobody can remember the words! We will probably get back home at four or five in the morning. As for my resolutions, I'm going to learn how to play the guitar, go running every day and study hard to get good grades for university.

Stuart, 14, Devon

I'm going snowboarding in Spain with my cousin and my parents. I want to stay up till midnight on New Year's Eve but maybe I'll be too tired after snowboarding all day. My New Year's resolution is to not make any New Year's resolutions. They are impossible to keep!

A. Fill in the gap with the correct names.

- _____ is going to a street party in Scotland.
- _____ is going to sing on New Year's Eve.
- _____ will be in a foreign country on New Year's Eve.
- _____ isn't going to make any New Year's resolutions.
- _____ wants to learn to play a musical instrument.
- _____ wants to have a healthier diet.

B. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

- New Year's resolutions often involve health and money.

2. People usually celebrate Hogmanay at New Year in England.
3. There are no fireworks for Hogmanay.
4. It's traditional to go swimming in Brighton on New Year's Eve.
5. People sing a song called 'Auld Lang Syne' at midnight on New Year's Eve.
6. Most British people know all the words to 'Auld Lang Syne'.

VII. Complete the second sentences so that it has the same meaning to the first one.

1. It's not good to spend a lot of time watching TV.
You _____
2. Antarctica is colder than any other place in the world.
Antarctica is _____
3. Shall we go to Times Square to welcome the New Year?
Why don't _____
4. A bicycle is more convenient than a car in towns.
A car is _____
5. Turn right at the first turning.
Take _____

VIII. Write sentences, using the words or phrases given.

1. Vietnamese people/ often/ clean/ decorate/ houses/ Tet.
2. The air / the city / polluted / the air / the countryside.
3. It/ very/ interesting/ take/ boat trip/ the Perfume River

**KEYS ANSWER
UNIT 1 : MY NEW SCHOOL**

I.

/əʊ/don't; homework; only; home; notebook; rode; post; overseas; go; poem; borrow; video; lower
/ʌ Monday; month; some; love; come; club; hungry; lunch; subject; study; rubber; one; mum; other;
wonderful; Sunday; country

II.

- 1.play: basketball; football; volleyball; badminton; pop music; the piano; the guitar
- 2.do: drawing; painting; homework; judo; exercise
- 3.have: breakfast; lunch; dinner
- 4.study: Maths; Science; English; Physics; lessons; History; Geography; vocabulary; Vietnamese

III.

A/ Art: Mỹ thuật; English: Tiếng Anh; Geography: Địa lí; History: Lịch sử; Maths: Toán; Music: Âm nhạc;
PE (Physical Education): Thể dục (Giáo dục Thể chất); Science: Khoa học; ICT (Information and
Communication Technology): Công nghệ Thông tin.

IV.

1. watching 2. listening 3. swimming 4. going 5. having
6. skipping 7. riding 8. sitting

V.

1. the dog's swimming 2. I'm reading 3. She's enjoying 4. They're playing
5. You're doing 6. are skipping 7. They're studying 8. Someone's knocking

VI.

1. is 2. are 3. are 4. am 5. am 6. is

VII.

1. I love doing my homework.
2. They like going to the cinema.
3. We don't like watching TV.
4. My sister doesn't like reading magazines.
5. My dad enjoys listening to country music.
6. They enjoy taking photos on holiday.

VIII.

1. e 2. f 3. c 4. a 5. b 6. d

IX.

1. d 2. a 3. b 4. f 5. e 6. c

X.

1. visit 2. like 3. is having 4. is riding 5. Go 6. watch
 7. Are playing 8. Are speaking 9. Play 10. Does....do 11. Do not understand 12. Do ...like

XI.

1. Nguyen Binh Khiem Primary School is in District 1, Ho Chi Minh City.
2. It has 36 classes with over 800 students.
3. The school is having a contest called "Students Love Science".
4. 180 second, third, fourth graders enter the contest.
5. The school makes each school day (become) an exciting day for the students.

TEST 1 UNIT 1

I.

1. D 2. C 3. C 4. B 5. B

II.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. C | 4. D | 5. D |
| 6. C | 7. B | 8. D | 9. C | 10. A |
| 11. C | 12. C | 13. B | 14. C | 15. D |
| 16. C | 17. C | 18. B | 19. C | 20. B |

III.

Play	Do	Have	Study
pop music, football, the piano, the guitar, badminton, basketball, volleyball	homework, exercise, judo	breakfast, lunch, dinner, lessons	English, Vietnamese, History, Geography, vocabulary, Physics, Maths,

IV.

- | | | | |
|---------|--------|--------|----------|
| 1. do | 2. is | 3. do | 4. is |
| 5. is | 6. are | 7. Are | 8. do |
| 9. Does | 10. is | 11. am | 12. have |

V.

- | | | |
|--------------------|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1. doesn't have | 2. comes, is staying | 3. don't drive, go |
| 4. are you talking | 5. does....live, lives | 6. Are, am |
| 7. is playing | 8. am not talking | 9. does...go, goes |
| 10. Are, are | | |

VI.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. are, are studying | 2. plays, is playing |
| 3. stay | 4. will invite |

- | | |
|---------------|------------|
| 5. collecting | 6. will be |
| 7. am doing | 8. go |

VII.

1. It is on Nguyen Cao Thang Street.
2. It has five floors.
3. She is in grade 6 class 6A.
4. She starts her classes at 2 o'clock in the afternoon.
5. Ho, she doesn't.

VIII.

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. F | 4. T |
|------|------|------|------|

IX.

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. D |
| 5. A | 6. D | 7. A | 8. D |

X.

SURVERY FORM

Family name: **Pham**
 Name(s): **Linh**
 Age: **thirteen**
 Grade: **7A**
 School: **Nguyen Du Secondary School**
 Brothers and sisters: **a brother and a sister**
 Address: **20 Le Loi Street**
 Telephone number: **5871374**
 Distance: **more than two kilometers**
 How to travel: **by motorbike**
 Time: **ten minutes**

XI.

1. They often play soccer, table tennis or badminton.
2. Sometimes they go swimming.
3. They often practice playing musical instruments in the school music room.
4. They usually rehearse plays.
5. They often get together and talk about their stamps.
6. Yes, they do.

XII.

1. How far is it from Trang's house to the market?
2. He lives with his grandparents on Hoang Quoc Viet street.
3. My class doesn't have many old students.
4. Who is the boy talking to Mrs. Quyen?
5. Hoa's new school is small.
6. Mr. Hoang goes to work by bus every day.
7. How is Minh's new house different from his old one?
8. Mrs Diep is unhappy because she misses her children.

TEST 2 (UNIT 1)

I.

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. A 6. C 7. C 8. B 9. D 10. C

II.

11. B 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. C 16. B 17. A 18. C 19. D 20. D

21. B 22. C 23. A 24. C 25. B 26. A 27. C 28. C 29. C 30. B

III.

31. do 32. Are 33. Does 34. do 35. am
36. is 37. are 38. have 39. is 40. do

IV.

41. d 42. j 43. b 44. a 45. f
46. c 47. e 48. d 49. h 50. i

V.

51. They often do morning exercise.
52. Nam plays football for the school team.
53. My sister plays piano at weekends.
54. I study Maths, English, and History
55. We eat lunch at the school canteen at lunch time.
56. We read books (and magazines) at the school library at break time.
57. I wear uniform to school every day.
58. Today Mai is not (isn't) wearing her uniform.
59. I am excited about the first day at school.
60. Susan's favourite teacher is Science teacher.

TEST 3 UNIT 1

I. /əʊ/ judo, go, notebook, borrow, homework, video, rode, hope, post, home, overseas, lower, open
/ʌ/ mother, wonderful, money, come, hungry, rubber, brother, month, some, club, compass, lunch,
Sunday, love, study, subject, country

II. 1. money 2. grow 3. study 4. country 5. judo

III. 1. d 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. c

IV. 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. c 6. c 7. b 8. a 9. b 10. c

V. - play: music, football, the piano, sports, badminton, the violin, basketball

-do: judo, housework, homework, aerobics, exercise, drawings, paintings, karate

-have: lessons, lunch, breakfast, English lesson, dinner

-study: music, history, English, vocabulary, geography, science, subjects, maths

VI. 1. excited 2. classmates 3. uniforms 4. creative
5. boarding 6. international 7. equipment 8. library

VII. 1. play 2. reads 3. have 4. does
5. go 6. are 7. has 8. watches

VIII. 1. aren't helping 2. isn't staying 3. 'm not traveling 4. aren't studying
5. aren't playing 6. isn't watching 7. aren't talking 8. isn't shining

IX. 1. am looking 2. know 3. are doing 4. plays
5. am listening 6. watches 7. are studying 8. doesn't do
9. is asking 10. aren't working 9. is 10. am - are

X. 1. use 2. Is Jane watching 3. doesn't go
4. is eating 5. Do you study 6. am not listening - am playing
7. is raining - rains 8. are reading

XI. 1. d 2. h 3. f 4. g 5. a 6. c 7. e 8. b

XII. 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. a 6. d

XIII. 1. Linda is in the sixth grade.

2. She goes to school with her best friend.

3. They walk to school.

4. Linda feels scary because she doesn't know most of the children.

5. Her favourite subjects are art and English.

6. Yes, she does.

XIV. 1. I am doing my homework. 2. Bella is talking on the phone.

3. We are listening to CDs now.

4. The children are riding to the park.

5. It is raining very hard now.

6. She is baking a chocolate cake.

7. You are dancing very beautifully.

8. Mark and his friends are having lunch.

XV. 1. How is your first week at secondary school?

2. How many lessons do you have on Friday?

3. Some creative students are doing drawings in the art club.

4. We don't have English classes at school today.

5. Are you doing your maths homework?

6. Most children are excited on the first day of school.

XVI. 1. What subject do you like most?

2. My class has 35 students.

3. Mai's house isn't far from her school.

4. Alary is good at playing the piano.

5. Are you interested in physics?

6. There is a computer room and a library in the school.

UNIT 2 MY HOME

	/s/	/z/	/1z/
does		✓	
gets up	✓		
goes		✓	
has		✓	
lives		✓	
looks	✓		
plays		✓	
starts	✓		
finishes			✓
misses			✓
speaks	✓		
teaches			✓
writes	✓		
thinks	✓		
watches			✓
washes			✓
sings		✓	
walks	✓		
sits	✓		
moves		✓	
rooms		✓	
houses			✓
chairs		✓	
attics	✓		
desks	✓		
buildings		✓	
apartments	✓		
chests	✓		
laptops	✓		
clocks	✓		

II.

in: your bag; my desk; Spain; the fridge; my bedroom

at: school; work; home; a party

on: the shelves; my desk; the wall; the floor

III.

1. in 2. on 3. under 4. in front of

5. next to 6. above 7. between 8. behind

IV.

1. There's
2. There are
3. There's
4. There's
5. There are
6. There are
7. There's
8. There are

VI.

1. "Is there a TV in your room?"
– "No, there is."
2. "Is there a car in the garage?"
– "Yes, there is."
3. "Are there two beds in your room?"
– "No, there aren't."
4. "Is there a sofa in your living room?"
– "Yes, there is."
5. "Are there a lot of books in your bedroom?"
– "Yes, there are."
6. "Is there a hall in your house?"
– "Yes, there is."
7. "Are there a lot of sandwiches in the kitchen?"
– "No, there aren't."
8. "Are there a lot of tables and chairs in your classroom?"
– "Yes, there are."

VII.

1. "Are there five DVDs on the table?" – "No, there aren't. There are only three."
2. "Is there a man in the garden?" – "No, there isn't. There is a woman."
3. "Are there six books in that bag?" – "No, there aren't. There are seven."
4. "Are there lots of cars in the street?" – "No, there aren't. There is only one car."
5. "Are there thirty children in your class?" – "No, there aren't. There are thirty-five."

VIII.

1. There's a big TV.
2. Ha Noi is a beautiful city.
3. Mai is a new student.
4. He is a good friend.
5. It's a friendly dog.
6. There are ten small desks.
7. There are four new cars.
8. There are green fields.
9. There are two big pizzas.
10. There is a new DVD player.

IX.

1. b
2. d
3. h
4. a
5. c
6. g
7. f
8. e

X.

1. There is a bed in the corner of the room.
2. The shelves are above the closet.
3. The wardrobe is in the center of the room.
4. The table is between the two chairs.
5. The lamp is next to the bed.
6. The table is on the right of the wardrobe.
7. There are some pictures on the wall.
8. There is a window on the left-side of the room.

TEST 1 UNIT 2

I.

/s/	/iz/	/z/
chopsticks, desks, lamps, sinks, toilets, apartments, laptop, books, clocks	fridges, dishes, house	tables, wardrobes, beds, rooms, posters, buildings

II.

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. A

III.

1. A 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. B
6. C 7. B 8. A 9. D 10. A
11. C 12. A 13. B 14. D 15. C
16. D 17. B 18. B 19. A 20. B

IV.

1. kitchen 2. interesting 3. washing machine
4. favorite 5. modern 6. Dishwasher 7. lovely

V.

1. in 2. to 3. on 4. in
5. under 6. near 7. under

VI.

1. There are 2. There are 3. There are 4. There are
5. There is 6. There are 7. There is 8. There are
9. There is 10. There are

VII.

1. on 2. from....to 3. on 4. at 5. in
6. on 7. at...in 8. in 9. behind 10. in front of

VIII.

1. are 2. Do 3. do 4. Where 5. are
6. aren't 7. do 8. isn't 9. are 10. does

IX.

1. No, she doesn't
2. There are many flowers in front of her house.
3. Yes, there is.
4. He is a worker.
5. He travels to work by motorbike.
6. He works in his factory from Monday to Friday.

X.

1. No, it isn't.
2. There is a big yard.
3. They often play soccer in the yard.
4. They sit under the trees.
5. There are forty-three teachers.

XI.

1. There is a book on the table.
2. There are some shoes under the chair.
3. There isn't a TV in his room.

4. There aren't any pens on my desk.
5. There is a boy behind that tree.
6. There are some girls in front of the house.
7. There isn't a telephone in her office.
8. There aren't any chairs downstairs.

XII.

1. Minh lives in a house near a lake.
2. There is a big yard in front of our school.
3. Are there many flowers to the right of the museum?
4. What is there next to the photocopy store?
5. My father works in a hospital in the city.
6. How many people are there in Linh's family?
7. My friend doesn't live with his family in Ha Noi.
8. Hoa gets up at six o'clock and brushes her teeth.
9. Our classroom is on the first floor.
10. There are six rooms in Minh's house.

XIII.

1. There is a bicycle in front of the house.
2. There are some apples in the fridge.
3. There isn't an armchair in this room./ There aren't any armchairs in
4. There aren't any books on my desk.

TEST 2 UNIT 2

I.

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A 6. A 7. D 8. B

II.

16. B 17. A 18. D 19. A 20. B 21. C 22. A 23. D 24. B 25. C
 26. B 27. D 28. A 29. D 30. B 31. C 32. A 33. A 34. D 35. A

III.

36. are 37. do 38. are 39. Are 40. Does 41. Do 42. isn't 43. aren't 44. Where 45. do

IV.

46. next 47. in 48. on 49. in 50. in

V.

51. The kitchen has many chairs.
 52. Nam doesn't live in the country.
 53. I live in a family with four members: my parents, my brother and me.
 54. The picture is behind the television.
 55. I only watch TV in the living room.

VI.

56. A 57. B 58. A 59. D 60. A 61. C 62. B 63. A 64. C 65. B

VII.

66. F 67. NM 68. T 69. F 70. F

TEST 3 UNIT 2

I. /z/ rooms, dogs, beds, tables, chairs, televisions, pictures, cookers, windows, photos, clothes, villas, walls, shelves

/s/ lamps, toilets, apartments, books, baths, chopsticks, lights, parents, attics, plants, tablecloths, tourists

/iz/ houses, boxes, dishes, fridges, vases, wishes, sandwiches, classes

II. 1. cats 2. clothes 3. bags 4. wardrobes 5. plates

III. 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. b 5. c

IV. 1.d 2. b 3. c 4. a 5. b 6. b 7. c 8. d 9. a 10. c

V. -Types of building: town house, villa, stilt house, apartment, country house

-Rooms: bathroom, kitchen, dining room, bedroom, living room

-Furniture: sofa, wardrobe, shelf, bed, chest of drawers

-Equipment: lamp, dishwasher, microwave, air-conditioner, fridge

VI. 1. garden 2. bathroom 3. bedroom 4. kitchen

5. living room 6. dining room 7. attic 8. garage

bedrooms - bathroom - kitchen - dining room - living room - garage - garden - attic

VII. 1.in 2.in 3. on - in 4. in 5.on

6. on - at -in 7. at 8. on - in 9. at/ in - in 10. in - on - in

9. on - in 10. next to - in

VIII. 1. on 2. on - beside 3. in 4. in - on

5. on - in 6. above 7. under 8. between

9. behind 10. on - in

IX. 1. There are 2. There is 3. There is 4. There are

5. There is 6. There are 7. There is 8. There is

X. 1. Are there - there are 2. Is there - there isn't

3. Is there - there is 4. Are there - there aren't

5. Is there - there is 6. Are there - there are

7. Is there - there isn't 8. Are there - there aren't

XI. 1. is snowing 2. doesn't like 3. am doing 4. isn't listening

5. don't eat 6. often gives 7. do you go 8. are they speaking

9. take - are going 10. aren't waiting

XII. 1. aren't 2. is 3. Do you get 4. aren't preparing

5. Is there 6. is playing - sounds 7. look 8. are you looking

9. doesn't spend 10. drives - is

XIII. 1. students 2. creative 3. noisy 4. mess

5. speaking 6. interesting 7. comfortable 8. calculators

9. favourite 10. excited

XIV. 1. c 2. g 3. a 4. f 5. b 6. h 7. e 8. d

XV. 1. His house is big.

2. There are four rooms. They are the kitchen, the living room, the dining room and the bathroom.

3. Peter's bedroom is on the first floor, between his parents' bedroom and the bathroom.

4. Because the attic is very spacious and there is a big sofa in it.

5. The garage is at the back of the house.

6. Yes, it is.

7. Yes, he does.

XVI. 1. favourite 2. curtains 3. there 4. rug

5. stands 6. Next 7. bookshelf 8. music

XVII. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. T

XVIII. 1. There are five rooms in my house.

2. The bus station is near the new shopping center.

3. We don't have a telephone in the living room.
4. There are trees in front of the house.
5. There aren't many biscuits in the packet.
6. That house has two bathrooms.
7. My favourite room is the kitchen.
8. Does the house have a garden in front of it?

UNIT 3 MY FRIENDS

I.

1. I have black hair.
2. Mrs. Huyen has round and black eyes.
3. He has blue eyes.
4. She has chubby cheeks.
5. Miss Huong has a round face.
6. Miss Thanh has long legs.

II.

1. has
2. Is – is
3. has
4. is
5. is – is
6. are
7. are
8. are

III.

1. e
2. b
3. d
4. c
5. a

IV.

1. boring
2. clever
3. Kind
4. Hard working
5. confident
6. friendly
7. shy
8. talkative
9. funny
10. creative

V.

2. Are you playing in the next game? – No, I'm not.
3. Are they driving to London tomorrow? – Yes, they are.
4. Is she going to the cinema tomorrow? – Yes, she is.
5. Are they eating at home this evening? – No, they aren't.

VI.

1. e
2. d
3. f
4. b
5. a
6. c

VII.

1. lives
2. go
3. walk
4. goes
5. gets up
6. finish
7. listen
8. like
9. hates
10. thinks
11. loves

VIII.

1. True
2. False
3. True
4. False
5. False
6. True

IX.

1. "Is she cooking a meal for lunch?" – "No, she isn't."
2. "Are they having a holiday in August?" – "No, they aren't."
3. "Are you playing computer games tonight?" – "Yes, I am."
4. "Is he drawing pictures about Hoi An tomorrow?" – "No, he isn't."
5. "Are we having a campfire at the weekend?" – "Yes, we are."

X.

On Tuesday, she's working on Biology project for school with Tom. On Wednesday, she's doing a writing course.

On Thursday, she's buying Tom's present. On Friday, she's meeting Monica.

On Saturday evening, she's going to Tom's party!

TEST 1 UNIT 3

I.

1. A
2. B
3. B
4. B
5. C

II.

- | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|-----------|
| 1. are | 2. are | 3. has | 4. Is/ is |
| 5. has | 6. are | 7. is | 8. is/ is |

III.

- | | | | |
|---------------|------------------|--------------------|-----------------|
| 1. is running | 2. buys | 3. aren't drinking | 4. are climbing |
| 5. is crying | 6. wear | 7. are you doing | 8. eat |
| 9. sets off | 10. aren't going | 11. is playing | 12. are waiting |

IV.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 1. are | 2. is wearing | 3. standing | 4. are drinking |
| 5. are dancing | 6. are sitting | 7. enjoying | 8. chatting |
| 9. go | 10. dress | 11. travel | 12. make |

V.**A. Choose True (T) or False (F)**

1	2	3	4
T	F	F	T

B. Answer the questions

1. She is in grade 6.
2. She gets up at six o'clock.
3. Yes, it is.
4. Her classroom is on the second floor.

VI.

1. There are 4 people in her family.
2. It is next to a bookstore.
3. Her classes start from six forty-five to eleven.
4. I often go to school at six fifteen every day.

VII.

1. He is a student.
2. He is in class 7A.
3. His family name is Pham.
4. It is at 2/34 Nguyen Trai Street.
5. No, it isn't.
6. There are five rooms.
7. Yes, there is.
8. Yes, there are.

VIII.

1. There are forty-two classrooms in our school.
2. My house is to the right of the bakery.
3. Huyen goes to school on foot every afternoon.
4. Are there forty students in your class?

IX.

1. He often has breakfast late.
2. Are you doing the housework at the moment?
3. I do not go to school on weekends.
4. John's girlfriend is wearing a red T-shirt now.
5. Do they like beer or wine?

6. What does he usually do at night?
7. The teacher never loses his temper.
8. Why are you listening to music loudly now?

TEST 2 (UNIT 3)

I.

1. B 2. D 3. C 4. A 5. C

II.

6. B 7. A 8. C 9. D 10. B 11. A 12. C 13. D 14. A 15. B
16. D 17. C 18. A 19. C 20. A 21. A 22. D 23. B 24. C 25. A

III.

26. Alice is English. 27. She's from London.
28. She's 13. 29. She has fair hair and brown eyes.
30. Her favourite colours are red, white and blue.

IV.

31. j 32. i 33. a 34. b 35. e 36. f 37. c 38. h 39. g 40. d

V.

41. What are they visiting on Saturday? 42. Who are you going to the judo club with?
43. Why are you not going to my party? 44. What are you working on?
45. How does she understand things?

VI.

46. long 47. fair 48. arms 49. plays 50. legs
51. she's 52. swimmer 53. British 54. athlete 55. eyes

TEST 3 UNIT 3

- I. 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. a

- II. 1. b 2. a 3. b 4. a 5. d 6. c 7. b 8. d 9. a 10. b

III.

IV. 1. eyes

2. ears

3. mouth

4. nose

5. face

- 6.feet 7. arms 8. fingers - toes 9. teeth 10. neck
- V.** 1. He has a round face. 2. I have small and even teeth.
 3. She has a straight nose. 4. They have dark brown eyes.
 5. We have curly and black hair. 6. Julia has a wide mouth.
- VI.** 1. Isabel's cheeks are rosy. 2. My hair is blonde and long.
 3. His face is thin. 4. Their skin is dark.
 5. Her dog's tail is short. 6. My sister's legs are long.
- VII.** 1. am - have - am 2. is - is - has - has - is
 3. Is - is - has - has - is - are - is 4. are - have - are - have - are
- VIII.** 1. e 2. f 3. k 4. h 5. l 6. a 7. d 8. i 9. j 10. c 11. g 12. b
- IX.** 1. sensitive 2. generous 3. talkative 4. shy
 5. reliable 6. outgoing 7. cheerful 8. confident
 9. sporty 10. curious
- X.** 1. friendly 2. creative 3. boring 4. funny
 5. sensitive 6. outgoing 7. lazy 8. impatient
 9. active 10. quiet
- XI.** 1. arrives 2. is coming 3. are you taking 4. does the film start
 5. don't open 6. am finishing 7. finishes 8. am going
 9. starts 10. are flying
- XII.** 1. On - with 2. on 3. between 4. on
 5. on 6. in 7. in 8. on - with/ to
- XIII.** 1. are staying 2. reads 3. Do you know 4. am seeing
 5. are you doing 6. lands 7. is speaking 8. speak
 9. is taking 10. eats - is eating 11. are going 12. opens
- XIV.** 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. a 5. b 6. c
- XV.** 1. She's Mai.
 2. Yes, they are.
 3. They first met at primary school.
 4. She is kind, jolly and helpful.
 5. She likes to joke and play games.
 6. They sit in the garden and read story books.
 7. They are in Mai's room now.
 8. They are going to the school English club.
- XVI.** A. 1. true 2. true 3. false 4. true 5. false 6. false
 B. 1. d 2. a 3. b 4. c 5. b 6. A
- XVII.** 1. We are going to the shopping mall on Saturday.
 2. Can you please lend me a dictionary?
 3. Would you like to join us for dinner tonight?
 4. I am spending a week at a summer camp.
 5. My mother has long straight black hair.
 6. I don't like Joana because she isn't friendly.

TEST YOURSELF 1

- I.**
- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. D | 2. C | 3. A | 4. A | 5. A |
| 6. A | 7. A | 8. D | 9. D | 10. C |
- II.**

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. C | 4. A | 5. D |
| 6. B | 7. B | 8. A | 9. A | 10. D |
| 11. B | 12. C | 13. A | 14. C | 15. A |
| 16. C | 17. B | 18. B | 19. C | 20. D |
| 21. C | 22. B | 23. A | 24. A | 25. B |

I.

- | | | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|--------------|---------|----------------|
| 1. visit | 2. are speaking | 3. watch | 4. goes | 5. is riding |
| 6. are playing | 7. practices | 8. Do...like | 9. like | 10. is talking |

IV.

- | | | | |
|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|
| 1. has | 2. Is/ is | 3. is | 4. is/ is |
| 5. has | 6. are | 7. are | 8. are |

V.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1. in | 2. On | 3. on | 4. in | 5. On |
| 6. at | 7. on | 8. in | 9. at | 10. at |

VI.

1. Ho Chi Minh is a beautiful city.
2. There are green fields.
3. It's a friendly dog.
4. Minh is a new student.
5. There's a big television.
6. There are four new cars.
7. There are two big pizzas.
8. There are ten small desks.

TEST YOURSELF 1

I.

1. C 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A

II.

- /s/ books, parents, students, baskets, lamps, desks,
 /z/ boards, telephones, engineers, doors, erasers, armchairs, tables, teachers, years, windows
 /iz/ classes, couches, benches, bookcases

III.

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. D 6. D 7. C 8. D 9. A 10. B

IV.

1. sharpener 2. ruler 3. compass 4. bicycle
 5. notebook 6. desk 7. calculator 8. textbook

V.

1. go camping 2. go to a disco 3. take photos 4. swim
 5. have an ice cream 6. do 7. play games 8. buy souvenirs

VI.

1. get up 2. breakfast 3. go to 4. do 5. play 6. listen to 7. go out

VII.

1. have 2. don't have 3. don't watch 4. don't do 5. speak 6. start

VIII.

1. walks 2. doesn't 3. Does 4. gives 5. goes

6. don't 7. are 8. Is 9. are 10. Are

IX.

1. There are many books on the bookshelf.
2. How many books are there in your school bag?
3. There is a television in the living room.
4. There are forty-five students in my class.
5. There are two tables in the living room.
6. How many doors are there in the classroom?

X.

1. When do they finish school? 2. What subjects do you study?
3. What sports do they do at school? 4. Do you like Maths?
5. Where do they live? 6. Who do you sit next to at school?

XI.

1. C 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A 6. C

XII.

1. is learning 2. swim 3. is she doing 4. am having 5. Are you watching 6. stay

XIII.

1. g 2. d

XIV.

1. f 2. b

XV.

1. What time does she start work? 2. Nam lives in a house in the country.
3. Is there a flower garden behind the house? 4. There is a supermarket near my house.
5. How many floors does your school have? 6. There is an old temple near our house.
7. How does Mr. Dong travel to work? 8. After dinner, she does her homework.
9. She goes to school by bus. 10. These people live on Nguyen Trai Street.

XVI.

1. My sister walks to school. 2. There is a garden behind Lan's house.
3. The bank is near the post office. 4. Our garden has many flowers.
5. Ba doesn't live in the country.

XVII.

1. Is there a post office near your house? 2. How do students go to school in your country?
3. They go to school by bicycle. 4. How do people in your city travel to work?
5. People travel to work by motorbike. 6. Is there a post office in front of your school?
7. Hoa lives in the country with her parents. 8. There is a beautiful garden to the left of Ba's house.

TEST YOURSELF 1

I. 1. d 2. a 3. c 4. d 5. b

II. 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. b 5. b 6. c 7. c 8. b 9. d 10. a

III. 1. are training 2. is skipping 3. Do you play 4. is
5. doesn't have - has 6. Is Tom riding

IV. 1. friendly 2. careful 3. talkative 4. fun
5. healthy 6. competition

V. 1. ~~a~~ → an 2. ~~knocks~~ → is knocking 3. ~~do~~ → are
4. ~~furnitures~~ → furniture 5. ~~have~~ → has 6. ~~going~~ → to go

VI. 1. g 2. e 3. h 4. b 5. c 6. a 7. f 8. d

VII. 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. b 6. c

VIII. 1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F

- IX.** 1. She has big brown eyes.
 2. There is a living room, a kitchen, a bathroom and two bedrooms in my house.
 3. Phong's favourite subject is Maths.
 4. James isn't lazy and stupid.
 5. Where do you live?
 6. Would you like to go for a drink?

UNIT 4: NEIGHBOURHOOD

I.

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. A 5. A

II.

3. taller than 4. noisier than 5. prettier than 6. happier than
 7. shorter than 8. bigger than 9. more modern than 10. more friendly than
 11. better than 12. worse than

III.

1. Scotland is colder than Athens. 2. Chinese is more difficult than English.
 3. Jennifer Lopez is prettier than Madonna. 4. Football is better than volleyball.
 5. A novel is longer than a short story.

IV.

1. more comfortable 2. larger 3. more important 4. heavier
 5. more difficult 6. Longer 7. more intelligent 8. Better
 9. Worse 10. prettier 11. Stronger 12. more beautiful

V.

1. longer 2. bigger 3. more intelligent 4. faster 5. heavier
 6. colder 7. more difficult 8. older 9. bigger 10. higher

VI.

1. My father is older than Uncle Hung.
 2. She is taller than her mother.
 3. Winter is colder than spring.
 4. Ha Noi Opera House is bigger than Hai Phong Opera House.
 5. A house in the city centre is more expensive than a house in the suburb.
 6. My neighbourhood is more crowded than your neighbourhood.
 7. Travelling by train is more comfortable than travelling by coach.
 8. Mai is younger than her sisters.
 9. Hue is more historic than Hoi An.
 10. Living in the country is more peaceful than living in the city.

VII.

1. bigger 2. more interesting 3. cheaper 4. noisier
 5. more expensive 6. more boring 7. busier 8. more modern

VIII.

1. is smaller than 2. is cheaper than 3. is more modern than 4. is quieter than
 5. is better than 6. is lighter than 7. is noisier 8. is older than

IX.

1. Rome is older than London.
 2. London is bigger than Rome in area and population.

- 3.No, London is colder than Rome in winter and cooler than Rome in summer.
 4.Rome has got more rain.
 5. Rome is nearer the sea than London.

X.

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. D

XI.

1. Lan goes to Nha Trang on holiday now.
 2.In the early morning, she goes to the sea and swims for an hour.
 3.In the afternoon, she takes some photos of the sights.
 4.She is staying in Nha Trang for four days.
 5.Because she has a lot of fun.

XII.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. My village has an old pagoda. | 2.That small town has not got a railway-station. |
| 3.Mr. and Mrs. Brown have got only one car. | 4. My school has got a new building. |
| 5. That city has got many beautiful lakes. | 6. London has got many famous parks. |
| 7. Has your city got any museums? | 8. This town has not got any art galleries. |
| 9. Hue has got many old buildings and pagodas. | 10. Has your house got a garage? |

XIII.

1. This District Post Office is smaller than the Central Post Office.
 2.Our office building is lower than the skyscraper.
 3.Your neighbourhood is quieter than my neighbourhood.
 4.Daisy is fatter than Alice.
 5.The Palace Hotel is more expensive than the Riverview Hotel.
 6.A house in the country is cheaper than a house in the city.
 7.The air in the country is fresher than the air in the city.
 8.Life in a small village is more boring than life in the city.

XIV.

1. Ha Noi is the capital of Viet Nam. It has a history of more than 1,000 years.
 2.First, go to President Ho Chi Minh's Mausoleum to see the stilt house where he lived from 1958 to 1969.
 3.Then, go to the One-Pillar Pagoda. It is a pagoda over the water in the middle of a square lake.
 4.After that, have a chance to visit Tran Quoc Pagoda on the shore of West Lake.
 5.Then, have lunch at a restaurant in the Old Quarter.
 6.Finally, go to Hoan Kiem Lake, the heart and the soul of Ha Noi.

TEST 1 UNIT 4

I.

/i:/	/i/
sleepy, police, peaceful, convenient, beach, sea, street, leave, teen, cheap, meal, see	friendly, historic, busy, river, exciting, village, sit, city, milk, thing, slim, noisy

II.

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. A 5. B

B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

III.

- | | | | |
|----------|-------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. helps | 2. starts – lasts | 3. to do/ doing | 4. will be |
| 5. go | 6. is having | 7. won't come | 8. are talking |

IV.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------|-----------|-------------------|
| 1. more | 2. | 3. fewer | 4. less |
| 5. most important | 6. more | 7. better | 8. more expensive |

V.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. more delicious | 2. larger |
| 3. cheaper | 4. more expensive |
| 5. more important | 6. happier |
| 7. stronger | 8. more comfortable |
| 9. better | 10. worse |

VI.

1. She is eleven years old.
2. She is a student.
3. No, she doesn't.
4. She goes to school at half past six.
5. No, she doesn't.
6. Yes, it does.
7. Classes end at half past eleven.

VII.

1.

	T	F
a. The mall is open six days a week. -> The mall is open seven days a week		(✓)
b. There are more than 50 stores in the mall. -> There are 50 stores in the mall.		(✓)
c. Everyone in the neighborhood is pleased with the new mall. -> Not everyone is pleased with the mall.		(✓)
d. It will be more comfortable to shop in the mall than in the present shopping area.	(✓)	
e. Some of the stores on Tran Phu Street may have to close.	(✓)	

2.

- a. All the shops are under one roof and customers will shop in comfort.
- b. The facilities such as air-conditioners, movie theatres, restaurants and children's play area are available in the shopping mall.
- c. They think that the new shopping mall will take their business.
- d. The stores in the mall will offer a wider selection of products, some of which are sold at cheaper prices.

VIII.

1. Vietnamese students have fewer vacations than American students.
2. Vietnamese students have about four vacations. They are Independent Day, April 30th and May Day, Tet holiday and summer vacation.
3. The longest vacation is summer vacation.

4. The most important vacation is Tet vacation.
5. It often lasts for nine or ten days.
6. Hoa usually spends time with her family during summer vacation.
7. No, they don't.

IX.

1. Lan is taller than Hoa.
2. This book is thicker than that book.
3. The chair is shorter than the table.
4. These boxes are bigger than those boxes.
5. Miss Trang is younger than her sister.
6. These buildings are higher than those buildings.
7. The boys are stronger than the girls.
8. I am older than my brother.

X.

1. How does Nam go to the post office?
→ He goes to the post office by bike.
2. How do Nga and Lan go to school?
→ They go to school by school bus.
3. How do your father travel to Ha Noi?
→ He travels to Ha Noi by plane.
4. How do the children go to the zoo?
→ They go to the zoo by bus.
5. How do you and your friends go to the stadium?
→ We go to the stadium on foot.
6. How does Mrs. Lien go to the market?
→ She goes to the market by motorbike.

TEST 2 (UNIT 4)

I.

1. A 2. B 3. C 4. A 5. A

II.

11. A 12. B 13. D 14. A 15. B 16. A 17. D 18. B 19. B 20. A
21. A 22. D 23. C 24. A 25. C 26. D 27. C 28. A 29. B 30. B

III.

31. shorter than 32. larger than 33. higher than 34. bigger than 35. smaller than
36. noisier – more crowded 37. bigger than 38. larger than 39. better...than 40. easier than

IV.

41. Many people who work in London prefer to live outside it.
42. One advantage of living outside London is that houses are cheaper.
43. He can enjoy the fresh, clean air of the country.
44. With the same money, one can get a little house in the country with a garden of one's own.
45. He can spend his free time digging, planting, watering and doing the hundred and one other jobs which are needed in a garden.

TEST 3 UNIT 4

- I.** 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. a 7. c 8. d 9. a 10. d

II. 1. a 2. c 3. d 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. a 8. c 9. d 10. b

III. 1. Palace 2. cathedral 3. square 4. railway station
5. memorial 6. art gallery 7. temple 8. Museum

IV. 1. noisy - polluted 2. narrow 3. boring 4. fantastic
5. convenient 6. peaceful 7. modern 8. historic

V. 1. colder 2. more important 3. thinner 4. more crowded
5. higher 6. friendlier 7. worse 8. more exciting
9. narrower 10. more useful

VI. 1. wide 2. peaceful 3. cheap 4. inconvenient
5. exciting 6. unpolluted 7. old 8. noisy

VII. 1. worse than 2. more stressful than
3. funnier than 4. quieter
5. easier - more convenient 6. better than
7. more boring than 8. bigger than
9. more expensive than 10. younger

VIII. 1. more boring 2. cleverer 3. worse 4. farther
5. funnier 6. more polluted 7. better 8. more spacious
9. hotter 10. more delicious

IX. 1. The second question was more difficult than the first one.
2. The brown coat is bigger than the black one.
3. The sofa is more comfortable than the chair.
4. Jack's suitcase was heavier than Jim's suitcase.
5. My homework was worse than his.
6. The small television is cheaper than the big one.
7. The Holton Hotel is more modern than the Royal Hotel.
8. The weather today was better than it was yesterday.
9. People in the country are friendlier than those in the city.
10. Life in the country is more boring than life in the city.

X. 1. am having 2. is 3. spent 4. is shining
5. stay - are travelling 6. Are 7. doesn't like 8. do I get
9. are you going - are going 10. Is - are

XI. 1. lies 2. famous 3. attractions 4. visit
5. many 6. House 7. tourist 8. as

XII. 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. d 5. a 6. b

XIII. 1. Hilltown is in the south of England.
2. There are 9,000 people in the town.
3. Yes. There is a park in the town center.
4. You can buy fresh fruit, vegetables, meat and dairy products in the market.
5. She likes Icecave cafe best.
6. There are five schools.
7. She plays badminton every Wednesday afternoon.
8. Yes, she does. Because it is a calm, neat place and people are friendly.

XIV. 1. F 2. F 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F 7. T

XV. 1. Where shall we first go this morning?
2. Let's go to the cafeteria and get a cold drink.

3. Do you like living in the countryside?
 4. Is there a post office in your neighborhood?
 5. Could you tell me the way to the Japanese Bridge, please? Could you please tell me the way to the Japanese Bridge?
 6. There are many historic houses in Hoi An ancient town.
 7. The air is polluted with smoke from factories.
 8. Living in a big city is much more expensive than living in the countryside.
- XVI.**
1. Shall we play volleyball for a change?
 2. Would you like to go for lunch now?
 3. How do I get to the nearest post office?
 4. The second question in the test was more difficult than the first one.
 5. My exam results are worse than I expected.
 6. The bookstore is next to the grocery store.
 7. Dave's wife earns more money than him.
 8. Would you mind closing that window?

UNIT 5: NATURAL WONDERS OF THE WORLD

I.

1. The largest 2. the shortest 3. the highest 4. the largest 5. the worst
6. the largest 7. the funniest 8. the largest 9. the coldest 10. the best

II.

1. longest 2. biggest 3. longest 4. tallest 5. highest
6. biggest 7. biggest 8. taller 9. bigger 10. longer

III.

1. mustn't 2. must 3. must 4. must 5. must

IV.

1. I must go to the barber's. 2. I must tidy it up. 3. I must go to the dentist's.
4. I must stop eating sweets. 5. I must wash them. 6. I must lose weight.
7. I must buy a new one. 8. I must wash it. 9. I must go to the doctor's.
10. I must go to the post office.

V.

1. A 2. A 3. C 4. B 5. C

VI.

1. It is the largest lake in Viet Nam.
2. It is nearly 250 km from Ha Noi.
3. When you get to the entrance of Ba Be National Park, you have another 16 kilometre drive through the park to arrive at the small village "Pac Ngoi" of Tay Minority.
4. During the boat trip you can visit some caves and the Dau Dang waterfall.
5. You can also watch the local communities with their daily life.

VII.

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. D 5. A

VIII.

1. False 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. True

IX.

1. It is more than 6,400 kilometers long. 2. It flows through Peru, Colombia, Ecuador, and Brazil.
3. Yes, it is. 4. It is on the border between Bolivia and Peru.

5. It is more than 190 kilometres long and about 80 kilometres wide.
6. There are 41 islands in the lake.
7. It is nearly 1,000 metres high.
8. The Atacama Desert is in Chile.
9. It is about 1,000 kilometres long.
10. It is also 15 million years old.
11. The Amazon Rainforest covers the countries, such as Brazil, Venezuela, Colombia, Ecuador and Peru.
12. More than 50% of the world's species of plants, insects and animals live in the Amazon Rainforest.

X.

1. The Apache, Blackfoot and Sioux Indians live there.
2. People call them "the roof of America" because the tops of the mountains here are 4,401 m.
3. The Colorado Rockies are 4,401 metres high.
4. It is famous for its hot springs and for its grizzly bears.
5. Yes, it is.

XI.

1. Mexico City is the biggest city in the world.
2. My brother's room is bigger than my room.
3. London is smaller than Tokyo.
4. Hung is shorter than Ba.
5. Fansipan is the highest mountain in Viet Nam.
6. Nam is the tallest boy in his class.
7. Thoa is the most beautiful girl in the village.
8. The pagoda is taller than the temple.

TEST 1 UNIT 5

I.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. D | 3. B | 4. A | 5. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|

II.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. D | 4. A | 5. D |
| 6. D | 7. C | 8. C | 9. B | 10. C |
| 11. B | 12. A | 13. D | 14. A | 15. C |
| 16. C | 17. C | 18. C | 19. D | 20. B |

III.

- | | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. B | 2. G | 3. E | 4. F | 5. A | 6. D | 7. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|

IV.

- | | | | |
|------------|------------|----------------|-----------|
| 1. teacher | 2. dentist | 3. painters | 4. farmer |
| 5. pianist | 6. doctor | 7. journalists | |

V.

- **Nouns:** party, dress, apartment, dinner, tub, vegetables, family.
- **Adjectives:** high, interesting, expensive, lovely, awful, cheap, good, big, suitable

VI.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. more expensive than | 2. faster than |
| 3. more modern than | 4. hotter than |
| 5. more beautiful than | 6. cheaper than |
| 7. better than | 8. more convenient than |

VII.

- | | |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. the longest | 2. the most interesting |
| 3. the biggest | 4. the best |
| 5. the most beautiful | 6. the coldest |
| 7. the fastest | 8. the most important |

VIII.

- | | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|----------|
| 1. must | 2. mustn't | 3. must | 4. must | 5. must |
| 6. mustn't | 7. mustn't | 8. mustn't | 9. mustn't | 10. must |

IX.

1. This is the tallest building in London.
2. That was the easiest exercise of the test.
3. This is the most comfortable armchair in this shop.
4. This is the biggest cheese burger of the McDonalds Company.
5. That was the worst conversation I have had.
6. That was the most difficult exercise of the test.
7. He's got the best pen of the class.
8. This is the most indifferent pupil of my class.
9. He is the funniest boy in the world.
10. He is the least young student of my class.

X.

- | | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. C | 2. B | 3. D | 4. D | 5. B | 6. D |
|------|------|------|------|------|------|

XI.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. A | 3. D | 4. A | 5. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|

XII.

1. What awful weather!
2. What delicious meal!
3. What a clever boy!
4. What colorful pictures!
5. What an expensive dress!
6. What sour milk!

XIII.

1. It's the most difficult decision I've ever made in years.
2. Mr. Bush is the most delightful person I've ever known.
3. Dick is the most careful of the three workers.
4. Peter is the tallest student in my class.
5. What's the best film you have ever seen?
6. She is the oldest child in the family.
7. He is the most intelligent student in my class.
8. Of the two sisters, Linda is the more beautiful.
9. It's the most interesting book I have ever read.
10. This is the biggest house I have ever seen.

TEST 2 (UNIT 5)**I.**

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. D | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. C |
|------|------|------|------|------|

II.

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 11. D | 12. A | 13. B | 14. C | 15. B | 16. B | 17. A | 18. A | 19. A | 20. C |
| 21. B | 22. D | 23. A | 24. B | 25. A | 26. B | 27. B | 28. C | 29. D | 30. B |

III.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 31. c | 32. e | 33. a | 34. b | 35. d |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

IV.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 36. d | 37. a | 38. e | 39. c | 40. b |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|

V.

41. familiar 42. beach 43. water 44. Clouds 45. landscapes
 46. considered 47. moving 48. shady 49. seen 50. waves

VI.

51. The Amazon River is responsible for twenty percent of fresh water that flows into the world's oceans.
 52. Yes, it does.
 53. It is about 6,400 km long.
 54. The Nile River in Africa is the longest.
 55. It has more than 200 tributaries.

VII.

56. Phu Quoc Island is the largest island in Viet Nam.
 57. Cuc Phuong National Park is the oldest national park in Viet Nam.
 58. Cat Tien National Park is the largest national park in Viet Nam.
 59. Landmark 72 in Ha Noi is the highest building in Viet Nam.
 60. Asia is the biggest continent in the world.

VIII.

61. Ho Chi Minh City is the biggest city in Viet Nam.
 62. Angel Falls is the highest fall in the world.
 63. Lake Superior in North America is the largest freshwater lake in the world.
 64. You must bring the compass; if not we will get lost in the forest.
 65. You must take a waterproof coat during your trip to Fansipan Mountain because it is rainy there.
 66. You must arrive on time at school.
 67. You mustn't walk alone after 10 pm in that park.
 68. You must take a boat trip around the islands in Ha Long Bay.
 69. Antarctica is the coldest place in the world.
 70. We mustn't write on the walls or tables in our classroom.

TEST 3 UNIT 5

- I.** 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. c 5. d

- II.** 1. c 2. c 3. d 4. b 5. a 6. c 7. b 8. a 9. b 10. d

- III.** 1. desert 2. river 3. lake 4. island
 5. waterfall 6. forest 7. valley 8. cave

- IV.** 1. sleeping bag 2. tent 3. plasters 4. torch
 5. painkillers 6. sun cream 7. walking boots 8. compass
 9. Waterproof coats 10. scissors

- V.** 1. high - higher - highest 2. narrow - narrower - narrowest
 3. good - better - best 4. bad - worse - worst
 5. exciting - more exciting - most exciting 6. far - farther - farthest
 7. big - bigger - biggest 8. famous - more famous - most famous
 9. large - larger - largest 10. lazy - lazier - laziest
 11. many/ much - more - most 12. little - less - least

- VI.** 1. the worst 2. the most delicious 3. the best 4. the largest
 5. the driest 6. the most boring 7. the highest 8. the most valuable
 9. the richest 10. the dirtiest

- VII.** 1. the tallest 2. the 3. the most intelligent 4. the nicest
 5. the most interesting 6. the most untidy 7. the hottest 8. the heaviest
 9. the largest 10. the most boring

- VIII.** 1. the deepest 2. hotter 3. highest 4. lower
5. the longest 6. the largest 7. shorter 8. driest
9. bigger 10. the most popular
- IX.** 1. the largest 2. lower 3. the most popular 4. the most famous
5. wider 6. the dirtiest 7. cleaner 8. the best
- X.** 1. the ugliest 2. more 3. higher 4. the coldest
5. worse 6. the most famous 7. farther 8. the best
- XI.** 1. c 2. f 3. e 4. b 5. d 6. a 7. h 8. g
- XII.** 1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. d 6. b
- XIII.** 1. Victoria Falls is on the border between Zambia and Zimbabwe.
2. The falls is 108 meters high.
3. No, it isn't.
4. It's Mosi-oa-Tunya.
5. The Scottish explorer Dr. David Livingstone discovered the falls.
- XIV.** 1. largest 2. found 3. means 4. limestone
5. width 6. much 7. as
- XV.** 1. The novel is more interesting than the film.
2. This is the worst book I've ever read.
3. Travelling by train is more expensive than travelling by bus.
4. I am by far the oldest in my office.
5. John is the most intelligent student in the class.
6. The table is as big as the desk.
7. The station is farther than I thought.
8. You are the best friend I've ever had.

6. The months of June and July are the best time to visit the falls.

UNIT 6: OUR TET HOLIDAY

- I.**
/s/ comparison; sound; house; best; person; blossom; swim; school; class; smile; rooster; success; appearance;
/ʃ/ communication; pronunciation; tradition; should; show; wish; shopping; special; she; sugar; sure; shy;
English; nation; shrimp; dish; patient; rubbish; international
- II.**
1. B 2. D 3. D 4. B 5. C
- III.**
go to : a pagoda; front door; a church; flower market; a temple
decorate: the house; pine tree; the living room;
hang : decorations; the LED lights; a calendar
buy : peach blossoms; flowers; apricot blossoms; visit old teachers; relatives; friends; home village
cook : special food; traditional food
- IV.**
1. shouldn't 2. should 3. should 4. shouldn't 5. should
6. should 7. should 8. shouldn't 9. should 10. shouldn't
- V.**
1. True 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. False
- VI.**

1. They are buying some presents for the family and their friends.
2. They are staying with the Browns in London at Christmas.
3. He is decorating the Christmas tree in the sitting-room.
4. She is putting some Christmas cards and colourful lights on the Christmas tree.

VII.

1. False
2. True
3. True
4. False
5. True
6. False
7. True
8. True
9. False
10. True

VIII.

1. B
2. D
3. B
4. C
5. A

IX.

In Viet Nam before Tet, people clean the house, decorate the house with peach blossoms and apricot blossoms, and cook special foods. On New Year's Eve, they meet together and wait for the New Year to come, exchange good wishes, give lucky money to children, or go to the pagoda. During Tet, they eat banh chung or banh tet, and put on best clothes or traditional clothes. People in Viet Nam often celebrate Tet among family members. In Japan before the New Year, the Japanese also clean the house, decorate the house with pine trees, and cook special foods. On New Year's Eve, they watch TV and listen to the bell ringing or visit the pagoda. During the New Year, they eat special foods and drink rice wine, and wear kimonos or special dress. People in Japan often celebrate the New Year among family members.

TEST 1 UNIT 6

I.

/ s /	/ ʃ /
school, rooster, summer, spring, success, blossoms, sound, smile, person, rice	special, sure, wish, should, show, dish, shopping, rubbish

II.

1. A
2. A
3. C
4. B
5. C

III.

1. D
2. C
3. A
4. A
5. B
6. D
7. A
8. C
9. C
10. B
11. A
12. B
13. C
14. A
15. B
16. A
17. B
18. C
19. B
20. A

IV.

1. Will they come
2. will you get
3. will you do
4. is she
5. does the sunset
6. she will get the job
7. Is David
8. will the weather be
9. do you see
10. does he get

V.

1. should
2. Should – should
3. shouldn't
4. should
5. shouldn't
6. Should - shouldn't
7. should
8. shouldn't

VI.

1. will do
2. will call
3. will recover
4. will return
5. will stay
6. Will you take
7. won't come

VII.

1. You shouldn't park
2. should I cook
3. You should wear
4. You shouldn't smoke
5. We should arrive
6. Should I send

7. I should apply 8. I should write 9. I shouldn't eat
10. We should complaint

VIII.

1. find 2. should 3. show 4. order 5. are
6. tides 7. both 8. it 9. librarian

IX.

works - grow - is - rests - eats - come - feeds - cleans - finishes

Answers:

1. From nine in the morning until four in the afternoon, Mr. Tuan works in the fields.
2. He works with his brother.
3. They grow some rice.
4. Their main crop is vegetables.
5. He rests and eats lunch from twelve to one o'clock.
6. They come back home at four in the evening.
7. His work usually finishes at six.

X.

1. She hopes that Mary will come to the party tonight.
2. I will finish my report in two days.
3. If you don't study hard, you won't pass the final exam.
4. You look tired, so I will bring you something to eat.
5. Will you please give me a lift to the station?

XI.

1. When does your school year start?
2. How long does summer vacation last?
3. Which vacation is the longest?
4. What do you usually do during your vacation?
5. How many hours does your mother work a day?
6. What does Mr. Robinson do?

TEST 2(UNIT 6)

I

1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. A

II.

11. D 12. B 13. B 14. A 15. B 16. D 17. C 18. C 19. A 20. C
21. C 22. B 23. A 24. D 25. A 26. C 27. A 28. B 29. B 30. B

III.

1. c 2. e 3. D 4. a 5. b

IV.

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. e 5. b

V.

1. c 2. a 3. D 4. b 5. c

VI.

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. b 5. d

TEST 3 UNIT 6

- I.** 1. celebrate /s/ 6. wish /ʃ/ 11. nice /s/ 16. English /ʃ/
2. should /ʃ/ 7. special /ʃ/ 12. summer /s/ 17. wash /ʃ/

3. exciting /s/ 8. shopping /ʃ/ 13. sure /ʃ/ 18. sugar /ʃ/
 4. blossom /s/ 9. spring /s/ 14. class /s/ 19. decide /s/
 5. show /ʃ/ 10. shine /ʃ/ 15. second /s/ 20. shirt /ʃ/

II. 1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a 5. d

III. 1. a 2. d 3. c 4. d 5. b

IV. 1. d 2. b 3. c 4. c 5. a 6. a 7. b 8. c 9. c 10. b

V. 1. celebrate 2. wish 3. gatherings 4. watch 5. lucky
 6. footer 7. Eve 8. decorate 9. water 10. shouldn't

VI. 1. at 2. of 3. On 4. at 5. for 6. in 7. between 8. over

VII. 1. will celebrate 2. will decorate 3. will make 4. will cook
 5. will buy 6. will hang 7. will clean 8. will visit
 9. will give 10. will go

VIII. 2. Nga will help her mother cook special food.

3. Phong won't buy fireworks.

4. Vy and My will wear their new dresses.

5. Huy and Nam won't go out to watch fireworks.

6. Nguyen will visit his grandparents.

7. Nhu will keep her lucky money in her piggy bank.

8. Minh won't play card games.

IX. 1. celebrate 2. won't buy 3. is repainting 4. wear
 5. cleaning 6. occurs 7. Will they give 8. eating/ to eat

X. 1. celebration 2. gathering 3. luck 4. healthy
 5. succeed 6. decoration 7. happily 8. sticky

XI. 1. d 2. g 3. b 4. h 5. f 6. a 7. c 8. e

XII. 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. a 6. b

XIII. 1. Tet occurs between late January and early February.

2. People buy gifts, clean and decorate their houses and cook traditional foods.

3. Apricot blossoms is the symbol of Tet in the South.

4. Banh Chung is made of sticky rice, green beans and fatty pork.

5. During Tet, children receive their lucky money inside red envelopes.

6. Vietnamese people go to pagodas on the days of Tet to pray for a happy new year.

XIV. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. F 5. T 6. T

XV. 1. You mustn't park in this street.

2. You shouldn't swim immediately after a meal.

3. You must take this medicine three times a day.

4. You should listen to the weather forecast before going camping.

5. You should take exercise every day.

6. You mustn't drink the water there. It will make you ill.

7. You shouldn't eat lots of sweets.

8. You mustn't use your mobile phone in class.

TEST YOURSELF 2

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. B 6. B 7. A 8. C 9. B 10. D
 11. D 12. A 13. B 14. A 15. C 16. C 17. C 18. A 19. A 20. B
 21. D 22. C 23. D 24. B 25. A 26. C 27. A 28. A 29. A 30. C
 31. Antarctica is the coldest place in the world.

32. You should do morning exercises every morning.
 33. My father will/ is going to repaint our house before Tet.
 34. Fansipan is the highest mountain in Indochina.
 35. Nobody in Nam's class is taller than him.
 36. Tomorrow Hoa will buy flowers for her father's birthday.
 37. Nobody in my class is better in Maths than Minh.
 38. At twelve o'clock at night everyone says "Happy New Year", and they wish their friends and relatives good luck.
 39. How often do you go fishing with your father?
 40. The new market is inconvenient because it is far from our flat building.
 41. festival 42. have 43. decorate 44. shopping 45. gatherings
 46. first 47. envelopes 48. love 49. give 50. wishes

TEST YOURSELF 2

- I.** 1. a 2. b 3. d 4. c 5. b
II. 1. c 2. b 3. d 4. d 5. a 6. c 7. d 8. b 9. c 10. a
III. 1. is cheering- singing 2. will be 3. Are they playing
 4. don't go 5. take 6. getting
IV. 1. busiest 2. crowded 3. natural 4. better
 5. beautifully 6. happiness
V. 1. prepares → prepare 2. ~~most~~ highest → highest
 3. interested → interesting 4. ~~will~~ they → won't they
 5. should → shouldn't 6. ~~gooder~~ → better
VI. A. Fill in the gap:
 1. Mary 2. Sophia 3. Stuart 4. Stuart 5. Sophia 6. Ben
 B. True or false:
 1. F 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. T 6. F
VII. 1. You shouldn't spend a lot of time watching TV.
 2. Antarctica is the coldest place in the world.
 3. Why don't we go to Times Square to welcome the New Year?
 4. A car is more inconvenient than a bicycle in towns./ A car is not as convenient as a bicycle in towns.
 5. Take the first turning on the right.
VIII. 1. Vietnamese people often clean and decorate their houses at Tet.
 2. The air in the city is more polluted than the air in the countryside.
 3. It is very interesting to take a boat trip on the Perfume River.

KEY GRAMMAR

Unit 1: My New School

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Hoàn thành bảng sau, thêm đuôi s/es vào sau các động từ sao cho đúng

V	V-e/es	V	Ve/es
Have (có)	Has	Know (biết)	Knows
Do (làm)	Does	Take (lấy)	Takes
Say (nói)	Says	Think (nghĩ)	Thinks
Get (được)	Gets	Come (đến)	Comes
Make (làm)	Makes	Give (cho)	Gives
Go (đi)	Goes	Look (nhìn)	Looks
See (nhìn thấy)	Sees	Use (dùng)	Uses

Find (tìm thấy)	Finds	Need (cần)	Needs
Want (muốn)	Wants	Seem (hình như)	Seems
Tell (nói)	Tells	Ask (hỏi)	Asks
Put (đặt)	Puts	Show (hiển thị)	Shows
Mean (nghĩa là)	Means	Try (cố gắng)	Tries
Become (trở thành)	Becomes	Call (gọi)	Calls
Leave (rời khỏi)	Leaves	Keep (giữ)	Keeps
Work (làm việc)	Works	Feel (cảm thấy)	Feels

Bài 2: Đặt các trạng từ chỉ tần suất vào vị trí đúng ở câu

- He sometimes plays golf on Sundays
- The weather is always bad in November.
- We seldom have fish for dinner._
- Peter doesn't usually get up before seven
- They never watch TV in the afternoon _____
- My brother, Tony, is rarely late for interview. _____
- He always helps his father. _____
- How often do you go shopping? _____
- I hardly do my homework after school. _____
- The school bus arrives at seven every day. _____

Bài 3: Viết các câu sau ở thể khẳng định (+), phủ định (-) và nghi vấn (?)

- (+) The girl often listens to pop music.
 (-) _____ The girl doesn't often listen to pop music _____
 (?) _____ Does the girl often listen to pop music _____
- (+) I am from the capital of Vietnam, Ha noi.
 (-) _____ I am not from the capital of Vietnam, ha noi. _____
 (?) _____ Are you from the capital of Vietnam, ha noi? _____
- (+) _____ My father keeps the greenhouse warm at night _____
 (-) My father doesn't keep the greenhouse warm at night.
 (?) _____ Does your father keep the greenhouse warm at night _____
- (+) _____ Danny remembers to phone his father on Sundays _____
 (-) _____ Danny doesn't remember to phone his father on Sundays _____
 (?) _____ Does Danny remember to phone his father on Sundays?
- (+) _____ They do their homework after school _____
 (-) They don't do their homework after school.
 (?) _____ Do they do their homework after school? _____

Bài 4: Điền do, don't, does, doesn't vào chỗ trống trong các câu sau cho phù hợp

- My mother likes chocolate, but she __doesn't like__ biscuits.
- __Do__ the children wear your uniform at your school?
- Lynn's father watches badminton on TV, but he __doesn't__ watch judo.
- Where __does__ the Masons buy their fruits?
- __Does__ the cat like to sleep on the sofa?
- Dogs love bones, but they __don't__ love cheese.
- Where __do__ Sam and Ben hide their pocket money?
- We eat pizza, but we __don't__ eat hamburgers.
- __Does__ Mrs. Miller read magazines?
- __Do__ the boys play cricket outside?

26. Please __don't__ play with my food.
27. She __does__ the cleaning three times a week
28. We __don't__ go out very much because we have a baby
29. I __don't__ want to talk about my neighborhood any more.
30. How much __does__ it cost to phone overseas?

Bài 5: Khoanh tròn vào câu trả lời đúng

1. We sometimes (**read**/ reads) books.
2. Emily (go/**goes**) to the art club.
3. It often (rain/ **rains**) on Sundays.
4. Pete and his sister (**wash**/ washes) the family car.
5. I always (**hurry**/ hurries) to the bus stop.
6. She (speak/ **speaks**) four languages.
7. Jane is a teacher. He (teach/ **teaches**) English.
8. Those shoes (**cost**/ costs) too much.
9. My sister (go/**goes**) to the library once a week.
10. We both (**listen**/ listens) to the radio in the morning.

Bài 6: Sắp xếp các từ sau theo thứ tự đúng để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. always/ at nine o'clock/ out of the garage/ in the morning/ drives/ his car/ he.
He always drives his car out of the garage at nine o'clock in the morning.
2. a parking place/ near the shops/ they/ find/ rarely.
They rarely find a parking place near the shops.
3. fly/ with my parents/ to Florida/ sometimes/ I/ in spring.
I sometimes fly to Florida with my parents in spring.
4. late/ comes/ she/ often/ to school/ in winter.
She often comes to school late in winter.
5. meet/ at the sports ground/ they/ after dinner/ always/ their friends.
They always meet their friends at the sports ground after dinner.
6. enjoys/ swimming/ in our pool/ always/ in the morning/ she.
She always enjoys swimming in our pool in the morning.
7. mother/ On/ the/ my/ always/ washing/ does/ Mondays.
On Mondays, my mother always does the washing.
8. out/ once/ put/ I/ dustbins/ week/ the/ a.
I put out the dustbins once a week.
9. a/ go/ with/ often/ walk/ dog/ for/ We/ our/
We often go for a walk with our dog.
10. sister/ ironing/ sometimes/ My/ the/ does.
My sister sometimes does the ironing.

Bài 7: Hãy chọn câu trả lời đúng cho các câu sau

1. I _____ know the correct answer.
A. am not B. not **C. don't** D. doesn't
2. They _____ agree with my opinion.
A. are **B. don't** C. aren't D. do
3. Kathy usually _____ in front of the window during the class.
A. sits B. sitting C. sit D. is sit
4. What does this word _____?
A. means B. meaning **C. mean** D. is mean
5. He _____ share anything to me.

- A. don't do B. isn't C. not **D. doesn't**
6. I come from Canada. Where_____you come from?
A. are **B. do** C. is D. not
7. Jane_____tea very often.
A. doesn't drink B. drink C. is drink D. isn't drink
8. How often_____you play tennis?
A. do B. are C. is D. play
9. Rice_____in cold climates
A. isn't grow B. don't grow C. aren't grow **D. doesn't grow**
10. I_____a compass and a calculator in Maths lesson.
A. am use **B. use** C. aren't use D. doesn't use

Bài 8: Chọn dạng đúng cho các động từ trong ngoặc

1. They plays hockey at school. (to play)
2. She doesn't write poems. (not/ to write)
3. Do you speak English? (to speak)
4. My parents doesn't like fish (not/ to like)
5. Does Ann have any hobbies? (to have)
6. Andy's brother works in a big buiding (to work)
7. Do Jim and Joe water the flowers every week? (to water)
8. Yvonne's mother doesn't write a motorbike. (not/ to write)
9. Does Elisabeth knock the door? (to knock)
10. What do you buy in the school canteen? (buy)

Bài 9: Hoàn thành bảng sau, thêm đuôi -ing vào các động từ sao cho đúng

V	V-ing	V	V-ing
Have (có)	Having	Help	Helping
Do (làm)	Doing	Run	Running
Say (nói)	Saying	Write	Writing
Go (đi)	Going	Move	Moving
Make (làm)	Making	Play	Playing
Take (lấy)	Taking	Stand	Standing
Give (cho)	Giving	Talk	Talking
Use (dùng)	Using	Sit	Sitting
Come (đến)	Coming	Read	Reading
Find (tìm thấy)	Finding	Speak	Speaking
Put	Putting	Open	Opening
Leave	Leaving	Draw	Drawing
Work	Working	Walk	Walking
Ask	Asking	Sell	Selling
Follow	Following	watch	Watching

Bài 10: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. Johny and Mandy (is/am/**are**) cleaning the kitchen
2. I (is/**am**/are) reading a book at the moment.
3. It (**is**/am/are) raining
4. We (is/am/**are**) singing a new song.
5. The children (is/am/**are**) watching TV at breaktime.
6. My pets (is/am/**are**) sleeping now.

7. Aunt Helen (**is/am/are**) feeding the ducks on the farm.
8. My friend (**is/am/are**) buying a pencil sharpener.
9. He (**is/am/are**) studying Science.
10. They (**is/am/are**) doing their homework.

Bài 11: Viết các câu sau ở thể khẳng định (+), phủ định (-) và nghi vấn (?)

1. (+) We are working on the new show right now.
 (-) We aren't working on the new show right now.____
 (?) Are we working on the new show right now? _____
2. (+) I'm talking on the phone at the moment. _____
 (-) I'm not talking on the phone at the moment.
 (?) Are you talking on the phone at the moment? _____
3. (+) he is running very fast ____
 (-) he isn't running very fast _____
 (?) Is he running very fast?
4. (+) Julia is baking a chocolate cake at the moment.
 (-) Julia isn't baking a chocolate cake at the moment. _____
 (?) Is Julia baking a chocolate cake at the moment? _____
5. (+) Tony and Kaity are helping the teacher right now (-)
) Tony and Kaity aren't helping the teacher right now (?)
 Are Tony and Kaity helping the teacher right now?

Bài 12: Nối câu hỏi ở cột A với câu trả lời ở cột B sao cho phù hợp

A	B
1. Are they having dinner? E	a. Yes, she is.
2. Are you making a cup of tea? J	b. He is cooking pasta
3. Is she making a cup of coffee? A	c. No, he isn't.
4. What are you doing? I	d. I'm going to Korea.
5. Is it raining? G	e. No, they aren't.
6. What is he cooking for dinner? B	f. My brother.
7. Where are you going on holiday? D	g. No, it isn't.
8. Are we going into town? H	h. Yes, we are.
9. Who is going to England? F	i. I'm looking for a number in the phone book.
10. Is your father taking a bus to the kindergarten? C	j. Yes, I am.

1.....- 2.....- 3.....- 4.....- 5.....- 6.....-7.....-8.....-9.....-10.....

Bài 13: Sắp xếp từ trong câu theo thứ tự đúng để tạo thành một câu hoàn chỉnh

1. The birds are singing at 5a.m.
2. The big dogs are barking at 7 a.m.

3. Mrs. Thomson is getting up at 7.20a.m.
4. She is making her son's breakfast at 7.40 a.m.
5. The mailman is delivering the letters at 7.50 a.m.
6. Mrs. Thomson's son is washing his face at 7.55 a.m.
7. The Thomsons are eating breakfast together at 8 a.m.
8. Mrs. Thomson is driving her blue car to work at 8.20 a.m.
9. My classmate is skipping rope in the playground.
10. My sister is studying at an international school.

Bài 14: Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn

1. Alexander **is studying** (study) for his exam at the moment.
2. She **isn't playing** (not play) golf tomorrow.
3. They **are making** (make) dinner now.
4. The company **is having** (have) dinner now.
5. She **is eating** (eat) oysters for lunch right now.
6. David **Isn't flying** (not fly) to Chicago next week.
7. I **am working** (work) on a special report today.
8. We **aren't cooking** (not cook) dinner this evening because we're eating out.
9. **Is Tom driving** (Tom drive) to work right now?
10. They **aren't preparing** (not prepare) for the science exam at the moment.
11. When **are you having** (you/ have) lunch tomorrow?
12. **Are they giving** (they give) a party this weekend?
13. Susan **is making** (make) the decision at 3 o'clock this afternoon.
14. What **are you doing** (you do)?!
15. Which motel **are they staying** (they stay) now?

Bài 15: Chọn động từ thích hợp cho dạng đúng của thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn và điền vào chỗ trống

read study post make speak draw come wait
sunbathe water

1. He is at the bank. He **is drawing** money from his account.
2. He is in the library. He **is reading**.
3. He is in the garden. He **is watering** the flowers.
4. She is on the beach. She **is sunbathing**.
5. He is in the post office. He **is posting** letter.
6. He is in the telephone box. He **is making** a call.
7. We **are studying** English at the moment.
8. Look! David and Max **is coming** home.
9. She **is waiting** for her boyfriend now.
10. I **am speaking** to a dentist.

Bài 16: Dựa vào những từ cho sẵn, đặt câu ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn

1. **Are they learning new things?**
2. **When is he starting work?**
3. **Why am I staying at home?**
4. **Is it getting dark?**
5. **The dog is playing with a ball.**

6. Why is it raining now?
7. How is she travelling/
8. Where are you working?
9. What are we watching/
10. Am I taking too much coffee?

Bài 17: Chọn đáp án đúng nhất điền vào chỗ trống

1. James is _____ judo in the playground with his friends and he is very excited.
A. studying **B. doing** C. playing D. have
2. Keep quiet! Jessica _____ a headache so she is sleeping in her bedroom.
A. does B. plays C. studying **D. has**
3. My father is _____ a cup of coffee with his colleague in the living room now.
A. plays B. study C. doing **D. having**
4. Williams always _____ breakfast with bread, egg and milk before coming to school.
A. has B. plays C. studies D. does
5. Tiffany and Rosy usually help their mom _____ the chores at the weekend.
A. study **B. do** C. playing D. have
6. She usually _____ English vocabulary every morning.
A. doing B. having **C. studies** D. plays
7. My brother _____ basketball with his friends three times a week
A. does B. has **C. plays** D. study
8. Helen rarely _____ a chat with her pen friend in American.
A. does **B. has** C. studies D. plays
9. Frank is _____ Maths at the moment to prepare for the final exam.
A. studying B. doing C. playing D. has
10. My brother doesn't _____ badminton in the evening
A. play D. do C. have D. study

Bài 18: Điền “do/play/go” vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp

1. He used to **go** jogging every morning whe he was a young boy.
2. This summer, Tim is going to **go** horseback riding.
3. You play rugby on a pitch. Where do you **play** badminton?
4. Steven and his son **go** hiking in woods every summer.
5. I don't have much free time but sometimes I **play** soccer with my friends.
6. Tell me, where are you going to **go** skiing this winter?
7. I **go** fishing on Saturdays and I **do** yoga on Sundays
8. Karate is a great exercise for me but learning how to **do** karate well takes a lot of time.
9. Whe don't we **play** a set of tennis?
10. He wants to **go** sailing between the Hawaiian islands in this summer.

Bài 19: Chọn từ thích hợp điền vào bảng sau

Science school lunch		cycling	aerobics	table tennis	swimming	
Vietnamese	bowling	sailing		big eyes	volleyball	dancing
Breakfast	gymnastics	rugby		a house		history a headache
Judo	chess	physics	golf	karate	yoga	

Bài

20:

Chọn và cho dạng
điền vào chỗ trống

đúng của động từ,

*Wake(s) up – open(s) – speak(s) – take(s) – do(es) – cause(s) –
play(s) – close(s) – live(s) – drink(s)*

1. Ann **plays** handball very ball
2. I never **drink** coffee
3. The swimming pool **opens** at 7:00 in the morning.
4. It **closes** at 9:00 in the evening.
5. Bad driving **causes** many accidents.
6. My parents **live** in a very small flat.
7. My students **speak** a little English.
8. The Olympic Games **takes** place every four years.
9. They are good students. They always **do** their homework
10. I always **wakeup** early in the morning.

Bài 21: Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc Hiện tại tiếp diễn

11. Every Monday, Sally (drive) **drives** her kids to football practice.
12. Shhhhh! Be quiet! John (sleep) **is sleeping**
13. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It (rain) **is raining**
14. I hate living in Seattle because it (rain, always) **always rains**
15. I'm sorry I can't hear what you (say) **are saying** because everybody (talk) **are talking** so loudly.
16. Jane (go) **goes** to bed at 10 o'clock on weekdays.
17. Our train (leave) **leaves** at 9.25
18. The bus sometimes (arrive) **arrives** in the morning.
19. Archie (not use) **is not using** his computer at the moment.

Bài 22: Đọc đoạn văn sau và chia động từ trong ngoặc sao cho phù hợp

Harold Black's a famous pianist. He **gives** (give) two or three concerts every week. He **travels** (travel) a lot and this week he's in New York. He **is staying** (stay) at an expensive hotel. He's at this hotel now. He **is having** (have) his breakfast in the dining-room. He **is drinking** (drink) a cup of coffee and he **is reading** (read) a newspaper. Harold's always very busy. He **plays** (play) the piano regularly. He **practices** for four hours every day. He **goes** to bed late and he always **gets up** early. But he sometimes **gets** (get) dressed too quickly, and this morning he **is wearing** (wear) one blue sock and one red one!

Bài 23: Đọc lại đoạn văn trên và trả lời các câu hỏi sau

1. What does Harold Black do? HE'S A PIANIST
2. Where is he now? AT HIS HOTEL (IN NEW YORK)
3. How often does he practice the piano? REGULARLY/ for four hours every day
4. Does he get up late? NO, HE DOESN'T
5. What is he wearing this morning? ONE BLUE SOCK AND ONE RED ONE

Bài 24: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng để điền vào chỗ trống

1. It is dangerous toskating on that lake (do/ play/ **go**/ have)
2. He likes to a good game of chess from time to time. (do/ **play**/ go/ have)
3. Nam... English on Monday and Friday. (**studies**/ does/ goes/ plays)
4. I.....swimming in the river. (do/ play/ **go**/ have)
5. My daughter always needs someone to.....with her (do/ **play**/ go/ have)
6. He football for a local club. (studies/ does/ goes/ **plays**)
7. He sailing every week. (studies/ does/ **goes**/ plays)
8. My school is a boarding school andfour floors. (plays/ goes/ **has**/ does)
9. He doesn't likeMaths. (playing/ **studying**/ going/ having)
10. She English and History today. (plays/ goes/ **has**/ does)

UNIT 2: MY HOME**BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN****Bài 1: Điền There is/ There are vào chỗ trống**

1. ____ **There is** ____ a vase on the table
2. ____ **There are** ____ lots of books on the shelf
3. ____ **There are** ____ 12 cushions on the sofa
4. ____ **There is** ____ a big wardrobe in my sister's bed room.
5. ____ **There are** ____ many children in the yard
6. ____ **There is** ____ no cake left on the table.
7. ____ **There is** ____ a laptop on the desk.
8. ____ **There is** ____ a lot of noisy children in the classroom
9. ____ **There is** ____ a little milk on the table
10. ____ **There are** ____ a few difficult problems on the quiz
11. ____ **There are** ____ mice in the kitchen.
12. ____ **There is** ____ a lot of salt in the sauce.
13. ____ **There is** ____ rubbish on the floor.
14. ____ **There are** ____ some dictionaries in the classroom.
15. ____ **There is** ____ a museum next to the park.

Bài 2: Khoanh vào câu trả lời đúng

1. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) any pets in the school.
2. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) tables for all the guests
3. (**There isn't**/ There aren't) furniture in this room.
4. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) police officers on the street.
5. (**There isn't**/ There aren't) time for this.
6. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) any cookies left.
7. (**There isn't**/ There aren't) a place for us to stay
8. (**There isn't**/ There aren't) any jam left.
9. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) three telephones at the airport.
10. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) lots of computers in room 202.
11. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) many people in the hall.
12. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) any legs left.
13. (There isn't/ **There aren't**) eight children in the school.
14. (**There isn't**/ There aren't) a horse in the field.
15. (**There isn't**/ There aren't) any water in the swimming pool.

Bài 3: Với các từ cho sẵn, viết câu hỏi và câu trả lời ngắn

Ví dụ: any/ Brazilian footballers/ in your favorite team?

=> *Are there any Brazilian footballers in your favorite team?*

Yes, there are.

1. an museum park/ near here?

No, _____

2. a ceiling fan/ in your house?

Yes, _____

3. any famous football teams/ in your country?

Yes, _____

4. any interesting places/ in your house?

No, _____

5. a microwave/ in your kitchen?

No, _____

6. a dog/ in the supermarket?

No, _____

7. any ice-cream/ in the fridge?

Yes, _____

8. many windows/ in the house?

Yes, _____

9. any cheese/ in my sandwich?

No, _____

10. Any quiz programmes/ on TV tonight?

Yes, _____.

Bài 4: Mỗi câu dưới đây có một lỗi sai, tìm và sửa lỗi sai sau đó viết lại câu cho đúng

1. There isn't **some** water in the glass. _____ **ANY** _____

2. There are **a** three children talking with the teacher. _____ **X** _____

3. **Are there some** airconditioner in the attic? _____ **IS THERE A** _____

4. **Is** there any windows in this classroom? _____ **ARE** _____

5. There aren't **some** pencils in the pencil case. _____ **ANY** _____

6. There **is** some people in the backyard. _____ **ARE** _____

7. There are **any** pictures on the wall. _____ **SOME** _____

8. Is there **some** boy in the living room? _____ **A** _____

9. There **are/ any** magazines on the table. _____ **AREN'T/SOME** _____

10. There **are** a biscuit on the plate. _____ **IS** _____

Bài 5: Điền some/any/an/ an vào chỗ trống

1. There are _____ **SOME** _____ people in the street.

2. There is _____ **A** _____ cinema on the right.

3. There isn't _____ **A** _____ dishwashers in the country house.

3. The woman is ON the armchair and NEXT TO the man.
4. There is a notebook BETWEEN the hat and the telephone.
5. There is a briefcases UNDER the table.
6. There is a cat ON the chair BEHIND the table.
7. There is a newspaper ON the floor.
8. There is a desk IN the room.
9. There is a garbage can BETWEEN the desk and the cupboard.
10. There are papers UNDER the telephone.
11. There are two people IN the room.
12. There are two photos BETWEEN the telephone and the book.
13. The man is OPPOSITE the window.
14. The newspaper is NEXT TO the chair.
15. There are three pencils ON the desk.

Bài 9: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. trees/ many/park/ are/the/ there/?/in
Are there many trees in the park?
2. next/house/bank/is/ the/ to/the/
The house is next to the bank.
3. a/is/my/garden / there / big / house / behind.
There is a big garden behind my house.
4. many/ how /students / there / school / Lan's / in / are/?
How many students are there in Lan's school?
5. front/a/house / there / of /yard / your /is/ in / small/ ?
Is there a small yard in front of your house?

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10: Điền There is/ There are/There isn't/ There aren't/ Is there/ Are there vào các câu sau sao cho đúng.

1. **There are** many people standing outside the department store
2. **There is** a big group of people looking at things in the museum.
3. **There is** a small cat playing with some toys.
4. (A) How many ceiling lights **are there?**
(B) **There are** two ceiling lights.
5. (A) **Are there** two birds in the tree?
(B) Yes, **there are**
6. **There are** three people in the classroom: two students and one teacher.
7. (A) **Is there** taxi waiting for us?
(B) Yes, **there is**
8. (A) **Are there** any sinks in the bathroom?
(B) No, **there aren't**
9. **There are** four chairs and one table in the dining room.
10. (A). **Is there** anything I can do to help?
(B) Yes, **there is**
11. Why **are there** so many cars parked near the library?

12. **Thereis** great action movie playing at the theater. Do you want to see it?
 13. I don't see any buses. Why **arethere** any buses?
 14. (A) **Isthere** a good reason why he is late?
 (B) Yes, **thereis**
 15. **Therearen't** any English exams that we have to study for next week.
 16. Please wait here for a moment. **Thereis** something I have to get in my car.

Bài 11: Nhìn vào bảng và hoàn thành đoạn văn sau bằng cách điền There is/ There isn't/ There are/There aren't any.

In New York City (1) there are ninety-seven sky crapers and (2)there is a new one called One World Trade Centre. (3)There isn't a beach but (4) There are sixteen bridges.

(5)There aren't any casinos but(6) There isa famous statue.(7)There is zoo in C ntral Park. (8) here isn't an old castle and (9) there aren't any trolleys.

Bài 12: Đọc đoạn văn sau và dựa theo nội dung trong đoạn văn quyết định xem câu nào đúng, câu nào sai. Nếu đúng thì viết là T (True); nếu sai thì viết là F (False) .

- | | | |
|----|---|-------|
| 1. | There are four people in her family. | __T__ |
| 2. | The lake is near the park. | __T__ |
| 3. | There is a big park near the lake | __F__ |
| 4. | The hotel is between the post office and the drugstore. | T__ |
| 5. | The bakery is on her street. | __T__ |
| 6. | There isn't a cinema on her street. | __F__ |
| 7. | The bakery is between the restaurant and the toystore. | F__ |

Bài 13: Hãy viết 2 câu cho mỗi bức tranh dưới đây, mỗi câu sử dụng 1 giới từ chỉ vị trí. Câu thứ 2 bắt đầu bằng cấu trúc There is/ There are...

Ví dụ:

(Books/TV)

- The books are under the TV
- There are books under the TV

1. (apple/ bananas)

The apple is between the bananas

There is an apple between the bananas

2. (palm tree/ pine tree)

The palm tree is next to/ beside/ near the pine tree
There is a palm tree next to/ beside/ near the pine tree
 3. (painting/ bed)
The painting is above the bed.
There is a painting above the bed.
 4. (fruit/ bowl)
The fruit is in the bowl.
There is fruit in the bowl.
 5. (stove/fridge)
The stove is opposite the fridge
There is a stove opposite the fridge
 6. (shoes/ coach)
The shoes are in front of the coach
There are shoes in front of the coach.

UNIT 3 : MY FRIENDS

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1 : Điền am/ is/ are/ have/ has vào chỗ trống.

1. have

Giải thích: “have/ has+ danh từ/ cụm danh từ” để chỉ sự sở hữu.

2. is

Giải thích: “ động từ to be+ tính từ” dùng để miêu tả.

3. has

4. are

5. has

6. am

7. have

8. have

9. has

10. has 11. are

Bài 2 : Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Selena Gomez has short dark hair.

Selena Gomez có mái tóc ngắn tối màu.

2. Tom and Peter are tall and thin.

Tom và Peter thì cao và gầy.

3. They don't have short dark hair.

Họ không có mái tóc tối màu.

4. My sisters are very short.

Các em tôi rất thấp.

5. Cristiano Ronaldo has short dark hair.

Cristiano Ronaldo có mái tóc ngắn tối màu.

6. The babies are lovely.

Em bé thì đáng yêu.

7. She has long curly hair.

Cô ấy có mái tóc xoắn dài.

8. Her hair is very long and curly.

Tóc cô ấy rất dài và xoắn.

9. She doesn't have big eyes.

Cô ấy không có đôi mắt to.

10. I have long straight hair.

Tôi có mái tóc thẳng dài.

Bài 3 : Hoàn thành các câu sau với các từ cho sẵn

Đáp án:

1. curly (xoăn)

Một trong số những người bạn của tôi có mái tóc thẳng, một bạn khác có mái tóc lượn sóng. Nhưng tôi thì có mái tóc xoăn.

2. funny (hài hước)

Bạn cùng lớp tôi rất hài hước. Cậu ấy thích kể chuyện cười trong lớp.

3. long (dài)

Ông tôi có một bộ râu xám dài.

4. lazy (lười biếng)

Cô ấy không thích lao động. Cô ấy rất lười biếng.

5. well- built (vạm vỡ, cơ bắp)

Anh ấy tập luyện ở phòng tập thể hình ba hoặc bốn ngày mỗi tuần. Anh ấy rất vạm vỡ.

6. tall (cao)

Tôi không thấp. Tôi cao.

7. shy (xấu hổ)

Em gái tôi không thích gặp gỡ người lạ. Em ấy rất hay xấu hổ.

8. handsome (đẹp trai)

Mẹ tôi rất đẹp còn bố tôi rất đẹp trai.

9. (thân thiện)

Em họ của cô ấy thích gặp người mới và kết bạn. Anh ấy rất thân thiện.

10. intelligent (thông minh)

Cô ấy có chỉ số I. Q cao. Cô ấy rất thông minh.

Bài 4 : Sắp xếp các từ sau vào nhóm, một từ có thể vào nhiều nhóm.

Đáp án:

Eyes	Hair	Body	Personality
black	blonde	short	Intelligent
green	red	tall	Silly
brown	curly	weak	generous
blue	traight	strong	quiet
	short/ long	fat	talkative
	green	thin	friendly
	brown		stupid
	blue		
	black		

Bài 5 : Chia động từ thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về những dự định, kế hoạch trong tương lai.

1. is coming 2. am not working 3. are travelling 4. is leaving 5. is visiting
6. is picking 7. am visitng 8. are-preparing 9. are-going 10. is driving

Bài 6 : Dựa vào gợi ý trong ngoacj, hãy trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây để nói về kế hoạch vào tuần sau của Ms. Kim. Đừng quên sử dụng cấu trúc câu thì hiện tại tiếp diễn.

1. Kim is meeting Tom on Monday evening.
2. She is looking at Carol's kids on Tuesday afternoon.

3. She is playing badminton on Tuesday evening.
4. She is seeing the dentist on Wednesday morning.
5. She is working late on Wednesday evening.
6. She is picking up Jen from the airport on Thursday afternoon.
7. She is going to a concert on Friday evening.
8. She is going on a sight-seeing tour with Jen on Saturday morning.
9. She is organizing a party on Saturday evening.
10. She is taking Jen to the airport on Sunday morning.

Bài 7: Đọc bức thư sau và khoanh vào đáp án đúng

Đáp án:

1. am meeting

hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về hành động đã chuẩn bị kế hoạch có sẵn, có thời gian cụ thể.

2. visiting

3. leaves

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại đơn để nói về thời gian biểu, lịch trình.

4. starts

5. end

6. am seeing

7. goes

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại đơn để diễn tả hành động lặp đi lặp lại đi với trạng từ “ usually”.

8. am taking

9. starts

10. am coming

Bài 8: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, viết lại câu ở thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn.

1. Are the girl playing tennis tomorrow?

Có phải các bạn nữ sẽ chơi tennis ngày mai không?

2. Are you meeting your friends at the airport later?

Có phải lát nữa bạn sẽ đi gặp bạn của bạn không?

3. Are John and Paula having lunch at two o'clock?

Có phải John và Paula sẽ ăn trưa lúc 2 giờ không?

4. Is Lucas starting the project today?

Có phải Lucas sẽ bắt đầu dự án đó hôm nay không?

5. Is Camila buying an Ipod soon?

Có phải Camila sắp mua một cái Ipod không?

Bài 9. Chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất để hoàn thành các câu sau:

1. Are you doing

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn nói về hành động đã chuẩn bị kế hoạch sẵn, có thời gian cụ thể.

2. begins

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại đơn để nói về thời gian biểu, lịch trình.

3. is meeting

4. kicks off

5. does your meeting start

6. am visiting

7. am finishing

8. open

9. is seeing

10. arrives

Bài 10. Chọn câu trả lời đúng

Đáp án:

1. B. am writing

Giải thích : Trạng từ “ now” trong thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về hành động đang xảy ra tại thời điểm nói.

2. A. goes

Giải thích : trạng từ “ on weekdays “ (các ngày trong tuần) trong thì hiện tại đơn để nói về hành động lặp đi lặp lại.

3. B. am learning

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về kế hoạch, dự định trong tương lai.

4. A. are meeting

Giải thích : thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về hành động đã chuẩn bị kế hoạch sẵn, có thời gian cụ thể.

5. C. write

Giải thích : Trạng từ “ every week” để nói về hành động lặp đi lặp lại.

6. C. arrives

Giải thích : Trạng từ “ sometimes” trong thì hiện tại đơn để nói về hành động lặp đi lặp lại.

7.C. is working

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về dự định , kế hoạch trong tương lai.

8. B. live

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại đơn để diễn tả một sự thật hiển nhiên .

9. A. leaves

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại đơn để nói về thời gian biểu, lịch trình.

10. A. is going

Giải thích : Thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về hành động đã chuẩn bị sẵn, có thời gian cụ thể.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 11 : Điền vào chỗ trống are, is, has, have sao cho phù hợp.

Đáp án:

1. are

2. are

3. have

4. is

5. has

6. has

7. is

8. Have

9. Has

10. Have

11. Is

12. has

13. is

14. Is

15. is

16. Is

17. Has

Bài 12: Điền vào chỗ trống các từ “am- is- are- am not- isn’t- aren’t- have- has” sao cho thích hợp.

Đáp án:

1. am/have/am

Tôi là một học sinh. Tôi có rất nhiều bạn bè. Tôi là một người nổi tiếng ở trường.

2. is/ is/ have

Em tôi rất nhỏ. Em ấy chỉ mới một tuổi. Em ấy không có một chút tóc nào.

3. isn’t/ is/ has

Người đàn ông đó không còn trẻ. Ông ấy 67 tuổi. Ông ấy có mái tóc bạc.

4. have/ isn’t/ is

Chúng tôi có một chiếc xe mới. Xe của chúng tôi không cũ. Nó màu đen.

5. isn’t/ is

Mẹ tôi không có ở nhà. Bà ấy đang ở phòng khám răng.

6. has/ has

Cô ấy gặp một vấn đề. Cô ấy bị đau răng.

7. aren’t/ are

Chúng tôi chữa sẵn sàng cho bài kiểm tra. Chúng tôi đều e sợ nó.

8. have/ am

Tôi có rất nhiều quần áo. Tôi thật may mắn.

9. aren't/ are

Bọn trẻ đang không ở công viên. Chúng đang ở nhà.

10. is/ isn't

Con gái tôi 6 tuổi. Nó không phải thanh thiếu niên.

11. have/ is

Chúng tôi có một khu vườn đẹp. Nó có đầy hoa.

12. isn't/ is/ is

Bố tôi đang không ở nhà. Hôm nay là thứ Hai và bố tôi đang ở nơi làm việc.

Bài 13: Chọn từ thích hợp nhất điền vào chỗ trống.

Đáp án:

1. clever : thông minh

Raina bạn tôi rất thông minh. Cô ấy rất giỏi việc học.

2. creative (sáng tạo)

Bố tôi rất sáng tạo. Ông ấy có rất nhiều ý tưởng.

3. quiet (trầm lặng)

Marisa chị tôi thì trầm lặng. Tôi thì ngược lại. Tôi rất cởi mở.

4. independent (tự lập)

Jorge anh tôi rất tự lập. Anh ấy có thể làm được mọi thứ.

5. hardworking (chăm chỉ)

Tôi không phải là một người chăm chỉ. Tôi ghét làm bài tập về nhà.

6. kind (tốt bụng)

Hàng xóm của tôi là một người tốt. Cô ấy luôn luôn tốt với tôi.

7. honest (trung thực)

Tôi là một người trung thực. Tôi nghĩ nói sự thật là quan trọng.

8. generous (hào phóng)

Bạn trai tôi rất hào phóng. Anh ấy luôn mua cho tôi những thứ tuyệt vời.

Bài 14: Chia động từ trong ngoặc thì Hiện tại đơn hoặc thì hiện tại tiếp diễn sao cho phù hợp.

Đáp án:

1. arrives

Giải thích : Ở đây dùng thì hiện tại đơn để nói về thời gian biểu, lịch trình.

2. is coming

Giải thích : ở đây dùng thì Hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về hành động đã chuẩn bị kế hoạch sẵn, có thời gian cụ thể.

3. are- going

4. Does- start

5. Does – begin

6. are having

7. open

8. does – finish

9. are- staying

Giải thích : ở đây dùng thì hiện tại tiếp diễn để nói về hành động đang xảy ra xung quanh thời điểm nói.

10. start

Giải thích : Ở đây dùng thì Hiện tại đơn để nói về thời gian biểu, lịch trình.

11. ands
12. are moving
13. are meeting
14. are going
15. are doing
16. does – finish
17. closes
18. am seeing
19. Are- using
20. leaves

UNIT 4: MY NEIGHBOURHOOD

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh hơn của các tính từ trong bảng sau:

Tính từ	So sánh hơn	Tính từ	So sánh hơn
Cheap (rẻ)	Cheaper	Old (già)	Older/ elder
Cold (lạnh)	Colder	Near (gần)	Nearer
Thin (gầy)	Thinner	Bad (xấu)	Worse
Good (tốt)	Better	Fat (béo)	Fatter
Fast (nhanh)	Faster	Ugly (xấu)	Uglier
Big (to)	Bigger	Clever (thông minh)	cleverer
High (cao)	Higher	Close (gần)	Closer
Long (dài)	Longer	Safe (an toàn)	Safer
Pretty (xinh xắn)	Prettier	Far (xa)	Farther/ further
Heavy (nặng)	Heavier	Large (rộng)	Larger
Narrow (hẹp)	Narrower	Noisy (ồn ào)	noisier

Bài 2: Hoàn thành câu sau với dạng so sánh hơn của tính từ dài

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. more beautiful | 12. more modern |
| 2. more expensive | 13. more historic |
| 3. more dangerous | 14. more terrible |
| 4. more comfortable | 15. more polluted |
| 5. more convenient | 16. more crowded |
| 6. more important | 17. more boring |
| 7. more exciting | |
| 8. more popular | |
| 9. more beautiful | |
| 10. more difficult | |
| 11. more convenient | |

Bài 3: Sắp xếp các từ sau thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. Nam's new school is bigger than his old one.
Trường học mới của Nam to hơn cái cũ.
2. Huy is taller than his brother
Huy cao hơn anh cậu ấy
3. This chair is more comfortable than that one.
Chiếc ghế này thoải mái hơn chiếc ghế kia.

4. Living in the countryside is more peaceful than living in the city.
Sống ở miền quê yên bình hơn sống ở thành phố.
5. He is more intelligent than his friend.
Anh ấy thông minh hơn bạn của anh ấy.
6. The country is quieter than the city.
Nông thôn yên tĩnh hơn thành thị.
7. Incredibly, she dislikes her family's art gallery.
Thật đáng kinh ngạc, cô ấy không thích triển lãm tranh của gia đình cô ấy.
8. The statue is located between a temple and a railway station.
Bức tượng được đặt giữa một cái đền và ga tàu hỏa.
9. There is a cathedral near the square.
Có 1 nhà thờ lớn gần quảng trường.
10. My father's workshop is in the backyard.
Xưởng làm việc của bố tôi ở sân sau.

Bài 4: Viết câu so sánh hơn, dùng các từ gợi ý.

1. Nam is taller than Thang.
Nam cao hơn Thắng.
Giải thích: Dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be+ **adj+ er+ than** + S2” với tính từ ngắn.
2. My house is bigger than his house.
Nhà của tôi to hơn nhà của anh ấy.
3. Mai is younger than his sister.
Mai trẻ hơn chị của cô ấy.
4. Mr. Ha is fatter than Mr. Tuan.
Ông Hà béo hơn ông Tuấn.
5. My brother is stronger than me.
Anh tôi khỏe hơn tôi.
6. I am shorter than Hoa.
Tôi thấp hơn Hoa.
7. Phuong's room is larger than Lan's room.
Phòng của Phương rộng hơn phòng của Lan.
8. Ms. Linh is more beautiful than Ms. Huyen.
Cô Linh đẹp hơn cô Huyền.
Giải thích: Dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be + more+ adj+ than + S2” với tính từ dài.
9. This exercise is more difficult than that exercise.
Bài tập này khó hơn bài tập kia.
10. My toys are nicer than your toys.
Đồ chơi của tôi đẹp hơn đồ chơi của bạn.

Bài 5: Viết lại bắt đầu bằng từ đã cho sao cho câu không thay đổi.

1. That exercise is more difficult than this one.
Bài tập kia khó hơn bài tập này.
Giải thích: ở câu thứ 2 có sự thay đổi vị trí của 2 đối tượng được so sánh. Vì vậy, dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be + more +adj+ than + S2” với tính từ dài “difficult” (tái nghĩa với tính từ “easy” ở câu thứ nhất) để nghĩa câu không thay đổi.
2. The red car is more expensive than the black car.
Chiếc xe đỏ đắt hơn chiếc xe đen.
3. That film is more boring than this one.

Bộ phim đó tệ hơn bộ phim này.

4. That river is shorter than this one.

Con sông đó ngắn hơn con sông này.

Giải thích: Dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be+ **adj+ er+ than** + S2” với tính từ ngắn.

5. Miss Nga is younger than Miss Lan.

Cô Nga trẻ hơn cô Lan.

6. Your kitchen is bigger than mine.

Phòng bếp của bạn to hơn của tôi.

Lưu ý: Ở câu thứ nhất dùng đại từ sở hữu “your” để thay thế cho “your kitchen”. Vì vậy, ở câu thứ 2 dùng đại từ sở hữu “mine” để thay thế cho “my kitchen”

7. Her new house is smaller than her old one.

Ngôi nhà mới của cô ấy nhỏ hơn ngôi nhà cũ.

8. The white dress is cheaper than the black one.

Chiếc váy trắng rẻ hơn chiếc váy đen.

9. According to me, Maths is more difficult than English.

Theo tôi, Toán khó hơn Tiếng Anh.

10. That computer works worse than this one.

Chiếc máy tính đó hoạt động tệ hơn chiếc này.

Lưu ý: “bad” là tính từ đặc biệt nên khi chuyển về dạng so sánh hơn thì không thêm “er” mà chuyển thành “worse”.

Bài 6: Viết dạng so sánh hơn của những từ trong ngoặc.

1. more exciting

2. more fantastic

3. better

4. faster

5. more valuable

6. larger

7. easier

8. further

9. bigger

10. taller

11. longer

12. more dangerous

13. luckier- later

14. bigger- cheaper

15. more famous

16. further

17. more useful

18. better- elder

19. more complicated

20. thinner- taller

Bài 7: Chỉ ra và sửa lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau:

1. Lỗi sai: popularer

Sửa: Cats are more popular than snakes as pets.

Giải thích: “popular” là tính từ dài nên dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be+ **more+adj+ than+ S2**”

2. Lỗi sai: more strict

Sửa: My mom is stricter than your mum.

Giải thích: strict là tính từ ngắn nên dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be +**adj+ er+ than+ S2**”

3. Lỗi sai: as

Sửa: Pigs are more intelligent than other animals.

4. Lỗi sai: more trendy

Sửa: Your mobile phone is trendier than mine.

Giải thích: trendy là tính từ 2 âm tiết tận cùng là “y” nên dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn “S+ to be +**adj+ er+ than+ S2**”. Tính từ bỏ “y” và thêm đuôi “ier”.

5. Lỗi sai: slow

*Sửa: Turtles are **slower** than crocodiles.*

6. Lỗi sai: interestinger

Sửa: Disneyland is more interesting than any other amusement park.

7. Lỗi sai: heavier

Sửa: Elephants are heavier than pigs.

8. Lỗi sai: more happy

Sửa: Jack is now happier than he used to be.

9. Lỗi sai: more rare

Sửa: Bears are **rarer** than snakes.

10. Lỗi sai: Farer

Sửa: The tourist company was further down the street than I had thought.

Bài 8: Hãy chọn từ, cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề A, B, C thích hợp nhất cho khoảng trống của câu.

1. C. better

2. C. more beautiful

3. C. more careful

4. B. larger

5. C. more powerful

6. C. less

Giải thích: “little” (ít) là tính từ đặc biệt, trong cấu trúc so sánh hơn phải biến đổi thành “less”.

7. C. friendlier

8. A. older

9. B. narrower

10. B. worse

Bài 9: Hoàn thành các câu sau với các tính từ cho sẵn.

1. more beautiful than

5. colder- than

9. better than

2. hotter than

6. cheaper than

10. more beautiful than

3. more dangerous than

7. higher than

4. more polite than

8. more comfortable

Bài 10: đọc đoạn văn sau và chọn câu trả lời đúng.

1. D

Dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn: I live in Cairo, which is the capital of Egypt. There are more than ten million people here. (Tôi sống ở Cairo, là thủ đô của Ai Cập. Có hơn 10 triệu người ở đây.)

2. A

Dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn: A lot of them have come from the countryside because there are more jobs here. (Nhiều người trong số họ đến từ miền quê vì có nhiều công việc ở đây.)

3. B

- tourists / visitors: du khách

“Many tourists come from all over the world to see the Pyramids, which are near the city.”

(Nhiều du khách từ khắp thế giới đến xem kim tự tháp ở gần thành phố.)

4. D

Dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn: I like Cairo because it is big and exciting. I have a lot of friends and it is easy to meet new people. (Tôi thích Cairo vì nó lớn và thú vị. Tôi có nhiều bạn và rất dễ dàng để gặp người mới.)

5. C

A. đúng vì theo dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn “I have a lot of friends”

B. đúng vì theo dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn “ it is easy to meet new people.”

- C. sai vì theo dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn “I live in an apartment near the city centre”
D. đúng vì theo dẫn chứng trong đoạn văn “I am glad that I live here, but my mother doesn’t like it.”

UNIT 5: NATURAL WONDERS OF THE WORLD

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng so sánh nhất của các tính từ sau:

Tính từ	So sánh nhất	Tính từ	So sánh nhất
Short (ngắn)	shortest	Bad (xấu, tệ)	worst
Nice (đẹp)	nicest	Little (ít)	least
Happy (hạnh phúc)	Happiest	Much (nhiều)	most
Dry (khô)	driest	Funny (buồn cười)	funniest
Big (to)	biggest	Fat (béo)	fattest
Thin (gầy)	thinnest	Cheap (rẻ)	cheapest
Good (tốt)	best	Lazy (lười)	laziest

Bài 2: Cho dạng đúng so sánh nhất của tính từ trong ngoặc

1. Ho Chi Minh City is (big)... **the biggest** city in Viet Nam.
2. Lan is (thin)... **the most careful** of the three sisters.
3. The Amazone River is (long)... **the longest** river in the world.
4. Hanh is(clever)... **the cleverest**..... student in class.
5. It's(short)... **the shortest** day of year.
6. Who's(good)..... **the best**tennis player in your country?
7. Who is (tall)..... **the tallest**..... person in your family?
8. December is (cold)..... **the coldest** month of the year in my country.
9. Ethan is (happy)..... **the happiest** boy that I know.
10. Where are(nice)..... **the nicest** beaches in your country?

Bài 3: Chọn đáp án thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống.

1. My sister is..... person in my family.
A. young B. younger than C. the youngest
2. I think Federer is..... tennis player in the world.
A. good B. better than C. the best

Giải thích: "good" là tính từ đặc biệt phải biến đổi thành "best" trong câu so sánh nhất

3. Winter is season of the year in Europe.
A. cold B. colder than C. **the coldest**
4. Our house is..... in the street.
A. bigger B. **the biggest** C. more big
5. He is..... of four children.
A. older B. **the oldest** C. more old
- 6 man in the world is 120 years old.
A. **the oldest** B. the older C. More old

7. Everest is mountain in the world.
 A. highest **B. the highest** C. the higher
8. Sam is a terrible footballer. He's player in the team.
 A. the best B. the baddest C. the worst

Giải thích: "bad" là tính từ đặc biệt phải biến đổi thành "worst" trong câu so sánh nhất.

9. What's city in the world?
 A. the large **B. the largest** C. largest
10. You are girl in our class.
 A. the funny **B. the funniest** C. the funnier

Giải thích: Trong câu so sánh nhất, tính từ "funny" kết thúc bằng "y" do vậy khi biến đổi phải bỏ "y" thêm "iest".

Bài 4: Sắp xếp trật tự các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. /all /Tom's /the /of/is/cleanest/room

-> Tom's room is the cleanest of all.

Phòng của Tom là sạch nhất trong tất cả.

2. /Sienkiewicz / writers/, /is /the /Polish /greatest /one. /Of/all

-> Of all Polish writer Sienkiewicz is the greatest one.

Trong số tất cả những người Ba Lan Sienkiewicz là người vĩ đại nhất.

3. /one /of /is /the /in /world. /Egypt/oldest /countries/the

-> Egypt is one of the oldest countries in the world

Ai Cập là một trong những quốc gia cổ nhất thế giới.

4. /world, /second /is /the /the /Canada/country/in/largest

-> Canada is the second largest country in the world.

Canada là quốc gia lớn thứ hai trên thế giới.

5. /worst /was /us. /time /for /Winter/the

-> Winter was the worst time for us

Mùa đông là khoảng thời gian tồi tệ nhất đối với chúng tôi.

6. /ugliest /know /is /town /I. /It /the

-> It is the ugliest town I know.

Đây là thị trấn xấu nhất mà tôi biết.

7. /country /road /is /widest /in /the. /This/the

-> This road is the widest in the country.

Đây là con đường rộng nhất đất nước.

8. /is /the / world? /What/animal/smallest in /the

-> What is the smallest animal in the world

Đây là loài vật nhỏ bé nhất thế giới?

9. /animal /Is /whale /or /the /the / in /world? /the/elephant/biggest/ the

-> Is the whale or the elephant the biggest animal?

Cá voi hay voi là loài động vật lớn nhất thế giới?

10. /worst /am /student. /I/in/the /class

-> I am the worst student in the class.

Tôi là học sinh yếu nhất lớp.

Bài 5: Dựa vào các từ gợi ý, viết câu so sánh nhất.

1. The Amazon River/ long/ river/ world.

-> The Amazon River is the longest river in the world.

Sông Amazon là dòng sông dài nhất thế giới.

Giải thích: Cấu trúc so sánh nhất : S + V + the + adj + -est + (Danh từ) với tính từ ngắn

2. Everest/ high/ mountain/ world.

-> **Everest is the highest mountain in the world.**

Everest là ngọn núi cao nhất thế giới.

3. My father/ tall/ family.

-> **My father is the tallest in my family.**

Bố tôi là người cao nhất trong gia đình tôi.

4. Ngoc/ good/ our school.

-> **Ngoc is the best at our school.**

Ngọc giỏi nhất ở trường chúng tôi.

Giải thích: "good" là tính từ đặc biệt phải biến đổi thành "best".

5. Bill/ nice/ of the class

-> **Bill is the nicest of the class.**

Bill tử tế nhất trong lớp.

6. August/ hot/ month of the year

-> **August is the hottest month of the year.**

Tháng tám là tháng nóng nhất trong năm.

7. This restaurant/ good/ in town

-> **This restaurant is best in town.**

Nhà hàng này tuyệt nhất trong thị trấn.

8. Peter/ bad/ singer

-> **Peter is the worst singer.**

Peter là ca sĩ tệ nhất.

9. Will Smith / rich/ actor.

Will Smith is the richest actor.

Will Smith là diễn viên giàu có nhất.

10. Susan/ short/ of the three.

Susan is the shortest of the three

Susan thấp nhất trong ba người.

Bài 6: Đọc các câu sau, viết T (True) nếu câu đúng, F (False) nếu câu sai

1. You must wash your hands before lunch... **T - Bạn phải rửa tay trước khi ăn.**

2. You mustn't listen to your parents. **F - Bạn không được nghe lời bố mẹ**

3. You must break the windows at school. **F - Bạn phải làm vỡ cửa sổ ở trường**

4. You must take a shower every day. **T - Bạn phải tắm hàng ngày.**

5. You mustn't eat fruit and vegetables every day. **F - Bạn không được ăn hoa quả và rau hàng ngày**

6. You must eat lots of sweets if you want to lose some weight.

F - Bạn phải ăn rất nhiều đồ ngọt nếu bạn muốn giảm cân.

7. You must feed your dog every day. **T - Bạn phải cho chó của bạn ăn hàng ngày**

8. You mustn't fight in the playground. **T - Bạn không được gây gỗ trong sân chơi**

9. You must eat in class. **F - Bạn phải ăn trong lớp.**

10. You mustn't be late. **T - Bạn không được đến lớp muộn.**

Bài 7: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu "must" hoặc "mustn't" vào chỗ trống.

1. You..... **must**tidy up room.

Bạn phải dọn dẹp phòng của bạn.

2. It's late. You **mustn't**make so much noise.

Muộn rồi. Bạn không được gây ra nhiều tiếng ồn.

3. You..... **mustn't**smoke.

Bạn không được hút thuốc.

4. We..... **must**be home by 9 o'clock. The film starts at 9:15.

Chúng ta phải về nhà lúc 9 giờ. Bộ phim bắt đầu lúc 9:15.

5. You **mustn't** do your homework.

Bạn phải làm bài tập về nhà.

6. I **must** finish this essay today. It has to be handed in by tomorrow.

Tôi phải hoàn thành bài luận văn này hôm nay. Nó phải được nộp vào sáng mai.

7. Passengers..... talk to the driver whilst the bus is in motion.

Hành khách không được nói chuyện với tài xế khi xe buýt đang di chuyển.

8. You **mustn't**.....play with fire.

Bạn không được nghịch lửa.

9. This is a dangerous tour. Children..... **must** be accompanied by an adult.

Đây là một chuyến đi nguy hiểm. Trẻ em phải được đi kèm cùng người lớn.

10. You..... **must**.....be home on time.

Bạn phải đến đúng giờ.

11. People **must**.....stand on this bus.

Mọi người phải đứng trên chiếc xe buýt này.

12. You..... **mustn't**.....cheat in a test.

Bạn không được gian lận trong bài kiểm tra.

13. We **must**.....do more exercise to stay fit.

Chúng ta phải tập thể dục nhiều hơn để khỏe mạnh.

14. You..... **mustn't** turn the music too loud.

Bạn không được bật nhạc quá to.

15. There ... **must** be something wrong with the engine of this car.

Chắc chắn có chuyện gì đó không ổn với động cơ của ô tô.

16. You..... **must**.....help in the house.

Bạn phải giúp đỡ trong nhà.

17. We **mustn't** give up when we are so close.

Chúng ta không được từ bỏ khi chúng ta đã tới rất gần.

18. You..... **mustn't** annoy your little sister.

Bạn không được gây khó chịu cho chị của bạn.

19. This was a nice evening. We... **must**.....meet again.

Tối qua thật tuyệt. Chúng ta chắc chắn sẽ gặp lại.

20. You..... **mustn't**.....bite nails.

Bạn không được cắn móng tay.

Bài 8: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu “must” hoặc “have to” vào chỗ trống thích hợp.

1. The sign says "Stop". You ... **have to**..... stop here.

Biển hiệu ghi : "Dừng lại. Bạn phải dừng ở đây":

Giải thích: have to" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài, do luật lệ, quy tắc quyết định.

2. The teacher said: "You..... **have to** do all exercises on page 21 in Look Ahead."

Giáo viên nói " Các em phải làm tất cả bài tập ở trang 21 trong quyển Look Ahead

3. I **have to** help little brother more. My father said so.

Tôi phải giúp đỡ em trai nhiều hơn nữa, bố tôi nói vậy

4. I..... **have to**take these medicines. The doctor said so.

Tôi phải uống thuốc này. Bác sĩ nói vậy.

5. I **must** write lines as a punishment because I threw the shoe of my neighbour

through the window.

Tôi phải viết những dòng này như là một hình phạt vì tôi đã ném giấy vào hàng xóm của tôi qua cửa sổ.

Giải thích: "must" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói, mang tính chủ quan.

6. Sorry, I can't come. I... **must**..... clean my room. I can't live in such a mess anymore.

Xin lỗi, tôi không thể đến. Tôi phải dọn dẹp phòng của tôi. Tôi không thể sống trong tình trạng bừa bộn như này nữa.

7. He..... **must** clean the classroom because he had been throwing papers on the ground.

Anh ấy phải dọn dẹp phòng học vì anh ấy đã vứt giấy lên sàn.

8. "You..... **have to** help me", said the mysterious woman to the detective.

"Luật lệ phải được tuân thủ mọi lúc" Hiệu trưởng la lên.

9. "The rules... **must** be obeyed at all times!" shouted the headmaster.

"Anh phải giúp tôi" Người phụ nữ bí ẩn nói với thám tử.

10. "I **must** go. Otherwise I'll miss my train."

Tôi phải về nhà. Không thì tôi sẽ lỡ chuyến tàu

11. I..... **must** be home at one o'clock. Otherwise, my mother will kill me.

Tôi phải ở nhà lúc 1 giờ. Không thì mẹ tôi sẽ giết tôi mất.

Bài 9: Điền động từ khuyết thiếu "mustn't" hoặc "don't have to" vào chỗ trống thích hợp.

1. There is a "No turn right" sign. You... **mustn't**..... turn right.

Có một biển báo "Không rẽ phải". Bạn không được rẽ phải

Giải thích: mustn't" diễn tả ý cấm đoán.

2. The sign says "No smoking". You ... **mustn't**..... smoke here.

Biển báo nói "Không hút thuốc". Bạn không được hút thuốc ở đây.

3. You..... **don't have to** ... have an appointment for this doctor. You can go and see him when you want.

Bạn không cần phải hẹn trước với bác sĩ này. Bạn có thể đến và gặp ông ấy lúc bạn muốn.

Giải thích: "don't have to" diễn tả ý không cần thiết phải làm gì.

4. You ... **don't have to**..... tell me. I already know.

Bạn không cần phải nói với tôi. Tôi đã biết rồi.

5. The big boss will be at the meeting. You..... **mustn't**..... be late.

Sếp lớn sẽ tới buổi họp. Bạn không được đến muộn.

6. You can help me if you want to but you... **don't have to**

7. You... **mustn't**..... park your car there. That's the Director's place.

8. This area is off limits to everybody. You..... **mustn't**..... come here unless you are invited.

9. You... **don't have to**..... to wear a tie in this company but they prefer it if you do.

10. You..... **mustn't**..... criticize David. He's doing the best he can.

11. You ... **don't have to**..... drive there. You can take the train.

12. You ... **don't have to**..... play tennis to enjoy watching tennis matches.

13. You..... **don't have to**..... buy me presents though I always appreciate it when you do.

14. It's really important to remember. You... **mustn't** forget.

15. You... **mustn't**..... tell anybody. It is a big secret.

16. We are already late. We..... **mustn't**..... waste any more time.

17. This is a sterile area. It must be kept clean. You... **don't have to** bring any food or drink in here.

18. You... **don't have to** come at 8.00. Come at whatever time suits you.

19. You..... **mustn't**..... smoke in this area. It is forbidden.

20. I..... **don't have to** go back again. The treatment is finished.

21. Jeans are not allowed in this company. You... **don't have to** wear jeans.

22. You... **don't have to** be mad to work here but it helps!

23. You... **don't have to**.....buy the text book for this course, you can borrow mine.
 24. You..... **mustn't**.....smoke in a gas station.
 25. This bus is free! You... **don't have to** buy a ticket.
 26. You... **don't have to**.....enter the park if your dog is not on a leash.

Bài 10: Điền mustn't hoặc needn't vào chỗ trống.

1. I **needn't** take the umbrella. It won't rain.

Bạn không cần mang ô đi. Trời sẽ không mưa.

Giải thích: "needn't " diễn tả ý không cần thiết phải làm gì.

2. I..... **mustn't**.....cross this bridge. It's closed.

Tôi không được bước qua chiếc cầu này. Nó bị đóng rồi.

Giải thích: "mustn't" diễn tả ý cấm đoán.

3. We..... **mustn't** be late. The train will leave in 10 minutes.

Chúng ta không được đến muộn. Chuyến tàu sẽ rời đi trong 10 phút nữa.

4. You ... **needn't** hurry. We have plenty of time

Bạn không cần phải vội, chúng ta có rất nhiều thời gian.

5. You **mustn't** smoke in here. It's forbidden. Look at that sign.

Bạn không được hút thuốc ở đây. Điều đó bị cấm. Nhìn cái biển kia.

6. We have enough diesel, so we... **needn't**stop here.

Chúng ta có đủ xăng. Chúng ta không cần dừng ở đây.

7. You..... **needn't**come if you don't want to.

Bạn không cần phải đến, nếu bạn không muốn.

8. They **needn't**..... do the washing up, they have a dishwasher

Họ không cần phải rửa bát, họ có máy rửa bát.

9. You **mustn't** show this e-mail to anyone else. I'll trust you

Bạn không được cho ai khác xem email này. Tôi tin bạn.

10. The students..... **mustn't** forget their homework.

Học sinh không được quên bài tập về nhà.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 11: Chọn đáp án thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống

1. Mexico is verycity

A. large B. larger than C. the largest

Giải thích: Câu không có cấu trúc so sánh và không mang nội dung so sánh nên tính từ để ở dạng thường.

2. I usually get up my brother.

A. Early B. earlier than C. the earliest

Giải thích: Trong câu có hai đối tượng được so sánh với nhau là "I" và "my brother" dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn "S + to be + adj + er + than + S2" với tính từ "earlier"

3. Sue's wearing a.....

A. New B. newer than C. the newest

4. A book is a thing to carry when you go on a trip.

A. heavy B. heavier than C. the heaviest

5. Antarctica is..... Spain

A. cold B. colder than C. the coldest

6. Her eyes aremine.

A. Pretty B. prettier than C. the prettiest

7. My desk is.....David's.

A. Tidy B. tidier than C. the tidiest

8. A lot of people drink milk.
A. Hot B. hotter than C. the hottest
9. A continent is..... a country.
 A. Big **B. bigger than** C. the biggest
10. The moon isplanet to earth.
A. The closest B. closest C. closer than

Giải thích: Dùng cấu trúc so sánh nhất "S+v + the + adj + -est + (Danh từ)" với tính từ ngắn "close" để so sánh đối tượng "the moon" với tất cả đối tượng trong cùng nhóm "planet".

Bài 12: Khoanh vào phương án trả lời đúng.

1. There are 10 houses on our street. Our house is the (**biggest/** bigger) one.

Giải thích: Dùng cấu trúc so sánh nhất "+V + the + adj + -est + (Danh từ)" với tính từ ngắn "big" để so sánh đối tượng 'my house' với tất cả đối tượng trong cùng nhóm

2. My brother sings better than I do, but I play guitar (the best/ **better**) than he does.

Giải thích: Trong câu có hai đối tượng được so sánh với nhau là "I play guitar" và "he does", dùng cấu trúc so sánh hơn: "S + to be + adj + er + than + S2" với tính từ "good". Tuy nhiên "good" là tính từ đặc biệt nên cần biến đổi thành "better"

3. This is (better/ **the best**) song I have ever heard!
4. Tom is (**stronger/** the strongest) than I am.
5. Out of all the students in our class, I am (**the shortest/** shorter)
6. Everyone says that my sister is (the best looking/ better looking) than I am.
7. She is (**the best looking/** better looking) girl in our school.
8. Your apartment is (**cleaner/** the cleanest) than mine.
9. The weather was much (**warmer/** the warmest) in England than in Spain last week.
10. John is (**younger/** the youngest) than David.

Bài 13: Chọn Must hoặc Can điền vào chỗ trống.

1. That's ridiculous- you... **must**be joking.

Điều đó thật nực cười. Bạn chắc hẳn đang đùa

Giải thích: dùng "must" để đưa 1 suy luận mang tính chắc chắn.

2. That's the phone-who **can**..... it be?

Kia là cái điện thoại. Nó có thể là gì nhỉ?

Giải thích: dùng "can" để diễn tả khả năng thực hiện điều gì đó.

3. They haven't eaten for hours- they..... **must**.....be starving.

Họ đã không ăn hàng tiếng rồi. Họ bây giờ chắc đang đói

4. I'm busy this morning, but I..... **can**.....see you this afternoon if you like.

Tôi bận vào buổi sáng hôm nay, nhưng tôi có thể gặp bạn vào chiều nay nếu bạn thích.

5. You..... **can**.....enter the country without a visa.

Bạn có thể nhập cảnh quốc gia này mà không cần Visa

6. They're two hours late- there..... **must**.....be something wrong.

Họ đã muộn hai tiếng rồi. Chắc chắn có điều gì không ổn ở đây.

7. She left two hours ago, so she..... **must**.....have arrived by now.

Cô ấy đã rời đi hai tiếng trước, nên cô ấy phải đã ở đây rồi.

8. My doctor says I..... **must**.....lose some weight.

Bác sĩ của tôi nói tôi phải giảm một vài cân.

- 9 **Can** you smell something burning?

Bạn có ngửi thấy cái gì đó đang cháy không?

Bài 14: Khoanh vào đáp án đúng.

1. We.....eat sweets in the classrooms.

- A. Can B. must C. mustn't D. don't have to

Chúng ta không được ăn kẹo trong phòng học.

Giải thích: mustn't" diễn tả ý cấm đoán.

2. I... do my homework. My teacher said so.

- A. Can B. mustn't C. have to D. don't have to

Tôi phải làm bài tập về nhà trước buổi học. Cô giáo bảo vậy.

Giải thích: Dùng "have to" để đưa ra yêu cầu mang tính bắt buộc.

3. This is the smoking room at this airport. You.....smoke in this room.

- A. Must B. mustn't C. can D. don't have to

Đây là phòng hút thuốc lá ở sân bay này. Bạn cá thể hút thuốc trong phòng này.

Giải thích: dùng "can" để diễn tả khả năng thực hiện điều gì đó.

4. I.....listen to the music I like. My parents like it too.

- A- Can B. must C. mustn't D. don't have to

Tôi có thể nghe loại nhạc mà tôi thích. Bố mẹ tôi cũng thích nó.

5. I..... watch TV late at night. My parents say I must go to bed early.

- A- Can't B. must C. can D. don't have to

Tôi không thể xem TV muộn vào buổi đêm. Bố mẹ tôi nói tôi phải đi ngủ sớm.

Giải thích: dùng "can't" để diễn tả khả năng không thực hiện điều gì đó.

6. We.....be quiet

- A- Must B. mustn't C. have to D. don't have to

Chúng ta phải im lặng.

Giải thích: Dùng "must" để đưa ra yêu cầu được nhấn mạnh, mang tính bắt buộc.

7. You speak on the mobile phone on an aeroplane.

- A- Can B. must C. mustn't D. don't have to

Chúng ta không được nói chuyện trên máy bay

8. You put the rubbish into the bin

- A- Must B. mustn't C. have to D. don't have to

9. You take photos in this museum. It's against the ruler.

- A. Must B. can C. mustn't D. don't have to

Bạn không được chụp ảnh ở bảo tàng này. Điều này trái với quy định.

10. You make noise in this area.

- A. Can B. must D. mustn't D. don't have to

Bạn không được làm ồn tại khu vực này.

Bài 15 : Điền must/ mustn't/ don't have to/ doesn't have to/ have to/ has to vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.

1. You don't have to worry about her! She's all right now!

Bạn không cần lo lắng cho cô ấy. Lúc này cô ấy ổn.

Giải thích: Don't have to" diễn tả ý không cần thiết phải làm gì.

2. He's very ill, he must stay in bed.

Anh ấy đang bị ốm. Anh ấy phải nằm trên giường.

Giải thích: "must" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ người nói, mang tính chủ quan.

3. Children mustn't play in this dangerous place.

Trẻ em không được chơi ở nơi nguy hiểm này.

Giải thích: "mustn't" diễn tả ý cấm đoán.

4. We are on Saturday! We don't have to to get early!

Chúng ta đang ở thứ Bảy. Chúng ta không cần phải dậy sớm.

5. You **mustn't**.....smoke here! It's a school!

Bạn không được hút thuốc ở đây. Đây là trường học.

6. Old people.....**have to**.....be helped.

Người già cần phải được giúp đỡ.

Giải thích: "have to" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài, do người khác quyết định.

7. You **mustn't**.....forget your dictionary for the exam!

Bạn không được quên từ điển cho bài kiểm tra!

8. She..... **don't have to** choose if she doesn't want to!

Cô ấy không phải chọn nếu cô ấy không muốn!

9. They are happy because they.... **don't have to**wear a uniform in their new school.

Họ đang rất vui vì họ không phải mặc đồng phục ở trường mới

10. The river is too deep, you..... **mustn't**.....swim here!

Con sông quá sâu, bạn không được bơi ở đây.

UNIT 6. OUR TET HOLIDAY

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Đọc câu và điền should/shouldn't vào chỗ trống sao cho hợp lý.

1. Tom.....**shouldn't**..... eat so many lollipops. It's bad for his teeth.

Tom không nên ăn quá nhiều kẹo mút. Điều này không tốt cho răng của cậu ấy.

2. He's fifteen. He..... **shouldn't**..... drive a car.

Cậu ấy mười lăm tuổi. Cậu ấy không nên lái ô tô

3. Pregnant women..... **shouldn't**.....smoke as it can damage the baby.

Phụ nữ mang thai không nên hút thuốc lá bởi nó có hại cho em bé

4. We.... **should** go somewhere exciting for our holiday.

Chúng ta nên đến nơi nào đó thú vị trong kì nghỉ của chúng ta

5. People **shouldn't**drive fast in the town centre.

Mọi người không nên lái xe nhanh ở trung tâm thành phố

6. You **should**ask the teacher to help you if you don't understand the lesson.

Bạn nên nhờ giáo viên giúp bạn nếu bạn không hiểu bài giảng

7. I **should** buy the dress or the skirt?

Tôi nên mua váy đầm hay chân váy.

8. She **shouldn't**tell lies.

Cô ấy không nên nói dối.

9. That's a fantastic book. You..... **should** read it

Đó là một cuốn sách tuyệt vời, bạn nên đọc nó.

10. The doctor said: you **should**eat healthy food. You..... **shouldn't**..... eat fast food. You

..... **shouldn't**..... watch so much TV. You **should** walk 1 hour a day. You.....

should..... drink fruit juice and water. You..... **shouldn't**drink wine or beer.

Bác sĩ nói: "Bạn nên ăn đồ ăn có lợi cho sức khỏe. Bạn không nên ăn đồ ăn nhanh. Bạn không nên xem TV quá nhiều. Bạn nên đi bộ một tiếng mỗi ngày. Bạn nên uống nước hoa quả và nước tinh khiết. Bạn không nên uống rượu bia.

11. You **shouldn't**..... be so selfish.

Bạn không nên quá ích kỷ

12. I don't think you .. **should** smoke so much.

Tôi không nghĩ bạn nên hút thuốc nhiều.

13. You..... **should**exercise more.

Bạn nên tập thể dục nhiều hơn.

14. I think I you **should**..... try to speak to her.

Tôi nghĩ bạn nên cố nói chuyện với cô ấy.

15. You are overweight. You **should** go on a diet.

Bạn đang bị thừa cân. Bạn nên ăn kiêng.

16. Where..... **should**.....we park our car?

Chúng ta nên đỗ xe ở đâu nhỉ?

17. You **should**.....never speak to your mother like this.

Bạn không bao giờ nên nói chuyện với mẹ bạn như vậy.

18. The kid **shouldn't**..... spend so much time in front of the TV.

Lũ trẻ không nên dành quá nhiều thời gian trước TV.

19. **should**..... I tell her the truth or should I say nothing?

Tôi nên nói sự thật hay là không nói gì cả?

20. I think we..... **should** reserve our holiday in advance.

Tôi nghĩ chúng ta nên đặt trước kì nghỉ lễ của chúng ta.

Bài 2: Nối câu ở cột A (tình huống) với cột B (lời khuyên) sao cho hợp lý.

1....h..... 2....b..... 3....a..... 4...c..... 5.....f.....

6...e..... 7....d..... 8.....j.... 9...i..... 10.....g.....

1. Nó quá xa để đi bộ. (h) Bạn nên bắt taxi.

2. Một ai đó không biết đi đường nào.(b) Bạn nên hỏi cảnh sát.

3. Một ai đó đang chuẩn bị sống ở nước ngoài.(a) Bạn nên học ngôn ngữ trước khi đi.

4. Đây là một ngày lạnh.(c) Bạn nên mặc một chiếc áo khoác.

5. Một ai đó đang cảm thấy nóng và đau đầu.(f) Bạn nên gặp bác sĩ.

6. Một ai đó vừa nhìn thấy người đột nhập vào cửa sổ của một cửa hiệu.(e) Bạn nên gọi cảnh sát

7. Ai đó không mang tiền.(d)Bạn nên trả bằng séc

8. Trời đang mưa.(j) Bạn nên mang theo ô.

9.Ai đó cần phải dậy sớm vào buổi sáng.(i) Bạn nên đặt đồng hồ báo thức.

10. Ai đó đang mệt (g) Bạn nên nghỉ ngơi.

Bài 3: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. up/I / smoking/. / should/ give

I should give up smoking.

Tôi nên bỏ thuốc lá.

2. I/ not/?/ tell/ her/ or/ Should

Should I tell her or not?

Tôi nên nói cho cô ấy hay không?

3. think/should/I/take/you/easy/. / it

I think you should take it easy.

Tôi nghĩ bạn nên không quá căng thẳng.

4.What/should/time/come/?/I

What time should I come?

Tôi nên đến vào lúc nào?

5. Jeff/ much/. /work/ so/ shouldn't

Jeff shouldn't work so much.

Jeff không nên làm việc quá nhiều.

6.We/ our/ take/ should/ umbrellas/.

We should take our umbrella.

Chúng ta nên mang theo ô.

7. don't/ accept/ this/ Anita/ job./ think /I /should

I don't think Anita should accept this job.

Tôi không nghĩ Anita nên chấp nhận công việc này.

8. you/ should/ sure/ we/ Are/ it?/ do

Are you sure we should do it?

Bạn có chắc chúng ta nên làm điều này?

9. What /should/ is/ do/ home/, /go/ you

Điều bạn nên làm là về nhà.

Giải thích: Câu ở dạng khẳng định có cụm chủ ngữ "what you should do" và động từ to be "is"

10. speak/ should/ think/ to/ Do/ police/?/ you/ the/I

Do you think I should speak to the police?

Bạn có nghĩ là tôi nên nói chuyện với cảnh sát?

Bài 4: Dựa vào các gợi ý dưới đây để đưa ra lời khuyên cho mỗi tình huống sau.

Take medicine / take up swimming/ worry about it/ eat so much sweets/ do little jobs or go babysitting/ ask your teacher to explain it again/ study harder/ watch too much television/ i practice a lot/ get up earlier

1. We are often late for school.

We should get up earlier.

Chúng ta nên dậy sớm hơn.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu "Chúng ta thường xuyên đi học muộn".

2. My friends laugh at me because I don't have expensive clothes.

You shouldn't worry about it.

Bạn không nên lo lắng về điều đó.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu "Bạn tôi cười tôi vì tôi không có quần áo đắt tiền".

3. My mother has a terrible headache.

She should take medicine.

Cô ấy nên uống thuốc.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu "Mẹ tôi có một cơn đau đầu nặng".

4. don't understand how to give advice in English.

You should ask your teacher to explain it again.

Bạn nên nhờ giáo viên giải thích lại lần nữa.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu "Tôi không hiểu cách đưa ra lời khuyên trong tiếng Anh"

5. My brother gets very bad marks at school.

He should study harder.

Anh ấy nên học hành chăm chỉ hơn.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu "Anh tôi nhận được điểm rất kém ở trường".

6. We're going to write a Maths test tomorrow.

We should practice a lot

Chúng ta nên luyện tập nhiều.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu "Chúng ta sẽ có bài kiểm tra toán ngày mai".

7. My sister can't swim and she wants to go to Greece next summer.

She should take up swimming.

Cô ấy nên bắt đầu tập bơi

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu: Chị tôi không biết bơi và chị ấy muốn đi Hy Lạp mùa hè tới"

8. I always feel tired

You shouldn't watch too much television.

Bạn không nên xem TV nhiều quá.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu “ Tôi luôn luôn cảm thấy mệt”

9. My friends love eating and they're very fat.

They shouldn't eat too much sweets.

Họ không nên ăn quá nhiều đồ ngọt.

Giải thích: Lời khuyên cho câu:” Những người bạn của tôi thích ăn uống và họ rất béo”

10. I want to buy some new clothes but I don't have any money.

You should do little jobs or go babysitting.

Bạn nên làm một chút gì đó hoặc đi trông trẻ

Giải thích: “ Tôi muốn mua một vài bộ quần áo mới, nhưng tôi không có tiền”

Bài 5: Chọn động từ thích hợp trong bảng dưới đây để điền vào chỗ trống.

clean eat fasten go stay study take x 2 visit watch

1. If you have time you should..... **visit** the National Museum.

visit: tham quan

bạn có thời gian bạn nên thăm bảo tàng quốc gia.

2. When you are driving a car, you should. **fasten** your seatbelt.

fasten: thắt (dây an toàn)

Khi bạn đang lái xe, bạn nên thắt dây an toàn.

3. When you play football, you should **watch**..... the ball .

watch: coi chừng, xem

Khi bạn chơi bóng đá, bạn nên coi chừng trái bóng.

4. It's late and you are tired. You should.....**go**to bed.

go: đi

Đã muộn rồi và bạn thì mệt. Bạn nên đi ngủ.

5. You should**clean**.....your teeth at least twice a day.

clean: dọn dẹp, rửa

Bạn nên đánh răng ít nhất hai lần một ngày.

6. It's too far from here. You should..... **take** a taxi to get there.

take: lấy, cầm đi

Nó rất xa chỗ này. Bạn nên bắt taxi.

7. If you want to pass the exam, you should.....**study**more.

study: học

Nếu bạn muốn qua kì thi, bạn nên học nhiều hơn.

8. He wants to lose weight, so he should.....**eat**..... less

eat: ăn

Anh ấy muốn giảm cân. Anh ấy nên ăn ít hơn.

9. It's raining now. I think you should.....**take**.....an umbrella.

Trời đang mưa. Tôi nghĩ bạn nên mang theo ô

10. He is ill. He should.....**stay** at home.

Anh ấy bị ốm. Anh ấy nên nghỉ ở nhà.

Bài 6: Dựa vào các gợi ý sau, viết câu với cấu trúc should hoặc shouldn't.

1.(eat between meals) **You shouldn't eat between meals.**

Bạn không nên ăn giữa các bữa ăn.

2.(go on a diet) **You should go on a diet.**

Bạn nên ăn kiêng.

- 3.(get exercise) **You should get exercise.**
Bạn nên tập thể dục.
- 4.(drink soda) **You shouldn't drink soda.**
Bạn không nên uống sô đa.
- 5.(eat mmore vegetables) **You should eat more vegetables.**
Bạn nên ăn nhiều rau hơn.
- 6.(eat apple) **You should eat apples.**
Bạn nên ăn táo.
- 7.(eat too much bread) **You shouldn't eat too much bread.**
Bạn không nên ăn quá nhiều bánh mì.
- 8.(only drink plain water) **You should only drink plain water.**
Bạn chỉ nên uống nước trắng.
9. (eat too much chocolate) **You shouldn't eat too much chocolate.**
Bạn không nên ăn quá nhiều sô cô la.
10. (change your health habits) **You should change your health habits.**
Bạn nên thayđổi thói quen về sức khỏe của mình.
- Bài 7: Điền Will/ won't vào chỗ trống sao cho phù hợp.**
1. They.....**won't**let you come with him because they hate him.
Họ sẽ không để bạn đến cùng với anh ta vì họ ghét anh ta.
2. I **will**..... cross the ocean for you.
Tôi sẽ vượt cả đại dương vì bạn.
3. But I **will**..... do it because I am curious.
Nhưng tôi sẽ làm điều đó vì tôi tò mò.
4. **Will**..... **won't**.....he come with us?
Anh ấy sẽ đến với chúng ta chứ?
5. You **will**.....get a new dress tomorrow.
Bạn sẽ có một chiếc váy mới ngày mai.
6. I **won't**.....go to South Africa. I want to go to China.
Tôi sẽ không đi Nam Phi. Tôi muốn đi Trung Quốc
7. **Will**.....you be at home this afternoon.
Bạn sẽ ở nhà chiều nay chứ?
8. No, I **won't**.....I have a meeting at 4 o'clock.
Không, tôi không. Tôi có một cuộc họp lúc 4 giờ
9. Jim..... **won't**..... go to school tomorrow. He's ill.
Jim sẽ không đi học ngày mai. Anh ấy bị ốm
10. If my parents give me some money. I **will**..... buy clothes
Nếu bố mẹ tôi cho tôi tiền, tôi sẽ mua quần áo.
11. Don't get up, I..... **will** answer the phone
Đừng ngồi dậy. Tôi sẽ nghe điện thoại.
12. If you eat too much you..... **will**..... put on weight.
Nếu bạn ăn quá nhiều bạn sẽ tăng cân
13. Don't stay out too late, you..... **won't**get up on time.
Đừng ở bên ngoài quá muộn . Bạn sẽ không dậy đúng giờ.
14. I don t think she **will** pass the exam, she isn't very good.
Tôi không nghĩ cô ấy sẽ qua kỳ thi. Cô ấy không giỏi.
15. You may as well go home now, I..... **won't**be back for hours.
Bạn cũng có thể về nhà bây giờ. Tôi sẽ không trở lại trong vòng vài tiếng.

16. Go to bed and you..... **will**.....feel better tomorrow.

Đi ngủ và bạn sẽ cảm thấy tốt hơn vào ngày mai.

17. It's Mary's birthday next month. She **will**..... be 18.

Tháng sau là sinh nhật Mary. Cô ấy sẽ 18 tuổi.

18. They are on holiday for two weeks so they..... **won't**..... be here tomorrow.

Họ đang trong kì nghỉ 2 tuần nên họ sẽ không ở đây ngày mai.

19 **Will**.....they want dinner?

Họ sẽ muốn ăn tối chứ?

20. If the weather is ok, the plane..... **will**.....leave on time.

Nếu thời tiết ổn, máy bay sẽ cất cánh đúng giờ.

Bài 8: Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. (Will/ **Shall**) we have breakfast now ?

Chúng ta sẽ ăn sáng bây giờ chứ?

Giải thích: Dùng "shall" ở câu nghi vấn để đưa ra gợi ý, đi với chủ ngữ ở ngôi thứ nhất "we".

2. Are you sure it (will/ shall) be easy ?

Bạn có chắc là nó sẽ dễ không?

Giải thích: Dùng "will" để nói về tương lai, dự đoán.

3.(Will/ Shall) she have sugar in her tea ?

Cô ấy sẽ dùng thêm đường trong trà chứ?

4. Do you think he (will/ shall) do it for me ?

Bạn có nghĩ là anh ấy sẽ làm điều đó cho tôi?

5. When (will/ shall) we know the result ?

Chúng ta sẽ biết kết quả vào lúc nào?

6. How long (will/ shall) they stay ?

Họ sẽ ở lại trong bao lâu?

7. What (will/ shall) we do now ? We are lost.

Chúng ta sẽ làm gì bây giờ. Chúng ta bị lạc rồi.

8. I hope they (will/ shall) be ready by 10.

Tôi hi vọng họ sẽ sẵn sàng trước 10 giờ.

9. (Will/Shall) I wait for you?

Tôi sẽ đợi bạn nhé?

10. She (will/shall) turn 16 next June.

Cô ấy sẽ 16 tuổi vào tháng sáu tới

11. (Will/Shall) the messenger wait for the reply.

Người đưa tin có nên chờ hồi âm không?

12. (Will/ **Shall**) I carry this bag for you?

Để tôi cầm chiếc túi này cho bạn nhé.

13. He(**Will**/ Shall) be talking all the time without doing anything.

Anh ta sẽ nói mọi lúc mà không làm gì.

14. This machine((will/shall) work well without giving you any trouble.

Chiếc máy bay này sẽ làm việc tốt mà không đưa rắc rối cho bạn.

15. (**Will**/ Shall) you give me your dictionary.

Bạn sẽ đưa tôi cuốn từ điển của bạn chứ.

16.(**Will**/ Shall) you be kind enough to lend me your car?

Bạn sẽ tốt bụng cho tôi mượn xe của bạn chứ.

17.On receipt of this letter you (will/ shall) leave for Mumbai at once.

Khi nhận lá thư này bạn sẽ rời đi Mumbai ngay lập tức.

18.(Will/ Shall) you come with me?

Bạn sẽ đến với tôi chứ?

19.Tell him that he (will/ shall) never repeat that mistake.

Nói với anh ta rằng anh ta sẽ không bao giờ lặp lại sai phạm đó nữa

20.(Will/ Shall) I put the heating on?

Tôi bật lò sưởi lên nhé?

Bài 9: Viết các câu sau dưới dạng khẳng định (+), phủ định (-), nghi vấn (?) với "will"

1. Harry /cause /trouble

(+) He will marry his girlfriend.

(+) Harry will cause trouble.

(-) He won't marry his girlfriend.

(-) Harry won't cause trouble.

(?) Will he marry his girlfriend?

(?) Will Harry cause trouble?

2. you / copy / the homework

5. the snowman / melt

(+) You will copy the homework.

(+) The snowman will melt.

(-) You won't copy the homework.

(-) The snow man won't melt.

(?) Will you copy the homework?

(?) Will the snow man melt?

3. the clouds/disappear

6. She/ probably/teach /in London

(+) The clouds will disappear.

(+) She will probably teach in London.

(-) The clouds won't disappear.

(-) She won't probably teach in London.

(?) Will the clouds disappear?

(?) Will she probably teach in London?

4. he /marry /his girlfriend

Bài 10: Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn viết câu hỏi với động từ khuyết thiếu "Will"

1. John /do /what

=>What will John do?

2. the mouse / eat / what

=> What will the mouse eat?

3. Max/pay/how much

=>How much will Max pay?

4. you / feel / how

=>How will you feel?

5.you/find/what

=> What will you find?

6.the children/play/where

=> Where will the children play?

7. Jack and Jill/go up the hill/why

=> Why will Jack and Jill go up the hill?

8. you / exercise / when

=> When will you exercise?

9.she/say/what

=> What will she say?

10.you/do that/how

=> How will you do that?

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 11: Chọn đáp án thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống

1. You..... go to the hairdresser's.

Bạn nên đi tới tiệm cắt tóc

A. Should B. will C. Shall

2. It's incredible that Stuart..... run so fast.

A. Should B. will C. Shall

Thật không thể tin được Stuart sẽ chạy rất nhanh.

3..... you have some coffee?; She asked us.

A. Should B. will C. Shall

“ Các bạn dùng café nhé?” Cô ấy hỏi chúng tôi.

4. You..... read this book, it is worth reading.

A. Should B. will C. Shall

Bạn nên đọc cuốn sách này, nó đáng để đọc.

5. She probably come tomorrow B. will

A. Should B. will C. Shall

Cô ấy sẽ đến vào ngày mai.

6. Let's go for a walk,we?

A. Should B. will C. Shall

Hãy cùng ra ngoài đi bộ, chúng ta đi chứ?

7..... you tell me where you are coming from ?. No I won't.

A. Should B. will C. Shall

Bạn sẽ nói cho tôi biết bạn đến từ đâu chứ?

8..... we go somewhere else ?

A. Should B. will C. shall

Chúng ta sẽ đi nơi khác chứ?

Bài 12: Chọn should/ must/ musn't/ have to/ don't have to để điền vào cho trống.

1. I don't think you ... shouldeat so much chocolate. It's bad for your health.

Tôi không nghĩ bạn nên ăn quá nhiều sô cô la. Nó không tốt cho răng của bạn.

Giải thích: Dùng động từ khuyết thiếu "should" để đưa ra lời khuyên.

2. Children..... have to behave well when they're in class.

Trẻ em phải cư xử tốt trong lớp học.

Giải thích: "have to" mang ý nghĩa sự bắt buộc đến từ hoàn cảnh bên ngoài, do luật lệ, quy tắc quyết định.

3. If you drive a car, you..... have to stop at marked crossings.

Nếu bạn lái xe, bạn phải dừng lại ở vạch đánh dấu.

4. I think waiters shouldtry to be pleasant with customers.

Tôi nghĩ phục vụ nên cố gắng hòa nhã với khách hàng.

5. Some works have to wear hard hats because their jobs are considered dangerous.

Một vài công nhân phải đội mũ cứng vì công việc của họ được cho là nguy hiểm.

6. If you feel sick, you..... shouldstay at home. It's better for you.

Nếu bạn mệt, bạn nên ở nhà. Nó tốt cho bạn hơn.

7. Police officers..... have towear a uniform.

Nhân viên an ninh cần phải mặc đồng phục.

8. I..... have todo my homework. My teacher always checks if we have done the exercises.

Tôi phải làm bài tập. Cô giáo tôi luôn luôn kiểm tra xem chúng tôi đã làm bài tập chưa.

9. I.....get my hair cut. I don't like it so long.

Tôi phải cắt tóc tôi không thích quá dài.

Giải thích: "must" mang ý nghĩa bắt buộc từ phía người nói, mang tính chủ quan.

10. We..... **must**..... go home. My mother has told me to arrive at ten o'clock.

Chúng ta phải về nhà. Mẹ tôi đã bảo tôi về lúc 10 giờ.

11. I..... **must** study hard. I want to pass the exam.

Tôi phải học chăm chỉ. Tôi muốn qua kì thi.

12. In Spain, children..... **don't have to**..... go to school until they're 16.

Ở Tây Ban Nha, trẻ em không cần đến trường cho đến khi chúng 16 tuổi.

Giải thích: "don't have to" diễn tả ý không cần thiết phải làm gì

13. You..... **don't have to**..... phone every day, darling!

Anh không cần phải gọi điện hàng ngày, người yêu dấu!

14. You..... **mustn't**..... accept things from strangers!

Bạn không được nhận đồ từ người lạ

Giải thích: "mustn't" diễn tả ý cấm đoán.

15. When you go into a clothes shop, you **don't have to** have to buy something. You can just look.

Khi bạn đi vào một cửa hàng quần áo, bạn không cần phải mua gì. Bạn có thể chỉ ngắm

16. You ... **mustn't** steal things from shops.

Bạn không được ăn trộm từ cửa hàng.

17. Children..... **don't have to** pay bills

Bạn không cần phải thanh toán hóa đơn.

18. Children **Shouldn't**..... eat junk food every day.

Trẻ em không nên ăn đồ ăn nhanh mỗi ngày.

Giải thích: Dùng động từ khuyết thiếu "should" để đưa ra lời khuyên.

Bài 13: Đọc đoạn văn sau và chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất.

1. C 2. A 3. C 4. C

DẠY KÈM QUY NHƠN OFFICIAL

UNIT 7. TELEVISION

A. VOCABULARY

- cartoon	/kɑː'tun/ (n):	phim hoạt hình
- game show	/'geɪm ʃoʊ/ (n):	chương trình trò chơi, buổi truyền hình giải trí
- film	/fɪlm/ (n):	phim truyện
- comedy	/'kɑː.mə.di/ (n):	hài kịch, phim hài
- newsreader	/'njuːz.riː.dər/ (n):	người đọc bản tin trên đài, truyền hình
- weatherman	/'weð.ər.mæn/ (n):	người thông báo tin thời tiết trên đài, ti vi
- adventure	/əd'ven.tʃər/ (n)	cuộc phiêu lưu
- announce	/ə'naʊns/ (v):	thông báo
- audience	/'ɔː.di.əns/ (n):	khán giả
- character	/'kær.ək.tər/ (n):	nhân vật
- clumsy	/'klʌm.zi/ (adj):	vụng về
- cool	/kʊl/ (adj):	dễ thương
- cute	/kjʊt/ (adj):	xinh xắn
- documentary	/'dɒk.jə'men.tə.ri/ (n):	phim tài liệu
- educate	/'edʒ.ə.keɪt/ (v):	giáo dục
- educational	/'edʒ.ə'keɪ.ʃən.əl/ (adj):	mang tính giáo dục
- entertain	/'en.tər'teɪn/ (v):	giải trí
- event	/'ɪ.vent/ (n):	sự kiện
- fact	/fækt/ (n):	thực tế, sự thật hiển nhiên
- fair	/feər/ (n):	hội chợ, chợ phiên
- funny	/'fʌn.i/ (adj):	hài hước
- human	/'hju.mən/ (adj):	thuộc về con người
- local	/'ləʊ.kəl/ (adj):	mang tính địa phương
- main	/meɪn/ (adj):	chính yếu, chủ đạo
- manner	/'mæn.ər/ (n):	tác phong, phong cách
- MC viết tắt của từ Master of Ceremony	/'mæs.tər ʌv 'ser.ə.moʊ.ni/ (n):	người dẫn chương trình
- musical	/'mjuː.zɪ.kəl/ (n):	buổi biểu diễn văn nghệ, vở nhạc kịch
- national	/'næʃ.ənəl/ (adj):	thuộc về quốc gia
- pig racing	/'pɪɡ 'reɪ.sɪŋ/ (n):	đua lợn
- programme	/'prəʊ.græm/ (n):	chương trình
- reason	/'riː.zən/ (n):	nguyên nhân
- remote control	/'riː.məʊt kən'trəʊl/ (n):	điều khiển (ti vi) từ xa
- reporter	/'rɪ.pər.tər/ (n):	phóng viên
- schedule	/'skedʒ.uːl/ (n):	chương trình, lịch trình
- series	/'siəriːz/ (n):	phim dài kỳ trên truyền hình
- stupid	/'stuː.pɪd/ (adj):	đần độn, ngớ ngẩn
- universe	/'juː.nəˌvɜːrs/ (n):	vũ trụ
- viewer	/'vjuː.ər/ (n):	người xem (ti vi)

B. GRAMMAR

I. H/Wh-questions

Trong Tiếng Anh, khi chúng ta cần hỏi rõ ràng và cần có câu trả lời cụ thể, ta dùng câu hỏi với các từ để hỏi. Loại câu này còn được gọi là câu hỏi trực tiếp (direct questions).

1. Các từ để hỏi trong Tiếng Anh

Who (Ai) (Chức năng chủ ngữ)	Whom (Ai)(Chức năng tân ngữ)	What (cái gì)	Whose (Của ai)
Where (Ở đâu)	Which (Cái nào) (Hỏi về sự lựa chọn)	When (Khi nào)	Why (Tại sao)
How (Thế nào)	How much (Bao nhiêu, giá tiền, số lượng)	How many (Bao nhiêu, số lượng)	How long (Bao lâu)
How far (Bao xa)	How old (Bao nhiêu tuổi)	How often (Thường)	What time (Mấy giờ)

A. which	B. who	C. What	D. why
4can I buy some milk? At the supermarket.			
A. which	B. where	C. What	D. how
5much do you weigh?			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
6hat is this? It's my brother's?			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. whose
7can I park my car? Over there.			
A. where	B. who	C. What	D. how
8tall are you?			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
9do you like your tea? I like it with cream and sugar.			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
10picture do you prefer – this one or that one?			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
11is that woman? I think she is a teacher.			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
12book is this? It's mine			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. whose
13do you usually eat lunch? At noon.			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. when
14does your father work? At City Hall			
A. which	B. where	C. What	D. how
15usually gets up the earliest in your family?			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
16do you think of this hotel? It's pretty good			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how
17does your father work at that company? Because It's near our house			
A. which	B. why	C. What	D. how
18dances the best in your family?			
A. which	B. who	C. What	D. how

Bài 3. Tìm và sửa lỗi sai trong các câu sau

1. What does you like?
2. Whose computer do you often use?
3. Where do that boy come from?
4. When you do go to the office?
5. Does why your brother like this film?
6. Who you usually study with?
7. How does Susan comes home?
8. Does Roger play tennis how often?
9. Does you always run to school why?
10. Where are you park your bike?

Bài 4. Dựa vào câu trả lời, chọn Wh-word thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống

- 1do you want to eat? Paste or cheese.
- 2does John do to the beach? By car
- 3floors does your school have? Four
- 4do we get up? Early in the morning
- 5did you family go swimming yesterday? At the club
6.do you usually eat for breakfast? Toast and eggs.
- 7does Peter come from? London
- 8do you usually have lunch with? – My friends
- 9do they go to school? – In the morning
- 10does mary come to class? – By bus
- 11do your sister and you usually get up? – Ten o'clock.
- 12ice – cream does John like? – Chocolate
13.cap do you often borrow? - My brother's

- 14.....does she sometimes come to work late? Because she misses the train.
 15.do you go shopping? Once a week.
 16.....is good at English? Tom
 17.old is her son? - Seven
 18are your posters? Over my bed.
 19much is this pullover? Twenty pounds.
 20.colour is your car? - Red.

Bài 5. Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành một câu hoàn chỉnh

1. they/ what / doing/ are?

 2. up/ get/ you/ when/ in / the/ morning/ do?

 3. name/ you / do/ spell / how/ your?

 4. homework / is/ what/ for?

 5. does/ Tim/ like/ handball/ why?

 6. do/ what/ the girls/ like sports?

 7. for/ lunch/ your/ what/ have/ did/ friend?

 8. Kevin/ saty/ in/ long/ how/ did/ Paris?

 9. the / what/ weather/ like/ was?

 10. math/ who/ easy/ thinks/ is?

Bài 6. Viết câu hỏi cho những câu trả lời dưới đây, bắt đầu bằng từ cho sẵn.

1. They live in Blooklyn.
 Where.....?
 2. The lesson begins at 8 o'clock.
 What time.....?
 3. They get home at 6 o'clock every night.
 What time.....?
 4. She speaks French very well.
 What.....?
 5. Those book costs one dollar.
 How much.....?
 6. They travel by car.
 How.....?
 7. She wants to learn English because she wants a better job.
 Why.....?
 8. They meet on the corner every morning.
 Where.....?
 9. She teaches us grammar.
 What.....?
 10. He gets up at seven every morning.
 When.....
 11. Those girls sell newspaper there.
 What.....

II. Liên từ (Conjunctions)

Liên từ/ từ nối là từ dùng để kết hợp các từ, cụm từ, mệnh đề hay câu với nhau. Trong đó:

	Liên từ đẳng lập	Liên từ phụ thuộc
--	------------------	-------------------

Chức năng	Dùng để nối các từ, cụm từ cùng một loại, hoặc các mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ...)	Dùng để nối cụm từ, nhóm từ Hoặc mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau – mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu.
Vị trí	- Luôn luôn đứng giữa 2 từ hoặc 2 mệnh đề mà nó liên kết. - nếu nối các mệnh đề độc lập thì luôn có dấu phẩy đứng trước liên từ.	- Thường đứng đầu mệnh đề phụ. - Mệnh đề phụ thuộc có thể đứng trước hoặc sau mệnh đề chính nhưng phải luôn được bắt đầu bằng một liên từ.
Các liên từ	- Chỉ sự thêm vào: and (và) - Chỉ sự tương phản đối lập: but (nhưng) - Chỉ kết quả: so (vì vậy, cho nên) - Chỉ sự lựa chọn: or (hoặc)	- Chỉ nguyên nhân, lí do; because (Bởi vì) - Chỉ hai hành động trái ngược nhau về mặt logic: although (mặc dù)
Ví dụ	- I'll come and see you soon. - His mother won't be there, but his father might. - It is raining, so I can't go camping	- Last night we came late because it rained heavily. - Although the car is old, it is still reliable.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Bài 7. Chọn đáp án thích hợp để điền vào chỗ trống.

- I like English.....I like French very much.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- My brother likes maths.....he doesn't like history.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- The children forgot their homework,the teacher was angry with them.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Can you read.....write English words?
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Are the questions right wrong?
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- It's great.....it's fun.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Would you like teahot chocolate for your breakfast?
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Our car is old,it drives beautifully.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- It was very warm, we all went swimming.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Do we have French.....music after the break?
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- I like sugar in my tea, I don't like milk in it.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- We were very tired happy after our flight to Sydney.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Jeawon was cold,he put on a coat.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Julia has a guitar, she plays it really well.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
- Maria tried to read a novel in French,.....it was too difficult.
A. and B. but C. or D. so

16. He lives in london,he studies at a college.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
17. You can go to the tourist office.....ask them for any information you need.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
18. Does Miss Smith like the red boots.....the black and white sandals?
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
19. Lynda likes Tom.....he is in love with Annette.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
20. Geraldine Chaplin is a great actress.....she is less well – known than father Charlie Chaplin.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so

Bài 8. Nối mệnh đề ở cột A với mệnh đề ở cột B sao cho câu có ý nghĩa, sau đó viết lại câu.

A	B
1. We wanted to go to the show	Because they are quick and easy .
2. I often make omelettes	Although they are not film very healthy
3. Shall we go to the cinema?	And watch that film you were talking about.
4. Burgers are very tasty	But there weren't any seats left.
5. My neighbors are friendly	Or at the football match?
6. Do you know if he's at home	Because he laughs in his sleep.
7. Pick me up early, please?	But they are noisy.
8. We know he has great dreams.	So we don't get there late.

- 1.....
 2.....
 3.....
 4.....
 5.....
 6.....
 7.....
 8.....

Bài 9. Khoanh tròn vào liên từ thích hợp trong mỗi câu sau.

1. I'd love to stay (so/and/but) I have to catch my bus.
 2. His hot chocolate was too hot (so/and/but) he put some cold milk in it.
 3. (Or/Although/Because) we had an umbrella, we got extremely wet.
 4. I only passed my exam (because/but/although)you helped me.
 5. They were hungry (but/because/so) they made some sandwiches.
 6. We can go to the pool (and/but/or) we can go horse-riding, whichever you prefer.
 7. She didn't want him to see her (and/so/although) she hid behind a plant.
 8. He's in the town centre (so/because/ but) he wants to look for shoes.
 9. I'm definitely coming tonight, (or/because/ although) I could be a bit late.
 10. We can go to the shop before we go to Clare's house (and/ or/ so) go to Clare's house first to see if she needs anything. What do you think?

Bài 10. Chọn liên từ thích hợp (and/ so/ but/ because) rồi điền vào chỗ trống

1. I like coffeeI don't like tea.
 2. I cannot swimI can ski.
 3. I want a new TV the one I have now is broken.
 4. I had to work on Saturday.....I couldn't go to John's party.
 5. My name is Jame I'm your new teacher.
 6. I was cold.....I turned on the heater.
 7. We'll have to go shoppingwe have nothing for dinner.
 8. The history test was difficult.....the English one was easy.
 9. We didn't go to the beach yesterday it was raining.
 10. we have a test on Monday.....I'll have to study this weekend.
 11. She can speak French,she can't write it.
 12. She's working late next Friday, she can't come to the party.

13. In summer we wear light clothes.....the weather is hot.
14. I have a tooth ache.....I must see a dentist as early as I can.
15. It is rainy.....windy today.
16. He doesn't play the guitar,he plays the drum.
17. I like walking.....I never go to school on foot.....it is 10 miles away from home.
18. My son is calm.....easy – going.....my daughter is very moody.....they never agree together.
19. I am English.....I live in the USA.....I work with a company there.
20. I love painting.....fishing they teach me concentration.
21. Jane hates swimming.....she spends her summer holidays on the beachshe loves sunbathing.
22. It is always rainy in winteryou should always take an umbrella with you.
23. Fast foods are delicious.....usually unhealthypeople should avoid them.
24. Peter is obese the doctor advised him to practise sport regularly.
25. Parents.....children should have good relationships.

Bài 11. Viết lại các câu sau, sử dụng các từ trong ngoặc.

1. I don't eat cheese. I don't eat butter. (or)
2. I like him. He's annoying. (but)
3. We're having salad for lunch. We're not very hungry. (so)
4. She doesn't use much suncream. She has very pale skin. (although)
5. This year, he's been to China. He has also been to Brazil. (and)
6. Would you like to go to Paris? Would you rather go to Budapest? (or)
7. He's very tired today. He went to bed very late last night. (because)
8. It looks very near. It's quite a long way away. (although)

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 12. Viết các câu sau dựa vào các từ cho sẵn

1. Which soup/ you/ like? - I/ like/ chicken soup
.....
2. Where/ Ann/ usually/ go/ in the evening? - She/ usually/ go/ to the cinema.
.....
3. Who/ Carol and Bill/ visit/ on Sundays? - They/ visit/ their grandparents.
.....
4. What/ David/ usually drink/ with/ his breakfast? - He/ usually/ drink/ coffee.
.....
5. When/ you / watch TV? - I / watch TV/ in the evening.
.....
6. Why/ Rachel/ stay/ in bed? - She/ stay/ in bed/ because/ she/ be/ sick.
.....
7. How/ you/ go/ to the office? - I/ go/ to the office/ by bicycle.
.....
8. Whose laptop/ your sister / carry? - She / carry/ mine.
.....

Bài 13. Đặt câu hỏi cho các cụm từ được gạch chân dưới đây

1. Minh usually takes exercises after getting up.
.....
2. I brush my teeth twice a day.
.....
3. Nga has an appointment at 10.30 this morning.
.....
4. They live in the city center.
.....
5. I like “Tom and Jerry” because it's very interesting.
.....
6. She is worried about the next examination.
.....
7. Music makes people different from all other animals.
.....
8. They do their homework at night.
.....

.....
9. I like the red blouse, not the blue one.
.....

10. That is an English book.
.....

11. He studies piano at the university.
.....

12. My father is a teacher.
.....

13. My favorite musician is Trinh Cong Son.
.....

14. We take a holiday once a year.
.....

15. It takes four hours to get there.
.....

16. He earns a hundred pounds a week.
.....

17. This book is 30,000 dong.
.....

18. The car is expensive.
.....

Bài 14. Hoàn thành câu sau sử dụng các liên từ (although/ because/ but/ so)

1..... Norway is a beautiful country, it is very cold in winter.

2. It is warm and sunny today we are going to the beach.

3. The car is very old.....it is reliable.

4. today is my daughter's birthday,I need to buy her a present.

5. You should take an umbrella.....it is going to rain.

6. Thhe camera is very expensive it is very good.

7. I love chips.....it is not healthy.

8. His mother is not feeling well,he needs to take care of her.

9. Your marks in English are low you don't study hard enough.

10..... he is a good ski instructor, I don't like him very much.

11. I'd like to go with you I'm too busy right now.

12. There are no buses this hour,..... we need to catch a taxi.

13..... it rains a lot in winter, I like walking the dog in the park.

14. He fails his driving test,..... he needs to do it again.

15. We invites them to the party they don't want to come.

16. I don't like the concert..... the band doesn't play well.

17. We don't go on holiday.....we don't have a lot of money.

18. I want to buy a car I need it for my job.

19. I'm learning French.....I want to live in Paris.

20..... he's got a car, he never drives to work.

Bài 15. Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. accident/ an/ she's/ in/ because/ hospital/ she/ had.
.....

2. but/ they/ many/ work/ don't/ hours/ they/ have/ money/ much.
.....

3. asked/ Paul/ me/ question,/ a/ replied/ I / so.
.....

4. buy/ I/ peppers/ potatoes. / and/ tomatoes,
.....

5. them/ apple/ can/ have/ an/ or/ a / ./ She/ have/ both/ ./ She/ mango/ can't/ of
.....

6. can/ piano/ . / Karthik/ play/ but/ he/ play/ the/ can't/ the/ violin
.....

7. hard – working/ is/ but/ her/ is/ lazy/ ./ She/ very/ brother

.....
8. clever/ is/ and/ beautiful/ . / She

.....
9. shirt/ can/ the/ blue/ or/ take/ green/ shirt/ . / You/ the

.....
10. am/ sister/ talk/ I/ short/ . / My/ is/ but

.....
Bài 16. Đọc đoạn văn và trả lời câu hỏi

HOW CAN WE KEEP OUR TEETH HEALTHY

Firstly, we ought to visit our dentist twice a year. He can fill the small holes in our teeth before they destroy the teeth. He can examine our teeth to check that they are growing in the right way. Unfortunately, many people wait until they have toothache before they see a dentist.

Secondly, we should brush our teeth with a toothbrush and fluoride tooth paste at least twice a day – once after breakfast and once before we go to bed. We can also use wooden toothpicks to clean between our teeth after a meal.

Thirdly, we should eat food that is good for our teeth and our body such as milk, cheese, fish, brown bread, potatoes, red rice, raw vegetables, and fresh fruit. Chocolate, sweets, biscuits and cakes are bad, especially when we eat them between meals. They are harmful because they stick to our teeth and cause decay.

1. How often should we visit our dentist a year?

.....
2. What should we brush our teeth with?

.....
3. What else we can use to clean between our teeth after a meal?

.....
4. What kinds of food are good for our teeth?

.....
5. What kinds of food are bad for our teeth?

.....
C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 7

I.Put the words into two groups (/ θ/ and / ð/).

both	three	theme	thing	tooth	those
theater	bathroom	than	thunder	there	thrilling
mother	feather	birthday	the	weather	earth

/ θ /	/ ð /

II.Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. <u>bed</u> | B. <u>setting</u> | C. <u>decide</u> | D. <u>get</u> |
| 2. A. <u>easy</u> | B. <u>eat</u> | C. <u>learn</u> | D. <u>tea</u> |
| 3. A. sit | B. in | C. if | D. fine |
| 4. A. <u>child</u> | B. <u>watch</u> | C. <u>chin</u> | D. <u>school</u> |
| 5. A. <u>come</u> | B. <u>no</u> | C. <u>open</u> | D. <u>home</u> |

III.. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words in each group.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. tiger | B. wife | C. fire | D. wisdom |
| 2. A. <u>soccer</u> | B. <u>notice</u> | C. <u>photo</u> | D. <u>grocery</u> |
| 3. A. <u>character</u> | B. <u>school</u> | C. <u>teacher</u> | D. <u>chemistry</u> |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 4. A. <u>earth</u> | B. <u>earn</u> | C. <u>heart</u> | D. <u>heard</u> |
| 5. A. type | B. fly | C. early | D. recycle |

IV. Choose the best item among A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- _____ is the most expensive city in the world? - I think it's Tokyo.
A. What B. Where C. When D. How
- _____ is your favorite tennis player? - I don't like tennis.
A. Where B. Who C. How often D. How long
- My brother can't swim _____ he's afraid (sợ) of water.
A. because B. and C. but D. so
- My sister likes going to the cinema _____ I like watching TV at home.
A. and B. but C. because D. or
- _____ pen is this? Can I borrow it?
A. Whose B. Whom C. Who D. Which
- _____ are you going to invite to your party next week?
A. What B. Who C. Whose D. Where
- _____ did you spend in Hanoi? - One week.
A. How many B. How much C. How long D. How often
- _____ is a person who reads a report in the program.
A. A weatherman B. A comedian C. A newsreader D. A guest
- We use a _____ to change the channels from a distance.
A. remote control B. TV schedule
C. newspaper D. volume button
- I want to watch the cartoon _____ I turn on the TV.
A. but B. so C. although D. because
- Jerry is a(n) clever little mouse.
A. small B. special C. intelligent D. special
- 'Let's learn' teaches children to study Maths. It's an _____ program.
A. live B. popular C. entertaining D. educational
- _____ Mai and Lan are interested in listening to music.
A. Because B. Both C. Neither D. So
- The book is _____ the adventure of three close friends.
A. on B. from C. at D. about
- They invite special _____ to appear in the show.
A. character B. guests C. foxes D. audiences
- Millions of children _____ the world enjoy the show.
A. all B. in C. around D. over
- The game show this week will test you general _____ about Amazon jungle.
A. schedule B. knowledge C. fact D. adventure
- The program can both _____ and entertain young audiences.
A. educated B. education C. educational D. educate
- The _____ I like best is Xuan Bac.
A. comedy B. comedian C. fun D. funny
- Where are the children? They _____ in the yard.
A. play B. are playing C. is playing D. plays

V. Fill in the blank with *What, Where, When, Why, Who, How, How far*.

Ex: *What* is your name? - My name's Trung.

- _____ is your family name? - It's Nguyen.
- _____ old are you? - I'm thirteen.
- _____ do you live? - On Nguyen Trai Street.
- _____ do you live with? - My parents.
- _____ is it from your house to school? - About three kilometers.
- _____ do you go to school? - By bus.
- _____ do you go to school? - At half past six.
- _____ are you late? - Because I miss the bus.

VI. Using "What, Where, When, Who, Why, How, What time" to complete the sentences below.

Ex: What will you do tonight? I will do my homework.

1. _____ will they do tomorrow afternoon? - They will play tennis.
2. _____ will go camping next Sunday? - Nam and Quang will.
3. _____ will we meet? - We will meet at Lan's house.
4. _____ will you be back? - I will be back at eight o'clock.
5. _____ will she go to the zoo? - She will go by bus.
6. _____ will your father travel to Ha Noi? - He will travel next week.
7. _____ will Nam go to bed early tonight? - Because he will have a test tomorrow.
8. _____ will you go next summer vacation? - I will go to Nha Trang.

VII. Fill in the blank with *although, and, because, but, or, since, so, unless, until, when*.

1. Things were differentI was young.
2. I do it.....I like it.
3. Let us wait here the rain stops.
4. You cannot be a lawyer.....you have a law degree.
5. She has not called.....she left last week.
6. I saw him leaving one..... two hours ago.
7. This is an expensive very useful book.
8. We were getting tiredwe stopped for a rest.
9. He was angryhe heard when happened.
10. Walk quickly you will be late.
11. He had to retireof illness.
12. We will go swimming next Sunday it doesn't rain.
13. I heard a noise..... I turned the light on.
14. Would you like a coffeetea?

VIII. Complete the following sentences with the words in the box.

and but so because although

1. Children love cartoons_____they make them feel happy.
2. _____the newsreader speaks really fast, my father can hear everything.
3. The animal programme is late_____I can't wait for it.
4. Some game shows are popular,_____I never watch them?
5. My sister is a weatherwoman, my father is a newsreader.

IX. Fill in each blank with one suitable word in the box to complete the passage.

world studio programmes laugh
meet competition entertainment comedians

There are many TV programmes for children that offer interesting channels for (1) _____ and learning. When watching the (2)_____, children can visit far-away lands, (3) _____ interesting people, learn about the (4)_____around them, (5)_____with the (6) _____and be entertained by the funny and colourful cartoons. Children can also participate in a TV (7) _____or become a guest at the (8)_____of a programme.

X. Read the passage and do the tasks below.

WHO WANTS TO BE A MILLIONAIRE?

One of the most popular quiz programmes on television in the world is called *Who Wants To Be A Millionaire?* In Britain, the quiz master is Chris Tarrant. He asks the contestants fifteen questions. The first questions are easy but later they are more difficult. If you can answer the fourteenth question, you can win £500,000. You can win a million pounds if you can answer the last question. Of course, the last question is very difficult.

All the questions on *Who Wants To Be A Millionaire?* are multiple-choice questions. After you hear the question, you see four answers. Only one answer is correct. You have to choose the correct answer. If you don't know the answer to a question, there are three ways you can get help: you can ask the quizmaster to take away two wrong answers; you can ask the studio audience which answer is right; or you can telephone a friend and ask for help. You can only do these things once. Very few people win the million pounds. The first person won a million pounds one year after the programme started.

Today, *Who Wants To Be A Millionaire?* can be seen in more than 100 countries and is now the world's most popular quiz programme.

1. Who is the quizmaster in Britain?
A. Chris Tarrant B. Chris Tarrante C. Peter Tarrant D. Tarrant
2. How many questions do you have to answer?
A. 12 B. 13 C. 14 D. 15
3. How much do you win for the fourteenth question?
A. 300.000 B. 400.000 C. 500.000 D. 600.000
4. How many ways can you get help?
A. one B. two C. three D. four

A.
XI.

Make sentences using the future simple tense: will + verb (inf. without to).

Ex: I/ go/ the supermarket/ tomorrow
I'll go to the supermarket tomorrow.

1. We/ travel/ Nha Trang/ next week
.....
2. Nga and Lan/ visit/ their grandparents
.....
3. They/ go/ the movies/ tonight
.....
4. Hoa/ have/ lots of friends/ soon
.....
5. I/ come/ after lunch
.....
6. He/ see/ you/ tomorrow afternoon.
.....
7. My father/ be free/ at 7.30 this evening
.....
8. The students/ go camping/ next Sunday
.....

XII. Make the sentences using a conjunction: but; and; or; so.

1. We know him. We know his friends.
.....
2. The coat was soft. The coat was warm.
.....
3. It is stupid to do that. It is quite unnecessary.
.....
4. I wanted to go. He wanted to stay.
.....
5. Your arguments are strong. They don't convince me.
.....
6. You can go there by bus. You can go there by train.
.....
7. I was feeling tired. I went to bed when I got home.
.....

XIII. Make questions for the underlined words or phrases.

Ex: I get up at six every day.
→ ***What time do you get up every day?***

1. The party will start at seven o'clock in the morning.
..... ?
2. I'm talking to Mrs. Nga.
..... ?
3. It's five kilometers from our house to the mountain.
..... ?
4. Her family name is Tran.
..... ?
5. They live at 83 Son Tay Street.
..... ?

TEST 2 UNIT 7

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. thirty B. theme C. both D. them
2. A. brother B. weather C. through D. than
3. A. schedule B. comedy C. red D. when
4. A. channel B. game C. nantional D. relax
5. A. show B. programme C. sport D. most

II. Find one odd word for each question, and then read them aloud.

6. A. comedian B. newsreader C. film producer D. programme
7. A. cartoon B. world news C. studio D. documentary
8. A. popular B. reporter C. exciting D. educational
9. A. boring B. international C. national D. local
10. A. viewer B. audience C. watcher D. director

III. Choose the correct answers.

11. Disney Channel is one of the most _____ channels _____ children .
A. good - for B. exciting - of C. popular - to D. popular - for
12. My family enjoys watching game shows _____ they are very exciting and interesting.
A. because B. so C. but D. and
13. VTV is a _____ television channel in Viet Nam, and it attracts millions of TV viewers in Viet Nam.
A. wide B. local C. international D. national
14. "What is your _____ TV programme?" - "It's cartoons"
A. good B. favourite C. best D. like
15. " _____ do you like the *Modern English* programme? " - "Because it helps me with my English."
A. What B. How C. When D. Why
16. My brother wants to become a _____ to tell TV viewers what the weather is like.
A. newsreader B. actor C. weatherman D. producer
17. TV _____ can join in some game shows through telephone or by mail.
A. people B. weathermen C. newsreaders D. viewers
18. _____ are films by pictures, not real people and often for children.
A. Documentaries B. Love stories C. Cartoons D. Detective stories
19. Are there any good programs _____ teenagers on TV tonight?
A. to B. for C. of D. with
20. My father works late tomorrow, so he will _____ the first part of the film on VTV1.
A. miss B. lose C. forget D. cut
21. That TV programme is not only interesting _____ it also teaches children many things about family and friendship.
A. but B. so C. and D. because
22. " _____ is the weather forecast programme on?" - "At 7.30 pm every day."
A. What B. How C. When D. Where
23. _____ the newsreader on BBC One reads very fast, my brother can hear everything in the news.
A. But B. Although C. When D. But
24. _____ Children can participate in a TV _____ for a game show or a quiz show.
A. channel B. competition C. studio D. cartoon
25. Millions of children around the world enjoy the cartoon because it can both _____ and _____ a young audience.
A. entertain - education B. entertainment – education

- C.entertainment - educate D.entertain - educate
26. Many people with different skills work hard_____quality programmes for television.
 A.produce B.to produce C.producing D.to producing
27. The football match is on at 2 am_____I can't watch it.
 A. so B.although C.but D.then
28. My father likes watching sports_____on VTV3.
 A.matches B.channels C.events D.athletes
29. If you want to know what the weather is like tomorrow, watch the_____.
 A.weather forecast B.music show C.game show D.quiz show
30. "_____is that TV programme directed by?" - "By a famous Vietnamese director."
 A. What B. Where C. When D. Who

IV. Choose the right word from the box for each description below.

TV reporter TV producer comedian cameraman director

31. ____: a person who tells the actors, cameramen, etc. what to do in a programme, film, play, etc.
32. ____: an actor who makes people laugh by telling jokes.
33. : a person who finds and speaks the news on the television.
34. : a person that makes television programme.
35. ____: a person who operates a camera for a film or a television programme.

V. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

36. Watching too much TV is not good because it hurts your eyes.
37. We often read books and play sports in our free time.
38. The Wingless Penguin is about the adventure of a child penguin who has no win.
39. Children love the Wingless Penguin series because the child penguin is so cute, clever, and funny.
40. The programme is on the Disney Channel.
41. The TV programme "Let's Learn" appears in over 80 countries.
42. Both parents and their children enjoy the programme.
43. The Animals programme is on at 8 o'clock Wednesday night.
44. I watch TV one or two hours a day.
45. I can get enough information for my essay by watching TV and visiting some websites.

VI. Match the questions with the answers, and write the answers in the blanks.

Questions

46. What time is the film on VTV3 on?
47. Who is the favourite VTV newsreader this year?
48. What will the *Animals* programme tell people about?
49. Why can't you watch the football match on VTV3 tonight?
50. What's your favourite cartoon?
51. How long does the film last?
52. What is the event in the *Sports* programme this evening?
53. Who is the leading actor in that film?
54. What kind of TV programme do you like most?
55. Why do children like the TV series?

Answers

- a) It's the Formula 1 Racing 46 in Malaysia.
- b) Because they are interesting and entertaining.
- c) It's Johnny Depp.
- d) It's the *Cartoons* programme.
- e) At 9 pm.
- f) It's Mr Quang Minh.
- g) It's about the life of birds, elephants, tigers, lions, etc.
- h) Because it's too late.
- i) Of course, it's Tom and Jerry.
- j) About one and a half hour.

VII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

Television first came some sixty years ago in the 1950s. Nowadays, it is one of the most (56)_____ sources of entertainment for both the old and the young. Television brings (57)_____ for children, world news, music and many other (58)_____. If someone likes sports, he can just choose the right sports, (59)_____. It is not difficult for us to see why (60)_____ is a TV set in almost every home today.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------|---------------|
| 56. A. cheap | B. expensive | C. popular | D. exciting |
| 57. A. news | B. cartoons | C. sports | D. plays |
| 58. A. sets | B. reports | C. channels | D. programmes |
| 59. A. athletes | B. channel | C. time | D. studio |
| 60. A. it | B. this | C. that | D. there |

VIII. Read the passage, and decide whether the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

Television is an important invention of the 20th century. It has been so popular that we can't imagine what life would be like if there were no television. Television is a major means of communication and entertainment. It brings pictures and sound from around the world into millions of homes. Through television, viewers can see and learn about people, places and things in distant lands. Television widens our knowledge by introducing new ideas which may lead us to new hobbies and recreations. In addition to the news, television provides us with a variety of programs that can satisfy every taste. Most people now seem to like spending their evenings watching television than to go out.

- 61. Television is an important means of communication.
- 62. Television provides us with a variety of programs.
- 63. Most people don't like watching TV in the evening.
- 64. Television can't satisfy all our tastes.
- 65. People can learn many things through TV.

IX. There is ONE mistake in each sentence, try to find the mistake and correct it.

66. There are much music programmes on TV nowadays.

67. The Discovery Channel makes education funny for children all over the world.

68. Would you like go to the theater with me tonight?

69. Although I enjoy sports every much, but I don't often watch the Sports programmes.

70. The News programme help TV viewers know about what happens every day in their country as well as all over the world.

X. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

71. Cartoons are colourful and funny: that's why children enjoy watching them.

Children enjoy watching cartoons _____

72. VTV Channels offer many interesting programmes in different subjects. VTV Channels are broadcast in several languages.

VTV Channels offer many interesting programmes in different subjects _____

73. That film is very famous in the USA but not many Vietnamese people know it.

Not many Vietnamese people know that film _____

74. Many people think the Fashion programme is only for women; the programme is for everyone.

Many people think the Fashion programme is only for women _____

75. I am going to have a test tomorrow; I can't watch the cartoon.

I am going to have a test tomorrow _____

XI. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

76. Game show/ this week/ test/ knowledge/ rain forests.

77. Questions/ quiz show/ about different subjects/ grade one/ grade six.

78. That singer/ live show/ theater/ be/ TV/ tomorrow.

79. That channel/ tell/ people/ life/ animals/ world.

80. Show/ help/ us/ remember/ childhood.

TEST 3 UNIT 7

I. How is *th* pronounced in the following words? Circle the correct option

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. that /θ/ /ð/ | 6. earth /θ/ /ð/ | 11. although /θ/ /ð/ | 16. breath /θ/ /ð/ |
| 2. think /θ/ /ð/ | 7. feather /θ/ /ð/ | 12. thank /θ/ /ð/ | 17. breathe /θ/ /ð/ |
| 3. other /θ/ /ð/ | 8. three /θ/ /ð/ | 13. brother /θ/ /ð/ | 18. them /θ/ /ð/ |
| 4. weather /θ/ /ð/ | 9. thieves /θ/ /ð/ | 14. month /θ/ /ð/ | 19. thirsty /θ/ /ð/ |
| 5. theatre /θ/ /ð/ | 10. there /θ/ /ð/ | 15. healthy /θ/ /ð/ | 20. clothe /θ/ /ð/ |

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------|-------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. <u>the</u> ater | b. <u>th</u> ank | c. <u>th</u> ere | d. <u>th</u> irty |
| 2. a. <u>g</u> ame | b. <u>a</u> nimal | c. <u>ch</u> annel | d. <u>n</u> ational |
| 3. a. <u>w</u> atch | b. <u>ch</u> annel | c. <u>ch</u> ildren | d. <u>s</u> chedule |
| 4. a. <u>p</u> rogramme | b. <u>s</u> how | c. <u>p</u> opular | d. <u>h</u> ome |
| 5. a. <u>n</u> ewsreader | b. <u>w</u> ea <u>th</u> er | c. <u>w</u> ee <u>k</u> | d. <u>l</u> eave |

III. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently for the rest.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. a. <u>th</u> is | b. <u>th</u> ink | c. <u>th</u> ank | d. <u>th</u> ieves |
| 2. a. <u>g</u> ather | b. <u>ba</u> the | c. <u>bi</u> rthday | d. <u>wea</u> ther |
| 3. a. <u>to</u> oth | b. <u>bre</u> a <u>th</u> e | c. <u>th</u> rough | d. <u>ea</u> r <u>th</u> |
| 4. a. <u>th</u> irty | b. <u>th</u> an | c. <u>th</u> erefore | d. <u>th</u> ose |
| 5. a. <u>m</u> ou <u>th</u> | b. <u>Th</u> ursday | c. <u>no</u> thing | d. <u>wor</u> thy |

IV. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

- Who wants to be a millionaire? is _____ at eight o'clock every Tuesday night.
a. in b. on c. at d. from
- Could you turn _____ the volume please? I can't hear that singer very well.
a. up b. down c. on d. off
- I like watching the news _____ I want to know what is happening around the world
a. and b. so c. but d. because
- It's a fantastic _____. If you answer ten questions correctly, you can win a million pounds
a. fashion show b. talk show c. gameshow d. reality show
- The film was _____. I felt asleep in the middle.
a. scary b. boring c. exciting d. entertaining
- The story was very interesting _____ very sad.
a. and b. or c. so d. but

7. _____ does Sam watch the "Muppet Show"? - On every Sunday afternoon.
a. What b. When c. What time d. How often
8. Grandma never _____ any episodes of her favourite series.
a. misses b. watches c. forgets d. has
9. Game shows are _____ programmes. They can be both entertaining and educational.
a. much exciting b. more exciting c. most exciting d. the most exciting
10. _____ television do you watch a day? - About two hours.
a. How long b. How many c. How much d. How often

VII. Write the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. You should _____ (do) your homework, instead of _____ (watch) TV before dinner.
2. She turned on the radio because she wanted _____ (listen) to some music.
3. _____ (you/ watch) the news on TV last night?
4. What _____ (you/ do) tonight, Hung?
5. Which programme _____ (Linda/ like) best?
6. A new series of wildlife programmes _____ (be) on at 9 o'clock Monday evenings.
7. My father never _____ (watch) romantic films on television.
8. I only let my kids _____ (watch) television at the weekends.

VIII. Write the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. It was a very _____ comedy. I laughed and laughed. (fun)
2. The children are very _____ in animal programmes. (interest)
3. Discovery channel attracts millions of _____ around the world. (view)
4. This _____ had a large fund of jokes. (comedy)
5. Watching television can be very _____. (educate)
6. Journalist Lai Van Sam is one of the _____ Vietnamese television MCs. (good)
7. This programme is very _____ to teens. It can enrich their knowledge. (use)
8. Watching TV is the most popular form of home _____. (entertain)

IX. Match a sentence in column A to a response in column B.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. What do you think of game shows? | a. 2 or 3 hours every evening. |
| 2. Do you ever watch wildlife programmes? | b. Romance. |
| 3. How much time do you spend watching TV? | c. Yes. It's a great way to improve your English. |
| 4. What is your favourite TV programme? | d. I don't really like them because they are really boring. |
| 5. Who is the writer of <i>Harry Potter</i> ? | e. At eight thirty Saturday evening. |
| 6. What kind of film do you like best? | f. Yes, I do. I am very interested in animals. |
| 7. When is the show on? | g. I like Sports programme most. |
| 8. Do you watch TV programmes in English? | h. It's J.K. Rowling. |

X. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Television is one of man's most important (1)_____ of communication. It brings pictures and sounds from around the world into millions of homes. Through television, home viewers can see and learn (2) people, places and things in faraway lands. TV even takes its viewers out of this world. It brings them coverage of America's astronauts as the astronauts explore (3)_____ space. In addition to all these things, television brings its viewers a steady stream of programmes that are (4)_____ to entertain. In fact, TV provides many (5) entertainment programs than any other kind. The programmes include dramas, comedies, sports, and (6)_____ pictures.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 1. a. ways | b. means | c. ranges | d. shows |
| 2. a. at | b. in | c. for | d. about |
| 3. a. deep | b. large | c. outer | d. open |
| 4. a. happened | b. designed | c. composed | d. guided |

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 5. a. more | b. even | c. most | d. hardly |
| 6. a. lovely | b. clear | c. motion | d. full |

XI. Read the text then answer the questions.

Television viewing is a major activity and influence on children. Children in the United States watch an average of three to four hours of television a day.

While television can entertain, inform, and keep our children company, it may also influence them in undesirable ways. Time spent watching television takes away from important activities such as reading, school work, playing, exercise, family interaction, and social development. Children who watch a lot of television are likely to have lower grades in school, read fewer books, exercise less, and be overweight.

Parents can help by doing the following:

- ◆ Don't allow children to watch long blocks of TV.
- ◆ Help them choose suitable programmes. Children's shows on public TV are appropriate, but soap operas, adult sitcoms and adult talk shows are not.
- ◆ Set certain periods when the television will be off. Study times are for learning, not for sitting in front of the TV doing homework.

Make TV viewing an active process for child and parent!

1. How much TV do children in the United States watch on an average day?
2. What are the good effects of television on children?
3. What may be the bad effects of watching too much TV on school work?
4. Should parents let their children watch TV for a long time?
5. Which programmes are appropriate for children and which are not?
6. What can parents do to limit their child's screen time?

XII. Write about TV programmes.

I _____ watching TV. My favourite programmes are _____ and _____. I always watch TV on _____ and on _____. I never watch TV in the _____. I also like _____. I think _____ are _____. I hate _____ and _____. My mum likes watching _____ and my dad likes watching _____.

TEST 4 UNIT 7

II. Match the words on the left with its definition on the right.

- | | |
|-------------------|---|
| 1. quiz show | a. a device that allows you to operate a television, etc. from a distance |
| 2. channel | b. a woman on television or radio who tells you what the weather will be like |
| 3. TV schedule | c. a film about real people and events |
| 4. remote control | d. a programme where you try to answer questions in order to win prizes |
| 5. MC | e. a person who watches television |
| 6. weathergirl | f. a funny television programme in which the same characters appear in different situations |
| 7. comedian | g. a television station |
| 8. documentary | h. a list of the television programmes that are on a particular channel and the times |

- that they start
9. sitcom i. a person who hosts an event
10. viewer j. a person whose job is to make people laugh, by telling jokes or funny stories.

III. Choose the correct answers.

- 'Why are you laughing so hard?' 'I am watching a _____. It's really funny!'
a. drama b. news c. comedy d. romance
- Did you watch the _____ about the history of India?
a. documentary b. sitcom c. news d. game
- Who wants To Be a Millionaire* is a kind of _____.
a. music programmes b. game shows c. talk shows d. reality shows
- I love _____. Tom and Jerry are my favourite characters.
a. romances b. comedies c. documentaries d. cartoons
- Grandma watches her favourite _____ every day. She never misses any episodes.
a. cartoon b. series c. news d. weather forecast
- Where is the _____? I'd like to change the channel.
a. remote control b. volume button c. TV programme d. schedule
- Could you turn up the _____ please. I can't hear that singer very well.
a. channel b. programme c. volume d. television
- Let's take a look at the weather _____ now!
a. forecast b. presentation c. broadcast d. programme
- Did you see the Prime Minister on the 10 o'clock _____ last night?
a. drama b. sitcom c. news d. cartoon
- Jill Newman was a(n) _____ on News at Ten.
a. MC b. newsreader c. host d. interviewer

IV. Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives from the box.

boring educational funny national popular entertaining clumsy cute

- This is a very _____ television programme. Millions of people watch it every week.
- It was a really _____ film. It made us laugh all the time!
- Donald Duck is so _____! I really love him.
- VTV is the _____ television broadcaster of Vietnam.
- Channels like Discovery offer _____ programmes that can increase our knowledge.
- That's the third glass you've broken this week - you're so _____!
- This programme is _____ - shall I turn over to BBC?
- I found the talk show both informative and _____.

V. Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.

- What is _____ TV tonight?
- You can see how people compete with each other _____ a game show.
- The Wingless Penguin* is _____ Disney channel, _____ 8 o'clock Friday night.
- Comedies help people relax _____ a hard working day.
- My brother is interested _____ Nature programme.
- The talk show is on _____ 8 o'clock to 10 o'clock.
- Cartoons often use animals _____ the main characters
- He turned _____ the television to watch the news.

VI. Fill in the blank with the conjunctions In the box.

and so but because although or

1. Read over your answers _____ correct all mistakes before you hand them in.
2. _____ Jim doesn't like this game show, he watches it almost every Friday.
3. Nadia doesn't like to drive, _____ she takes the bus everywhere.
4. He is very rich, _____ he doesn't spend a lot of money.
5. To get from Vancouver to Victoria, you can fly _____ you can ride the ferry.
6. Thomas was really hungry this morning _____ he didn't eat breakfast.
7. I have a lot of homework to do, _____ I can't go to the cinema with you.
8. The waiter was not very nice, _____ the food was delicious.
9. We enjoyed the film _____ it had a sad ending.
10. She went to see a doctor _____ her back was painful.

VII. Join each pair of sentences, using the word in brackets.

1. Nathan missed the bus. He was late for school. (because)
2. Keep the food covered. The flies will contaminate it. (or)
3. Julie has a guitar. She plays it very well. (and)
4. I need to study hard. I can get a good score on the test. (so)
5. He seemed a friendly person. I didn't like him. (although)
6. The food looks delicious. It tastes horrible. (but)
7. Mason fell. The floor was wet. (because)
8. Anna took a part-time job. She needed some money. (so)

VIII. Choose the correct answers.

1. Fruit tastes good _____ it's healthy for your body.
a. but b. and c. so d. or
2. I want to buy a new jacket, _____ I don't have enough money.
a. and b. so c. but d. because
3. Linda is going to make a cake, _____ she needs some eggs and flour.
a. so b. but c. and d. or
4. We went for a walk _____ it was raining heavily.
a. because b. although c. therefore d. however
5. We can go to the pool _____ we can go horse-riding, whichever you prefer?
a. or b. but c. and d. so
6. John likes funny movies _____ he doesn't like scary movies.
a. and b. or c. so d. but
7. I'd like to see that Korean band _____ their music is pretty cool.
a. although b. so c. because d. but
8. I still cry at the end _____ I've seen this movie several times.
a. and b. although c. because d. so
9. You must hurry _____ you will miss your train.
a. so b. but c. and d. or
10. His chocolate was too hot, _____ he put some cold milk in it.
a. so b. but c. because d. although

IX. Complete the sentences with the correct question words.

1. _____ do you watch TV? - Every night.
2. _____ hours a day do you watch TV? - Three hours.
3. _____ do you usually watch TV? - In the evening.
4. _____ of TV programmes do you like to watch? - Sports, Music, and Cartoon.
5. _____ is your favourite TV programme? - Cartoon.
6. _____ do you watch TV? - Because it's entertaining and educational.
7. _____ is your favourite cartoon character? - Mickey Mouse.
8. _____ can you find out the times and channels of TV programmes? - In TV schedule.
9. _____ does the film last? - About an hour and a half.
10. _____ time do you spend watching TV? - One or two hours a day.

X. Write questions to the underlined words.

1. _____
My father watches the News every night.
2. _____
Tom Hank is my favourite actor.
3. _____
We usually watch TV in the evening.
4. _____
Tim is watching a game show now.
5. _____
I like music programme best.
6. _____
The game show *Are you smarter than a 5th grader?* is on 8 p.m.
7. _____
Many children like cartoons because they are funny.
8. _____
The Red Spotted Squirrel lasts twenty-five minutes.
9. _____
They watch TV two or three hours every day.
10. _____
The Old Town of Inca is in Peru.

XI. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

friends because crazy enjoy programme entertainment restrict fond

For me TV is the best source of (1)_____. I can relax and have fun at the same time. My favourite TV (2)_____ is "How I met your mother". I like it (3)_____ it is funny and I (4)_____ myself a lot. I watch it every day. The series follows the main character Ted Mosby, and his group of (5)_____ in Manhattan. I am also (6)_____ of "Criminal Minds" and "CSI:NY".

TV is indeed very important for me. I would go (7)_____ if I couldn't watch it for a week. My parents sometimes have to (8)_____ my television viewing, but that's okay.

XII. Arrange the words to make sentences.

1. on/ what/ tonight/ television/ is?
2. favourite/ MC/ your / who/ is/ television?

3. Tina/ time/ television/ does/ how much/ spend/ watching?
4. they/ like/ do/ why/ cartoons/ to watch?
5. best/ television/ like/ what/ do/ you/ programme?
6. start/ the/ game show/ what time/ does?
7. Liz/ go to/ how often/ does/ the cinema?
8. you/ watch/ do/ television/ usually/ when?

XIII. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first one.

1. What programme do you like best?
What's _____
2. It's not good for children to spend too much time watching television.
Children _____
3. Jim loves animals, so he likes to watch Animal programme.
Jim likes to watch Animal programme _____
4. My sister likes to watch cartoons.
My sister is fond _____
5. How much time do you spend watching television?
How many _____
6. How about going to the cinema tonight?
Shall _____
7. The film is not as interesting as the novel was.
The novel was much _____
8. Although he seemed a friendly person, I didn't like him.
He seemed _____

UNIT 8: SPORTS AND GAMES

A.VOCABULARY

- badminton	/ˈbæd.mɪn.tən/ (n):	cầu lông
- volleyball	/ˈvɒl.i.bɔl/ (n):	bóng chuyền
- football	/ˈfʊt.bɔl/ (n):	bóng đá
- judo	/ˈdʒʊd.oʊ/ (n):	võ nhu đạo
- horse race	/hɔ:rs ˈreɪs/ (n):	đua ngựa
- basketball	/ˈbæ.s.kɪt.bɔl/ (n):	bóng rổ
- baseball	/ˈbeɪs.bɔl/ (n):	bóng chày
- tennis	/ˈten.ɪs/ (n):	quần vợt
- table tennis	/ˈteɪ.bəl ˈten.ɪs/ (n):	bóng bàn
- regatta	/rɪˈɡɑ:tə/ (n):	cuộc đua thuyền
- eurythmies	/yʊˈrɪð mi, yə-/ (n):	thể dục nhịp điệu
- gymnastics	/dʒɪmˈnæs.tɪks/ (n):	thể dục dụng cụ
- marathon	/ˈmæ.rə.θən/ (n):	cuộc đua ma-ra-tông
- marathon race	/ˈmæ.rə.θən reɪs/ (n):	chạy ma-ra-tông
- javelin throw	/ˈdʒæv.ə.lɪn θrou/ (n):	ném lao
- pole vault	/ˈpəʊl ˌvɔlt/ (n):	nhảy sào

- athletics	/æθ'let·iks/ (n):	điền kinh
- hurdle race	/'hʌr·dəl reɪt/ (n):	nhảy rào
- weightlifting	/'weɪt,lɪf·tɪŋ/ (n):	cử tạ
- swimming	/'swɪm·ɪŋ/ (n):	bơi lội
- ice-skating	/'aɪs ,skeɪt/ (n):	trượt băng
- water-skiing	/'wɔ:tər 'ski:..ɪŋ/ (n):	lướt ván nước
- high jumping	/'haɪ,dʒʌmp/ (n):	nhảy cao
- archery	/'ɑ:tʃə·ri/ (n):	bắn cung
- windsurfing	/'wɪnd,sɜ:r·fɪŋ/ (n):	lướt ván buồm
- cycling	/'saɪ klɪŋ/ (n):	đua xe đạp
- fencing	/'fen·sɪŋ/ (n):	đấu kiếm
- hurdling	/'hʌr·dəlɪŋ/ (n):	chạy / nhảy qua rào
- athlete	/'æθ,lɪt/ (n):	vận động viên
- boat	/bəʊt/ (n):	con thuyền
- career	/kə'riər/ (n):	nghề nghiệp, sự nghiệp
- congratulations	/kən,grætʃ·ə'lei·ʃənz/ (n):	xin chúc mừng
- elect	/'ɪ lekt/ (v):	lựa chọn, bầu chọn
- equipment	/'ɪ kwɪp mənt/ (n):	thiết bị, dụng cụ
- exhausted	/'ɪg'zɑ:..stɪd/ (adj):	mệt nhoài, mệt lử
- fantastic	/'fæn'tæs·tɪk/ (adj):	tuyệt
- fit	/fɪt/ (adj):	mạnh khỏe
- goggles	/'gag·əlz/ (n):	kính (để bơi)
- gym	/dʒɪm/ (n):	trung tâm thể dục
- last	/læst/ (v):	kéo dài
- racket	/'ræk·ɪt/ (n):	cái vợt (cầu lông...)
- regard	/'rɪ'gard/ (v):	coi là
- ring	/'rɪŋ/ (n):	sàn đấu (boxing)
- skateboard	/'skeɪt.bɔ:rd/: (n, v)	ván trượt, trượt ván
- ski	/'ski/ (n, v):	trượt tuyết, ván trượt tuyết
- skiing	/'ski:..ɪŋ/ (n):	môn trượt tuyết
- sports competition	/spɔ:rts ,kɒm prɪ'tɪʃ ən/ (n):	cuộc đua thể thao
- sporty	/'spɔ:r.tɪ/ (adj)	khỏe mạnh, đáng thể thao

B.GRAMMAR

I. Thì quá khứ đơn

1. Cách dùng

- Diễn tả hành động hay sự việc đã xảy ra và kết thúc tại một thời điểm được xác định trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: I met her last summer.

(Tôi đã gặp cô ấy vào mùa hè năm ngoái.)

- Diễn tả hành động thường làm hay quen làm trong quá khứ.

Ví dụ: She often swimming every day last year.

(Năm ngoái cô ấy đi bơi mỗi ngày.)

2. Dạng thức của quá khứ đơn.

a. Với động từ “to be” (was/were)

Thể khẳng định		Thể phủ định
I/He/She/It Danh từ số ít	Was + danh từ/tính từ	Was not/wasn't + danh từ/tính từ
You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều	Were + danh từ/tính từ	Were not/weren't + danh từ/tính từ

Ví dụ: -He was tired. (Anh ấy đã rất mệt.) -They were in the room.(Họ đã ở trong phòng.)		Ví dụ: -He wasn't at school yesterday.(Hôm qua anh ấy không ở trường.) -They weren't in the park.(Họ không ở trong công viên.)
---	--	---

Thể nghi vấn		Câu trả lời ngắn
Was + I/He/She/It Danh từ số ít	+ danh từ/tính từ	Yes (No) +I/She/He/It + was (wasn't)
Were + You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều		Yes (No) + You/We/They + were (weren't)
Ví dụ: -Were they tired yesterday? (Hôm qua họ đã mệt phải không? ➤ Yes, they were/No, they weren't. -Was he at home? ➤ Yes, he was/No, he wasn't		

Lưu ý:

Khi chủ ngữ câu hỏi là “you” (bạn) thì câu trả lời phải dùng “I” (tôi) để đáp lại.

b.Với động từ thường (Verbs/V)

Thể khẳng định		Thể phủ định	
I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều	+ V-ed	I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều	+did not/didn't + V nguyên mẫu
He/She/It Danh từ số ít		He/She/It Danh từ số ít	
Ví dụ: -She went to school yesterday.(Hôm qua cô ấy đã đi học.) -He worked in this bank last year.(Năm ngoái anh ấy đã làm việc ở ngân hàng.)		Ví dụ: -My mum didn't by me a computer last year. (Mẹ tôi đã không mua cho tôi máy tính mới năm ngoái.) -He didn't met me last night.(Anh ấy không gặp tôi tối qua.) -Mr. Nam didn't watch TV with me.(Ông Nam đã không xem TV với tôi.)	

Thể nghi vấn

Câu trả lời ngắn

Did	I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều He/She/It Danh từ số ít	+V nguyên mẫu?	Yes No	I/You/We/They/Danh từ số nhiều He/She/It/Danh từ số ít	Did. Didn't
-----	---	-------------------	---------------	--	--------------------

Ví dụ:
 -Did she work there?(Có phải cô ấy làm việc ở đó không?)
 Yes she did/No she didn't
 -Did you go to Hanoi last month? (Có phải bạn đi Hà Nội tháng trước không?)
 Yes, I did/No, I didn't

c.Wh-question

Khi đặt câu hỏi có chứa **Wh-word** (từ để hỏi) như **Who, What, When,Where, Why, Which, How**, ta đặt chúng lên đầu câu. Tuy nhiên khi trả lời cho dạng câu hỏi này, ta không dùng Yes/No mà cần đưa ra câu trả lời trực tiếp.

Cấu trúc:

Wh-word + was/were + S?	Wh-word + did + S + V?
Ví dụ: -Where were they? (Họ đã ở đâu thế?) -They were in the playground. (Họ ở trong sân chơi.)	Ví dụ: -What did Ba do at the weekend? (Ba đã làm gì vào cuối tuần?) -He studied English. (Cậu ấy học tiếng Anh.)

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

- Trong câu ở thì quá khứ đơn thường có sự xuất hiện của các trạng từ chỉ thời gian như:
 -yesterday (hôm qua)
 -last night/week/month/...(Tối qua/tuần trước/tháng trước/...)
 -ago (cách đây), (two hours ago: cách đây 2 giờ/two weeks ago: cách đây hai tuần...)
 -in + thời gian trong quá khứ (eg:in 1990)
 -when: khi (trong câu kể)

4. Cách thêm –ed vào sau động từ

- a. Trong câu ở thì quá khứ đơn, động từ bắt buộc phải thêm đuôi –ed. Dưới đây là các quy tắc khi thêm đuôi –ed vào động từ.

Thêm “ed” vào đằng sau hầu hết các động từ	Ví dụ	Want – wanted Look - looked	Finish – finished Help - helped
Động từ kết thúc bằng đuôi “e” hoặc “ee” chúng ta chỉ việc thêm “d” vào cuối động từ.	Ví dụ	Live - lived Love - loved	Agree - agreed Believe - believed
Đối với động từ tận cùng là “y” + Nếu trước “y” là một nguyên âm (u,e,o,a,i), ta thêm “ed” bình thường. + Nếu trước “y” là một phụ âm ta đổi “y” thành “i+ed”	Ví dụ	Play - played Stay - stayed Enjoy - enjoyed	Study - studied Worry – worried Marry – married
Động từ một âm tiết, tận cùng bằng một nguyên âm + một phụ âm (trừ những từ kết thúc bằng h,w,x,y), ta phải gấp đôi phụ âm trước khi thêm “ed”	Ví dụ	Stop – stopped Plan - planned	Fit - fitted

b. Động từ bất quy tắc

- Là những động từ được chia ở cột 2 trong “Bảng động từ bất quy tắc” (học thuộc lòng)

Ví dụ:

V	V- ed	Nghĩa
go	went	Đi
have	had	Có
Teach	taught	Dạy
buy	bought	mua
drink	drank	Uống

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN:

Bài 1: Cho dạng đúng của từ quá khứ đơn, dùng bảng động từ bất quy tắc nếu cần.

V	V-ed	V	V-ed
Meet (gặp)		Enjoy (thích)	
Help (giúp đỡ)		Drive (lái xe)	
Speak (nói)		Plan (kế hoạch)	
Live (sống)		Put (đặt)	
Write (viết)		Stop (dừng lại)	
Study (học)		Sing (hát)	
Do (làm)		Agree (đồng ý)	
Cry (khóc)		Sit (ngồi)	
Stand (đứng)		Borrow (mượn)	
Play (chơi)		Run (chạy)	
Stay (ở)		Begin(bắt đầu)	
Ask (hỏi)		Break (làm vỡ)	
Laugh (cười)		Bring (mang theo)	
Try (cố gắng)		Build (xây)	
Tidy (dọn dẹp)		Buy (mua)	

Bài 2: Điền was/were vào chỗ trống:

- The teacher _____ nice.
- The students _____ clever.
- But one student _____ in trouble.
- We _____ for him.
- He _____ nice though.
- I _____ Canberra last spring.
- We _____ at school last Saturday.
- Tina _____ at home yesterday.
- He _____ happy.
- Robert and Stan _____ Garry's friends.
- You _____ very busy on Friday.
- They _____ in front of the supermarket.
- I _____ in the museum.
- She _____ in South Africa last month.
- Jessica and Kimberly _____ late for school.

Bài 3:Viết các câu sau ở thể khẳng định (+), thể phủ định (-), thể nghi vấn (?)

- (+)He wrote a book.
(-) _____
(?) _____
- (+)She was my boss.
(-) _____
(?) _____
- (+) _____

- (-)They didn't build a new house.
(?)_____
4. (+) _____
(-)I wasn't at the concert last Sunday.
(?)_____
5. (+) _____
(-)_____
6. (+) _____
(?)Did you buy clothes in this clothes shop?
7. (+)He swam in the lake.
(-)_____
8. (+)We were at the gym last week.
(-)_____
9. (+) _____
(-)She didn't go to her office by car.
(?)_____
10. (+) _____
(-)He wasn't a good buy.
(?)_____

Bài 4. Chọn đáp án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống

1. They _____ the bus yesterday.
A. don't catch B. weren't catch C. didn't catch D. not catch
2. My sister _____ home last night.
A. comes B. come C. came D. was come
3. My father _____ tired when I _____ home.
A. was – got B. is – get C. was – getted D. were – got
4. What _____ you _____ two days ago?
A. do – do B. did – did C. do – did D. did – do
5. Where _____ your family _____ on the summer holiday last year?
A. do – go B. does – go C. did – go D. did – went
6. We _____ David in town a few days ago.
A. did see B. was saw C. did saw D. saw
7. It was cold, so I _____ the window.
A. shut B. was shut C. am shut D. shutted
8. I _____ to the cinema three times last week.
A. was go B. went C. did go D. goed
9. What _____ you _____ last weekend?
A. were/do B. did/did C. did/do D. do/did
10. The police _____ on my way home last night.
A. was stop B. stopped C. stops D. stopping
11. The film wasn't very good. I _____ it very much.
A. enjoyed B. wasn't enjoy C. didn't enjoyed D. didn't enjoy
12. The bed was very uncomfortable. I _____ sleep very well.
A. didn't B. did C. wasn't D. not
13. The window was opened and a bird _____ into the room.
A. fly B. flew C. was flew D. did fly
14. I _____ a lot of money yesterday. I _____ an expensive dress.
A. spend/buy B. spent/buy C. spent/bought D. was spent/bought.

Bài 5: Lựa chọn và điền dạng đúng của động từ quá khứ đơn:

Teach	cook	want	spend	ring
Be	sleep	study	go	write

1. Sheout with her boyfriend last night.
2. Laura a meal yesterday afternoon.
3. Mozart.....more than 600 pieces of music.
4. I tired when I came home.
5. The bed was very comfortable so they..... very well.
6. Jamie passed the exam because he..... very hard.
7. My father..... the teenagers to drive when he was alive.
8. Dave to make a fire but there was no wood.
9. The little boyhours in his room making his toys.
10. The telephone several times and then stopped before I could answer it.

Bài 6: Chuyển các câu sau về thì quá khứ đơn:

1. We move to a new house.
.....
2. They bring a sandwich.
.....
3. He doesn't do the homework.
.....
4. They sell cars.
.....
5. Does he visit his friends?
.....
6. She buys a book.
.....
7. The teacher punishes the boy.
.....
8. The little girl laughs at the beggar.
.....
9. They know it.
.....
10. He does not tell the lie.
.....
11. They do not wait for anybody.
.....
12. Who teaches you English?
.....
13. The mansons build the house.
.....
14. They invite us to their party.
.....
15. His manners disgust me.
.....
16. She sings a lovely song.
.....
17. It is time to start.
.....
18. He wants to kill the snake.
.....
19. His conduct surprises me.

.....
20. I want you to come with me.
.....

Bài 7: Trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây dựa vào gợi ý trong ngoặc:

1. What did he win? (the race)
.....

2. What did he eat? (spaghetti)
.....

3. What time did the film finish? (at ten o'clock)
.....

4. How did he feel? (happy)
.....

5. What did he look at? (the stars)
.....

6. Where did they go? (to the cinema)
.....

7. What did he watch on TV? (cartoons)
.....

8. What time did he get up? (at seven)
.....

9. What did she play? (basketball)
.....

10. Where did she walk? (to school)
.....

11. Who did he see? (Maria)
.....

12. Where did he have breakfast? (in the garden)
.....

13. What did they want? (some chicken)
.....

14. When did they arrive? (in the morning)
.....

Bài 8: Cho dạng đúng của từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ đơn:

1. Yesterday, I (go).....to the restaurant with a client.

2. We (drive).....around the parking lot for 20 minutes to find a parking space.

3. When he (arrive)at the restaurant, the place (be) full.

4. The waitress (ask)us if we (have)reservations.

5. I (say) that he would come.

6. The waiter (tell) us to come back in to hours.

7. My client and I slowly (walk)back to the car.

8. We (stop) at the grocery store and (buy)some cakes.

9. My sister (get).....married last month.

10. Daisy (come).....to her grandparents' house 3 days ago.

11. My computer (be).....broken yesterday.

12. He (buy).....me a big teddy bear on my birthday last week.

13. My friend (give)me a bar of chocolate when I (be)at school yesterday.

14. My children (not do)their homework last night.

15. You (live).....here five years ago?

16. They (watch).....TV late at night yesterday.

17. (Be) your friend at your house last weekend?

18. They (not be) excited about the film last night.

19. Where (spend/you) your last holiday?

20. I (visit)lots of interesting places. I (be)..... with two friends of mine.

II. Câu mệnh lệnh (Imperatives)

1. Định nghĩa

- Câu mệnh lệnh là câu dùng để sai khiến, ra lệnh hoặc đề nghị một người khác làm một việc gì đó. Chủ ngữ của câu mệnh lệnh được ngầm hiểu là “you”.

- Câu mệnh lệnh luôn được dùng ở thì hiện tại đơn và dạng thức nguyên thể (không có “to”) của động từ.

2. Cấu trúc

Dạng	Khẳng định	Phủ định
Cấu trúc	Verb (động từ) + object (tân ngữ) Verb + prepositional (giới từ)	Don't verb + object/preposition
Ví dụ	- Open the door (Hãy mở cửa ra) - Close the door (Hãy đóng cửa lại) - Come in. (Mời vào) - Sit down (Mời ngồi xuống).	- Don't open the window. (Đừng mở cửa sổ.) - Don't cry (Đừng khóc.) - Don't stand up. (Đừng đứng dậy.)
Lưu ý	Có thể dùng “please” (làm ơn, xin mời) trong câu mệnh lệnh làm cho câu nhẹ nhàng hơn và lịch sự hơn, có thể đặt ở đầu hoặc ở cuối câu. Ví dụ: - Sit down, please. (Xin mời ngồi xuống.) - Please stand up. (Xin mời đứng dậy) - Don't make noise, please. (Làm ơn đừng làm ồn.)	

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 9: Chuyển các câu mệnh lệnh sau đây từ dạng câu khẳng định sang phủ định:

1. Go straight.

.....

2. Pass the bank.

.....

3. Cross the road.

.....

4. Turn left.

.....

5. Walk to the corner.

.....

6. Look at the map.

.....

7. Don't let them stop.

.....

8. Don't go tomorrow.

.....

9. Don't have a shower.

.....

10. Don't jump up now.

.....

11. Don't play the piano.

.....

12. Don't be careful.

.....

Bài 10: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng cách điền cụm từ thích hợp dưới đây vào chỗ trống:

Turn left	Stop the car	Help me!	Have	Don't listen
Pass	Don't be late	Open	Come	Catch
Take	Come in	Don't wait	Don't forget	

1 for me. I'm not coming tonight.

2 with you. It's raining.

3 a rest. You look tired.

4 at the end of the street.

5 I can't swim.

6 to take your passport.

7 There is a mouse in the road.

8 to my cocktail party, please.

9 your book at page 15.

10 the salt, please.

11 to that record. It's terrible.

12 The train leaves at 8 o'clock.

13 and have a glass of lemonade.

14 the first train in the morning.

Bài 11: Viết câu mệnh lệnh dựa vào động từ cho sẵn:

1 upstairs. (to go)

2 in this lake. (not/to swim)

3 your homework. (to do)

4 football in the yard. (not/to play)

5 your teeth. (to brush)

6 during the lesson. (not/to talk)

7 the animals in the zoo. (not/to feed)

8 the instructions. (to read)

9 late for school. (not/to be)

10 your mobiles. (to switch off)

11 our brother. (to ask)

12 a pencil. (not/to use)

13 up. (to hurry)

14 quiet. (to be)

15 the police. (not/to call)

16 your beds. (to make)

17. Please(to mind)

18..... dad about my accident. (not/to tell)

19. Pleasein this room. (not/ to smoke)

20. Let'sher mother in the kitchen. (to help)

Bài 12: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu mệnh lệnh hoàn chỉnh:

1. use/umbrella/do not/my/him/let.

.....

2. first/the/take/on/right/the/tunning!

.....

3.tell/things/me/such/don't!

.....

4. that/. /Don't/like/speak

.....

5. attention/pay/to/Don't/her.

.....

6. too/fast./Don't/drive

.....
7. doors./Close/the

.....
8. Open/book/26/./down/Sit/and/page/your

.....
Bài 13: Chọn và ghép cụm từ ở cột A với cột B sao cho tạo thành câu mệnh lệnh hoàn chỉnh, sau đó viết lại câu:

Cột A	Cột B
1. Don't accept	The door to Mike
2. Brush your teeth	To bring the CDs
3. Turn off the light	Candies from strangers
4. Don't step	Before you go to bed
5. Bring your dictionaries	Adult programmes
6. Don't open	When you go to bed to save energy
7. Don't watch	For language arts class
8. Don't forget	On the lawn

1.
2.
3.
4.
5.
6.
7.
8.

III. Trạng từ chỉ tần suất (Adverbs of frequency)

1. Định nghĩa

Trạng từ chỉ tần suất là những trạng từ được dùng để diễn tả mức độ thường xuyên của hành động.

Trạng từ chỉ tần suất	Cụm trạng từ chỉ tần suất
100%: always (luôn luôn) 80-99% : usually (thường xuyên) 60-79% : often (thường thường) 40-59%: sometimes (thỉnh thoảng); occasionally (thỉnh thoảng) 1-39% : seldom (hiếm khi) ; rarely (ít khi) 0% : never (không bao giờ)	Every (day/week/month/year...): mỗi ngày/tuần/tháng/năm...; once a week (một lần một tuần); twice a week (một tuần hai lần); three times a month (ba lần một tháng)

Các trạng từ này dùng để trả lời cho câu hỏi “How often”

Ví dụ:

-How often do you go to the cinema? (Bạn có đi xem phim thường xuyên không?)
=> I sometimes go to the cinema. (Tôi thỉnh thoảng đi xem phim.)

2. Vị trí của trạng từ chỉ tần suất

a. Đứng sau động từ “to be”	Ví dụ: - Lan is never late for school. (Lan không bao giờ trễ học.) - They are sometimes at home. (Họ thỉnh thoảng ở nhà.)
b. Đứng trước động từ thường	Ví dụ: - I usually go to work at 7a.m (Tôi thường xuyên đi làm vào lúc 7 giờ.)

	- She often does the housework every morning. (Cô ấy thường xuyên làm việc nhà vào mỗi sáng.) - They always come to class on time. (Họ luôn luôn tới lớp đúng giờ.)
c.Đứng giữa trợ động từ (do, does...) và động từ thường	Ví dụ: - I don't usually watch TV every morning. (Tôi không thường xuyên xem tivi vào buổi tối.) - He doesn't often see her. (Anh ấy không thường xuyên học cô ấy.) - They don't always do their exercises. (Họ thường không làm bài tập của mình.)
d. Nằm ở cuối câu	Ví dụ: - I go to the park every weekend. (Tôi thường đi tới công viên mỗi cuối tuần.) - He travels to Ha Long Bay twice a year. (Anh ấy đi Vịnh Hạ Long hai lần một năm) - They meet their parents four times a month. (Họ gặp bố mẹ của mình một tháng bốn lần.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 14: Điền trạng từ chỉ tần suất thích hợp vào chỗ trống:

Ví dụ: (100 percent) My friend.....always wears a hat.

- (100 percent) Selina and Rick.....go to the beach on summer weekends.
- (0 percent) They stay at home.
- (40 percent).....they bring their dog.
- (80 percent) They go to the beach.
- (20 percent) They take the train.
- (60 percent) They friends with them.
- (20 percent)They..... They like to sit in the sun.
- (100 percent) Antonia and Tomas..... stay in the city.
- (80 percent) They eat dinner at home.
- (20 percent) They eat dinners at restaurants.
- (0 percent) They eat at a very expensive restaurants.
- (40 percent)Tomas will cook dinner, but (80 percent)not.

Bài 15: Đặt trạng từ vào đúng vị trí trong các câu dưới đây:

- We play soccer in the street. (never)
.....
- My father is busy on Sundays. (always)
.....
- He sends me a present. (sometimes)
.....
- They don't go swimming in winter. (often)
.....
- The children are interested in computer games. (usually)
.....
- He listens to the radio. (often)
.....
- They read a book. (sometimes)
.....
- Pete gets angry. (never)

.....
9. Tom is very friendly. (seldom)
.....

10. I take sugar in my coffee. (rarely)
.....

Bài 16: Tìm và sửa lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau:

1. My sister is punctual always.

=>.....

2. David sometimes is a bit sad.

=>.....

3. Our teacher gives often us a lot of homework.

=>.....

4. We write usually our compositions for the English class.

=>.....

5. She is late to work never.

=>.....

6. Hardly ever I go to the cinema.

=>.....

7. We revise for our tests usually.

=>.....

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 17: Hoàn thành câu sau đúng dạng ở thì quá khứ đơn:

1. It/be/cloudy/yesterday.
.....

2. In 1990/we/move/to another city.
.....

3. When/you/get/the first gift?
.....

4. She/not/go/to the church/five days ago.
.....

5.How/be/he/yesterday?
.....

6. Mr. and Mrs James/come back home/and/have/dinner/late/last night?
.....

7. They/happy/last holiday?
.....

8. How/you/get there?
.....

9. I/play/football/last/Sunday.
.....

10. My/mother/make/two/cakes/four/days/ago.
.....

11. Tyler/visit/his/grandmother/last/month.
.....

12. Joni/go/zoo/five/days/ago.
.....

13. We/have/fun/yesterday.
.....

14. My/father/not/at the office/the day/before yesterday.
.....

15. Janet/miss/the/bus.
.....

16. She/tidy/her room.

17. Nancy/watch/not/television.

18. She/read/a book.

19. It/not/be/cold.

20. They/be/late for the interview.

Bài 18: Chia động từ trong ngoặc đúng dạng thì quá khứ đơn:

Snow White was the daughter of a beautiful queen, who died when the girl (be) young. Her father (marry) again, but the girl's stepmother was very jealous of her because she was so beautiful. The evil queen (order) a hunter to kill Snow White but he couldn't do it because she was so lovely. He (chase) her away instead, and she (take) refuge with seven dwarfs in their house in the forest. She (live) with the dwarfs and took care of them and they (love) her dearly. Then one day the talking mirror (tell) the evil queen that Snow White was still alive. She (change) herself into a witch and (make) a poisoned apple. She (go) to the dwarfs' house disguised as an old woman and tempted Snow White to eat the poisoned apple, which (put) her into an everlasting sleep. Finally, a prince (find) her in the glass coffin where the dwarfs had put her and woke her up with a kiss. Snow White and the prince (be) married and lived happily ever after.

Bài 19: Chia các động từ các câu sau ở hiện tại đơn hoặc quá khứ đơn:

1. She (go) to Australia in 1994 and she liked it very much.
2. My father usually (like) his steak well-done.
3. The dog (eat) its toy last night.
4. The policeman (talk) to the burglar yesterday.
5. (you/have) a test last week?
6. I often see her mother but she never (speak) to me.
7. The gentleman (speak) to his servant 2 hours ago.
8. The kangaroo always (carry) its baby.
9. My friend (talk) a lot everyday.
10. The man (drive) to the supermarket last weekend.
11. My brothers (leave) for England last week.
12. My sisters (leave) for England every year in June.
13. I don't like that man because he often (laugh) at me.
14. Her sister never (smoke).
15. The cats usually (leave) its basket when it is hungry.
16. Mrs. Trang (teach) us English last year.
17. Daisy (wear) a very beautiful dress last night.
18. Nhung (write) to her grandparents very often last year.
19. The teacher usually (give) the students a lot of homework on the weekend.

Bài 20: Chọn đáp án đúng nhất để trả lời các câu hỏi sau:

1. Did you buy a lot of souvenirs in Hanoi, Nga?
A. I bought a lot of souvenirs in Hanoi. B. I did
C. Yes, I bought D. Yes, I did
2. Where did you go during your summer vacation, Mai?
A. Yes, I went to Hanoi B. No, I didn't go to Hanoi
C. I went to Hue D. I went there with my mother.
3. Who went to the zoo with you last weekend, Nam?
A. My father B. I went to the zoo.
C. My father went to D. My father do.
4. When did you visit the Ngoc Son Temple, Mai?

A. On Sundays

B. Next Sunday

C. Last Sunday

D. Every Sunday

5. What did Ha make for herself last night?

A. She made a nice dress.

B. She makes a nice dress

C. She is making a nice dress.

D. She will make a nice dress.

Bài 21: Tìm và sửa lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau:

1. We used to playing marbles many years ago.

2. He didn't used to stay up late.

3. What do you do yesterday?

4. We go swimming with our parents last week.

5. My sister is born in 1970.

6. Children often receive toys and cakes from Santa Claus at Christmas.

7. They usually get up early at the morning.

8. How often do you take a nap?

9. It is often rains in winter.

Bài 22: Tom đang viết thư gửi đến một người bạn. Đặt động từ đã cho vào khoảng trống:

Open forget come be bring

Have turn wait make

36, Sea Parade

Liverpool

Dear John,

...Come..... and see me next weekend. I'm staying in a house by the sea. Don't (1).....to bring your swimming costume with you! It isn't difficult to find the house.

When you get to the crossroads in the town, (2) right and drive to the end of the road. (3)

.....careful because it is a dangerous road! (4)..... some warm with you because it is cold in the

evenings here. If I am not at home when you arrive, don't (5)for me. The key to the house is under the big white stone in the garden. (6)the front door and (7)..... yourself a cup of tea in the kitchen!

(8).....a good journey!

Best wishes,

Tom

Bài 23: Hãy viết các câu sau ở dạng câu mệnh lệnh sao cho nghĩa không đổi:

Eg: You must do your homework. – Do your homework!

1. You must listen to your teachers.

.....

2. You mustn't be noisy.

.....

3. You mustn't cheat.

.....

4. You must sit at your desk.

.....

5. You mustn't be late.

.....

6. You must write tests.

.....

7. You mustn't bully your classmates.

.....

8. You must pay attention.

.....

9. He should have a job.

.....

10. We musn't stop now.

11. You must go to bed.

12. You should get up early.

13. You mustn't stand here.

14. She can have a drink.

15. They must clean the carpet.

16. We needn't wait for him.

17. We must have a shower first.

18. You can't park in this street.

19. You must be here soon.

20. They should taste this cake.

Bài 24: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh:

1. does/always/my mother/the grocery shopping.

2. cooks/always/dinner/my father.

3. my mother/the dishes/usually does.

4. the dishes/sometimes/do/I

5. does/my brother/seldom/anything.

6. lazy/he/always/is.

7. we/watch/often/TV/after dinner.

8. are/Dan's students/on time/usually.

9. rarely/Olympic/British/win/athlete/medals.

10. students/their/homework/usually/The/do.

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 8

I. Find the words or phrases from the box into the correct column.

camping	soccer	shopping	fishing	aerobics
jogging	badminton	tennis	swimming	table tennis
cycling	housework	volleyball	homework	video games

do	go	play

II. Choose the best answer.

- I.....born on the first of May.
A. were B. was C. are D. is
- The enemy by night.
A. attack B. attacks C. attacked D. did attack
- Mind about what I just now.
A. said B. say C. did say D. didn't say
- Did you ever of such a thing?
A. hear B. hears C. heard D. heart
- He.....some eggs to make cakes.
A. buys B. buy C. buied D. bought
- There any eggs in the packet when Ithe kitchen.
A. was/ come B. were/ come C. was/ came D. were/ came
- I.....a English course to improve all the skills.
A. not joined B. joined C. did joined D. join
- We.....to our friend last night.
A. spoke B. speak C. speaked D. spoken
- We and..... lunch at the cafeteria with them.
A. talked/ have B. talked/ had C. talk/ had D. talked/ have
- you attend yoga class when I at home?
A. Did/ stayed B. Didn't/ didn't stayed
C. Did/ didn't stayed D. Did/ stayed
- I.....his car to work while he was sleeping.
A. drive B. drove C. driving D. driven
- The man the door and.....pieces of paper.
A. open/ thrown B. opened/ threw
C. opened/ thrown D. open/ throw
- He.....them into a room.
A. led B. lead C. leaded D. leads
- He off his hat and into the room.
A. take/ went B. take/ go C. taken /go D. took/ went
- The meeting5 minutes ago.
A. finished B. finish C. did not finish D. did finish
- When shethe report?
A. do/ finish B. did/ finished C. did/ finish D. didn't/ finished
- I.....my close friend a cushion for her chair yesterday.
A. gave B. give C. gived D. given
- Hoa's neighbor her and then it very well.
A. helped/ fits B. helped/ fit C. help/ fitted D. helped/ fitted
- I what teacherin the last lesson.
A. didn't understand/ said B. didn't understood/ said
C. understand/ say D. understood/ say
- Yesterday, I..... to a souvenir shop near the exit of the aquarium.
A. go B. gone C. went D. goes

III. Complete the sentences with the correct form of *do* or *play*.

1. Do you often_____exercises?
2. My Dad_____exercises football for the town team when he was young.
3. My sister enjoys_____exercises table tennis in her free time.
4. My brother_____basketball for the school team.
5. We_____gymnastics at school yesterday.
6. I like_____tennis.
7. My friend_____judo twice a week.
8. My mother_____yoga at the new sports centre.

IV. Give the correct form of the verbs in the past tense.

- | | | | |
|----------|-------|-----------|-------|
| 1. do | _____ | 11. buy | _____ |
| 2. teach | _____ | 12. have | _____ |
| 3. send | _____ | 13. take | _____ |
| 4. spend | _____ | 14. go | _____ |
| 5. begin | _____ | 15. make | _____ |
| 6. cut | _____ | 16. think | _____ |
| 7. put | _____ | 17. see | _____ |
| 8. give | _____ | 18. eat | _____ |
| 9. write | _____ | 19. sing | _____ |
| 10. be | _____ | 20. wear | _____ |

V. Arrange the verbs pronouncing “ed”.

listened	wrapped	painted	raised	looked
needed	visited	rained	watched	opened
helped	seemed	learned	practiced	stopped
remembered	worked	rented	arrived	talked
lived	liked	invited	received	washed
/id/		t/		/d/

VI. Choose the right answer.

1. (Were/ Was)_____the weather nice yesterday?
2. Did you (get up/ got up)_____late this morning?
3. (Were/ Was)_____you born in 1997?
4. Did you (have/ had)_____a pizza for lunch yesterday?
5. Did you (go/ went)_____to Nha Trang last summer?
6. Ba is a good friend of (me/mine)
7. Was Lan at the movie theater last night? - Yes, she (was/ did)_____.
8. (Were/ Did)_____the Browns return to Ha Noi by train?
9. We went to Hue (by/ on)_____plane.
10. Hoa learned how (using/ to use)_____a sewing machine.

VII. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I (not be)_____very happy yesterday.
2. The people in the café (not be)_____friendly when I was there yesterday.
3. I (leave)_____my school bag at school this morning.
4. It (be)_____a great film in 2001.
5. Our teacher (tell)_____us to be quiet yesterday.

6. I went to the shop but I (not have)_____any money.
7. Susan (not know)_____about the exam and she did very badly.
8. I (buy)_____a ticket for the football match yesterday.

VIII. Put the correct form of the following verbs in the correct blanks to complete the letter.

not get back	take	decide	find	hire	dive
do	arrive	get up	not be	stop	go

Dear Ha,

Hi, I'm on holiday in Nha Trang with the Robinson. We.....(1) last Saturday. The first day the weather (2) very nice, so we (3) some sightseeing. I (4) lots of photographs. On Monday, we (5) a car and (6) out into the country. We (7) for lunch at a lovely little village and then in the afternoon we(8) a beautiful beach. Last night (9) to the cinema. We (10) till about 11p.m, so we (11) late this morning and we.....(12) to have a relaxing day by the hotel swimming pool. So that's where I am now. Love,

An

IX. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

open	forget	come	be	bring	have	turn	wait	make
------	--------	------	----	-------	------	------	------	------

Dear John,

Come and see me next weekend. I'm staying in a house by the sea. Don't (1)_____to bring your swimming costume with you! It isn't difficult to find the house. When you get to the crossroads in the town, (2)_____right and drive to the end of the road. (3)_____careful because it is a dangerous road! (4)_____some warm clothes with you because it is cold in the evenings here. If I am not at home when you arrive, don't (5)_____for me. The key to the house is under the big white stone in the garden. (6)_____the front door and (7)_____yourself a cup of tea in the kitchen! (8)_____a good journey!

Best wishes,

Vinh

X. Write the questions for the underlined words or phrases.

Ex: I get up at six every day.

→ *What time do you get up every day?*

1. Minh brushes his teeth twice a day.
→
2. Simon is in a lot of pain now because he has a toothache.
→
3. I felt sick after eating that food.
→
4. Nga went to see the dentist last week.
→
5. Dr Lai will check your teeth.
→
6. It took Dr Phong 10 minutes to fill Van's tooth.
→
7. My brother is going to the hospital.
→
8. Mr. Cuong did morning exercises at 5.30 yesterday.
→
9. Hoa received her aunt's letter five days ago.
→
10. There are twelve students in Lien's class having toothache.

→

XI. Fill in the blank using the words in the box.

Turn left	Come in	Don't wait	Don't forget
Stop the car!	Help me!	Have	Don't listen
Pass	Don't be late!	Open	Come
Catch	Take		

1. *Don't wait* for me. I'm not coming tonight.
2. _____ an umbrella with you. It's raining.
3. _____ a rest. You look tired.
4. _____ at the end of the street.
5. _____ I can't swim!
6. _____ to take your passport.
7. _____ There's a mouse in the road.
8. _____ to my cocktail party, please.
9. _____ your books at page 15.
10. _____ the salt, please.
11. _____ to that record. It's terrible.
12. _____ The train leaves at 8 o'clock.
13. _____ and have a glass of lemonade.
14. _____ the first train in the morning.

XII. Rewrite the following sentences, using the structure of imperative.

Ex: You should go to bed early. *Go to bed early.*
 You should not stay up late. *Don't stay up late.*

1. You should brush your teeth after meals.
.....
2. You should not play soccer in the street.
.....
3. You should wash and iron your own clothes.
.....
4. You should not eat too much candy.
.....
5. You should wash your hands before meals.
.....
6. You should not worry about the examination.
.....
7. You should tidy your room every day.
.....
8. You should not forget to write to your parents.
.....

TEST 2 UNIT 8

I. Put the words in the correct column according to the pronunciation of the underlined part.

<i>the<u>r</u>e</i>	<i>he<u>r</u>e</i>	<i>fe<u>a</u>r</i>	<i>ca<u>r</u>e</i>	<i>se<u>r</u>ies</i>
<i>ea<u>r</u></i>	<i>appea<u>r</u></i>	<i>wea<u>r</u></i>	<i>be<u>r</u>e</i>	<i>bea<u>r</u></i>
<i>ide<u>a</u></i>	<i>chee<u>r</u></i>	<i>pea<u>r</u></i>	<i>prepa<u>r</u>e</i>	<i>sha<u>r</u>e</i>
<i>wh<u>e</u>re</i>	<i>fa<u>i</u>r</i>	<i>yea<u>r</u></i>	<i>de<u>a</u>r</i>	<i>nea<u>r</u></i>
<i>ch<u>a</u>ir</i>	<i>sph<u>e</u>re</i>	<i>ai<u>r</u></i>	<i>pai<u>r</u></i>	<i>ae<u>r</u>obics</i>

/eə/	/ɪə/
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| A. <u>h</u> ear | B. <u>f</u> ear | C. <u>d</u> ear | D. <u>w</u> ear |
| A. <u>n</u> ear | B. <u>a</u> pp <u>e</u> ar | C. <u>b</u> ear | D. <u>i</u> d <u>e</u> a |
| A. <u>h</u> ere | B. <u>t</u> h <u>e</u> re | C. <u>s</u> er <u>i</u> es | D. <u>s</u> ph <u>e</u> re |
| A. <u>M</u> ary | B. <u>a</u> ir | C. <u>ch</u> air | D. <u>m</u> ar <u>r</u> y |
| A. <u>p</u> re <u>p</u> are | B. <u>c</u> ar <u>r</u> y | C. <u>sh</u> are | D. <u>f</u> air |

III. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. <u>s</u> qu <u>a</u> re | B. <u>b</u> ad <u>m</u> inton | C. <u>g</u> rand <u>f</u> ather | D. <u>m</u> at <u>ch</u> |
| 2. A. <u>i</u> d <u>e</u> a | B. <u>r</u> ea <u>s</u> on | C. <u>f</u> ea <u>t</u> ure | D. <u>t</u> ea <u>ch</u> er |
| 3. A. <u>e</u> asy | B. <u>p</u> lea <u>s</u> e | C. <u>w</u> ea <u>k</u> | D. <u>p</u> ea <u>r</u> |
| 4. A. <u>g</u> og <u>g</u> les | B. <u>s</u> po <u>r</u> t | C. <u>s</u> to <u>p</u> | D. <u>n</u> o <u>t</u> |
| 5. A. <u>m</u> at <u>ch</u> | B. <u>m</u> ach <u>i</u> ne | C. <u>ch</u> amp <u>i</u> on | D. <u>ch</u> ess |

IV. Choose the correct answers.

- I usually play football when I have _____.
A. spare time B. good time C. no time D. times
- In team sports, the two teams _____ against each other in order to get the better score.
A. are B. do C. make D. compete
- draw on the walls and tables, please .
A. Do B. Don't C. Should D. Shouldn't
- Nam plays sports very often, so he looks very _____.
A. sport B. sports C. sporty D. sporting
- Last summer, I _____ fishing with my uncle in the afternoon.
A. go B. went C. goes D. going
- I like watching football matches, but I am not very good _____ playing football.
A. at B. in C. on D. for
- Team sports are sometimes called _____ sports.
A. compete B. competition C. competitor D. competitive
- " do you do judo?" - "Twice a week.".
A. When B. Where C. How often D. Why
- sports do you like watching on TV? .
A. How B. What C. Do D. How often
- Football is regarded _____ the most popular sport in the world.
A. for B. as C. like D. of
- Sports and games _____ an important part in our lives.
A. play B. do C. go D. make
- When you go to the zoo, don't _____ the animals.
A. play B. do C. tease D. watch
- Playing sports helps us get _____.

- A. fat B.free C.fittest D.fitter
14. Nam's dream is to become a _____.
- A. loser B.champion C.contest D.gamer
15. "I'd like to watch motor racing because it is very _____."
- A.frightening B.exciting C.excited D.boring
16. My sister often _____ badminton in her free time.
- A.play B.plays C.playing D.to play
17. Marathon is considered a/an _____ sport.
- A. team B.individual C.indoor D.sporting
18. Our school football team _____ the match with Tran Phu School last Sunday.
- A. wins B.won C.scores D. scored
19. Tam _____ three goals for our team and made it a hat trick.
- A.scores B.scored C.plays D.played
20. Blackburn Rover is at the bottom of the league. They _____ most of their matches this season.
- A. played B.won C.lost D.scored

V. Match the questions with the answers, and write the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
	1. Which sports do you play?	a) Once a week.
	2. What does your brother do in his spare time?	b) Just a racket.
	3. How often do you do karate?	c) I play table tennis.
	4. What should I bring to play table tennis?	d) Well, OK.
	5. Will you come with me this Sunday morning?	e) He plays football.

VI. Fill the words or phrases from the box into the correct column.

homework	table tennis	shopping	swimming	fishing
aerobics	jogging	badminton	tennis	videogames
volleyball	housework	soccer	cycling	camping

Do	Go	play
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		

VII. Complete the sentences with the correct words from the box.

throw hit kick bounce catch pick up

- In basketball you _____ the ball on the floor.
- In tennis you _____ the ball.
- In football you _____ the ball.
- In rugby you _____ the ball to people in your team.
- In football the goalkeeper needs to _____ the ball.

6. In hockey you never _____ the ball.

VIII. Give the names of the sports, using the words or phrases given.

1. bicycle, pedals, tyre, cap.
2. gloves, ring, heavyweight, champion.
3. ball, low net, table, round bats.
4. ball, kick, score, goal, referee.
5. large ball, open net, metal ring, throw.
6. shuttlecock, high net, hit.
7. large ball, high net, hands, hit, (not to touch) ground.
8. pool, goggles, swimsuit.
9. skis, downhill, snow.
10. boat, sails, wind, sailor.
11. racket, central net, small ball, hit, small ground.
12. square board, pieces, move, king.

IX. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I (not be) _____ very happy yesterday.
2. I (buy) _____ a ticket for the football match yesterday.
3. Kate (not know) _____ about the exam and she did very badly.
4. I went to the shop but I (not have) _____ any money.
5. It (be) _____ a great film in 2010.
6. I (leave) _____ my school bag at school this morning.
7. Our teacher (tell) _____ us to be quiet yesterday.
8. The people in the café (not be) _____ friendly when I was there yesterday.

X. Complete the sentences with the past form of the verbs from the box.

ask	jump	rescue	stop	try
close	laugh	start	study	walk

1. The firemen _____ the woman from the burning house.
2. My father _____ Maths at university.
3. The programme was very funny, we _____ a lot.
4. The teacher _____ me lots of questions yesterday.
5. You're late! The lesson _____ ten minutes ago.
6. It was very cold so we _____ the window.
7. After the film, we _____ home.
8. The cat _____ up into the tree.
9. I _____ to pick the bag up, but it was very heavy.
10. We were very tired so we _____ walking.

XI. Complete the funny story with the Past Simple of the verbs in brackets.

It (1. be) _____ Sunday, the day of the big game. The players (2. arrive) _____ early. They (3. be) _____ excited. Everyone (4. want) _____ to play.

There (5. be) _____ lots of people in the stadium. They (6. wave) _____ and (7. cheer) _____ when the players (8. walk) _____ on to the ground.

The referee (9. call) _____ the captains to the middle. The referee (10. ask) _____. "Where is the ball?" Nobody (11. answer) _____.

All the players (12. look)_____at the ground. There (13. be)_____no ball.
The referee (14. cancel)_____the game.

XII. Complete the text. Use the past simple of the verbs in brackets.

Last year my family (1. go)_____to Greece on holiday. We (2. meet)_____a lot of new people and I (3. take)_____a lot of photographs. We (4. stay)_____in a good hotel near the sea, and there (5. be)_____a lot of things to do there. Unfortunately, on the first day I (6. have)_____some problems. I (7. hit)_____my head on the bathroom door and then I (8. cut) my finger, so for two days I (9. read)_____a lot of books and (10. play)_____games on my laptop. After that I (11. do)_____a lot of things - swimming, sailing, and so on. When we (12. leave)_____, I (13. be) really tired! I (14. tell)_____Dad that I needed another holiday!

XIII. Read the passage, and then decide whether the sentences are *True* or *False*.

Nam and Tan are students in grade 6. They are good friends. At school, they are in the same class. They live near school, and they walk to school every morning. In the afternoon, they often go to their sports club. They like sports very much. Nam plays badminton, and Tan plays table tennis. Sometimes they go swimming or play soccer with their classmates. They don't have time to go camping.

1. Nam and Tan are not in the same class. _____
2. They are good friends. _____
3. They go to school by bicycle. _____
4. In the afternoon, they often go to their sports club. _____
5. Nam plays table tennis. _____
6. They don't play sports with their classmates. _____
7. They go swimming every day. _____
8. They never go camping. _____

XIV. Read the story and decide if the sentences are true (T) or false (F).

On Saturday, Patricia was in the park when she saw a boy on a mountain bike. He was on the hill when suddenly he fell off his bike. Patricia ran over to help. "Where's my helmet?" he shouted. It was under a park bench so Patricia went to get it. Just then another boy ran past, took the boy's mountain bike and rode away. "Stop!" Patricia shouted. She ran after the other boy and stopped him. He got off the bike and ran away. Patricia took the bike back to the boy, "Thank you, Patricia," he said. "How do you know my name?" Patricia asked. "I live next to you," he said. "My name's Tom". On Sunday Tom left some flowers on her doorstep to say "thank you".

1. Patricia was in the street when she saw a boy on a mountain bike. _____T/F
2. The boy fell off his bike. _____T/F
3. Another boy rode away with his helmet. _____T/F
4. Patricia stopped the other boy and took the bike back. _____T/F
5. Tom gave Patricia a CD to say "thank you". _____T/F

XV. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

Nam has some plans for this Sunday. First, in the morning he is going to the sports club to play table tennis with Lan and Ba. Next, in the afternoon he is going to buy some books at the bookstore and after that he's going to go swimming with Thanh and Tan. Finally, he is going to the movie theater with his parents and his sister in the evening.

1. What is Nam going to do on Sunday morning?
2. What is he going to do in the afternoon?
3. Is he going to play soccer on Sunday afternoon?

4. Where is he going in the evening?

5. Who is he going to the movie theater with?

XVI. **Read the text and answer the questions.**

Sun, Sea, and Sport

Australians love sport. They play it, they talk about it and they watch it on TV. Australian weather is perfect for sport, and there are thousands of great beaches, so swimming is very popular. The population of Australia is only about 20 million, but many of the best sportsmen and sportswomen in the world come from Australia.

Young people in Australia are very active. More than 60% of children go to sports clubs. They also do activities with friends such as skateboarding, cycling, and rollerblading.

The most popular sports for boys are football, swimming, Australian Rules football, tennis, cricket, basketball, rugby, martial arts, athletics, and hockey.

The most popular sports for girls are netball, swimming, tennis, basketball, gymnastics, football, athletics, martial arts, hockey, and horse riding.

1. What do Australians think of sport?

2. Why is swimming popular?

3. Which three sports are only popular with boys?

4. Which three sports are only popular with girls?

XVII. **Read the passage, and then decide whether the sentences are True or False.**

I have three good friends: Ba, Lan and Hoa. They like sports. Ba likes soccer and tennis; Lan likes badminton; and Hoa likes aerobics. They all like watching soccer on television. Ba often plays soccer in the afternoon with his classmates at the weekend. Lan plays badminton twice a week; and Hoa does aerobics on Thursday and Sunday. Lan and Hoa play sports at the sports club.

1. Ba, Lan and Hoa like the same sports.

2. Ba plays soccer every day.

3. Lan plays badminton three times a week.

4. Hoa does aerobics twice a week.

5. Lan and Hoa play sports at home.

XVIII. **Read Leo's report about his favourite sport. Choose the correct answer A, B or C.**

"Water polo is a new sport at our school, but we have a good team now. We practise after school on Thursday at the Northside Pool and we're doing well in the National Schools Competition.

There are seven players in a water polo team. The game is a bit like football because each team tries to score a goal with a ball. But in water polo you don't use your feet - you catch and throw the ball with one hand. And you never stop swimming. A game lasts 32 minutes, and in that time you swim up and down a 30-metre pool lots of times. If you aren't fit, water polo isn't the sport for you!

For me, it's great, because I love being in the water and I can swim fast. I also enjoy being part of a team. We have soe excellent players and we're all good friends. So it's fun, and it's also a fantastic way to get fit."

Leo Johnson

1. People play water polo_____.

A. in a stadium

B. in a swimming pool

C. at the beach

2. His team plays .

A. well

B. badly

C. in a new competition

3. Water polo players_____.
 A. often play football B. bounce the ball C. doesn't kick the ball
4. In a water polo game, players_____.
 A. can't use their hands B. sometimes swim 30 metres C. swim all the time
5. Leo_____.
 A. isn't very fit B. can swim quickly C. likes playing individually

XIX. Put the words in the correct order.

1. go/ do/ weekend/ on/ always/ fishing/ parents/ their?
2. every/ play/ day/ badminton/ Lan/ does?
3. now/ doing/ she/ aerobics/ is.
4. children/ to/ movies/ do/ the/ how/ go/ the/ often?
5. often/ video/ the/ games/ plays/ Nam/ afternoon/ in.
6. a/ the/ sometimes/ students/ picnic/ have.
7. camping/ they/ go/ do/ sometimes?
8. usually/ his/ swimming/ with/ friends/ he/ goes.
9. sailing/ my house/ my classmate Nam/ on the river/ last summer/ went/ with/ I/ near.
10. your eyes/ swimming/ should/ when/ goggles/ you/ you/ go/ wear/ to protect

XX. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

1. The Olympics Games are held once every four years.
2. The children are playing tug of war.
3. The first Olympic Games took place in Greece in 776 BC.
4. Pelé began his career at the age of 15.
5. I really like swimming because it helps me keep fit.

XXI. There is ONE mistake in each sentence, try to find the mistake and correct it.

1. Unluckily, we won the game although we practised a lot.
2. His team promise that they should win the match next summer.
3. His favourite sport is table tennis, although his father will give him a racket for his 13th birthday.

4. Can you say the difference between a sport and a game?

5. In my spare time, I do judo and play a lot of running.

XXII. **Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.**

1. My brother plays football very well.

My brother is _____.

2. Mai likes playing badminton most.

Badminton is _____.

3. Sports and games are very important in children's lives.

Sports and games play _____.

4. Children take part in many after-school activities when school finishes.

Children do _____.

5. Lan is very good at basketball.

Lan can

XXIII. **Put the words in the correct order.**

1. which/ you/ do/ sports/ at/do/ school?

2. do/ when/ do/ you/ sport?

3. favourite/ are/ your/ who/ sports stars?

4. do/ you/ go/ how often/ running?

5. team/ sports/ play/ you/ do?

6. what/ TV/ you/ do/ on/ sports/ watch?

7. football/ is/ what/ favourite/ your/ team?

8. swimming/ you/ do/ go/ how often?

TEST 3 UNIT 8

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a. <u>free</u> | b. <u>team</u> | c. <u>read</u> | d. <u>idea</u> |
| 2. a. <u>swimming</u> | b. <u>skipping</u> | c. <u>driving</u> | d. <u>fishing</u> |
| 3. a. <u>racket</u> | b. <u>skateboard</u> | c. <u>games</u> | d. <u>player</u> |
| 4. a. <u>thing</u> | b. <u>father</u> | c. <u>healthy</u> | d. <u>three</u> |
| 5. a. <u>rackets</u> | b. <u>goggles</u> | c. <u>ski</u> | d. <u>skateboards</u> |

II. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| 1. a. <u>fe</u> ar | b. <u>ne</u> ar | c. <u>re</u> ally | d. <u>we</u> ar |
| 2. a. <u>thei</u> r | b. <u>ha</u> ir | c. <u>se</u> ries | d. <u>the</u> re |
| 3. a. <u>spa</u> re | b. <u>pl</u> ay | c. <u>ga</u> me | d. <u>ta</u> ble |
| 4. a. <u>kee</u> p | b. <u>che</u> er | c. <u>me</u> et | d. <u>we</u> ek |
| 5. a. <u>sph</u> ere | b. <u>se</u> ries | c. <u>he</u> re | d. <u>wh</u> ere |

III. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. My friend Mark is very good _____ volleyball. He plays volleyball very well.
- | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|---------|
| a. in | b. on | c. at | d. with |
|-------|-------|-------|---------|

2. We often go swimming_____ Sunday morning.
a. in b.on c.at d. for
3. Football is an example of a_____sport where you play with several other people.
a. team b.individual c.indoor d.dangerous
4. We were very upset when our favourite team didn't_____even one goal.
a. play b.kick c.point d. score
5. Badminton requires only a net, a racket, and a birdie or_____.
a. ball b. ski c. shuttlecock d. goggles
6. The person who makes sure that a game is played according to the rules is called a_____.
a. coach b. referee c. judge d. player
7. _____up the tree! You'll fall down.
a. Climb b. Climbing c. Not to climb d. Don't climb
8. _____spectator sports in Britain are cricket and football.
a. More popular b. The more popular c. Most popular d. The most popular
9. _____are the Olympic Games held? - Every four years.
a. When b. Where c.How long d.How often
10. Which sport happens in a ring?
a. Boxing b. Basketball c.Aerobics d.Swimming

IV. Use the sports or games in the list to fill in the boxes.

badminton karate football cycling yoga swimming boxing tennis
aerobics skateboarding basketball hiking judo skiing
soccer gymnastics jogging golf

PLAY	GO	DO

V. Complete the sentences with the correct words in the box.

goggles racket skateboard skis ring paddle runningshoes gloves

1. All we need to run is good_____.
2. They fight in a square area with ropes around it, called a boxing_____.
3. _____are special glasses that fit closely to the face to protect the eyes from wind, dust, water, etc.
4. In boxing, the fighters wear large leather boxing_____on their hands.
5. Shall we play table tennis? - Great! Can you lend me a_____?
6. He threw his tennis_____across the court in anger.
7. When we put_____on we can move over snow easily.
8. He sometimes rides his_____to school.

VI. Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs *play, do or go*.

1. Sarah_____gymnastics on Saturday evenings.
2. Mark_____badminton with his friends at the moment.
3. My friends and I _____climbing yesterday.
4. _____you_____table tennis last Sunday?

5. Jim _____ basketball because he wasn't tall enough.
6. We _____ sports together when we were kids.
7. People often _____ jogging in the park.
8. I _____ judo now and I love it!

VII. Fill in each blank with the simple past tense of the verb from the box.

play go do buy teach lose score win become enjoy

1. My friends and I _____ swimming yesterday morning.
2. We really _____ the game last Sunday.
3. In 1958, at the age of 17, Pelé _____ his first World Cup.
4. The Canadian hockey team _____ six goals against Switzerland.
5. The home team _____ very well, but they lost the match.
6. My father _____ me how to ride a bike.
7. I _____ a new baseball cap last week.
8. At the age of 17, Messi _____ the youngest official player and goal scorer in the Spanish La Liga.
9. She has a black belt in karate. She first _____ karate when she was seven.
10. Argentina _____ 1 - 0 to Germany in the final.

VIII. Fill in the sentences with the correct form (past simple) of the verbs in brackets.

1. I _____ (see) the film last night but I _____ (not like) it.
2. _____ (Marco/ win) the golf competition?
3. They _____ (not play) very well yesterday. They _____ (lose) the match.
4. How many goals _____ (your team/ score) in the first half?
5. I _____ (be) very tired, so I _____ (go) to bed early last night.
6. _____ (you/ go) swimming this morning?
7. The children _____, (not be) hungry, so they _____ (not eat) anything.
8. Susan and her friends _____ (come) to Japan three months ago.
9. I _____ (have) a wonderful holiday with my family last July.
10. Jane _____ (not be) at the party last Sunday, so she _____ (not know) what happened.

IX. Fill in each sentence with an appropriate preposition.

1. Do you play sports _____ school?
2. We go swimming _____ Tuesdays and Saturdays.
3. Sports is good _____ your health.
4. Jimmy is very good _____ volleyball and basketball.
5. My karate club is _____ Nguyen Trai Street.
6. What sports do you play _____ your free time?
7. Pelé was born _____ October 21st, 1940.
8. _____ 1958, _____ the age of 17, Pelé won his first World Cup.

X. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the word in brackets.

1. He gets a lot of _____ from football. (enjoy)
2. Playing sports is a fantastic way to improve your _____. (fit)
3. My brother is not very _____. He doesn't like playing or watching sports. (sport)
4. Nearly half of the people in the world are _____ in football. (interest)
5. Pelé is _____ regarded as the best football player of all time. (wide)
6. Cristiano Ronaldo is a Portuguese professional _____. (football)
7. Pelé is a _____ hero in Brazil. (nation)
8. Winning three gold medals is great _____. (achieve)

XI. Read the email then answer the questions.

From:	Brett.walker149@gmail.com
To:	
Subject:	Re: sports

Dear Brett

Thanks for your email. You do lots of sports at school in Canada. I'd love to play ice hockey one day.

We do lots of sports at our school too. We've got a swimming pool at school and our class go swimming every Wednesday. We also play tennis, volleyball and football, but football in Australia is different to soccer. You can touch the ball with your hands! There are lots of after-school sports clubs in Australia too. I go to a surfing club after school on Tuesdays and Thursdays. We go to the beach and learn how to surf. It's great fun! Can you surf in your country?

Write soon

Rob

1. Where does Rob live?
2. How often does Rob go swimming?
3. Is football in Australia the same as soccer?
4. On what days of the week does Rob go to a surfing club?
5. Where does Rob go to learn how to surf?
6. Does Rob like surfing?

XII. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

score without sport each play
game positions boring

Basketball is a pretty cheap (1)_____ to play in terms of equipment. So long as you have shoes and clothes and a ball, you can play. You can play with 1 hoop or 2, but it is way more fun to have a full court to (2)_____ on and several friends to do it with. Of course, you can have knee braces, expensive shoes, and some fancy jerseys if you want, but you can play (3)_____ them if you want.

Basketball is a (4)_____ of 5-on-5. There are 5 different (5)_____: point guard, shooting guard, center, small forward, and power forward. Unlike some other sports, all players can (6)_____ points, and there is NO goalkeeper. There isn't a (7)_____ position to play!

Basketball has 4 quarters. For pro games, quarters are 15 minutes. Teams switch directions of play after (8)_____ quarter.

XIII. Put the words or phrases in the correct order.

1. our/ important/ an/ sports and games/ in/ play/ lives/ part.
2. players/ how/ match/ there/ in/ many/ are/ football/ a?

3. by/ she/ to keep/ every day/ tries/ fit/ jogging.
4. yesterday/ who/ play/ football/ you/ did/ with?
5. sports/ building/ physical strength/ necessary/ are/ for.
6. to switch/ before/ go/ don't/ the TV/ off/ you/ forget/ to bed.
7. Sunday/ I/ usually/ friends/ swimming/ on/ go/ mornings/ with/ my
8. match/ you/ on/ the/ did/ television/ last night/ watch/ basketball/ the?

XIV. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first one.

1. What sport do you like best?
What is
2. Mark plays football better than Tim.
Tim doesn't
3. Beckham was a very good football player.
Beckham played
4. How long have you played basketball?
When
5. Shall we play badminton this weekend?
How about
6. No sport in Britain is as popular as football.
Football
7. My brother is not so interested in basketball as I am.
I
8. It's good for you to do morning exercise regularly.
You

XV. Use the prompts to write sentences.

1. We/ go/ skiing yesterday.
2. you/ watch/ the men's basketball final/ TV/ last night?
3. I/ not play/ badminton/ last Sunday/ because/ I/ be/ ill.
4. Sue and her friends/ do/ yoga/ the gym/ now.
5. Last week/ we/ study/ how/ surf. It/ be/ very interesting.
6. He/ usually/ play/ football/ his friends/ Saturdays.
7. Where/ the children/ be/ yesterday morning? They/ be/ at the swimming pool.
8. His father/ teach/ him/ how/ play/ football/ a very young age.

UNIT 9. CITIES OF THE WORLD

A. VOCABULARY

- Asia	/ˈeɪ.ʒə/ (n):	châu Á
- Africa	/ˈæf.rɪ.kə/ (n):	châu Phi
- Europe	/ˈjʊr.əp/ (n):	châu Âu
- Holland /	ˈhɑː.lənd/ (n):	Hà Lan
- Australia	/ɑːˈstreɪl.jə/ (n):	Úc
- America	/əˈmer.ɪ.kə/ (n):	châu Mỹ
- Antarctica	/ænˈtɑːr.k.tɪ.kə/ (n):	châu Nam Cực
- award	/əˈwɜːd/ (n, v):	giải thưởng, trao giải thưởng
- common	/ˈkɒm ən/ (adj):	phổ biến, thông dụng
- continent	/ˈkɒn.tən.ənt/ (n):	châu lục
- creature	/ˈkri.tʃə/ (n):	sinh vật, tạo vật
- design	/dɪˈzaɪn/ (n, v):	thiết kế
- journey	/ˈdʒɜːni/ (n):	chuyến đi
- landmark	/ˈlænd.mɑːk/ (n):	danh thắng (trong thành phố)
- lovely	/ˈlʌv.li/ (adj):	đáng yêu
- musical	/ˈmjuː.zɪ.kəl/ (n):	vở nhạc kịch
- palace	/ˈpæl.əs/ (n):	cung điện
- popular	/ˈpɒp.jə.lər/ (adj):	nổi tiếng, phổ biến
- postcard	/ˈpəʊst.kɑːd/ (n):	bưu thiếp
- symbol	/ˈsɪm.bəl/ (n):	biểu tượng
- tower	/ˈtaʊ.ər/ (n):	tháp
- UNESCO World Heritage	/juːˈnes.koʊ wɜːld ˈher.əˌtɪdʒ/ (n):	di sản thế giới được UNESCO công nhận
- well-known	/ˈwelˈnəʊn/ (adj):	nổi tiếng

B. GRAMMAR

I. Thì hiện tại hoàn thành(The present perfect tense)

1. Cách dùng

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Diễn tả 1 hành động, sự việc xảy ra trong quá khứ, kéo dài đến hiện tại và có khả năng tiếp tục trong tương lai.	I have learnt English for 15 years. Mr Nam has taught French here since 1990
Nói về sự việc vừa mới xảy ra và hậu quả của nó còn ảnh hưởng đến hiện tại. Thường dùng với just, already, yet.	I have just taught English here. Lan has learned French recently.
Diễn tả 1 hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng không biết rõ thời gian hoặc không đề cập đến thời gian.	I have seen this film, I like it very much. She has visited Ha Long Bay.
Diễn tả 1 hành động đã xảy ra trong quá khứ nhưng kết quả còn ở hiện tại.	Lan has cleaned the floor. => It is clean now. He has had a serious accident. => He's in the hospital now.

2. Dạng thức của Hiện tại hoàn thành.

Thể khẳng định	Thể phủ định				
He/ She/ It Danh từ số ít	has	+ Vpp	He/ She/ It Danh từ số ít	has not/ hasn't	+ Vpp

I/ We/ You/ They Danh từ số nhiều		have		I/ We/ You/ They Danh từ số nhiều		have not/ haven't	
Ví dụ: - She has just bought a house. - They have gone to Ho Chi Minh city. - Mr Nam has taught English since last month. - I have known Nam for ages.				Ví dụ: - My mother hasn't lived here since Christmas. - I haven't been to Ha noi. - We haven't finished our homework			
Thể nghi vấn				Câu trả lời ngắn			
Has	He/ She/ It Danh từ số ít	+ Vpp	Yes,	He/ She/ It Danh từ số ít		has	
			No,			have	
Have	I/ We/ You/ They Danh từ số nhiều		Yes,	I/ We/ You/ They Danh từ số nhiều		hasn't	
			No,			haven't	
Ví dụ: - Have you done your homework? Yes, I have./ No, I haven't. - Has she taught here since last month? Yes, she has./ No, she hasn't. - Have they gone to Hue? Yes, they have./ No, they haven't.							

3. Dấu hiệu nhận biết

Trong câu thì hiện tại hoàn thành thường có các từ/ cụm từ sau:

Never(chưa từng, không bao giờ), **just, recently, lately**(gần đây, vừa mới)

Already(rồi) **before**(trước đây), **ever**(đã từng), **so far = until now = up to now = up to the present**(cho đến bây giờ), **yet**(chưa), how long(bao lâu)

- in the past(ten) years (trong (mười) năm qua)

- in the last (years): những năm gần đây

- this is the first time/the second time: đây là lần đầu/ lần thứ hai

since + N – mốc/điểm thời gian

for + N – quãng thời gian

4. Cách chia động từ ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành

Động từ trong thì HTHT được chia theo 1 trong 2 cách sau:

- Nếu là động từ có quy tắc thì thêm đuôi “ed”. Áp dụng quy tắc thêm đuôi -ed vào động từ.

- Nếu là động từ bất quy tắc thì xem ở cột 3 trong bảng động từ bất quy tắc.

Ví dụ:

-He has just bought a new house.(Anh ấy vừa mới mua một ngôi nhà mới.)

-I've known her for ten years.(Tôi đã biết cô ấy 10 năm rồi.)

-Nga has ever eaten this kind of food.(Nga đã từng ăn loại thức ăn này rồi.)

-She has waited for him for 30 minutes. (Cô ấy đã chờ anh ấy được 30 phút rồi.)

5. So sánh thì hiện tại hoàn thành và từ quá khứ đơn.

	Thì hiện tại hoàn thành	Thì quá khứ đơn
Cách dùng	-Dùng để diễn tả một hành động bắt đầu ở quá khứ kéo dài đến hiện tại và có thể tiếp tục ở tương lai. -Dùng để diễn tả hành động xảy ra	-Dùng để diễn tả một hành động đã hoàn toàn kết thúc trong quá khứ. -Dùng để diễn tả hành động đã xảy ra tại thời điểm xác định trong quá khứ.

	trong quá khứ nhưng không rõ thời gian hoặc không đề cập đến thời gian.	
Ví dụ	-She has lived in Ho Chi Minh city for 8 years.(Cô ấy đã sống ở thành phố Hồ Chí Minh được 8 năm rồi.) =>Bây giờ cô ấy vẫn sống ở Hồ Chí Minh. -Someone has stolen my computer(Ai đó đã ăn trộm máy tính của tôi.)	-She lived in Ho Chi Minh city 8 years ago.(Cô ấy đã sống ở thành phố Hồ Chí Minh cách đây 8 năm.) =>Bây giờ cô ấy không sống ở thành phố Hồ Chí Minh nữa. -Someone stole my computer yesterday.(Hôm qua ai đó đã ăn trộm máy tính của tôi.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Cho dạng quá khứ phân từ (V3) của các động từ sau, dùng bảng động từ bất quy tắc nếu cần.

V	V3	V	V3
Be		Speak (nói)	
Want (muốn)		Leave (rời đi)	
Arrive (đến)		Bring (mang theo)	
Run (chạy)		Tell (nói)	
Go (đi)		Come (đến)	
Write (viết)		Forget (quên)	
Send (gửi)		Give (đưa)	
Cry (khóc)		Look (nhìn)	
See (nhìn)		Work (làm việc)	
Take (lấy)		Win (chiến thắng)	
Live (sống)		Cut (cắt)	
Buy (mua)		Steal (lấy)	
Know (biết)		Fly (bay)	
Do (làm)		Sing (hát)	
Eat (ăn)		Grow (phát triển)	

Ex2. Fill in “have/has”

1. During the five years, John_____had 15 different jobs.
2. He_____worked in a banking sector.
3. Teddy_____been a teacher since 2004.
4. I _____been on holiday for six days.
5. I and Kate_____started our own company this year.
6. _____your mother learned how to drive.
7. They_____never been to Madrid.
8. _____you ever met anyone famous?
9. We_____been married for two years.
10. Jude_____not seen my new address.

Ex 3. Write short answer for these questions

1. Has the baby slept? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
2. Have Jim and you called your father? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
3. Has he had dinner yet? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
4. Have they called me? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
5. Has Sarah read that book? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
6. Have you read Romeo and Juliet? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
7. Has she left school? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____
8. Has the president visited any African countries? --> Yes, _____/ No, _____

Ex 4. Write these sentences with Present perfect tense in negative, positive and question

1. He has lived here for three years.
(-) _____
(?) _____
- 2.(+) _____
(-) We haven't been here for two weeks.
(?) _____
- 3.(+) _____
(-) _____
- (?) Have they missed the train?
4. I have had breakfast this morning.
(-) _____
(?) _____
- 5.(+) _____
She hasn't passed the exam.
(?) _____
- 6.(+) _____
(-) _____
Have you met his mother?
7. We have eaten too much chocolate.
(-) _____
(?) _____
- 8.(+) _____
I haven't known David for ten years.
(?) _____
- 9.(+) _____
(-) _____
Has she read the book?

Ex 5. Make questions for the sentences below in the present perfect tense.

1. She/ be/ late for a meeting? ?
2. He/ meet/ your family yet? ?
3. She/ work/ in this company for fifteen years? ?
4. How long/ she / live in London? ?
- 5.How much coffee / you / drink today? ?
- 6.What / you / do today? ?
- 7.How many books / you / read this week? ?
- 8.Why / you / bring that? ?
- 9.They / go / to the USA? ?
- 10.How much food / you / buy? ?

Bài 6: Chọn câu trả lời thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống

1. My sister is still studying. She her homework yet.
A. haven't finished B. not finished
C. hasn't finished D. has not finished

2. Since moving to Alberta, I a lot about the oil industry.
A. learned B. have learning C. have learned D. has learned
3. My father golf.
A. never played B. have never played
C. has never played D. has not playing
4. Our class 3 grammar quizzes so far this semester.
A. has had B. have had C. had D. has having
5. I English for 10 years, but I still have a lot to learn.
A. studied B. has studied C. have studied D. have studying
6. Every year for the past five years, my family to the Hawaii for a summer vacation.
A. has traveling B. has traveled C. traveled D. have traveled
7. the Di Vinci Code? It's an interesting book.
A. Have you ever reading B. Have you ever read
C. You ever read D. Has you ever read
8. I the famous American movie, The Gladiator.
A. has never seen B. have not seen C. have never seen D. never seen
9. My neighbor's dog is barking. It for 2 hours now.
A. has barking B. barked C. has barked D. have barked
10. Why so much rice today?
A. as you eaten B. has you ate C. have you ate D. have you eaten
11. They the meeting time.
A. haven't forgotten B. hasn't forgot
C. haven't forgot D. hasn't forgotten
12. Mum to Spain before.
A. have never driven B. has never drove
C. have never drove D. has never driven
- 13 You the train tickets.
A. hasn't bought B. hanen't bought C. hasn't buyed D. haven't buyed
14. She a horse before.
A. have not rode B. have not ridden C. has not ridden D. has not rode
15. the letter ?
A. Have your dad written B. Have yur dad wrote
C. Has your dad written D. has your dad wrote

Bài 7: Điền "since" hoặc "for" vào chỗ trống

1. She has been in Vung Tau..... January.
2. Ha and Nam have seen this film 7 o'clock.
3. I have sent her 3 letters last week.
4. My sister has worked at that hospital 5 years.
5. I have known her we were at elementary school.
6. Nam has become a footballer 3 years.
7. She's been in London Monday.
8. Mike has lived in Hanoi four years.
9. I have written to her Christmas.
10. We've not seen her last month.

Bài 8: Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

1. I (live) here since 1989.
2. They (work) for this factory for 20 years.
3. He (read) this novel three times.
4. Hoa and I (know) each other since we were at the same class.
5. I (not/see) her since last month.
6. I (not/work) have not worked today.
7. We (buy) a new lamp.

8. We (not/plan) our holiday yet.
9. Where (be/you) ?
10. He (write) five letters.
11. (be/you) at school?
12. School (not/start) yet.
13. (speak/he) to his boss?
14. No,he (have/not) the time yet.
15. The cat (just/catch) a mouse.
16. He (already/invite) his friends.
17. Julia (make) a table with three columns.
18. The teacher (lose) the keys,so he can't open the door.
19. I (just/clean) my bike.
20. My friends (give up) smoking.

Bài 9:Viết lại các câu dưới đây với “since” hoặc “for”,sử dụng thì hiện tại hoàn thành.

1. I/have/this computer/three years.
2. They/live/Da Lat/last year.
3. She/be/happy/she had the mobile phone.
4. We/learn/French/a month.
5. She/work/in this school/2012.
6. I/use/computers/5 years.
7. The washing machine/stop working/this morning.
8. They/know/her a long time.
9. He/read/this/novel/9 o'clock.

II.So sánh nhất với tính từ dài (superlatives of long adjectives)

Trong tiếng anh,cấu trúc câu so sánh nhất được dùng để so sánh người (hoặc vật) với tất cả người (hoặc vật) trong nhóm.

Trong câu so sánh nhất,tính từ sẽ được chia làm hai loại là tính từ dài và tính từ ngắn,trong đó:

- Tính từ ngắn là những tính từ có 1 âm tiết.Ví dụ:tall,high,big,...
- Tính từ dài là những tính từ có từ 2 âm tiết trở lên.Ví dụ :expensive,intelligent,...

* Xem lại cấu trúc so sánh nhất đối với tính từ ngắn trong bài Unit 5.

Cấu trúc so sánh nhất đối với tính từ dài

Cấu trúc	S + to be + the most + adj + (danh từ)
Ví dụ	This exercise is the most difficult.(Bài tập này là khó nhất.) This is the most interesting film I've ever seen(Đây là bộ phim hay nhất tôi từng xem.) Ngoc is the most intelligent student.(Ngọc là học sinh thông minh nhất.)
Lưu ý	Để nhấn mạnh ý trong câu so sánh nhất ,ta thêm “much” hoặc “by far” vào sau hình thức so sánh. Ví dụ: He is the most famous by far.(Anh ấy nổi tiếng nhất,hơn mọi người nhiều.)

Chú ý: Với tính từ dài, ta cần thêm “the most” vào trước tính từ:

Ví dụ:

Tính từ dài	So sánh nhất
Famous(nổi tiếng)	The most famous(nổi tiếng nhất)
Important(quan trọng)	The most important(quan trọng nhất)
Beautiful(xinh đẹp)	The most beautiful(xinh đẹp nhất)
Boring(nhàm chán)	The most boring(nhàm chán nhất)
Famous(nổi tiếng)	The most famous(nổi tiếng nhất)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 10:Viết dạng so sánh nhất của các tính từ sau.

Tính từ	So sánh nhất	Tính từ	So sánh nhất
Strong(khỏe)		Dangerous(nguy hiểm)	
Colourful(nhiều màu sắc)		Hot(nóng)	
Tall(cao)		Beautiful(đẹp)	
Comfortable(thoải mái)		Intelligent(thông minh)	
Heavy(nặng)		Ugly(xấu xí)	
Expensive(đắt)		Fashionable(thời trang)	
Good(tốt)		Interesting(thú vị)	
Wonderful(tuyệt vời)		Important(quan trọng)	

Bài 11:Hoàn thành các câu sau,sử dụng dạng so sánh nhất của tính từ trong ngoặc.

- My dad is dad in the world.(funny)
- whales are animals in the world.(heavy)
- mice are animal in the world.(cute)
- My bedroom is room in my house.(comfortable)
- I am cook in the world.(bad)
- For English people,Japanese is language to learn.(difficult)
- That was film I've seen.(sad)
- My sister is person I know.(tidy)
- My grandmother is person in my family.(old)
- That was book I've ever read.(strange)
- I've ever travelled is fromm London to San Francisco.(far)
- What's animal in your country?(dangerous)
- Spain is country in Europe.(sunny)
- What's place you've ever visited.(hot)
- What's you've ever stayed up at night?(late)
- It's a very nice house.It's house in the street.(nice)
- This is a cheap restaurant.It's I've ever been.(cheap)
- She is a very good tennis player.Her trainer says she is .(good)
- He's a very dangerous criminal.The police say he is in the country.(dangerous)
- We should buy him a beautiful present.Last year we give him gift of all in his birthday.(beautiful)

Bài 12:chọn và cho dạng so sánh nhất của tính từ dưới đây rồi điền vào chỗ trống.

Funny	high	delicious	easy	cold	boring	lucky	smart
Dirty	rich	valuable	bad	large	cheap	long	scary

- Yesterday was day of the year.I almost froze to death walking home from school!
- That was movie I've ever seen.I almost walked out in the middle.
- Please give me your recipe.That is cake I've ever eaten.
- Jerry is student in our class.He gets the top grades in every course.
- Bod told story last night.I couldn't stop laughing.
- Whales are animals in the world.
- The Amazon is river in the world.
- Marie is person I know.She has won the lottery four times!
- He is speaker I have ever heard.Half the audience fell asleep during his speech.

10. Mount Everest is mountain in the world.
11. That is painting in the art gallery.It's worth a million dollars.
12. Bill Gates is one of men in the world.
13. I finished the exercise in five minutes.It was homework the teacher has ever give us.
14. Arthur hates to clean.He has apartment I've ever seen.
15. My dinner only cost \$6,00.That must be restaurant in town.
16. I was afraid to turn off the lights last night.That was show I've ever watched.

Bài 13: Viết các câu so sánh nhất,dùng các từ gợi ý.

1. Nga / beautiful / her class. .
2. We / like / wearing / late / fashion. .
3. You / pretty / girl / in class. .
4. The red dress / attractive / in the shop. .
5. I / always / tell fun / jokes. .
6. Who / short / person / in your family ? ?
7. Who / independent / person / you / know ? ?
8. My brother / tall / in the class. .
9. Who / good / singer / in the world ? ?
10. He / popular / singer / in the world. .

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 14: Chia động từ trong ngoặc ở thì Quá khứ đơn hoặc thì Hiện tại hoàn thành, sau đó viết lại câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. We (live) here for 2 years. => .
2. They (live) in Washington in 1960. => .
3. Lan (leave) Hanoi last month and (work) in Ho Chi Minh city since then. => .
4. Mr Nam (teach) English since 2000. => .
5. We (buy) this car 2 years ago. => .
6. How long you (learn) English ? => ?
7. I (not see) him since we (say) goodbye. => .
8. Yesterday I (visit) my parents. => _____.
9. I (learn) English for 10 years. => _____.
10. Lan and Nga (be) close friends since last year. => _____.

11. What you (do) yesterday?
=> _____ ?
12. I (read) the novel written by Jack London several times.
=> _____ .
13. She (be) born in 1980.
=> _____ .
14. Mr Nam (teach) English in this school since he (graduate) from university _____ in 2000.
=> _____ .
15. Last month I (be) in the hospital.
=> _____ .
16. I (have) a computer since my nineteenth birthday.
=> _____ .
17. The last time I (go) to Ho Chi Minh city was in 2012.
=> _____ .
18. We (move) here in 1998.We (be) here for a long time now.
=> _____ .
19. She (come) to China four times.She loves this country
=> _____ .
20. It was so hot that I (go) swimming with my friends yesterday.
=> _____ .

Bài 15:Viết lại các câu dưới đây ở thì Hiện tại hoàn thành sao cho nghĩa không đổi.

1. We started living here fifteen years ago.
=>We have _____ .
2. When did you begin to learn English ?
=>How long _____ ?
3. I last wrote a letter to my aunt in May.
=>I haven't _____ .
4. Mr Minh began to collect stamps in 2000.
=>Minh has _____ .
5. Nga started learning French last year.
=>Nga _____ .
6. The last time I saw her was in 2000.
=>I haven't _____ .

Bài 16:Khoanh tròn vào đáp án đúng

1. I am my mother.
A. taller than B. the tallest
2. She is student in her class.
A. younger than B. the younger C. the youngest
3. The dog is the cat.
A. the older than B. older than C. the oldest
4. The red jacket is the blue jacket.
A. expensiver than B. more expensive than C. the most expensive
5. My mother is in her family.
A. the shorter B. the shorter than C. the shortest
6. I like sushi,but Chinese food is _____.
A. better B. the better C. more better D. the bestest
7. My drink is of all the drink.
A. colder than B. the coldest C. the most cold
8. My sister is student in her class.
A. smarter than B. the smarter C. the most smart D. the smartest
9. Those books are the other books.
A. expensiver than B. moe expensive than

- C. most expensive than D. the most expensive
10. Her brother is soccer player on his team.

A. the better B. better than C. the most good D. the best

Bài 17: cho dạng đúng của tính từ trong ngoặc, so sánh hơn hoặc so sánh nhất

1. Football is (popular) sport in the world.
2. Can you think of something (intelligent) to say?
3. It's (short) day of year.
4. London is (big) Birmingham.
5. This chair is (comfortable) that one.
6. the weather is getting (bad) .
7. Living in the countryside is (peaceful) living in the city.
8. Who is (clever) in the class?
9. That's (delicious) meal I've ever had.
10. It was (boring) speech I've ever heard.
11. She was a very intelligent student. She was (intelligent) girl in her class.
12. It's very old castle. Experts argued it is (old) in Britain.
13. I'm going to sleep on the sofa. The floor is (uncomfortable) , than it.
14. This new job is (important) for me than the last I had.
15. Living in the countryside is (healthy) than leaving in town.
16. These instructions were (difficult) ones I have ever read.
17. This is the (expensive) necklace I have ever seen: I can't believe it's \$1,000,000!
18. The sports car is (fast) than the minivan.
19. This movie is (interesting) than the one that we saw last week
20. My class starts (early) in the morning than yours does.

Bài 18: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. taller / than / Gary / Rick / is.
2. trousers / John / got / has / new / light.
3. Mary / clothes / likes / bigger
4. an / expensive / Rick / wearing / coat / is
5. the / Carol / has / scarf / got / shortest
6. the / student / he / tallest / is
7. actress / Mary / the / was / popular / most
8. He / the / was / footballer / best
9. plays / than / better / you / Mary
10. father / is / your / than / stronger / mine

Bài 19: Có 9 lỗi sai trong đoạn văn dưới đây. Tìm, gạch chân và sửa lỗi sai đó.

Ví dụ : travel -> traveled

My wife and I have travel as much as possible since we retired. We've visited cousins in Australia, and we has been to New Zealand twice. We've also went on safari in Africa. We've been to Europe a lot. Gina and I has spent time in Paris, in Madrid, and in several cities in Italy. We hasn't gone to Eastern Europe yet, though. We hope to visit Prague and Budapest next year.

My sister Betty was born in the United States, and she has never traveled outside the country-except once when she was very young. But she has been to a lot of places in the U.S. She has visited most of the national parks: the Grand Canyon, Yellowstone, Yosemite, and so on. She has been to all of the big cities, too. In fact, she has lived in four different cities in the U.S. New York, Boston, Los Angeles and San Francisco. I think she has seen more of her own country than most people.

C. EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 9

I. Which word has the underlined part that is pronounced differently from the others?

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. <u>h</u> ome | B. <u>c</u> ome | C. <u>o</u> pen | D. <u>c</u> old |
| 2. A. <u>o</u> pens | B. <u>g</u> ets | C. <u>k</u> icks | D. <u>s</u> peaks |
| 3. A. <u>l</u> unch | B. <u>w</u> atch | C. <u>t</u> eacher | D. <u>a</u> rchitect |
| 4. A. <u>c</u> ity | B. <u>f</u> amily | C. <u>f</u> ifteen | D. <u>t</u> elephone |
| 5. A. <u>n</u> umber | B. <u>p</u> lum | C. <u>u</u> t | D. <u>b</u> ut |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>killed</u> | B. <u>listened</u> | C. <u>perfected</u> | D. <u>preferred</u> |
| 2. A. <u>opens</u> | B. <u>books</u> | C. <u>mistakes</u> | D. <u>notes</u> |
| 3. A. <u>oranges</u> | B. <u>changes</u> | C. <u>dances</u> | D. <u>notes</u> |
| 4. A. <u>pens</u> | B. <u>apples</u> | C. <u>finds</u> | D. <u>likes</u> |
| 5. A. <u>decided</u> | B. <u>posted</u> | C. <u>stopped</u> | D. <u>needed</u> |

III. Choose the best answer to fill in each blank.

- This is the most interesting novel _____.
A. I've read B. I had read C. I've never read D. I've ever read
- I haven't seen you _____.
A. since a long time B. for ages
C. ages D. for long existence
- It _____ every day so far this week.
A. rained B. has rained C. rains D. is raining
- I _____ any letter from him yet.
A. haven't received B. will receive
C. don't receive D. didn't receive
- We _____ to Da Lat several times. It's a foggy city.
A. were B. have been C. were being D. had been
- I haven't met him since he _____ school.
A. left B. was leaving C. had left D. was left
- My uncle _____ on this farm since he was 20.
A. has worked B. have worked C. worked D. was working
- He _____ London 2 years ago and I _____ him since then.
A. left/ hadn't seen B. left/ haven't seen
C. was living/ haven't seen D. left/ didn't seen
- By the time Tom got back, Peter _____.
A. have gone B. went C. will go D. had gone
- She _____ in Hue for twenty years.
A. lives B. has lived C. lived D. will live
- It was the most exciting film I _____.
A. never saw B. ever saw C. had ever seen D. have ever seen
- They have been in love with each other _____ they were young.
A. while B. until C. for D. since
- I _____ the money from him yet.
A. haven't received B. don't receive
C. will receive D. am receiving
- They _____ for nearly 50 years.

- A. marry
C. married
- B. have been married
D. will marry
15. How many times there so far? A few times.
A. have you been
C. were you
- B. would you be
D. had you been
16. It's at least a month since Tom.
A. I last seen
B. I last see
- C. I have last seen
D. I last saw
17. We _____ almost every lesson in this book so far.
A. study
B. studies
- C. has studied
D. have studied
18. We _____ that television program.
A. never watch
C. have never watched
- B. not never watch
D. has never watched
19. Up to then, I _____ such a big fire.
A. have never seen
C. never seen
- B. had never seen
D. never see
20. I _____ her since I _____ a student.
A. know/ am
C. have known/ am
- B. knew/ was
D. have known/ was
21. _____ get tired of answering the same questions every day?
A. Have you ever
C. Do you ever
- B. Had you ever
D. Are you ever
22. She _____ working on that manuscript for 2 year now.
A. will be
B. has been
- C. had been
D. is
23. I _____ there once a long time ago and _____ back since.
A. went/have not been
C. have gone/was
- B. go/am not
D. was going/had not been
24. In the last hundred years, traveling _____ much easier and more comfortable.
A. becomes
B. has become
- C. became
D. will become
25. It is raining now. It began raining two hours ago. So it _____ for two hours.
A. rains
B. is raining
- C. has rained
D. rained
26. Mike is playing chess. How long _____ he _____?
A. did/play
C. has/play
- B. is/playing
D. has/been playing
27. Today is Thursday and she _____ late twice this week. She _____ late yesterday and on Monday.
A. is/was
C. has been/was
- B. has been/is
D. has been/had been
28. He _____ in the same house since 1975.
A. has lived
B. is living
- C. lived
D. had lived
29. We _____ him since he _____ married.
A. didn't see/got
C. don't/get
- B. haven't seen/got
D. hadn't seen/got
30. It _____ for two hours and the ground is too wet to play tennis.
A. is raining
B. had rained
- C. has rained
D. was raining

IV. Fill in the blank with "for" or "since".

1. It has been raining lunchtime.
2. My boss will go away..... the next ten days.
3. I'm staying in Englanda year.
4. She has lived in London..... 1985.
5. Please hurry up! We have been waiting..... an hour.

6. I have known herJanuary.
7. Nam's father has worked in this company 20 years.
8. Have you learned English a long time?
9. I haven't seen Tom.....we left school.
10. The house is very dirty. We haven't cleaned ityears.
11. My sister has been a student two years.
12. We've lived here..... 1990.
13. I haven't seen Linh.....my birthday party.
14. She has been away..... a year.
15. We've already waited..... five days.
16. They haven't had any rain..... very long time.
17. That building has been therethe 19th century.
18. I have known themmany years.
19. They have only been there a few minutes.
20. My brother works for a company called FPT. He has worked for them.....he graduated from university.

V. Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the simple past tense.

1. I (do) all the housework. The flat is really clean now.
2. He (write) a novel for two years, but he (not finish) it yet.
3. My brother (leave) home 10 years ago. I (never/ meet) him again since then.
4. I like your car. How long you (have) it?
5. What you (do) last weekend? (play) golf?
6. Mai (buy) a new dress last week, but she (not wear) it yet.
7. Mr. Quang (teach) Math in this school since he (graduate) from the university in 1989.
8. you (hear) of Agatha Christie? She (be) a novels writer. You (read) any of them
9. When I (get) home last night, I (be) very tired and I..... (go) straight to bed.
10. Daniel (earn) some money last week. But I'm afraid he (already/ spend) it all.

I. Put the verbs in brackets in the present perfect or the simple past tense.

1. We (never watch)_____that TV programme.
2. We (watch)_____a good programme on TV last night.
3. He (read)_____that novel many times before.
4. He (read)_____that novel again during my last vacation.
5. I (have)_____a little trouble with my car last week.
6. However, I (have)_____no trouble with my car since then.
7. I (not see)_____John for a long time. I (see)_____him 3 weeks ago.
8. The school bell (ring) We must go now.
9. I (meet)_____Mary last night. She (become)_____a very big girl.
10. He is very thirsty. He (not drink)_____since this morning.

II. Give the correct form of the verbs in the present perfect.

1. Tom (see)_____this film before.
2. I (finish)_____my exercise already.
3. They (live)_____here since 1990.
4. My father (just wash)_____his car.
5. The students (discuss)_____the question recently.
6. Mary (never, be)_____to Ha Noi.
7. We (know)_____each other for 5 years.
8. So far we (learn)_____five lessons.

9. We (be)_____ pen pals for a long time.
10. They (stay)_____ here since last week.

III. Find and correct the mistakes.

1. The flight to Vientiane have departed.
2. She hasn't finish the letter.
3. I forget that girl's name already.
4. Fred's brother just graduates from university.
5. I am trying to learn English for years.
6. I have been waiting for two hours, but she not come yet.
7. She reads all the works of Dickens. How many have you read?
8. I wait hare nearly half an hour for my gir-friend Joana; do you think she forgets to come?
9. Mary rests in the garden all day because she is ill.
10. Although John has been studying at the university for five years he have not got his degree yet.

IV. Read the passage and choose the best answer (A, B or C) to each statement.

Da Nang is one of the most peaceful cities in Viet Nam with a lot of beautiful beaches. This is a wonderful place for those who love seas and enjoy fresh air. Life here is not so busy as that in Ho Chi Minh City. It is not only a beautiful city but also a safe place to live in. Every evening, after work, you can easily catch the sight of families riding to the beach, leaving their motorbikes. They believe that their vehicles will still be there when they come back. There is no beggar here and the air is fresh. Another good thing is the food. If you love sea food, Da Nang will be the right choice. The food here is very fresh and the price is cheaper than that in Ho Chi Minh City.

1. Da Nang is a good place for sea lovers.
A. Right B. Wrong C. Doesn't mention
2. The life in Da Nang is busier than that in Ho Chi Minh City.
A. Right B. Wrong C. Doesn't mention
3. There are beautiful mountains in Da Nang.
A. Right B. Wrong C. Doesn't mention
4. It is not expensive to buy seafood in Da Nang City.
A. Right B. Wrong C. Doesn't mention
5. Da Nang is not only peaceful but also beautiful.
A. Right B. Wrong C. Doesn't mention

V. Read the passage and choose the best word (A, B or C) to put in each space.

Hoi An is one of the (1) towns in Viet Nam. It (2) on the lower section of the Thu Bon river. It is a very beautiful town with a s lot of colour (3) which are hung (4) the town. Hoi An is famous for one-(5) tailoring. Customers order clothes (6) the morning and get them in the (7) The price is not really (8) If you want to find the place of the (9) time, Hoi An is a (10) choice.

1. A. newer B. newest C. oldest
2. A. are B. is C. are being
3. A. lanterns B. stars C. balloons
4. A. on B. around C. up
5. A. month B. week C. day
6. A. at B. in C. on
7. A. night B. afternoon C. evening
8. A. expensive B. cheap C. more expensive
9. A. modern B. old C. new
10. A. best B. worst C. good

VI. Read about Da Nang City and answer the questions.

Da Nang has a population of nearly 800,000 people. The Han River flows through the city. The city part on the east bank is newest and more spacious. The city part on the west bank is more crowded. There are five bridges across the river. The Han River Bridge is the newest one now. The cost of living in Da Nang is the lowest in the Cental Viet Nam. Da Nang has many beaches. Among them, Non Nuoc Beach is one of the

most beautiful beaches in the world. But walking in the street on a summer after is not a good idea in Da Nang. There are not many trees so there are not many shadows. It is often very hot at noon.

Questions:

1. What is the population of Da Nang?
.....
2. Which part of the city is more spacious?
.....
3. Which part of the city is more crowded?
.....
4. Which bridge is the newest?
.....
5. What is Non Nuoc Beach like?
.....

VII. Rewrite the sentences.

Ex: They were married five years ago.

→ They have **been married for five years.**

1. The last time we saw her was on Christmas day.
We haven't
2. I haven't eaten this kind of food before.
This is
3. It started raining an hour ago.
It has
4. We haven't visited my grandfather for two months.
The last time
5. I have studied English for three years.
I began
6. My brother hasn't seen his best friend for nearly five years.
It's
7. When did you start learning English?
How long
8. We started living here fifteen years ago.
We have
9. The last time she visited me was five years ago.
She hasn't
10. I last wrote to my uncle in July.
I haven't
11. It's long time since we became close friend.
We have
12. Minh began to collect stamps in 2000.
Minh has

VIII. Rewrite the following sentence without changing their meaning.

Ex: They were married five years ago.

→ They have **been married for five years.**

1. This is the first time he went abroad.
He hasn't
2. She started driving 1 month ago.
She has
3. We began eating when it started to rain.
We have
4. I last had my hair cut when I left her.
I haven't
5. The last time she kissed me was 5 months ago.

- She hasn't
6. It is a long time since we last met.
We haven't
7. When did you have it?
How long
8. This is the first time I had such a delicious meal.
I haven't
9. I haven't seen him for 8 days.
The last
10. I haven't taken a bath since Monday.
It is

TEST 2 UNIT 9

I. Put the words in the correct column according to the pronunciation of the underlined part.

ward <u>ro</u> be	beh <u>i</u> nd	des <u>i</u> gn	bo <u>a</u> t	pag <u>o</u> da
well-kn <u>o</u> wn	skyscraper	wri <u>t</u> e	sh <u>y</u>	<u>o</u> nly
jud <u>o</u>	h <u>i</u> gh	diverse	f <u>i</u> ne	dr <u>y</u>
r <u>o</u> bot	sh <u>o</u> w	pr <u>i</u> ce	typ <u>e</u>	exc <u>i</u> ted
n <u>i</u> ce	po <u>e</u> m	mot <u>o</u> r	sof <u>a</u>	dr <u>i</u> ve
postcard	h <u>e</u> ight	sl <u>o</u> w	titl <u>e</u>	bo <u>th</u>
mo <u>s</u> t	dec <u>i</u> de	min <u>o</u> r	rig <u>h</u> t	rol <u>e</u>

/əʊ/	/aɪ/
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	
.....	

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- A. delicios B. like C. nice D. like
- A. postcard B. home C. so D. come
- A. show B. money C. robot D. motor
- A. find B. design C. typical D. write
- A. wish B. high C. price D. mind

III. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- A. beach B. speak C. hear D. clean
- A. city B. fish C. dish D. high
- A. tower B. show C. slow D. motor
- A. postcard B. fantastic C. visit D. fast
- A. continent B. photo C. popular D. coffee

IV. Choose the correct answers.

- Have you ever _____ to London?
A. be B. being C. been D. gone
- People in Tokyo are very polite _____ friendly.

- A. or B. and C. but D. so
3. Do you know_____drink in Viet Nam?
A.popular B.more popular
C.more and more popular D.the most popular
4. When we were in Stockholm, we had coffee and cakes_____a coffee shop_____the Old Town.
A. on - on B.at - at C. in - in D.on - at
5. The Eiffel Tower is the most_____landmark in the world.
A. visit B.. visiting C.visited D.to visit
6. Britain's most common_____activities are watching TV and films, and listening to the radio.
A.free B.leisure C.good D.popular
7. "I have been to Nha Trang_____. How about you?"
A. one B. two C.two times D.twice
8. Do you have_____in Da Lat during your holiday?
A.time B.good time C.good a time D.a good time
9. Nha Trang has an_____atmosphere of a young,_____city.
A.exciting - growing B.excited - grown C.exciting - grown D.excited - growing
10. That city is most famous_____its fashion shops.
A. to B. with C. for D. of
11. My family had a lot of_____in Hoi An and it was an exciting trip.
A.fun B.funny C.enjoy B D.enjoys
12. International School in Ho Chi Minh City is_____school in Viet Nam with high-tech facilities.
A.the oldest B.the younger C.the most historic D.the most modern
13. Has our city been hot_____before?
A.as this B.as this time C.like time D.like this time
14. People must be well-prepared_____they want to climb Mount Everest.
A. after B.until C.although D. before
15. "Which_____is Britain in?" - "Europe"
A.country B.continent C.city D.area
16. The red double-decker bus isLondon's famous_____.
A. sign B.signal C.symbol D.logo
17. Nha Trang is also considered Viet Nam's_____seaside resort town.
A.more famous B.most famous C.most visiting D.the most famous
18. I_____Da Lat three times in all.
A. isit B.visited C.visiting D.have visited
19. This is the first time that I_____a 3D film.
A.watch B.watched C.have ever watched D.have never watched
20. . I think it is a very nice town_____the weather is good and the people are friendly.
A. because B. if C.so D.although

Adjective	Opposite	The superlative
new		
cheap		
small		
bad		
cold		
unpopular		
dirty		
clean		

- Sydney has _____ beaches in the world.
- Big Ben is _____ bell ever made in England.
- Sahara Desert is _____ desert in the world.
- Beijing is _____ city in China. Smoke from factories causes thick, gray smog in the atmosphere.
- The playwright William Shakespeare is _____ British writer in the world.
- Oxford University is _____ university in Britain.
- Melbourne in Australia is considered the world's _____ city to live in.
- London is _____ city in the world. The prices are very high there.

VI. Put the verbs in brackets in the Present Perfect tense.

- Peter and his brother (learn) _____ English for three years.
- Mr. Green (play) _____ chess since eight o'clock.
- It (not rain) _____ since last week.
- We (not see) _____ our new teacher yet.
- I (study) _____ very hard for this examination.
- My uncle (work) _____ in this factory for ten years.
- She (see) _____ this film before.
- The weather (be) _____ quite good since Christmas.
- I (have) _____ this bike since I was a teenager, and I still use it.
- He (play) _____ for the football club for several years, but it's time to leave it now.

VII. Put the verbs in brackets in the correct verb tense.

- Be careful! The teacher (look) _____ at you.
- The boy (learn) _____ for three years, but he can't understand this letter.
- How long (you/know) _____ Paul?
- I (know) _____ him for five years.
- (she/feed) _____ the cat yet?
- We (not see) _____ Lan since we (be) _____ on holiday last summer.
- (she/finish) _____ her homework yet?
- (your dog/ever bite) _____ anyone?
- Yes, he (bite) _____ the postman last month.
- Would you like some coffee? I (just/ make) _____ some.
- (you/ ever be) _____ to Ha Noi?
- Our school performance (start) _____ late last Sunday because of the heavy rain.

VIII. Complete the sentences, using the present perfect form of the verbs.

Example: "Is David still here?" - "No, he (go) **has gone** home."

1. "Is it raining?" - "No, it (stop)_____."
2. "Are Mary and Susan here?" - "Yes, they (arrive)_____."
3. "Do you want a drink?" - "No, thanks. I (have)_____one."
4. "Does Kate bring her cellphone with her?" - "Yes, I (speak)_____to her."
5. "Is Daniel watching TV?" - "No, he (finish)_____."

IX. Match the questions with the answers, and write the answer in each blank.

	Questions	Answers
	1. What is the weather in Nha Trang like?	a) They are very friendly.
	2. What do you think about the local people?	b) I think they are the same.
	3. What have Nam and Hoa done?	c) She'll visit the Big Ben.
	4. What will Mai do tomorrow?	d) The sun is shining all the time.
	5. Is the weather here hotter than in Singapore?	e) They have visited the Old Quarter.

X. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

Sydney is the (1)_____of the state New South Wales in Australia. It is the largest, oldest, and perhaps the (2)_____beautiful city in Australia. Sydney has a population of 4.5 million. Its Harbour is one of the largest in the world, and famous (3)_____the Harbour Bridge and the Opera House. The streets in the city centre are narrow (4)_____many art galleries, restaurants, pubs, but the streets in Paddington are (5)_____and houses are big.

1. **A.** home **B.** site **C.** capital **D.** village
2. **A.** more **B.** most **C.** less **D.** fewer
3. **A.** with **B.** for **C.** in **D.** at
4. **A.** on **B.** at **C.** to **D.** with
5. **A.** narrow **B.** short **C.** long **D.** wide

XI. Read the passage, and then choose the correct answers.

Tokyo is the capital of Japan. In Tokyo, there are always too many people in the place where you want to come.

People are very polite even when they often spend a long time on traffic jams. Tokyo is different from London when you want to walk to a place.

During the day, most people travel to work by train. Tokyo people buy six million train tickets every day. Although they are usually crowded, Japanese trains are very good. They always leave and arrive on time. On a London train, everybody in a seat seems to be asleep whether the journey is long or short.

The worst time to be in the street at night is about 11.30 when the nightclubs are closing and everybody wants to go home.

1. Tokyo is different from London because_____.
A. it has a larger population **B.** it is a noisy city
C. it is more difficult to walk to somewhere **D.** its people are friendly and more polite
2. When does the writer think the worst time to go into the street?
A. When the nightclubs are closing. **B.** At 8.00 am.
C. When the trains are full. **D.** At 11.30 am
3. What does the writer think of Japanese trains?
A. They are very nice and comfortable. **B.** There are not enough trains.
C. They often run late. **D.** They leave and arrive on time.
4. In London trains, every British in a seat_____.
A. reads a newspaper **B.** looks like being asleep

- C. talks with other people D. looks out of the window.
5. Which statement is NOT true according to the passage?
- A. Most people in Tokyo travel to work by train.
 B. It is very difficult to go around in Tokyo.
 C. When Japanese people are on traffic jams, they are not polite.
 D. Trains in Tokyo are very good - they always leave and arrive on time.

XII. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

Tokyo, the capital of Japan, is a big city. The city is filled with factories, large office buildings, banks, restaurants, and shops of all sizes. It is a (1)_____ for Japanese art, and is home to more than 100 colleges and universities. The city is (2)_____ an important seaport. Most Japanese companies have (3)_____ main offices in Tokyo. At the heart of Tokyo is the Imperial Palace. This is the place (4)_____ the Emperor of Japan lives with his family. Tokyo is one of the world's biggest and most crowded (5)_____.

- | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. A. house | B. city | C. center | D. capital |
| 2. A. and | B. also | C. but | D. so |
| 3. A. its | B. their | C. theirs | D. some |
| 4. A. what | B. where | C. which | D. for |
| 5. A. city | B. a city | C. cities | D. the cities |

XIII. Read the passage, and then choose the correct answers.

San Francisco, a very hilly city, is in the San Francisco Bay. Although there are many modern skyscrapers in the city centre, houses in the suburbs are in the styles of the 19th century.

The celebration of the Chinese New Year in San Francisco's Chinatown is one thing that you should not miss.

You can find the best food from around the world: Brazilian, Indian, Japanese, Korean, Mexican, Russian, Thai, Chinese and much more. Don't forget to visit a jazz club or an outdoor coffee shop to enjoy good coffee and fresh air. You should visit Mission Dolores, an old church built by the Spanish in the 18th century.

- Which of the following sentences is true about San Francisco?

A. San Francisco is not a very hilly city.
 B. San Francisco is not in the San Francisco Bay.
 C. San Francisco has only old houses.
 D. San Francisco is a city with modern skyscrapers in the city centre.
- What is second paragraph about?

A. nightlife B. festivals C. scenery D. architecture
- Where can we have coffee and enjoy fresh air?

A. Chinatown B. Old houses C. Churches D. Outdoor coffee shops
- Which of the following sentences is NOT true about San Francisco?

A. San Francisco is in the San Francisco Bay.
 B. The celebration of the Chinese New Year in San Francisco's Chinatown is very interesting.
 C. You can only enjoy American and Chinese food in San Francisco.
 D. You should enjoy jazz at a jazz club in San Francisco.
- By whom was Mission Dolores built in the 18th century?

A. By people from Germany. B. By people from Spain.
 C. By people from Brazil. D. By people from Europe.

XIV. Read the postcard and answer the questions.

Dear Jack,

Hi from New York! We got there after five-hour delay because we missed our flight in Washington. It is very cold, but we are doing a lot of sightseeing so that helps! Sometimes I'd prefer to stay in my hotel room, but you can't come to New York and stay inside! There's a little Italian place next to the hotel. We go there every morning for breakfast. Mum has a double espresso and a piece of cake and my dad has a full American breakfast. Ugggh! Far too much for me. I just have coffee!

New York is wonderful - really! I love the skyscrapers!

Hope you are well.

Tom

1. Why did Tom get to New York five hours late?
2. What is the weather like?
3. Where do they have breakfast?
4. What does Tom have for breakfast?
5. What does Tom like about New York?

XV. Make questions for the underlined part in each sentence.

1. London is on the River Thames.
2. The Eiffel Tower first opened on 6th May 1889.
3. We are going to visit the Empire State Building tomorrow.
4. I went to London in my last vacation.
5. The weather in London was very cloudy and wind.

XVI. There is ONE mistake in each sentence, try to find the mistake and correct it.

1. The Royal Palace is one of the largest palace in Europe.
2. "Have you ever eat Ha Noi Pho, Steven?"
3. Up to now, I have visited Da Lat third times.
4. Do you think the most popular Vietnamese writer of children is *To Hoai*?
5. Sydney Opera House is an UNESCO World Heritage building.
6. The Merlion is a creature with the head of a lion so the body of a fish.
7. New York is an excited city with many skyscrapers.
8. You can play boating on the West Lake and it is very nice.

9. I have been to the beaches in Nha Trang many time with my family.
10. Is Chicago or Los Angeles the two biggest city in the United States?

XVII. Put the words in the correct order.

1. from/ vacation/ come/ Nha Trang/ I/ just have/ a/ back/ in.
2. university/ Viet Nam/ the/ was/ Quoc Tu Giam/ first/ in.
3. world/ six/ in/ are/ continents/ there/ the.
4. England/ tower/ it/ famous/ in/ the/ is/ most.
5. years/ new/ building/ is/ but/ looks/ 100/ more than/ old/ the/ it.

XVIII. Write correct sentences, using the words or phrases given.

1. Da Nang/ attract/ lots/ tourists/ because/ it/ most beautiful/ beaches/ Viet Nam.
2. Hoi An/ famous/ old houses and buildings/ traditional crafts.
3. You/ see/ latest Batman film?
4. Temple of Literature/ one/ Ha Noi's/ famous/ landmarks.
5. Merlion/ lion's head/ fish's body/ symbol/ Singapore.

XIX. Rewrite the following sentences, beginning as shown, so that the meaning stays the same.

1. In Viet Nam, April is hotter than any other months of the year.
In Viet Nam, April is_____.
2. Do you think money is more important than any other things in the world?
Do you think money is_____.
3. My father thinks Brazil has a football team better than any other football teams in the world.
My father thinks Brazil has_____.
4. New York is more exciting than any other cities in the world.
New York is_____.
5. Nha Trang attracts lots of tourists. It has clean and beautiful beaches.
Because

TEST 3 UNIT 9

I. Circle the one with the different vowel sound.

- | | | | |
|-----------|-------|---------|------|
| 1. both | cloth | clothes | road |
| 2. prize | fight | litter | bike |
| 3. town | snow | show | bowl |
| 4. lift | fit | tick | lion |
| 5. symbol | cycle | physics | gym |

6. old stone hope come

II Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

1. a. prize b. excite c. design d. capital
2. a. cold b. photo c. continent d. poster
3. a. city b. capital c. nice d. excite
4. a. designed b. received c. cycled d. rewarded
5. a. tomorrow b. tower c. crowd d. around

III Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. Manchester is famous_____its football teams.
a. in b. with c. for d. as
2. Oxford University was built_____the 12th century.
a. in b. of c. at d. on
3. The Golden Gate Bridge is San Francisco's most famous_____.
a. building b. monument c. palace d. landmark
4. The package includes a tour of Sydney's famous_____.
a. Opera House b. Eiffel Tower c. Big Ben d. White House
5. _____a nice day! Shall we go swimming?
a. How b. When c. What d. Which
6. France is the most_____country to visit. It has about 76 million visitors a year.
a. visiting b. expensive c. popular d. relaxing
7. _____do you live in? - Asia.
a. Where b. What country c. What continent d. What city
8. The_____is a mythical creature with the head of a lion and the body of a fish.
a. Komodo Dragon b. Red Kangaroo c. Phoenix d. Merlion
9. I really love living in Montreal_____there are so many places to visit that are nearby.
a. but b. so c. because d. although
10. What is the capital of Greece? - _____
a. Amsterdam b. Athens c. Stockholm d. Sydney

IV Choose the word that is opposite in meaning to the underlined word.

1. Rio de Janeiro is an exciting city.
a. interesting b. dangerous c. boring d. expensive
2. The beaches in Sydney are clean and beautiful.
a. clear b. dirty c. famous d. fresh
3. It's dangerous to walk around the city at night.
a. safe b. exciting c. cold d. popular
4. The dish is delicious with cheese.
a. tasty b. pleasant c. fatty d. awful
5. York is a historic city in North Yorkshire.
a. exciting b. modern c. famous d. quiet
6. The streets were very noisy throughout the night.
a. crowded b. busy c. quiet d. empty
7. That modern building is so ugly!
a. big b. impressive c. unattractive d. beautiful
8. We didn't go camping last weekend. The weather was awful.
a. unpleasant b. nice c. bad d. terrible

V Write the adjectives in the correct column. Some can go more than one column.

modern new huge beautiful tall big quiet polluted dangerous
 awful sunny ugly historic polluted windy small noisy
 exciting cold safe wet

Weather	Building	City

VI. **Complete the sentences with the correct superlative form of the adjectives in the box.**

difficult beautiful delicious interesting valuable boring polluted amazing

- Prague is _____ city I've ever seen.
- What's _____ book you've ever read? - *Harry Potter and the Sorcerer's Stone*. I really love it!
- The Grand Canyon is _____ sight I've ever seen.
- Many climbers consider K2 is _____ mountain to climb, not Mount Everest.
- That was _____ movie I've ever seen. I almost walked out in the middle.
- Please give me your recipe. That is _____ cake I've ever eaten.
- Fresh air doesn't exist in New Delhi at the moment. It is _____ city on Earth right now.
- That is _____ painting in the art gallery. It's worth a million dollars.

VII. **Write the comparative or superlative of the adjectives in brackets.**

- It's today _____ than it was yesterday. (warm)
- Rio de Janeiro is one of _____ cities in the world. (beautiful)
- The second question was _____ than the first one. (difficult)
- Australia is _____ continent on Earth. (old)
- China is _____ country in the world. (populated)
- My exam results were _____ than I expected. (bad)
- Ms. Nicholson is _____ teacher I've ever known. (good)
- The city is _____ than it used to be. (crowded)
- Tokyo is still the world's _____ city with 37 million inhabitants. (large)
- Cool Blue Villa is one of _____ houses ever built. (modern)

VIII. **Complete the sentences with the correct form (comparative or superlative) of the words in brackets. Add any necessary words.**

- Sao Paulo is _____ London. (crowded)
- Paris is _____ city in the world. (romantic)
- New York is much _____ Sydney. (expensive)
- The Eiffel Tower is _____ building in France. (famous)
- China is one of _____ countries in the world. (big)
- In my opinion, Tokyo is _____ Mumbai. (interesting)
- Barcelona is _____ Stockholm. (hot)
- I think that Istanbul is _____ city in the world. (beautiful)

IX. **Complete the sentences with the present perfect form (positive or negative) of the verbs in brackets.**

- I _____ (have) four exams so far this month.
- Mr Tan _____ (teach) in this school for over ten years.
- You _____ (not stop) talking since you got here!

4. Scientists _____ (find) more than 30 unknown insects.
5. She _____ (not see) Nathan since he left the town.
6. Someone _____ (break) a window in our classroom.
7. We _____ (not decide) what to get Mark for his birthday yet.
8. I _____ (already/ finish) my homework. It was easy!
9. Jorge _____ (not play) tennis since his injury.
10. My parents _____ (be) to Australia three times.

X Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. My cousin _____ (be) in Canada two years ago.
2. They _____ (be) to London many times this year.
3. Tomorrow we _____ (cycle) around to discover the city.
4. At the moment I _____ (stay) at a very nice hotel in the south of France.
5. When I was younger, we _____ (not do) much sport at school.
6. Mrs. Hudson is my maths teacher. She _____ (teach) for four years.
7. Last year I _____ (go) on a school trip to Scotland. We _____ (have) a very interesting time.
8. Could you meet me at the bus station? My bus _____ (arrive) at six.

XI Write questions for the underlined parts.

1. Brazil is in the continent of South America.
2. Canberra is the capital city of Australia.
3. The weather in Stockholm has been perfect.
4. New York is 54,555 square miles big.
5. We have lived in New York for ten years.
6. My family moved to Sydney in 1997.
7. I have never been to South Africa.
8. He travelled to Mexico by train.

XII Complete the sentences with the correct tense of the verbs in brackets. Use the past simple or the present perfect tenses.

1. I'm really hungry. I _____ (not have) lunch yet.
2. We _____ (not have) a maths class last week.
3. Keith's not home now. He _____ (go) to the beach this weekend.
4. My family _____ (move) to Canada in 2010.
5. _____ you ever _____ (visit) San Adarino?
6. He _____ (live) in London for two years when he was a student.
7. _____ Jenny _____ (go) to the dentist yesterday?
8. They _____ (work) in this company since 2001.
9. _____ you _____ (see) Joana recently?
10. Jim _____ (break) his leg in a skiing accident two years ago.

XIII Change the following sentences into exclamatory sentences, using 'What'.

1. He is a very good student. → What a good student?

- | | | |
|--|---|-------|
| 2. The weather is so awful. | → | _____ |
| 3. The city is very beautiful. | → | _____ |
| 4. The buildings are so attractive. | → | _____ |
| 5. The cake is so delicious. | → | _____ |
| 6. The flowers are very lovely. | → | _____ |
| 7. The coffee is so strong. | → | _____ |
| 8. The Maths lesson is so interesting. | → | _____ |

XIV. Read the text, then do the tasks.

Los Angeles, California is the most exciting city in the USA. It's got Hollywood, Disneyland, fantastic beaches and the LA Dodgers baseball team.

But LA wasn't always exciting. In 1900 it was smaller and quieter, and Hollywood was a small village. Then film studios arrived, and the village of Hollywood changed. Today it is part of LA, and Hollywood's 'Walk of Fame' is the most famous place in the city. It's got more than 2,000 stars on it!

It's always sunny in LA and there are lots of different attractions. You can go shopping on Sunset Boulevard (It's too expensive for me!), or you can surf on Venice Beach. There are theatres, museums, the biggest theme parks in the USA and the noisiest sports stadiums. LA is the best city in the world!

A. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. LA is the world's most exciting city.
2. Hollywood used to be a small village.
3. The weather is good in LA.
4. The shops on Sunset Boulevard are cheap.
5. There are a lot of tourist attractions in LA.

B. Answer the questions

1. Where is Los Angeles?
2. What is the most famous place in LA?
3. How many stars are there on the Hollywood Walk of Fame?
4. What is the weather like in LA?

XV. Read the passage carefully, then answer the questions.

Seoul is South Korea's capital. It is located in the northern part of South Korea. It has a population of nearly 10 million people. In this city you can find many tall buildings and skyscrapers. Seoul is known around the world as a technology capital. It has a large subway system. Incheon International Airport is a forty minute train ride from Seoul. Gangnam, Itaewon and Hongdae are popular neighbourhoods in Seoul. Here you can find bustling downtown districts, social life, shopping and great dining. The War Memorial of Korea and Namsan Seoul Tower are popular tourist destinations in Seoul.

1. Where is Seoul?
2. How many people live in Seoul?
3. Is Seoul a technology capital?
4. How long does it take to travel from Seoul to Incheon Airport by train?

5. Are Gangnam, Itaewon and Hongdae districts of Seoul?
6. What are popular tourist destinations in Seoul?

XVI. Rearrange the words to make correct sentences.

1. wonderful/ in/ We/ time/ are/ Hanoi/ a/ having.
2. for/ two/ been/ We/ have/ here/ days.
3. Hanoi/ interesting/ and/ is/ a/ city/ it/ large/ is/ also.
4. are/ very/ The people/ sunny/ and/ the weather/ warm/ has/ and/ been/ friendly.
5. the/ Yesterday/ Temple of Literature/ visited/ we.
6. Vietnam/ of/ is/ one/ the/ It/ popular/ most/ tourist attractions/ in
7. Bat Trang Pottery Village/ going/ Today/ we/ are/ to.
8. will/ my family and friends/ buy/ I/ make/ some/ gift/ pottery/ a/ to/ for.

XVII. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as the first one, using the word given.

1. I have never been to Sa Pa before. (ever)
This is the _____
2. The last time I saw him was in 2010. (seen)
I _____
3. She has never seen the more amazing sight. (most)
It's _____
4. The weather in Rio de Janeiro is hotter than in Sydney. (as)
The weather in Sydney _____
5. They moved to New York in 2004. (lived)
They _____
6. We haven't been to Hanoi for three years. (went)
The last time _____
7. No other tower in England is as famous as Big Ben. (the)
Big Ben _____
8. London is a lot older than New York. (modern)
New York _____

TEST 1 FOR UNIT 7,8,9

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-----------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. delicious | B. like | C. nice | D. fine |
| 2. A. postcard | B. come | C. home | D. so |
| 3. A. motor | B. money | C. show | D. robot |
| 4. A. near | B. bear | C. idea | D. appear |
| 5. A. here | B. series | C. sphere | D. there |
| 6. A. match | B. square | C. badminton | D. grandfather |
| 7. A. programme | B. sport | C. most | D. show |
| 8. A. thirty | B. them | C. both | D. theme |
| 9. A. schedule | B. when | C. red | D. comedy |

10. A. brother B. through C. then D. weather

II. Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D).

1. I usually play football when I have _____.
A. spare time B. good time C. no time D. times
2. In team sports, the two teams _____ against each other in order to get the better score.
A. are B. do C. make D. compete
3. _____ draw on the walls and tables, please.
A. Do B. Don't C. Should D. Shouldn't
4. Nam plays sports very often, so he looks very _____.
A. sport B. sports C. sporty D. sporting
5. Last summer, I _____ fishing with my uncle in the afternoon.
A. go B. went C. goes D. going
6. Have you ever _____ to London?
A. be B. being C. been D. gone
7. People in Tokyo are very polite _____ friendly.
A. or B. and C. but D. so
8. Do you know _____ drink in Viet Nam?
A. popular B. more popular
C. more and more popular D. the most popular
9. When we were in Stockholm, we had coffee and cakes _____ a coffee shop _____ the Old Town.
A. on - on B. at - at C. in - in D. on - at
10. The Eiffel Tower is the most _____ landmark in the world.
A. visit B. visiting C. visited D. to visit
11. Super cars will _____ water in the future.
A. go by B. run at C. run on D. travel by
12. The robot will _____ of the flowers in the garden.
A. take care B. take note C. be careful D. carry
13. The house will have a super mart TV to _____ the e-mails.
A. send and post B. send and receive
C. get and take D. receive and get
14. _____ pencils and raper, every student will have a computer.
A. By B. Instead C. Instead of D. At
15. We might have a _____ TV to watch TV programmes from space.
A. wireless B. remote C. automatic D. local
16. My brother wants to become a _____ to tell TV viewers what the weather is like.
A. newspaper B. actor C. weatherman D. producer
17. TV _____ can join in some game shows through telephone or by mail.
A. people B. weatherman C. newsreaders D. viewers
18. _____ are films by pictures, not real people and often for children.
A. Documentaries B. Love stories
C. Cartoons D. Detective stories
19. Are there any good programs _____ teenagers on TV tonight?
A. to B. for C. of D. with
20. My father works late tomorrow, so he will _____ the first part of the film on VTV1.
A. miss B. lose C. forget D. cut

III.. Complete the sentences with *and*, *so*, *but* or *because*.

1. I didn't feel well _____ I stayed at home..
2. He liked her _____ she was happy.
3. I liked Spain _____ I wanted to go home.
4. She likes swimming _____ jogging.
5. We were late _____ there was an accident.

IV. Complete the following sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. I (not be)_____very happy yesterday.
2. The people in the café (not be)_____friendly when I was there yesterday.
3. I (leave)_____my school bag at school this morning.
4. It (be)_____a great film in 2001.
5. Our teacher (tell)_____us to be quiet yesterday.
6. I went to the shop but I (not have)_____any money.
7. Susan (not know)_____about the exam and she did very badly.
8. I (buy)_____a ticket for the football match yesterday.

V. Complete the following sentences with the verbs in the present perfect.

not see take visit win read not study

1. My team_____ten matches this year.
2. They_____German before. This is their first year.
3. I_____lots of photos with my camera.
4. She_____the USA three times. Her aunt lives there.
5. The longest book I_____is The Lord of the Rings.
6. I_____that film. Is it good?

VI. Make questions for the underlined words.

1. My father plays tennis every Friday.
+ ?
2. Our class has Geography on Monday.
+ ?
3. Hi-tech robots might look after children.
+ ?
4. People might watch films on smart phones.
+ ?
5. We will travel to the moon by a super car.
+ ?

TEST 2 FOR UNIT 7,8,9

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. <u>with</u> | B. <u>breath</u> e | C. <u>the</u> y | D. <u>truth</u> |
| 2. A. <u>show</u> | B. <u>snow</u> | C. <u>now</u> | D. <u>slow</u> |
| 3. A. <u>care</u> | B. <u>share</u> | C. <u>prepa</u> re | D. <u>care</u> er |
| 4. A. <u>fear</u> | B. <u>near</u> | C. <u>hear</u> | D. <u>bear</u> |
| 5. A. <u>like</u> | B. <u>bit</u> | C. <u>bite</u> | D. <u>kind</u> |

II. Choose the correct answers.

6. I often_____fishing with my uncle at the weekend.
A. do B. go C. play D. make
7. Our hometown is_____beautiful place in the world.
A. more B. more and more C. the most D. the more and more
8. The atmosphere is getting more_____because there is more smoke from factories and motor engines.
A. pollute B. polluting C. polluted D. pollution
9. " is the longest river in the world?" - "I think it's the Nile River."
A. Which B. Where C. How D. Why
10. "I have been to Singapore_____. How about you?"
A. two B. two times C. twice D. twice times
11. _____doing morning exercises is good for your health, don't do it too hard.
A. Although B. If C. But D. When

12. The _____ drink in Viet Nam is tea.
A. more popular **B.** more and more popular
C. delicious **D.** most popular
13. I have been _____ many beautiful places in Viet Nam.
A. at **B.** on **C.** in **D.** to
14. I first _____ to Ha Noi in 2010.
A. was **B.** went **C.** have been **D.** have gone
15. "I'd like to change the _____. Please give me the remote control."
A. programme **B.** view **C.** channel **D.** television
16. If you want to know which film is on tonight, check the TV _____.
A. programme **B.** schedule **C.** news **D.** information
17. Most children like _____ because they make them laugh a lot.
A. films **B.** love stories **C.** comedies **D.** documentaries
18. Let's Learn is a TV programme for small children which makes education _____.
A. fun **B.** funny **C.** enjoy **D.** enjoyed
19. Watching too much TV is not good for your health ____ it hurts your eyes.
A. so **B.** but **C.** and **D.** because
20. "Do you _____ your TV on when you are not watching it? "
A. take **B.** leave **C.** get **D.** make
21. "It's cold outside. Remember to _____ warm clothes."
A. wear **B.** put off **C.** put **D.** get
22. _____ are the Olympic Games held?
A. How **B.** How long **C.** How often **D.** How much
23. "Do you _____ to any school clubs, Nam?"
A. belong **B.** play **C.** do **D.** going

III.

Complete the story with the Past Simple form of the verbs in brackets.

It (24. be) _____ a sunny day. Helen (25. walk) _____ to the park. In the park she (26. phone) _____ her friend Daisy. Helen (27. wait) _____ for 15 minutes and Daisy (28. arrive) _____. The girls (29. walk) _____ to the river. There (30. be) two boys there. Suddenly the big boy (31. push) _____ the small boy into the river. Helen (32. jump) _____ into the river to rescue the boy. Daisy (33. phone) _____ the ambulance and the police. The doctors and police (34. arrive) _____. They (35. interview) _____ the girls.

IV. Complete the dialogue with the *Present Perfect* or the *Simple Past* of the verbs in brackets.

Minh: I (36. just, hear) _____ that Hung is in Australia.
Mai: Oh, (37. You/ not know) _____ that? He (38. fly) _____ there at the beginning of the month.
Minh: (39. you/ hear) _____ from him? Does he like the life there?
Mai: Yes, I (40. get) _____ a letter last week. He (41. tell) _____ me about his study. But he (42. not say) _____ whether he (43. like) _____ the life or not. Perhaps it's too early to say. He (44. be) _____ there for only three weeks. He (45. never/ be) _____ to a foreign country before.

V. Complete the dialogue. Use the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Nam: Hi My name's Nam.
Peter: Hello. Nice to meet you, Nam. I'm Peter.

Nam: Are you a newcomer here?
 Peter: Yes. I (46. be)_____here since last week.
 Nam: I'm sure you'll love this place.
 Peter: I (47. hope)_____so. How long (48. you/ live)_____here?
 Nam: For 15 years.
 Peter: So you must know the area very well. (49. be)_____there a post office near here?
 Nam: Yes. There (50. be)_____one next to my house. Why?
 Peter: Because I (51. want)_____to send this postcard to my family.
 Nam: Oh! It (52. look)_____very beautiful. Where (53. be)_____your family?
 Peter: In London. (54. you/ ever be)_____there, Nam?
 Nam: Not yet. But I (55. go)_____there with my father next summer holiday.
 Peter: That's great. I hope to see you again there.

VI. Match the questions with the answers, and write the answer in each blank.

	Questions	Answers
	56. What's your favorite program? 57. Why don't you watch some news programs? 58. What about plays? 59. Was there anything good on TV last night? 60. What was it about? 61. What was so special about it? 62. Really? What time was it on? 63. I'm sorry I missed it. Is there another chance to see it? 64. Which program do you prefer, the news or the film show? 65. What would you like to watch on TV?	a. Because they're usually boring. b. Film shows. c. From seven to eight. d. Yes, it's going to be shown again. e. Yes, there was an interesting nature program. f. The news and the sports shows. g. I don't care about them either. h. It was about monkeys and the way they live. i. Oh, the film show, not the news. j. It was so interesting and the pictures .

VII. Read the passage, and then decide whether the sentences are *True* or *False*.

When Ana lived in Brazil, she joined a riding club. It was brilliant! She learned how to ride and how to look after a horse. Now she lives in the US and there isn't a club in her village but it isn't a problem. Her friend lives on a farm and she has two horses, so twice a week (Wednesdays and Fridays) after school she goes there to ride with her friend. Ana thinks she's lucky!

66. Ana learned to ride in the US.
 67. She also learned how to take care of horses.
 68. The village in the US where she lives does not have a riding club.
 69. Ana lives on a farm.
 70. Ana rides horses at the weekend.

VIII. Read the text, and answer the questions below.

In the 1970s, skateboarding suddenly became very popular. At first, skateboarders move slowly on flat, smooth area. Then they began to ride quickly. This is called 'freestyle' skateboarding. Soon they were skateboarding skillfully up ramps and doing tricks in the air. This is called 'ramp' skateboarding. Then they started skateboarding and doing tricks on the street. This was 'street-style' skateboarding – a combination of freestyle and ramp. For this, the skateboarders needed protective clothing such as knee and elbow pads and helmets. This allowed them to skateboard safely.

Today skateboarding is still a very popular sport, and there are lots of competitions

71. When did skateboarding become very popular?

72. What are the three styles of skateboarding?

73. What was 'street-style' skateboarding?

74. Why do 'street-style' skateboarders need protective clothing?

75. Do you think skateboarding is a very popular sport now? Why or why not?

IX. Write correct sentences, using the words or phrases given.

76. I/ take part/ swimming competition/ school/ last week/ and/ win/ third prize.

77. I/ can't/ soccer /classmates/ this afternoon/ because/ I/ visit/ my grandmother/ hospital.

78. I/ should/ finish/ homework/ before/ play/ sports.

80. Soccer/ or football/ most/ popular sport/ Viet Nam.

TEST 3 FOR UNIT 7,8,9

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a. city | b. cycle | c. symbol | d. bicycle |
| 2. a. we <u>ath</u> er | b. ear <u>th</u> | c. mara <u>th</u> on | d. hea <u>th</u> y |
| 3. a. h <u>ear</u> | b. i <u>de</u> a | c. care <u>er</u> | d. bea <u>ch</u> |
| 4. a. s <u>ch</u> ool | b. c <u>on</u> tinent | c. c <u>h</u> annel | d. c <u>h</u> aracter |
| 5. a. rem <u>ote</u> | b. p <u>op</u> ular | c. c <u>o</u> ld | d. s <u>no</u> w |

IV. Choose the correct answer a, b, c, or d.

- Pelé was born _____ October 21st, 1940.
a. in b. on c. at d. by
- Cartoons are not just _____ kids anymore -many adults love watching cartoons too.
a. with b. about c. to d. for
- Breda goes jogging every morning to keep _____.
a. exercise b. trained c. fit d. health
- We have a test on Monday, _____ I will have to study this weekend.
a. and b. but c. so d. because
- Our team couldn't win the championship, _____ they played very well.
a. so b. despite c. because d. although
- Have you ever _____ aerobics? Aerobic exercise can help you to lose weight.
a. played b. done c. gone d. got
- _____ is a marathon in miles? ~ About 26 miles.
a. How often b. How many c. How long d. How wide
- The Statue of Liberty is one of the most famous _____ in the United States.
a. towers b. landmarks c. capitals d. cities
- They showed a _____ on global warming called 'Warming Warning'.
a. documentary b. romance c. comedy d. cartoon

10. ‘Can you give me the remote control on the table?’

‘_____’ Don’t you like this programme?’

- a. Never mind. b. You’re welcome. c. Certainly. d. Really?

V. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

1. My father _____ (watch) News in 60 Seconds every evening.
2. _____ (you/ ever/ meet) a famous football player?
3. Ten years ago, people _____ (not spend) as much time on screens as they do today.
4. Mr Gray _____ (teach) French here since 2015.
5. We _____ (fly) to Washington tomorrow afternoon.
6. Gustave Eiffel _____ (design) Eiffel Tower in 1889.
7. Someone _____ (knock) at the door. Can you see who it is?
8. I _____ (not play) basketball because I’m not tall enough.

VI. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. I’m afraid I don’t find basketball very _____. (interest)
2. He gets a lot of _____ from football. (enjoy)
3. Is Delhi the most _____ city on Earth? (pollute)
4. Who is the most famous fashion _____ in Vietnam? (design)
5. Tourists like to visit _____ buildings in Hoi An. (history)
6. Pelé is _____ regarded as the best football player of all time. (wide)

IX. Write questions for the underlined part.

1. They have studied for three hours.
2. The students usually play football after the class.
3. Minh goes to the karate club three times a week.
4. I am meeting Andy at the cinema.
5. Pelé scored 1,281 goals in his 22-year career.
6. Vietnam is in Asia.

X. Choose the word which best fits each gap.

Games and sports are an integral part of a student’s life. A student should study (1)_____ to be successful in competitive examinations. But, he should also play games and sports to enjoy the health and vigor of life. We have all heard the old (2)_____ “All work and no play makes Jack a dull boy”.

The benefits of playing sports are multiple, and it leads to balanced (3)_____ and physical growth. It teaches the children life skills like teamwork, leadership, patience. It teaches children discipline and playing (4)_____ the rules. Playing and excelling in sports (5)_____ teaches kids the importance of hard work, perseverance, learning from failure, and importance of grasping opportunities. All of these experiences and habits are very (6)_____ in adult life.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. a. hard | b. hardly | c. widely | d. easily |
| 2. a. idiom | b. speech | c. saying | d. slogan |
| 3. a. healthy | b. mental | c. personal | d. strong |
| 4. a. within | b. for | c. of | d. without |
| 5. a. ever | b. only | c. well | d. also |
| 6. a. hopeful | b. exciting | c. useful | d. popular |

XI. Read the text carefully, then do the tasks.

The Eiffel Tower

The Eiffel Tower is located in Paris, France. It was constructed between 1887 and 1889 to be the entranceway to the 1889 World's Fair and to celebrate the 100th anniversary of the French Revolution. The Tower was opened to visitors on May 6, 1889.

Gustave Eiffel's design was chosen from among 107 that were submitted to the World's Fair design competition. However, many Parisians, especially artists, did not like his design and protested the tower's construction. They thought it would be an eyesore, but once it was built, most Parisians soon loved the tower.

The tower is made of iron and weighs over 10,000 tons. It is 324 meters tall, including antenna at its top, and has a staircase with 1,665 steps. There are also elevators to take visitors to the top platform where there is a panoramic view of Paris. The original elevators, now computerized, are still in use. Over 60 tons of paint are applied to the tower every seven years to keep it from rusting.

The Eiffel Tower has become a symbol of Paris. It is the most recognized monument in Europe, and many people think it is an architectural masterpiece. Over 250 million people have visited it since May of 1889.

A. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. The Eiffel Tower was originally built to be a watchtower.
2. The Eiffel Tower was opened to the public on May 6, 1889.
3. Some artists at the time thought the tower was ugly.
4. The original elevators in the tower have all been replaced.
5. The tower is repainted every seven years.
6. The Eiffel Tower is the most recognized structure on the planet.

B. Answer the questions.

1. Where is the Eiffel Tower?
2. How long was the tower constructed?
3. Who designed the Eiffel Tower?
4. Why does the tower have to be painted frequently?
5. How many people have visited the Eiffel Tower since its opening?

XII. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first one. Use the words given in brackets.

1. What was your favourite subject at school? (enjoy)
What _____ at school?
2. I haven't visited my family since 2005. (time)
The _____ my family was in 2005.
3. My parents moved to New Zealand in 2010. (lived)
My parents _____ since 2010.
4. I think that no city is more beautiful than Paris. (most)
I think Paris _____ in the world.
5. The computer was too expensive for me to buy. (enough)
I _____ money to buy the computer.

6. Why don't we go to Bali on summer vacation? (suggested)
Jane _____ on summer vacation.
7. You won't pass the exam unless you study harder. (not)
If _____ you won't pass the exam.
8. Matt is still working on his homework. (finished)
Matt _____ his homework yet.

UNIT 10: OUR HOUSE IN FUTURE

A. VOCABULARY

- apartment /ə'part·mənt/ và flat /flæt/ (n): căn hộ
- condominium /,kən·də'mɪn·i·əm/ (n): chung cư
- penthouse /'pent·haʊs/ (n): tầng trên cùng của một tòa nhà cao tầng
- basement apartment /'beɪs·mənt ə'part·mənt/ (n): căn hộ tầng hầm
- houseboat /'haʊs,bəʊt/ (n): nhà thuyền
- villa /'vɪl·ə/ (n): biệt thự
- cable television (TV cable) /'keɪ·bəl 'tel·ə,vɪʒ·ən/ (n): truyền hình cáp
- fridge /frɪdʒ/ (n): tủ lạnh
- wifi (Wireless Fidelity) /'waɪ'faɪ/: hệ thống mạng không dây sử dụng sóng vô tuyến
- wireless /'waɪər·ləs/ (adj, n): vô tuyến điện, không dây
- wireless TV /'waɪər·ləs,tɪ:'vi:(n) ti vi có kết nối mạng không dây
- appliance /ə'plai·əns/ (n): thiết bị, dụng cụ
- automatic /,ɔ:tə'mætɪ·k/ (adj): tự động
- castle /'kæstəl/ (n): lâu đài
- comfortable /'kʌm·fər·tə·bəl/ (adj): đầy đủ, tiện nghi
- dry /draɪ/ (v): làm khô, sấy khô
- helicopter /'helɪ,kap·tər/ (n): máy bay trực thăng
- hi-tech /'haɪ'tek/ (adj): kỹ thuật cao
- iron /aɪrən/ (v): bàn là, ủi (quần áo)
- look after /lʊk 'æf tər/ (v): trông nom, chăm sóc
- modern /'mʌd·ərən/ (adj): hiện đại
- motorhome /'məʊtə,həʊm/ (n): nhà lưu động (có ô tô kéo)
- skyscraper /'skaɪ,skreɪ·pər/ (n): nhà chọc trời
- smart /smɑ:t/ (adj): thông minh
- solar energy /,səʊ.lər 'en.ə.dʒi/ (n) năng lượng mặt trời
- space /speɪs/ (n) không gian vũ trụ
- special /'speʃ·əl/ (adj) đặc biệt
- UFO /,ju:.'ef'oo/ viết tắt của từ Unidentified Flying Object (n) vật thể bay, đĩa bay

B. GRAMMAR

I. Thì tương lai đơn

1. Cách dùng

Cách dùng	Ví dụ
Dùng để diễn tả một hành động hay sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai	-She'll be back at 6p.m to night.(tối nay cô ấy sẽ trở về vào lúc 6h.) -They will help me do this exercise (họ sẽ giúp tôi làm bài tập này.)
Dùng để diễn tả một suy nghĩ, quyết định ngay lúc nói	-I will drink water instead of milk.(tôi sẽ uống nước thay cho sữa.) -I think I will teach here.(tôi nghĩ tôi sẽ dạy

	ở đây.)
Dùng để diễn tả một lời hứa	-I promise I will come here tomorrow.(tôi hứa tôi sẽ đến đây vào ngày mai.) -He promises he will marry me.(anh ấy hứa sẽ cưới tôi)
Dùng để diễn tả một lời đề nghị,gợi ý	-Will we go for a walk tonight?(tối nay chúng ta sẽ đi dạo nhé?) -What we do now?(Chúng ta sẽ làm gì bây giờ nhỉ?)

2. Dạng thức của thì tương lai đơn

Thể khẳng định			Thể phủ định		
I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều		+ will + V nguyên mẫu (will = 'll)	I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều		+ will not + V nguyên mẫu
He/She/It Danh từ số ít			He/She/It Danh từ số ít		
Ví dụ: I will visit Hue city.(Tôi sẽ đến thăm Huế) She will be fourteen years old on her next birthday(Cô ấy sẽ 14 tuổi vào sinh nhật kế tiếp). They will come to the party next Sunday(Chủ nhật tuần sau họ sẽ đến bữa tiệc)			Ví dụ: She won't forget him.(Cô ấy sẽ không quên anh ấy) Hung will not go camping next week(Tuần tới Hùng sẽ không đi cắm trại) We won't do some shopping tomorrow (Ngày mai chúng tôi sẽ không đi mua sắm)		
Thể nghi vấn			Câu trả lời ngắn		
Will	I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều	+ V nguyên mẫu	Yes,	I/You/We/They Danh từ số nhiều	will
	He/She/It Danh từ số ít		No,	He/She/It Danh từ số ít	won't
Ví dụ: - Will you go to Ha noi city next month?(Thangs sau cậu sẽ đi thành phố Hà nội à?) Yes, I will./ No, I won't. - Will she meet her boyfriend tonight?(Tối nay cô ấy sẽ gặp bạn trai à) Yes, she will./ No, she won't. - Will they arrive here next week?(Tuần tới học sẽ đến đây à?) Yes, they will./ No, they won't.					

Dấu hiệu nhận biết:

- Trong câu tương lai thường xuất hiện các từ chỉ thời gian như: tomorrow, next day / week / month / year, some day, soon(chẳng bao lâu)...

- Ngoài ra các từ và cụm từ như: I think/ promise; perhaps= probably(có lẽ, có thể)..... cũng được dùng trong tương lai đơn.

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1. Dựa vào từ cho sẵn, viết câu khẳng định ở thì tương lai đơn

1. I/ do/ this/ later.

2. We/ go shopping

3. the sun/ shine

4. Peter/ call you.

5. they/be/ there.
6. you/ ask/him.
7. Jenny/ lock/the door.
8. it/ rain
9. the teacher/ test/ our English.
10. they/ buy/ a car. _____

Bài 2. Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì tương lai đơn.

1. It (rain/not)_____tomorrow.
2. I promise I (be/not)_____late
3. We (start/not)_____to watch the film without you.
4. The bus (wait/not)_____for us.
5. He (believe/not)_____us.
6. I (pass/not)_____the test.
7. She (come/not)_____with us.
8. You (enjoy/not)_____visiting Paris.
9. I (pay/not)_____for lunch.
10. He (answer/not)_____the question.

Bài 3. Dựa vào các từ cho sẵn, đặt câu hỏi ở thì tương lai đơn.

1. what/ learn/ they. _____
2. it/ snow _____
3. when/ you/get/ home. _____
4. she/ forgive/ me. _____
5. what/ say/ he. _____
6. what/ they/ it. _____
7. whe/ she/ be/ back. _____
8. who/ drive/ us/ into town. _____
9. where/ we /meet. _____
10. when/ I/ be/ famous _____

Bài 4. Đưa ra câu trả lời ngắn cho các câu hỏi ở thì tương lai đơn.

1. Will the dog bark? Yes, _____
2. Will you buy lots of presents? Yes, _____
3. Will your mom prepare dinner? Yes, _____
4. Will Ben copy the CD? Yes, _____
5. Will the children go to London? Yes, _____
6. Will Bne make pizza for tea? Yes, _____
7. Will you go to the shops? Yes, _____
8. Will Mr Brown take hotos? Yes, _____
9. Will you go on a diet? Yes, _____

Bài 5. Cho dạng đúng của động từ trong ngoặc ở thì tương lai đơn.

1. What_____you (do) this evening?
2. I'm a little busy, I_____ (have) time to help you with your homework later though.
3. Mr. Brown_____ (give) us a grammar test tomorrow.
4. You_____(help) your friend after class won't you?
5. Kyung Sook_____ (cook) something tasty for dinner tonight. Will you try it?

6. Next year, the university _____(change) its entrance requirements.
7. We _____(move) to the new campus in 2010.
8. _____(you/ come) camping with our club on Saturday?
9. _____(you/ go) to Canada for your vacation?
10. Our friends _____(meet) us in front of the Sears department store.
11. Miss Brown _____(make) a new list tonight.
12. We _____(ask) a policeman which road to take.
13. My wife _____(call) on you tomorrow.
14. I _____(have) my lunch at twelve o'clock.
15. He _____(be) here on Wednesday.
16. He _____(come) at two o'clock tomorrow.
17. The new park _____(cover) a very great area.
18. We _____(know) the answer tomorrow.
19. I hope we _____(meet) him tomorrow.
20. When the thermometer is below zero water _____(freeze).
21. We _____(go) for a long walk soon.
23. A lift _____(take) us to the top floor of the hotel.
24. I am afraid it _____(be) quite impossible.
25. I'm sure they _____(understand) your problem.

Bài 6. Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. on/ May/ Jan/ be/ will/ SUNDY/ 25th / 13
2. call/ six/ will/ I/ after/ o'clock/ again/her.
3. you/ free/ morning/ be/ will/ tomorrow?
4. Ho Chi Minh city/ her/ visit/ next year/ will/ parents.
5. go/her/ we/ birthday/ will/ party/ to.

Động từ khuyết thiếu “might” (có thể)

1. Động từ khuyết thiếu “might” (có thể)

Might là động từ khuyết thiếu do đó nó không cần chia theo các ngôi và luôn cần một động từ nguyên thể không “to” đi đằng sau/

Thể	Thể khẳng định	Thể phủ định
Cấu trúc	S + might + V ...	S + might not/mightn't +
Chức năng	Dùng để nói về những hành động, sự việc có thể xảy ra trong tương lai nhưng không chắc chắn.	Dùng để nói về những hành động, sự việc không thể xảy ra trong tương lai nhưng không chắc chắn.
Ví dụ;	She might come here. (Có thể cô ấy đến đây) Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It might rain later. (Nhớ mang theo ô khi bạn ra ngoài. Trời có thể mưa)	It might not be true. (Có thể điều đó không đúng) There might not be a meeting on Friday because the director is ill). (Buổi họp ngày thứ sáu có thể không diễn ra bởi vì ông giám đốc bị ốm).

2. Phân biệt May và Might

	Might	May
Chức năng	Đều được dùng để nói khả năng của một sự việc	
Khả năng xảy ra	Diễn tả khả năng xảy ra thấp (dưới 50%)	Diễn tả khả năng xảy ra cao (trên 50%)
Ví dụ	She is a very busy, but I hope she	I may go to Sai gon tomorrow.

	might join us tomorrow.	
--	-------------------------	--

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG SƠ BẢN

Bài 7. Chọn một động từ thích hợp và sử dụng cấu trúc “might + V” để hoàn thành các câu sau:

Bite break need rain slip wake

1. Take an umbrella with you when you go out. It _____ later.
2. Don't make too much noise. You _____ the baby.
3. Be careful of that dog. It _____ you.
4. I don't think we should throw that letter away. We _____ it later.
5. Be careful. The footbath is very icy. You _____
6. Don't let the children play in this room. They _____ something.

Bài 8. Viết câu dưới đây theo cách khác, sử dụng “might” hoặc “may”

Ví dụ : Perhaps Helen is in her office ---> She might be in her office.

Perhaps Helen isn't in her office --> She might not be in her office.

1. Perhaps Helen is busy.
2. Perhaps she is working.
3. I'm not sure that Liz will come to the party.
4. Perhaps she wants to be alone.
5. perhaps she was ill yesterday.
6. I'm not sure that Sue will be able to come out with us this evening.
7. Perhaps she went home early.
8. I'm not sure that I'll go out this evening.
9. perhaps she had to go home early.
10. Perhaps she was working yesterday.
11. perhaps she doesn't want to see me.
12. Perhaps she isn't working today.
13. I'm not sure that we'll get tickets for the concert.
14. Perhaps she wasn't feeling well yesterday.

Bài 9. Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành một câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. be/ may/ python/ sleeping/ the/
2. An/ become/explore/ might/ she/
3. anyone/ can/ he/ laugh make.
4. plan/ may/ with/ agree/ this/ she.

5. happy/ may/ be/ about/ what/. They/ happened/not.

6. go/ might/ a/ see/ doctor/.

7. work/ might/ go/ tomorrow/ ./ I/ not/ to

8. not/ to/ party/. Sue/ might/ come/ the

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 10. Đọc và điền động từ thích hợp thì tương lai đơn vào chỗ trống để hoàn thành câu.

1. Last year, I traveled to France. Next year, I _____ to Italy.
2. Last year, he was a student, next year he _____ a doctor.
3. Yesterday, we ate chicken, tomorrow we _____ rice.
4. Ten years ago, there were no mobile phones. In a few years' time there _____ vision phones everywhere.
5. On Monday I spent ten euros. Next Friday I _____ only five.
6. On Monday I studied Maths, tomorrow I _____ history.
7. Last week he knew a little of the story. Next week he _____ all the truth.
8. Yesterday you felt ill, but tomorrow you _____ a lot better.
9. Last year, she bought a new computer. Next year, she _____ a new DVD player.
10. Yesterday she took a taxi. Tomorrow she _____ the bus.

Bài 11. Nối câu ở cột A với câu ở cột B sao cho phù hợp.

Cột A	Cột B
1. You should take an umbrella	a. It might be cold
2. You shouldn't sunbathe too much	b. It might be good for your skin
3. You shouldn't drive too fast	c. It might be good for your ears
4. You shouldn't smoke	d. You might have an accident
5. You shouldn't listen to rock music with headphones	e. You might have health problems.
6. You should wear a thick jumper	f. It might rain.

Bài 12. Chọn và điền từ thích hợp để hoàn thành câu dưới đây

Must don't have to might should mustn't shouldn't

1. You _____ drive on the pavement. It's illegal.
2. You _____ say that. It's not nice.
3. I _____ go to work tomorrow because it's a public holiday.
4. I _____ buy this CD, I'm not sure.
5. You _____ eat more vegetables. They're good for you.
6. You _____ be 18 before you can buy alcohol.

Bài 13. Hoàn thành các câu dưới đây, sử dụng May(not) và might(not).

1. There are some dark clouds in the sky.(may)
2. It's nine- thirty and Jack feels tired (might)
3. My class start soon, but I'm not sure where the classroom is (may not)
4. Sarah has soem money and she is at a clothing store(might)
5. Kelly and Jenny are friends but they live in different cities. They are both traveling to Washington this summer(may)
6. It's cold outside, but James isn't wearing a jacket(might)
7. My brother is at a restaurant and he feels a little hungry(may)
8. I should go to work today, but I feel a little sick(might not)
9. perhaps Susan know the address.(may)
10. It's possible that Joanna didn't receive my message(might)

Bài 14. Đọc đoạn văn sau và chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất.

I'm in the hospital! I've broken my leg! But don't worry. I'll be all right. I've been here since last Sunday. I had an accident at a football match. I tried to kick the ball but I kicked the goal post! The pain was quite bad, so dad brought me to the hospital the same day.

I had a small operation three days ago. The nurse and doctors have been really nice, but the food's disgusting. I prefer mom's cooking.

1. Where is the writer?
 A. He's going on a vacation
 B. He's at home
 C. He's in the hospital
 D. He's at school
2. What has happened to him?
 A. he has had a cold
 B. He has a headache
 C. He has had an accident
 D. A & C are correct
3. Who brought him to the hospital?
 A. mom
 B. dad
 C. his friend
 D. A & B are correct
4. What does the word 'disgusting' in line 6 mean?
 A. delicious
 B. good
 C. healthy
 D. awful
5. Which of the following is not true?
 A. The writer has broken his leg because he kicked the goal post.
 B. He was brought to the hospital last Sunday.
 C. He doesn't like the nurse and the doctors there.
 D. He had a small operation and he will be all right.

C. EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 10

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently.

1. A. farm
 B. warn
 C. park
 D. garden
2. A. orange
 B. cabbage
 C. lemonade
 D. sausage
3. A. chest
 B. lunch
 C. bench
 D. school
4. A. lettuce
 B. tube
 C. music
 D. beautiful
5. A. noodles
 B. shoulders
 C. packets
 D. tomatoes

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently.

1. A. weak
 B. meat
 C. tea
 D. ahead
2. A. book
 B. cook
 C. door
 D. look
3. A. take
 B. hand
 C. lake
 D. cake
4. A. lip
 B. light
 C. like
 D. ride
5. A. evening
 B. well
 C. leg
 D. left
6. A. thing
 B. they
 C. there
 D. than
7. A. fruit
 B. turn
 C. full
 D. blue
8. A. open
 B. close
 C. clock
 D. photo
9. A. city
 B. car
 C. copy
 D. correct
10. A. watch
 B. write
 C. window
 D. wait

III. Choose the best option for each sentence.

1. Young people _____ obey their parents.
 A. must
 B. will
 C. may
 D. ought to
2. Laura, you and the kids just have dinner without waiting for me. I _____ work very hard today.
 A. can
 B. should
 C. may
 D. would
3. I _____ be delighted to show you round the factory.
 A. ought to
 B. would
 C. might
 D. can
4. Leave early so that you _____ miss the bus.
 A. didn't
 B. shouldn't
 C. won't
 D. mustn't
5. Jenny's engagement ring is enormous! It _____ have cost a fortune.
 A. must
 B. will
 C. might
 D. should

6. You _____ to write them today.
A. should B. had C. must D. ought
7. I hope I _____ find it.
A. will B. could C. shall D. must
8. Unless he runs he _____ catch the train.
A. will B. wouldn't C. mustn't D. won't
9. _____ you be in Rome tonight?
A. Will B. Might C. May D. Maybe
10. We _____ have time to help you tomorrow.
A. may B. will C. must D. could
12. "_____ you hand me that pair of scissors, please?"
A. May B. Shall C. Will D. Should
12. Don't phone Ann now. She _____ be having lunch.
A. might B. can C. must D. has to
13. In the future, machines _____ all the work for us.
A. are doing B. will do C. were doing D. do
14. Every day, Mr. Tuan _____ in the fields from 6 am to 4 pm.
A. worked B. work C. is working D. works
15. When _____ Vietnamese people celebrate the New Year?
A. will B. are C. do D. is
16. Ba is in his room. He _____ the guitar now.
A. was playing B. played C. is playing D. will play
17. Next month is Lien's birthday. She _____ some of her friends to her birthday party.
A. invite B. invites C. is going to invite D. invited
18. John Robinson is an English teacher. He _____ for an apartment in Ha Noi for his family now.
A. looks B. is looking C. looked D. will look
19. "_____ this week?" "No, she's on holiday."
A. Is Susan working B. Does Susan work
C. Does work Susan D. Has Susan worked
20. I'm _____ with the result.
A. please B. pleasing C. pleasant D. pleased
21. _____ I carry that bag for you? Thanks.
A. Do B. Shall C. Will D. Would
22. Our new car is smaller, so it uses _____ petrol.
A. more B. fewer C. less D. little
23. My birthday is _____ February 2nd.
A. in B. on C. at D. since
24. Lan is very hungry. She wants some _____.
A. ice- cream B. coffee C. noodles D. lemonade
25. Are you a teacher _____ an engineer?
A. and B. but C. or D. so

IV. Complete the sentence with *MIGHT* or *MIGHT NOT*.

- I'm tired. I.....go to bed early tonight.
- He left the office very late so hebe home for dinner.
- There are a lot of clouds in the sky so it.....rain later.
- She didn't pass her driving test so she.....be happy.
- They're a very good team. Theywin the championship this year.

V. Give the correct form of the verbs.

- How many languages Hoa (speak)_____? - Well, two languages.
- She always (borrow)_____my bike.

3. My English class (start)_____ at 7.15.
4. Look! Somebody (climb)_____ up the tree.
5. You (like)_____ music?
6. He must (get up)_____ early.
7. Nam (not do)_____ his homework now.
8. My mum is going to (be)_____ here tomorrow.
9. How often you (take)_____ a shower? - I take a shower every day.
10. They (be)_____ staying at home now.

VI. Fill in the blank with a suitable preposition.

1. My mother is washing the dishes.....the kitchen.
2. My sister's birthday is.....October 15th.
3. She's putting her book and her pens.....the table.
4. The weather Ho Chi Minh City is warm today.
5. Is that building.....of the library?
6. Keep to the.....of the road. The right-hand side is so crowded with the vendors.
7. He's waiting for her.....the bus stop.
8. Take the desks and chairs.....the classroom.
9. The train leaves.....half past ten.
10. What does Ba do..... school? - He plays soccer.

VII. Fill in the blank with a suitable phrase from the box.

modern fridge

wireless TV

dishwasher

hi-tech robots

smart washing machine

1. We will use ato wash all the dishes and containers after meal.
2. A.....will wash dirty clothes and make them ready for you to put on.
- 3will understand what we say and will do all things around the house.
4. We will watch TV programmes from the others countries by using
5. Do you think a will choose suitable food for our meal?

VIII. Fill in the blank with the words in the box.

gets

much

a

goes

breakfast

Sundays

brother

at

small

teaches

Mr John is (1) teacher. He teaches in a.....(2) school in London. In the morning, he (3) up at seven o'clock. He has (4) and drinks a glass of milk. Then he (5) to work. He.....(6) his pupils French. He has lunch at school. He goes home (7) one o'clock in the afternoon. He doesn't work on Saturdays and(8); he goes to the cinema, or reads stories. He likes books very (9). He has a sister in Oxford and a (10) in London.

- 1.....; 2.....; 3.....; 4.....; 5.....;
6.....; 7.....; 8.....; 9.....; 10.....;

IX. Read the passage.

"This is our house. It's big. There are four rooms in the house: a sitting-room, my parents' room, my room and a kitchen. My parents' room is big but my room isn't. In my room, there is a door and a window. There is an old bed, a table and there are two chairs. There are some books on the table".

A. Choose T (True) or F (False)

- 1The house is big.
- 2The big room is his father's and mother's room.
- 3His room is big.
- 4There is a door in his room.
- 5There are two windows in his room.
- 6The bed in his room is new.
- 7There are some books on the chair.

B. Answer the questions.

1. How many rooms are there in his house?

.....

2. What are they?

.....

3. Is there an old bed in his room?

.....

X. Write the question with WILL for each situation.

1. Mrs. Robinson will go shopping. (What/ she/ buy)

.....

2. They are meeting Paul at the station. (When/ he/ arrive)

.....

3. We won't have a meeting on Thursday. (When/ you/ have/ a meeting)

.....

4. We will go to the cinema. (Where/ you/ go)

.....

5. My parents will go to Hanoi this summer. (How/ they/ travel)

.....

XI. Write the sentences with WILL, using the given words or phrases.

1. my mother/ make/ a big meal/ tonight

.....

2. I/ finish/ work/ 6 p.m

.....

3. I /not have/ a birthday party/ this year.

.....

4. you / meet/ Lan/ tonight?

.....

5. we/ take/ our cousins/ holiday/ us.

.....

6. my friends/ not come/ tonight.

.....

7. he/ catch/ the train/ London/ 9 o'clock.

.....

8. I/ not come/ class/ tomorrow.

.....

9. my grandmother/ visit/ us/ Saturday.

.....

XII. Find and correct the mistakes.

1. I don't want play volleyball in the afternoon.

2. Would you like drinking orange juice?

3. We are go to play soccer next Sunday.

4. It is very hot on the summer, so we often go swimming.

5. Peter doesn't as tall as Henry.

TEST 2 UNIT 10

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. living B. wireless

C. hi-tech

D. nice

2. A. robot B. go

C. no

D. not

3. A. space B. located

C. lake

D. cottage

4. A. machine B. cheap

C. watch

D. children

5. A. surround B. ocean

C. space

D. house

II. Choose the correct answers.

11. Super cars will _____ water in the future.
A. go by B. run at C. run on D. travel by
12. The robot will _____ of the flowers in the garden.
A. take care B. take note C. be careful D. carry
13. The house will have a super smart TV to _____ the e-mails.
A. send and post B. send and receive C. get and take D. receive and get
14. _____ pencils and paper, every student will have a computer .
A. By B. Instead C. Instead of D. At
15. _____ We might have a _____ TV to watch TV programmes from space.
A. wireless B. remote C. automatic D. local
16. I would like to have my house by _____. so we can see the beach from my window
A. the mountains B. the city C. the sea D. the countryside
17. A hi-tech robot will help us _____ children while we are away.
A. look out B. look at C. look after D. look in
18. We might have robots _____ our meals.
A. cook B. to cook C. cooking D. to cooking
19. I might have a smart phone _____ the Internet.
A. surf B. to surf C. surfing D. to surfing
20. We also watch films _____ smart phones.
A. in B. at C. on D. to
21. "Do you think we will _____ holiday to the Moon?"
A. go B. go on C. go on the D. go for
22. "Will you have a car _____ can fly into space?"
A. it B. this C. what D. that
23. We will use special cards to _____ the doors and _____ the engine.
A. open - stop B. open - start C. control - stop D. drive - start
24. "Do you think that our houses will be _____ space?"
A. in B. on C. at D. to
25. Our future houses will use _____ energy, and they are very friendly to the environment.
A. sun B. sunny C. solar D. lunar
26. We will have more robots _____ they can help us do housework and protect our houses.
A. so B. because C. so that D. although
27. A super smart TV will help us _____ goods from the supermarket.
A. take B. buy C. carry D. order
28. We will have a robot in the garden _____ the flowers and the dogs and cats.
A. cut - take B. water - feed C. feed - take D. water - to wash
29. With a smart watch, you will _____ your friends in other countries.
A. speak B. talk C. say D. contact
30. Robots will help us do the housework such as _____ the floors, _____ meals and so on.
A. clean - cook B. to clean - to cook C. cleaning - cooking D. cleaning - to cook

III. Fill in each blank with a suitable phrase from the box.

modern fridge wireless TV dishwasher
 hi-tech robots smart washing machine

1. We will use a _____ to wash all the dishes and containers after a meal.
2. A _____ will wash dirty clothes and make them ready for you to put on.
3. _____ will understand what we say and will do all things around the house.
4. We will watch TV programmes from other countries by using _____.
5. Do you think _____ will choose suitable food for our meals?

IV. **Complete the sentences with the verbs from the box in the correct form with "will".**

be do drive go grow
 listen like speak wear win

In the year 2040...

1. people _____ on Mars.
2. we _____ flying cars.
3. people _____ computers in their clothes.
4. robots _____ all our homework.
5. families _____ food in their homes.
6. the world _____ a clean and happy place.
7. we _____ every language in the world by using special computers.
8. the USA _____ the football World Cup.
9. young people _____ to strange music.
10. some people _____ to the Moon for their holidays.

V. **Complete the sentences with *might* or *might not*.**

1. I'm tired. I _____ go to bed early tonight.
2. He left the office very late so he _____ be home for dinner.
3. There are a lot of clouds in the sky so it _____ rain later.
4. She didn't pass her driving test so she _____ be happy.
5. They're a very good team. They _____ win the championship this year.

VI. **Match the two halves of the sentence. Write the answers in the left blanks.**

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. It might rain | a. and I might say 'yes'. |
| 2. I have a headache | b. so I might not eat anything. |
| 3. I need a new dress | c. so I might not go to the party. |
| 4. I quite like Kaiser Chiefs | d. so I might go shopping tomorrow. |
| 5. I drank a lot of coffee this morning | e. so take a coat. |
| 6. I don't feel very hungry | f. and I might not want to see it again. |
| 7. I've seen this film | g. and I might buy their new CD. |
| 8. He asked me to marry him | h. so I might not sleep well tonight. |

VII. **Choose the correct word.**

1. I'll leave early so *will/ won't* be late.
2. He's faster than me so I don't think I *will/ won't* win the race.

3. It *will/ won't* be cold so take a warm coat.
4. It's a secret so promise you *will/ won't* tell anyone.
5. It's his first day at school so he *will/ won't* know anybody.
6. I'll get the news tomorrow so I *will/ won't* phone and tell you.
7. She's intelligent. She *will/ won't* be a scientist one day.
8. The sky's really blue so I don't think it *will/ won't* rain this afternoon.

VIII. Complete the following sentences with "will", using the verbs given in the box.

<i>borrow</i>	<i>have</i>	<i>wear</i>	<i>give</i>	<i>visit</i>
<i>invite</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>buy</i>	<i>write</i>	<i>see</i>

41. I _____ some close friends to my birthday party.
42. We _____ a play at the ABC Theater.
43. He _____ chess in the Youth Club.
44. Tom _____ some bread at the baker's.
45. I _____ some books from the library.
46. She _____ a letter to her friend.
47. We _____ our grandparents next weekend.
48. They _____ their children toys at Christmas.
49. They _____ their holiday in Vung Tau.
50. She _____ a blue dress at her sister's wedding.

IX. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

When life changes so fast, the family life will change, too. So what will a family be (61) _____ after a hundred years? We can't have the correct answers. Parents will have (62) _____ babies. They can even choose their child's hair or eye colour. The mother will be busy but she will get help (63) _____ some friendly house robots. When the family go out together, they will travel on flying cars. These cars will be much faster and there will be no traffic jams (64) _____ each flying car can have its own way. There will be love and (65) _____ between the family members.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. enjoy | B. like | C. as | D. so |
| 2. A. healthier | B. healthiest | C. health | D. healthful |
| 3. A. with | B. of | C. at | D. from |
| 4. A. so | B. because | C. although | D. but |
| 5. A. care | B. careful | C. careless | D. carefully |

X. Read the passage carefully, and then choose the correct answers.

In the future, people will build houses on the moon. The best place for houses in a moon town will be underground. Underground houses will be safe, and the temperatures will not be very high during daytime and not very low at night.

Moon homes may be balloons with oxygen, and people will wear oxygen masks when they are away from home because the moon has no air around it. The house might have beds, tables, and chairs, so people will sleep, eat, and work in their home. Moon-house building will be easy.

1. In a moon town, what is the best place for house?

A. a balloon	B. on the ground	C. underground	D. in the air
---------------------	-------------------------	-----------------------	----------------------
2. Which of the following is true?

A. The people on the moon will not leave their homes.

- B. The people on the moon will wear oxygen masks when they leave their homes.
 - C. The moon homes are very hot during daytime.
 - D. The temperatures will be very high during daytime and very low at night.
3. Why do people need oxygen when they stay on the moon?
- A. Because the moon is too large.
 - B. Because the moon houses are full of air.
 - C. Because people sleep, eat, and work outside their houses.
 - D. Because the moon has no air.
4. How comfortable are the houses on the moon?
- A. They have furniture for people to sleep, eat, or work.
 - B. They have many balloons.
 - C. They don't have any furniture.
 - D. They have all kinds of furniture.
5. In the writer's opinion, will people build houses on the moon?
- A. No, they can't.
 - B. They might not do it.
 - C. Of course, they will.
 - D. People only think so.

XI. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D for each of the gaps to complete the following text.

Our future house will be on the ocean. It will be surrounded by tall trees and blue sea. But we only have salt water in the ocean. We need fresh water for (1)_____ and for growing food (2)_____ farms.

Ocean water is too salty (3)_____. It is also too salty for watering plants. We must have the (4)_____ to make fresh water from salty water. We should be (5)_____ not to waste water.

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. drink | B. to drink | C. drinking | D. to drinking |
| 2. A. on | B. at | C. in | D. into |
| 3. A. drink | B. to drink | C. drinking | D. for drink |
| 4. A. things | B. suggestions | C. ways | D. ideas |
| 5. A. careful | B. careless | C. carefully | D. carelessly |

XII. Read the passage carefully, and then choose the correct answers.

MY DREAM SCHOOL

In the future, schools will be better. Computers will be much quicker and we might have pencils which write for us! All the students will have their own computers.

When there is a history lesson, the computers will show important events. The students will be dressed up as the characters from the period they are studying. There will be **hover** boards in the playground, and students will come to school by **hover** cars.

Every child will have a robot like themselves. The robots will have to go to school while the students sit at home controlling them in front of their computers. The robots will have laser pens and the student will have laser ink pens.

The classroom will be floating, and the tables and chairs will, too. There will be no homework, and teachers won't take away the toys.

1. The student wants all of the following but not_____.
- A. having laser ink pens
 - B. going to school
 - C. staying at home controlling a robot
 - D. having a robot like himself

2. In history lessons, the student wants the computer to_____.
A. show important people in history events
B. have new games
C. show history events and the student will be one of the important characters
D. find all information about the events from the Internet
3. If the history lesson today is about ancient Egypt, the student will_____.
A. watch films about Egypt on the computer
B. become the queen
C. get dressed like the queen
D. see things and houses at that time
4. The student wants to have_____.
A. floating classrooms **B.** no homework
C. toys in the classroom **D.** all A, B, and C
5. The word "**hover**" in paragraph 2 means_____.
A. colourful **B.** flying **C.** moving **D.** large

XIII. Read the text and match the machines (1-6) with the things they do (a-i). Three machines match with two things.

My dream smart home ...

The bedroom: When I go to bed, the smart bed automatically gets warm. When I am asleep, it controls the temperature. In the morning, when I wake up, my robots makes me a cup of tea. I drink the tea in bed and then get up.

The bathroom has a smart shower. When my sister is in the shower, it stops after five minutes and says to her, "Your brother wants to use the bathroom now." The smart mirror says nice things to me like, "Your hair is great today!"

The kitchen has a smart fridge. It orders food from the Internet. My smart fridge orders food for all my family and it knows our favourite food. It talks to my family. It says, "Don't eat that, it's John's!"

The living room: The smart TV knows what I like and it finds things that I want to watch. It doesn't listen to other people.

My smart robot: My smart robot looks after the dog. It gives him food and it takes him out for exercise.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Smart bed _____ | a. It orders our food. |
| 2. Smart mirror _____ | b. It speaks to my sister |
| 3. Smart shower _____ | c. It looks after my dog. |
| 4. Smart fridge _____ | d. It controls the temperature |
| 5. Smart TV _____ | e. It speaks to me. |
| 6. Smart robot _____ | f. It stops after five minutes. |
| g. It doesn't listen to other people. | |
| h. It makes me a cup of tea. | |
| i. It speaks to my family. | |

XIV. Read the text, and then answer the questions.

Imagine the future...

In 20 years, every thing will be different. Computers will talk to all the machines in our kitchen. Fridges will have computers, too. You won't go to the supermarket to buy food. You will tell the fridge what you want to eat and the fridge will know what food to buy. Your fridge will talk to the computer at the supermarket. After that, the food will arrive at your house. How will it come? It won't be quick. A teenager will cycle to your house with your food!

Will you know what will happen in the future? No one really knows, but it's great to imagine!

1. When will everything be different?
2. What will computers do in the kitchen?
3. What will fridges have in the future?
4. Why don't we need to go to the supermarket to get food?
5. How can food arrive at our house?

XV. Write the sentences with "will", using the words/ phrases given.

1. My mother/ make/ a big meal/ tonight.
2. I/ finish/ work/ 6 p.m.
3. I/ not have/ a birthday party/ this year.
4. You/ meet/ Lan/ tonight?
5. We/ take/ our cousins/ holiday/ us.
6. My friends/ not come/ tonight.
7. He/ catch/ the train/ London/ 9 o'clock.
8. I/ not come/ class/ tomorrow.
9. My grandmother/ visit/ us/ Saturday.
10. You/ stay/ home/ this weekend?

TEST 3 UNIT 10

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. a. wireless | b. fridge | c. hi-tech | d. appliance |
| 2. a. <u>U</u> FO | b. <u>f</u> uture | c. poll <u>u</u> te | d. st <u>u</u> dent |
| 3. a. s <u>p</u> ace | b. <u>d</u> raw | c. <u>a</u> utomatic | d. m <u>o</u> re |
| 4. a. m <u>a</u> chine | b. hi- <u>t</u> ech | c. l <u>o</u> cate | d. <u>c</u> able |
| 5. a. watch <u>e</u> d | b. dropp <u>e</u> d | c. wash <u>e</u> d | d. travel <u>e</u> d |

II. Choose the best answer a, b, c or d to complete the sentence.

1. Many people are interested in living_____the planet Mars.
a. in b. on c. at d. by
2. Will robots look_____the elderly and children?
a. for b. at c. into d. after
3. In the future, we'll live in a hi-tech house on_____.
a. moon b. a moon c. an moon d. the moon
4. There will be a helicopter on the roof_____I can fly to school.

- a. so that b. although c. because d. in order
5. A smart_____will keep track of your food stocks and suggest recipes based on food items you already have.
a. television b.fridge c. dishwasher d. clock
6. We_____have flying cars in 2050, so there will probably be fewer cars on our roads.
a. can b.should c. must d. might
7. A trip to Mars sounds amazing,_____I would not like to live there!
a. but b.so c. and d. because
8. People_____on Mars someday, but it is too expensive to travel there now.
a. live b.are living c. will live d. have lived
9. _____will your future house be? - I'm not sure. It might be in the mountains.
a. What type b.What c. Where d. How far
10. 'The car of the future will probably run on water.' '_____',
a. Good job! b.How fantastic! c. Good idea! d. Well done!

III. Complete the sentences with a suitable word. The first letter is given.

1. A s_____is a very tall building in a city.
2. In the future r_____will take care of children, and do housework.
3. U_____are believed to be spacecrafts from another planet.
4. A w_____TV won't need any wires or cables.
5. S_____energy is power or heat that comes from the sun.
6. My future house will be on the o_____. It will be surrounded by islands and blue sea.
7. In the future, there will be more s_____travel to send people to Mars or to the Moon.
8. You can s_____the Internet on a smart TV.

IV. Match each word with its definition.

- | | |
|---------------|---|
| 1. houseboat | a. a very large impressive house |
| 2. skyscraper | b. a large vehicle with beds and equipment for cooking and washing |
| 3. UFO | c. a boat that people can live in |
| 4. motor home | d. a set of rooms for living in, usually on one floor of a building |
| 5. palace | e. a strange object seen in the sky that is thought to be a spacecraftfrom another planet |
| 6. apartment | f. a very tall modern building |

V. Complete the sentences with the appliances in the box.

wireless TV automatic dishwasher washing machine
smart alarm clock hi-tech fridge robots supercars

1. In the future,_____will take care of the children and do all housework.
2. A_____of the future will tell you what to have for dinner.
3. A_____helps us watch TV programmes from space.
4. All you need to do is stick the dirty dishes in the rack; the_____will automatically fill up and do its thing.
5. This_____uses artificial intelligence to program your day.
6. The_____of the future will wash, dry and fold your clothes.
7. Future_____will be electric, self-repairing, but not self-driving.

VI. Complete the sentence with will or won't and one of the verbs in the box.

be pay go watch cure use check recognize

According to technology experts the products below will be most successful by the year2020.

1. New medicines_____diseases like Parkinson's and Alzheimer's.
2. A personal computer_____your voice and follow your commands.
3. Cars_____petrol or diesel, but other fuels like electricity, and natural gas.
4. We_____TV on large, flat screen.
5. Computers_____necessary because your TV will do everything.
6. We_____for everything with an electronic card.
7. We_____to the doctor so often.
8. Robots at home_____our health and warn us of the problems.

VII. Underline the correct answer.

1. Don't leave your keys on the table. You *will* / *won't* forget it.
2. Susan *will* / *won't* be very happy if she passes the exam.
3. Fra afraid I *will* / *won't* be able to come tomorrow.
4. I'm told you are ill. I hope you *will* / *won't* feel better again.
5. I'm sure you *will* / *won't* like that film. It's very frightening. Let's choose another one.
6. Turn on your laptop tonight We *will* / *won't* chat a little bit.
7. You needn't wear your cap. It *will* / *won't* be cold today.
8. I am really tired. I *will* / *won't* have a rest.

VIII. Complete the sentences with *might* or *might not*.

1. The sky looks cloudy. ~ It_____rain.
2. I_____watch the football game on Sunday; I am too busy.
3. You should ask him. He_____know Susan's telephone number.
4. Jenny_____be in the office - I can't reach her at home.
5. I have a lot of homework to do, so I_____go to her party this weekend.
6. Where will you travel next year? ~ We_____go to Egypt, but we're not sure yet.
7. Don't go any closer - it_____be safe.
8. You should introduce yourself; he_____remember you.
9. We_____visit my cousin in Australia next month but we don't know yet.
10. She_____be on time for work because of the public transport strike.

IX. Complete the sentences with an appropriate preposition.

1. Cars of the future run_____electricity.
2. Phong's dream house looks_____a UFO.
3. We'll live_____a hi-tech house_____the moon.
4. Robots at home will help people_____household chores.
5. Will your future house be_____space?
6. Will robots take care_____children?
7. _____the future I will travel to the Moon_____super car.
8. We might have flying cars_____2050.

X. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. I think people_____ (live) on Mars someday.
2. _____ (you/ ever live) in a smart house?
3. I_____ (show) you the garden when it stops raining.
4. Phong_____ (draw) his future house at the moment.
5. People in the future_____ (not drive) normal cars. They _____ (have) flying cars.
6. Would you like_____ (live) on the Moon?
7. You never know what might_____ (happen) in the future.
8. Robots will do work around the house such as_____ (cook) meals and _____ (clean) the floors.

XI. Circle and correct the mistakes in these sentences.

1. What are you doing? ~ I draw my future house. _____
2. My future house will be in the ocean. _____
3. Robots will help people doing the housework. _____
4. What will your future house be? ~ It'll be by the sea. _____
5. One day, we might to travel to the moon for holiday. _____
6. My future house will look like an UFO and it'll be in the mountains. _____
7. Harry think we might have robots take care of our children. _____
8. My dream house will be surrounding by blue sea. _____

XII. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Are you tired (1)_____the colour or pattern of your walls? In a smart home, you won't have to (2)_____them. The walls will actually be digital screens, like computer or TV screens.

A computer network will link these walls with (3)_____else in your house. Called "ambient intelligence," this computer "brain" will control your entire house. It will also adapt to your (4)_____. Your house will learn about your likes and dislikes. It will then use that knowledge to control the environment. For example, it will set the heat in the house to your (5)_____temperature. It will turn on the shower at the right temperature. It will also darken the windows at night and lighten them when it's (6)_____to wake up.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. a. with | b. of | c. in | d. by |
| 2. a. build | b. cover | c. pull | d. repaint |
| 3. a. thing | b. everything | c. anything | d. nothing |
| 4. a. preferring | b. preferable | c. preferably | d. preferences |
| 5. a. favourite | b. terrible | c. high | d. clearly |
| 6. a. occasion | b. way | c. time | d. order |

XIII. Read this passage carefully, then choose the correct answers.

Technology will allow homes in the future to be "smart." Appliances will communicate with each other - and with you. Your stove, for example, will tell you when your food is cooked and ready to eat. Refrigerators will suggest recipes based on food items you already have.

Futurologists predict that many homes will have robots in the future. Robots already do many things such as building cars and vacuuming floors. But scientists today are starting to build friendlier, more intelligent robots that will be able to show feelings with their faces, just like humans. These robots will do work around the house such as cooking and cleaning. They will even take care of children and the elderly.

How soon will this smart home be a reality? There's a good chance it will be a part of your life in 25 or 30 years, perhaps sooner.

- recipe (n): *côngthứcnấuăn*

- futurologist (n): *nhàtronglaihọc*

1. What will make future houses smart?
a. Technology b. Computers c. Humans d. Scientists
2. According to the passage, the fridge of the future will be able to _____
a. keep food fresher and lasting longer.
b. tell you it's time to buy more food.
c. give instructions on how to cook something.
d. look out for out-of-date food.
3. Robots nowadays are widely used in _____
a. house building b. car manufacturing
c. public transportation d. communications technology
4. Scientists are building robots that can _____
a. help take care of elderly people. b. do all household chores.
c. show feelings with their faces. d. all are correct.

5. Which of the followings is NOT mentioned in the passage?
 - a. Homes will be smart in 25 or 30 years time.
 - b. Smart appliances will be able to communicate with you.
 - c. So far robots have already done many things.
 - d. Robots will soon be more intelligent than humans.

XIV. Read the text, then do the tasks.

The home of the future

When you're out of the house, is the fridge on the phone to the supermarket? Is the heating system having a word with the bath? And when you get back home, does the doorknob recognise you and say hello? Probably not, but in the house of the future all this - and more - is possible.

Researchers say that technology will transform your home in ways you can only dream about. Nanotechnology will play an important role. It will clean your windows. Intelligent spoons will check how hot or cold your soup is and the walls will sense if anyone is in your garden.

The next generation of fridges will use the Internet to make sure your food stays fresh and they'll get in touch with the supermarket to order some more and you'll never run out of milk again.

When you are on the way home and feel like a warm bath, all you have to do is sending a text message to the heating system. The heating system warms the water and even runs the bath so that as soon as you walk through the front door, you can jump in and relax.

Welcome to the smart home of the future!

- nanotechnology (n): công nghệ nano (công nghệ chế tạo và sử dụng những thiết bị cực nhỏ)

A. Match the words with their meaning.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| 1. heating system (n) | _____ a. communicate with |
| 2. doorknob (n) | _____ b. discover or find out |
| 3. transform (v) | _____ c. a system for making a building warm |
| 4. sense (v) | _____ d. use up or finish all of something |
| 5. get in touch with (idm) | _____ e. a round handle that you turn to open a door |
| 6. run out of (phr.v) | _____ f. change completely |

B. Decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

1. Houses in the future will be smarter than today's houses.
2. Nanotechnology will help protect your house.
3. The fridge will remind you when to go to the supermarket.
4. You can control your heating system by using text messages.
5. Researchers say a smart house is just a dream.

XV. Write sentences from the cues given, using the simple future tense of the verbs.

My future home/ be/ far away/ the city crowd/ pollutions. It/ be/ located/ near/ small river. It/ be/ cottage/ surrounded/ a lot of/ different/ plants, trees and flowers. I/ have/ large/ library/ my house/ and modern facilities/ like/ the internet connection, satellite phone/ wireless TV/ modern household appliances/ security system. My living room/ be/ large/ and the window/ must/ have/ lovely view.

My future/ houses _____

XVI. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first one.

1. Living on Mars sounds very exciting.
It's _____
2. I've been to this restaurant three times now.
This is _____
3. Computers won't be necessary because your TV will do everything.
You won't _____
4. Maybe Peter won't come to the party tonight.
Peter _____
5. I couldn't phone you because I didn't have your number.
I didn't have your number, _____
6. He began learning English three years ago.
He has _____
7. Very few cities in Vietnam are as rich as Da Nang.
Da Nang is one of the _____
8. Although it was noisy, we continued to study our lesson.
In spite of _____

UNIT 11: OUR GREENER WORLD

A. VOCABULARY

- air pollution	/eər pə'lu:ʃən/ (n):	ô nhiễm không khí
- soil pollution	/sɔɪl pə'lu:ʃən/ (n):	ô nhiễm đất
- deforestation	/di:ˌfɔ:r.ə'steɪ.ʃən/ (n):	nạn phá rừng, sự phá rừng
- noise pollution	/nɔɪz pə'lu:ʃən/ (n):	ô nhiễm tiếng ồn
- water pollution	/'wɔ:tər pə'lu:ʃən/ (n):	ô nhiễm nước
- be in need	/bɪ ɪn nid/ (v):	cần
- caus	e /kɔ:z/ (v):	gây ra
- charity	/'tʃærɪˌtɪ/ (n):	từ thiện
- disappear	/ˌdɪs.ə'piər/ (v):	biến mất
- do a survey	/du ɪ 'sɜ:r veɪ/:	tiến hành cuộc điều tra
- effect	/ɪ'fekt/ (n):	ảnh hưởng
- electricity	/ɪˌlek'trɪsətɪ/ (n):	điện
- energy	/'en.ər.dʒi/ (n):	năng lượng
- environment	/ɪn'vaɪ.rən.mənt/ (n):	môi trường

- exchange	/ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ (v):	trao đổi
- invite	/ɪn'vaɪt/ (v):	mời
- natural	/'nætʃərəl/ (adj):	tự nhiên
- pollute	/pə'lut/ (v):	làm ô nhiễm
- pollution	/pə'lju:ʃən/ (n):	sự ô nhiễm
- president	/'prezɪdənt/ (n):	chủ tịch
- recycle	/rɪ'saɪkəl/ (v):	tái chế
- recycling bin	/rɪ:'saɪ.klɪŋ bɪn/ (n):	thùng đựng đồ tái chế
- reduce	/rɪ'dus/ (v):	giảm
- refillable	/rɪ:'fɪl.ə.bəl/ (adj):	có thể bơm, làm đầy lại
- reuse	/rɪ'ju:z/ (v):	tái sử dụng
- sea level	/'siːlevəl/ (n):	mực nước biển
- swap	/swɑ:p/ (v)	trao đổi
- wrap	/ræp/ (v)	gói, bọc

B. GRAMMAR

Câu điều kiện loại 1

1. Định nghĩa

- Câu điều kiện gồm có hai phần: mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện (if – clause) và mệnh đề chỉ kết quả (result clause).

Ví dụ: If the weather is fine, I will go camping with my friends tomorrow.

(Nếu thời tiết đẹp thì ngày mai tôi sẽ đi cắm trại với bạn của tôi)

- Ở ví dụ trên, mệnh đề “ If the weather is fine” là mệnh đề chỉ điều kiện và mệnh đề “ I will go camping with my friends tomorrow” là mệnh đề chỉ kết quả (mệnh đề chính).

- Mệnh đề IF và mệnh đề chính có thể đứng trước hay sau đều được.

Ví dụ: I will go camping with my friends tomorrow if the weather is fine.

2. Cấu trúc

Chức năng Dùng để diễn tả một hành động có thể xảy ra ở hiện tại hoặc tương lai.

Cấu trúc If + S + V(s/es) + bổ ngữ, S + will + V nguyên mẫu + (bổ ngữ)
(Thì hiện tại đơn) (Thì Tương lai đơn)

Mệnh đề IF dùng thì hiện tại đơn, mệnh đề chính dùng thì tương lai đơn.

Ví dụ - If I have enough money, I will buy a new computer. (Nếu tôi có đủ tiền thì tôi sẽ mua một chiếc máy tính mới.)

- If you work hard, you will make a lot of money. (Nếu bạn làm việc chăm chỉ thì bạn sẽ kiếm được nhiều tiền.)

Lưu ý Unless = If + not

If = Unless + not

Ví dụ:

- If he doesn't do his homework, his mother will complain him.

=> Unless he does his homework, his mother will complain him.

- If you don't send her to the hospital, she will die.

=> Unless you send her to the hospital, she will die.

Có thể dùng các động từ **must, have to, can, may, should** thay cho **will** trong mệnh đề chính.

Ví dụ:

- If it rains heavily, you can stay here. (Nếu trời mưa to thì bạn có thể ở lại đây.)

- If you want to see that film, you must buy a ticket. (Nếu bạn muốn xem bộ phim đó thì bạn phải mua vé.)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Khoanh vào phương án thích hợp để đặt trong các câu điều kiện loại 1 dưới đây.

1. If she (**reads/ read**) in bad light, she will run her eyes.
2. If I find your book, I (**will phone/ could phone**) you at once.
3. I will get angry if you (**make/ will make**) more mistakes.
4. If you don't believe what I said. (**ask/ will ask**) your father.
5. If I study hard, I (**pass/ will pass**) this year's exam.
6. If the weather is fine, we (**go/ will go**) on a picnic.
7. If I (**go/ will go**) to Paris, I will visit the Eiffel Tower.
8. If they don't invite me, I (**don't go/ won't go**).
9. If he (**got/ gets**) my email, he will send the information we need.
10. If she travels to London, she (**will visit/ visits**) the museums.
11. If I (**will get/ get**) the money, I will buy a mobile phone.
12. If you make trouble, I (**will send/ will sent**) you to the principal.
13. If I (**had/ have**) enough time this evening, I will watch a movie.
14. If he has money, he (**will lends/ will lend**) me what I need.
15. If you (**eat/ will eat**) greasy food, you will become fat.
16. If your sister goes to Paris, she (**has/ will have**) a good time.
17. If he (**will do/ does**) that, he will be sorry.
18. If I leave now, I (**will arrive/ arrive**) in New York by 8:00 pm.
19. You (**won't do well/ don't do well**) on your test if you don't study.
20. They won't know the truth if you (**won't tell/ don't tell**) them.
21. If I bake a cake, (**will you/ do you**) have some?
22. If he (**will call/ calls**) you, will you answer the phone?
23. If you don't go to the party, I (**am/ will be**) very upset.
24. If you get a haircut, you (**will look/ look**) much better.

Bài 2: Chọn câu trả lời đúng cho mỗi câu sau.

1. My dog_bark unless it is hungry.
A. don't B. won't
2. Unless you____to go to bed early, we should go out.
A. wants B. want
3. ____you don't slow down, we are going to crash!
A. If B. Unless
4. You cannot go into bars____you are over 18.
A. If B. unless
5. In my country,____you cannot speak English, it's hard to get a good job.
A. if B. unless
6. She'll fail the exam if she____study.
A. if B. doesn't
7. We'll be late____we leave soon.
A. if B. unless
8. ____I am not feeling better tomorrow I will go to the doctor's.
A. Unless B. If
9. ____you do not make the payment in time, your car will be confiscated.
A. If B. Unless
10. You will lose your job____you change your attitude and become friendlier.
A. unless B. If
11. She won't know the truth____you tell it to her.
A. unless B. if
12. ____you arrive early, you'll be able to meet the customers before the meeting.
A. Unless B. If

13. ____ she eats healthy food, she won't lose some weight.
A. Unless B. If
14. They won't arrive on time ____ they finish the work early.
A. unless B. if
15. Will she be able to eat some cake ____ I put eggs in it?
A. unless B. if

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu sau đây theo điều kiện loại 1 của những từ trong ngoặc.

1. If you (send) _____ this letter now, she (receive) _____ it tomorrow.
2. If I (do) _____ this test, I (improve) _____ my English.
3. If I (find) _____ your ring, I (give) _____ it back to you.
4. Peggy (go) _____ shopping if she (have) _____ time in the afternoon.
5. Simon (go) _____ to London next week if he (get) _____ a cheap flight.
6. If her boyfriend (phone/not) _____ today, she (leave) _____ him.
7. If they (study/not) _____ harder, they (pass/not) _____ the exam.
8. If it (rain) _____ tomorrow, I (have to/ not) _____ water plants.
9. You (be able/ not) _____ to sleep if you (watch) _____ this scary film.
10. Susan (can/move/not) _____ into the new house if it (be/not) _____ ready on time.
11. If I (study) _____, I (pass) _____ the exams.
12. If the sun (shine) _____, we (walk) _____ into town.
13. If he (have) _____ a temperature, he (see) _____ the doctor.
14. If my friends (come) _____, I (be) _____ very happy.
15. If she (earn) _____ a lot of money, she (fly) _____ to New York.
16. If we (travel) _____ to London, we (visit) _____ the museums.
17. If you (wear) _____ sandals in the mountains, you (slip) _____ on the rocks.
18. If Rita (forget) _____ her homework, the teacher (give) _____ her low mark.
19. If they (go) _____ to the disco, they (listen) _____ to loud music.
20. If you (wait) _____ a minute, I (ask) _____ my parents.

Bài 4: Viết lại câu sau đây ở dạng câu điều kiện loại 1.

1. He can't go out because he has to study for his exam.
=> If _____
2. She is lazy so she can't pass the exam.
=> If _____
3. He will pay me tonight; I will have enough money to buy a car.
=> If _____
4. He smokes too much; that's why he can't get rid of his cough.
=> If _____
5. She is very shy, so she doesn't enjoy the party.
=> If _____
6. I will get work permit. I will stay for another month.
=> If _____
7. He doesn't take any exercises. He is so unhealthy.
=> If _____
8. We can't get the ticket because I don't have money.
=> If _____
9. Study hard or you won't pass the exam.
=> If _____
10. Don't be impatient or you will make mistakes.
=> If _____

Bài 5: Chọn đáp án đúng để điền vào đoạn văn sau.

South-east Asia (1)_____many attractions, so you could visit many ancient monuments. The attractions range from the beautiful Khmer temples of Angkor Wat to the huge Buddhist temples of Borobudur in Java.

You may be interested (2)_____the traditions of different cultures. You can (3)_____different shows – from colorful dances in Thailand to shadow puppet shows in Indonesia. During these shows, you can listen to and enjoy traditional music.

You may prefer the ocean. There (4) _____a lot of resorts and thousands of kilometers of beaches. You can (5)_____. You can drive and admire colorful corals and fish. You can sail and enjoy healthy outdoor life.

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|------------|------------|
| 1. A. has | B. have | C. having | D. to have |
| 2. A. on | B. in | C. at | D. to |
| 3. A. saw | B. seeing | C. see | D. to see |
| 4. A. is | B. be | C. will be | D. are |
| 5. A. swimming | B. swim | C. to swim | D. swam |

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 11

I. Put the words into two groups (/ a: / and / æ /)

car	start	map	hand	castle	rapid
fat	aren't	park	man	natural	calm
bag	dark	cat	apple	father	stand

/a:/	/æ/

II. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced different.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|----------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>br</u> own | B. <u>no</u> w | C. <u>bo</u> wl | D. <u>ho</u> w |
| 2. A. <u>pa</u> cket | B. <u>eg</u> g | C. <u>le</u> ttuce | D. <u>le</u> mon |
| 3. A. <u>ch</u> est | B. <u>lu</u> rch | C. <u>be</u> nch | D. <u>sch</u> ools |
| 4. A. <u>le</u> ttuce | B. <u>tu</u> be | C. <u>mu</u> sic | D. <u>stu</u> dent |
| 5. A. <u>no</u> odles | B. <u>sh</u> oulders | C. <u>pa</u> ckets | D. <u>to</u> matoes |

III. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from that of the other words in each group.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. mind | B. climb | C. exciting | D. destination |
| 2. A. <u>s</u> ugar | B. <u>s</u> orry | C. <u>s</u> easide | D. <u>s</u> ummer |
| 3. A. <u>b</u> usy | B. <u>w</u> hy | C. <u>h</u> istory | D. <u>f</u> amily |
| 4. A. <u>p</u> age | B. <u>v</u> illage | C. <u>l</u> uggage | D. <u>h</u> eritage |
| 5. A. <u>w</u> hat | B. <u>w</u> hich | C. <u>w</u> here | D. <u>w</u> ho |

IV. Choose the word or phrase that best completes each unfinished sentence.

- If someone _____ into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"
A. comes B. came C. will come D. would come
- If you _____ all of my questions, I _____ anything to help you.
A. don't answer / can't do B. didn't answer/ won't do
C. wouldn't answer/ can't do D. wouldn't answer/ couldn't do
- "Here's my phone number." - "Thanks, I _____ you a call if I _____ some help."
A. will give / will need B. would give/ needed

- C. give/ need D. will give/ need
4. The teacher was absent today, so the class was canceled. If she _____ absent again tomorrow, class _____ tomorrow, too.
- A. is / will cancel B. is/ will be canceled
C. was / would be canceled D. was/ would cancel
5. I won't lend you this money _____ you promise to pay it back.
- A. in case B. if C. otherwise D. unless
6. _____ there are some more ideas, we can end the meeting now.
- A. Unless B. If C. As if D. In case
7. "It's really raining." "Yes. If the weather _____, we'll have to camp somewhere else.
- A. would get worse B. might get worse
C. gets worse D. should get worse
8. If anyone _____, _____ him I _____ back at 9 o'clock.
- A. calls / tell / will be B. called / telling / would be
C. is calling / tells / am D. will call / to tell / am
9. If she asks for money, I _____ her.
- A. will give B. gave C. would give D. would have given
10. If I _____ this exam, I'll go to the university next summer.
- A. pass B. to pass C. had passed D. passed
11. _____ more information, please telephone our main office.
- A. If you will need B. Should you need
C. You should need D. If you needed
12. If Jack refuses to help, we _____ manage without him.
- A. have to B. will have to
C. had to D. are having to
13. I cannot buy a new computer _____ I save enough money.
- A. if B. even if C. unless D. as if
14. You will get a good seat if you _____ first.
- A. come B. came C. have come D. will come
15. We'll be late unless we _____ now.
- A. leave B. don't leave C. had left D. have left
16. We can reuse _____.
- A. water B. air C. noise D. bottles
17. What does "reduce" mean?
- A. using something again B. using something more
C. using something less D. collect something
18. What does "reuse" mean?
- A. using something again B. using something more
C. using something less D. collect something
19. We shouldn't _____ rubbish on the street.
- A. throw B. reuse C. wrap D. turn off
20. Polluted water can make fish _____.
- A. live B. sleep C. grow D. die
21. We can use empty _____ to make pencil boxes.
- A. paper B. bottles C. bulbs D. plastic bag
22. Turn _____ the lights when we go out.
- A. of B. off C. on D. up
23. People should stop using so _____ energy.
- A. more B. less C. many D. much
24. Planting more _____ to reduce pollution.
- A. does B. flowers C. trees D. grass
25. _____ means giving things to people in need.

A. Swap B. Charity C. Reuse D. Recycle

V. **Choose the correct word.**

1. If we **miss/ will miss** the bus, we **take/ will take** the taxi.
2. I **come/ will come** over to your house if you **rent/ will rent** a DVD.
3. They **see/ will see** the new Lara Croft film if they **go/ will go** to the cinema.
4. She **goes/ will go** to the party if you **invite/ will invite** her.
5. You **are/ will be** on time if you **run/ will run**.
6. If he **doesn't stop/ won't stop** smoking, he **has/ will have** problems later.
7. If you **help/ will help** me, I **lend/ will lend** you that Beyonce' CD.
8. If you **don't eat/ won't eat** fruits, you **get/ will get** a cold one day.

VI. **Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tenses.**

1. If I see him, I (give)_____him a lift.
2. The table will collapse if you (stand)_____on it.
3. If he (eat)_____all, he will be full.
4. If I find your passport, I (telephone)_____you at once.
5. The police (arrest)_____him if they catch him.
6. If he (read)_____in bad light, he will ruin his eyes.
7. Someone (steal)_____your car if you leave it unlocked.
8. What will happen if my parachute (not open)_____?
9. If he (wash)_____my car, I'll give him \$10.
10. If she (need)_____a radio, she can borrow me.

VII. **Give the correct form of the words.**

1. Lan (be)_____very tired when she (catch)_____a bad cold two days ago.
2. Everybody (wait)_____for the president in the hall now.
3. You should (go)_____to bed early.
4. I hope you (feel)_____better soon.
5. She needs (eat)_____a lot vegetables and fruits.
6. He (not come)_____to the meeting last week.
7. My father never (take)_____medicine.
8. There (be)_____nobody there when I (arrive)_____yesterday.

VIII. **I identify the one underlined word or phrase that must be changed to make the sentence correct.**

1. If someone came into the store, smile and say, "May I help you?"
A B C D
2. If you try these cosmetics, you look five years younger.
A B C D
3. If you do not understand what were written in the book, you could ask Mr. Pike.
A B C D
4. I will come to meet Mr. Pike and tell him about your problems if you didn't solve them
yourself.
A B C D
5. Sam will not graduate unless he doesn't pass all the tests.
A B C D
6. If there isn't enough food, we couldn't continue our journey.
A B C D
7. Unless you pour oil on water, it will float.
A B C D
8. You haveto take a taxi home if you want to leave now.
A B C D
9. If anyone will phone, tell them I'll be back at 11:00.
A B C D
10. We can hire a minibus if there will be enough people.
A B C D

IX. Complete the passage with the words given in the box.

waste surprised resources recycling ton
labor thrown discussion requires preserved

Ba's class has a (1)_____ on waste paper. His friends are so _____ to learn that every day throughout the world, millions of newspapers and paper bags are (3)_____ away. People are collecting waste paper and (4)_____ it. Making paper (5)_____ a lot of trees and labor. Now if people don't (6)_____ paper, they can save (7)_____ and money. Especially, people can save the natural (8)_____. For every (9)_____ of recycled newsprint, ten trees can be saved. The more paper people save, the more natural resources are (10)_____.

X. Read the text. Each of the sentences has one mistake. Find and correct the mistakes.

AN ECO HOME

John Kangister and his wife, Kathy, live in an interesting house. It's an eco home. Eco homes don't harm the environment. They don't use coal or oil, so they don't produce dangerous gases.

John and Kathy's eco home is in California, USA. It looks like a house from one of *The Lord of the Rings* films. Most of the house is underground. The house was very cheap to build. It has wooden walls and floors. The windows are recycled glass. There are solar panels to make electricity for the lights, DVD players, and computers. John and Kathy get water from a well and they grow vegetables in the mud on top of the house.

Now John and Kathy don't want to live anywhere else. They love their home because it helps the planet greener and it looks fantastic. They think that eco homes are a great idea for everyone.

1. Eco home don't produce dangerous chemicals.
.....
2. Eco homes don't use electricity.
.....
3. The house was expensive to build.
.....
4. The eco home has some floors.
.....
5. John and Kathy grow flowers on top of the house.
.....

XI. Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions.

GETTING BACK TO NATURE

The Little Morocco is a beautiful building. We used stone and mud to build the hotel. There are skylights – windows in the roof to let light in – so we save electricity. The skylights give us light in the day, so we don't use electric lights. We don't use chemicals to clean the rooms because we don't want to damage the environment.

You can walk in the mountains near the hotel and see lots of local wildlife. Enjoy a boat trip on the lake and see the amazing waterfalls, or visit the beautiful caves.

1. What did they use to build the hotel?
.....
2. How can the skylights help us to save electricity?
.....
3. Why don't they use chemicals to clean the rooms?
.....
4. What can you see in the mountains?
.....
5. What can you see when enjoying a boat trip on the lake?
.....

XII. Rewrite these sentences, using an "if" construction.

Ex: I will go there. I will buy you a dog.

→ **If I go there, I will buy you a dog.**

1. He smokes so much, perhaps that's why he can't get rid of his cough,
→
2. She is very shy, that's why she doesn't enjoy parties.
→
3. I haven't the right change so we can't get tickets from the machine.
→
4. They speak French to her, not English, so her English doesn't improve.
→
5. He doesn't work overtime, so he doesn't earn as much as I do.
→
6. My number isn't in the directory so people don't ring me up.
→
7. He is very thin perhaps that's why he feels very cold.
→
8. I'm fat; that's why I can't get through the bathroom's window.
→
9. He doesn't help me, possible because I never ask him for help.
→
10. I can't drive so we can't take the car.
→

TEST 2 UNIT 11

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. <u>c</u> an | B. st <u>a</u> r | C. b <u>a</u> g | D. th <u>a</u> t |
| 2. A. f <u>a</u> r | B. pl <u>a</u> nt | C. pl <u>a</u> n | D. h <u>a</u> t |
| 3. A. pl <u>a</u> stic | B. st <u>a</u> rt | C. st <u>a</u> nd | D. l <u>a</u> nd |
| 4. A. sm <u>a</u> rt | B. ch <u>a</u> nnel | C. c <u>a</u> ncer | D. th <u>a</u> nks |
| 5. A. c <u>a</u> rt | B. h <u>e</u> art | C. c <u>a</u> rd | D. <u>a</u> nimal |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. st <u>a</u> nd | B. h <u>a</u> nd | C. f <u>a</u> ther | D. <u>a</u> pple |
| 2. A. y <u>a</u> rd | B. <u>a</u> ctivity | C. h <u>a</u> d | D. aut <u>a</u> matic |
| 3. A. b <u>a</u> d | B. c <u>a</u> t | C. b <u>a</u> g | D. c <u>a</u> lm |
| 4. A. c <u>a</u> meras | B. f <u>a</u> ntastic | C. p <u>a</u> rt | D. f <u>a</u> ct |
| 5. A. d <u>a</u> rk | B. t <u>r</u> avel | C. c <u>a</u> ncel | D. <u>a</u> ction |

III. Choose the correct answers. of trees.

1. If we _____ waste paper, we will save a lot of trees.
A. repeat B. recycle C. rewrite D. remake
2. _____ If we plant more trees in the schoolyard, the school will become a place.
A. greener B. darker C. dirtier D. more polluted
3. "Why do you often forget to _____ the lights when you go out of the classroom?"
A. turn on B. turn off C. close D. shut down
4. "What can we do _____ air pollution?"
A. reduce B. to reduce C. reducing D. to reducing
5. _____ You can save money while shopping by only buying _____ you need.
A. what B. it C. this D. that

6. "Reduce, reuse, recycle" is said to encourage people to waste less, by using less and using things again, in order to _____ the environment .
A. harm B.damage C.pollute D.protect
7. Please collect all the recyclable materials, and take them to the _____ factory.
A.recycle B.recycled C. recyclable D.recycling
8. This newspaper is made of _____ paper.
A.recycle B.recycled C.old D.waste
9. If we all use _____ bags, we'll help the environment.
A.new B.cheap C.reusable D.reduced
10. These three Rs _____. reduce, reuse, and recycle
A. stand up B. stand for C. ask for D. means
11. If there is a rubbish bin in every class, the classroom will become _____.
A. harmful B. lighter C. dirtier D. cleaner
12. "Don't throw rubbish into the river because you will make it _____."
A. greener B. dirty C. cleaner D. fresher
13. If we use _____ paper, we will save a lot of trees.
A.fewer B.less C.more D.much
14. You should put the food in a reusable box _____ plastic bag.
A. by B.instead of C.because of D.without
15. If people turn off all electric appliances in one hour all over the world, they can save lots of _____.
A.electric B.electrical C.electrician D.electricity
16. It is a good idea to _____ our clothes with our friends or cousins.
A.change B.swap C.turn D.send
17. Next week our class is having a discussion about finding _____ ways to reuse old items before throwing them away.
A.interested B.surprising C.useless D.creative
18. If you have old clothes, will you give them to those _____?
A.needs B.to need C.for needing D.in need
19. My brother and I will give last year's clothes to _____ instead of throwing them away.
A.shop B.people C.charity D survey.
20. "Do you think we should put a _____ bin in every classroom in order to keep it clean?"
A.reusable B.recycled C.recycling D.recyclable

Reduce	Reuse	Recycle
.....		
.....		

.....		
.....		
.....		

IV. Put the words from the box into the correct column. One word can belong to more than one group.

waste	plastic bags	paper waste	old newspapers	bottles
empty cans	rubbish	plastic	rubber	metal
cotton	glass	batteries	old clothes	dirty water
engine oil	ink	kitchen waste	aluminum	iron

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb.

1. If we win the money, we (buy)_____a new house.
2. We (go)_____on holiday if there is time .
3. If we (need)_____some help, we'll ask.
4. She (not write)_____to you if she leaves.
5. If Harry stays with his grandparents, Sally (not be)_____happy.
6. We (do)_____this for you if you want.

VI. Choose the correct word.

1. If we *miss/ will miss* the bus, we *take/ will take* the taxi.
2. If you *don't eat/ won't eat* fruit, you *get/ will get* a cold.
3. If you *help/ will help* me, I *lend/ will lend* you that Beyoncé CD.
4. If he *doesn't stop/ won't stop* smoking, he *has/ will have* problems later.
5. You *are/ will be* on time if you *run/ will run*.
6. She *goes/ will go* to the party if you *invite/ will invite* her.
7. They *see/ will see* the new Lara Croft film if they *go/ will go* to the cinema.
8. I *come/ will come* over to your house if you *rent/ will rent* a DVD.

VII. Match the phrases to form a sentence in the first conditional, and write the answer in each blank.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. If you wear that shirt | a. it'll bite you |
| 2. If you invite her to the cinema | b. will you be at home? |
| 3. If you touch that dog | c. he'll have an accident. |
| 4. If it's hot tomorrow | d. we'll be home by ten. |
| 5. If I phone you at nine | e. you'll look really good. |
| 6. If he drives that car fast | f. will you buy some chocolate for me? |
| 7. If we leave now | g. we'll go to the beach. |
| 8. If I give you some money | h. I'm sure she'll say yes |

VIII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Last month Lan's father (1)_____her to a glass factory. They visited the recycling workshop where the broken glass was smashed (2)_____small pieces, and the glass was washed with a particular detergent liquid. After that, it was dried up and mixed (3)_____some chemicals. The mixture was put into a very (4)_____temperature furnace to melt into liquid. The workers in the factory used long pipes (5)_____the liquid into a variety of shapes. All the glassware looks nice. Lan was very impressed by the journey.

1. **A.** asked **B.** took **C.** told **D.** gave

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 2. A. under | B. into | C. in | D. on |
| 3. A. in | B. of | C. up | D. with |
| 4. A. high | B. strong | C. low | D. weak |
| 5. A. change | B. to make | C. to blow | D. to have |

IX. Read the following passage, and then answer the questions below.

Every day of the year throughout the world, about twenty million paper bags and the newspapers are screwed and thrown away. Making paper requires a lot of wood pulp and the work of millions of workers. Many countries have had plans to recycle waste paper to save money and labor. In countries where there is the cooperation of the public, paper mills recycle as much as sixty percent of waste paper. Their simple work is to take away the ink, crush it up and make it into pulp again. For every ton of recycled newsprint, twelve trees can be saved. We can insist that the more paper people save, the more trees are preserved.

1. How many paper bags and newspapers are screwed and thrown away every day?
2. What have many countries done to save money and labor in making paper?
3. What percentage of waste paper is recycled with the help of the public?
4. What do the paper mills do to reuse waste paper?
5. How many trees can be saved for every ton of recycled newsprint?

X. Complete the passage with the words given in the box.

waste	surprised	resources	recycling	ton
labor	thrown	discussion	requires	preserved

Ba's class has a (1)_____ on waste paper. His friends are so (2)_____ to learn that every day throughout the world, millions of newspapers and paper bags are (3)_____ away. People are collecting waste paper and (4)_____ it. Making paper (5)_____ a lot of trees and labor. Now if people don't (6)_____ paper, they can save (7)_____ and money. Especially, people can save the natural (8)_____. For every (9)_____ of recycled newsprint, ten trees can be saved. The more paper people save, the more natural resources are (10)_____.

XI. Read the passage carefully, and then answer the questions.

Getting back to nature

The Little Morocco is a beautiful building. We used stone and mud to build the hotel. There are skylights - windows in roof to let light in - so we save electricity. The skylights give us light in the day, we don't use electric lights. We don't use chemicals to clean the rooms because we don't want to damage the environment.

You can walk in the mountains near the hotel and see lots of local wildlife. Enjoy a boat trip on the lake and see the amazing waterfalls. or visit the beautiful caves.

1. What did they use to build the house?
2. How can the skylights help us to save electricity?
3. Why don't they use chemicals to clean the rooms?
4. What can you see in the mountains?

5. What are the activities for a boat trip?

XII. Match each part in A with the corresponding in B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
	1. If we plant more trees 2. If we borrow books from the library instead of buying 3. If we have a shower instead of a bath 4. If people use more cars 5. If the soil is polluted	A. we will save a lot of water. B. they will make the air more polluted. C. we will have more oxygen to breathe. D. the plants will die. E. we save our money.

XIII. Write conditional sentences from these statements.

1. We will plant more trees. The air will be fresher.
If _____.
2. We will use fewer cars. We will reduce pollution.
If _____.
3. We will cycle to school every day. We will keep fitter.
If _____.
4. We will use recycled products. We will save money.
If _____.
5. People will throw rubbish into the right bin. They will keep the environment clean.
If _____.
6. We will turn off the tap when brushing the teeth. We will save a lot of water.
If _____.
7. People will travel more by public transport. The harmful gases in big cities will be reduced.
If _____.
8. We will start at 6.00. We will arrive there before noon.
If _____.
9. The boy eats so many green apples. He will be ill.
If _____.
10. We will use reusable bags for shopping. We will reduce waste.
If _____.

XIV. Make the first conditional sentences, using the words and phrases given.

1. If/ we/ plant/ more trees/ neighbourhood/ greener.
2. If/ we/ cycle/ school/ every day/ we/ keep/ air/ clean and fresh.
3. If/ we/ keep/ hunt/ animals/ they/ disappear/ soon.
4. If/ we/ cut down/ all/ trees/ there/ floods.
5. If/ we/ use/ buses /we/ reduce/ pollution.

XV. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. We/ try/ recycle/ rubbish.
2. Don't/ throw/ plastic bags/ because/ you/ reuse.
3. You/ use/ reusable bags/ when/ you/ shopping.
4. If/ river/ polluted/ fish/ die.
5. If/ people/ cycle/ more/ there/ less/ pollution.

TEST 3 UNIT 11

I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. a. recycle | b. environment | c. charity | d. invite |
| 2. a. paper | b. bag | c. plastic | d. natural |
| 3. a. cousin | b. cycle | c. encourage | d. container |
| 4. a. breathing | b. green | c. breeze | d. bread |
| 5. a. saved | b. polluted | c. enjoyed | d. reused |

II. Choose the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------|------------|------------|
| 1. a. afternoon | b. can | c. lack | d. animal |
| 2. a. paper | b. way | c. prepare | d. later |
| 3. a. party | b. glass | c. plant | d. plastic |
| 4. a. happy | b. match | c. package | d. save |
| 5. a. swap | b. vase | c. watch | d. want |

III. Choose the correct answers a, b, c or d.

1. Soil pollution can lead to lack _____ food.
a. for b. in c. on d. of
2. Almost 27,000 trees are cut _____ every day just to make toilet paper!
a. off b. down c. up d. in
3. The three Rs _____ reduce, reuse and recycle.
a. mean by b. turn to c. stand for d. put up
4. You shouldn't throw those papers away; they're _____.
a. refillable b. reducible c. recyclable d. repayable
5. We should use reusable shopping bags _____ plastic bags.
a. instead of b. because of c. in spite of d. place of
6. Thousands of people donated money and food to those in _____.
a. length b. need c. order d. space
7. _____ pollution can cause hearing loss.
a. Air b. Water c. Noise d. Soil
8. _____ Turn off the tap _____ you brush your teeth and washing your face.
a. when b. if c. because d. although
9. If more people cycle, there will be _____ air pollution.
a. much b. more c. less d. little
10. Which of the following cannot be recycled?
a. Milk cartons b. Glass bottles c. Cans d. Plastic bags

IV. Match the word with its meaning.

- | | |
|-------------|--|
| 1. reuse | a. to keep something to use in the future |
| 2. reduce | b. to give something to someone in exchange for something else |
| 3. recycle | c. to use something again |
| 4. save | d. to make something start working |
| 5. wrap | e. to make something less |
| 6. swap | f. to cover something completely in paper |
| 7. turn on | g. to make something stop working |
| 8. turn off | h. to treat waste materials so that they can be used again |

V. Complete the sentences with the word(s) from the box.

deforestation noise air environment water soil

- Our _____ is becoming more and more polluted.
- _____ is destroying large areas of tropical rain forest.
- _____ pollution can cause diseases such as asthma and bronchitis.
- _____ pollution affects drinking water, rivers, lakes and oceans.
- _____ pollution can lead to famines if the plants are unable to grow in it.
- _____ pollution can cause hearing problems.

VI. Underline the correct words.

- These materials are *recycled/ reduced* into other packaging products.
- These containers are *refutable/ reusable*. You can use them again.
- Try to *reduce/ reuse* the amount of wastes you produce.
- Please turn the television *on/ off* before you go to bed.
- Take these old newspapers to the *recycling/ recycled* bin.
- If more people cycle, there will be *less/ more* air pollution.
- Recycle/ Reuse* old clothing by donating it to a local charity.
- We can *waste/ save* a lot of trees if we recycle waste paper.

VII. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form.

- We _____ (stay) at home if it rains.
- She will call you if she _____ (have) time.
- If it _____ (not rain) tomorrow, we will go for a picnic.
- If everyone _____ (recycle) paper, metal and glass, we _____ (not produce) so much rubbish.
- If you _____ (not water) plants, they _____ (die).
- If the weather _____ (be) bad, we _____ (not go) to the park.
- We _____ (save) thousands of trees if we _____ (not waste) so much paper.
- What _____ (happen) if we _____ (keep) polluting the environment.
- If we _____ (not stop) cutting down so many trees, we _____ (endanger) our oxygen supply.
- If people _____ (dump) chemicals into rivers, they _____ (not be) able to swim in them in the future.

VIII. Circle the correct word or phrase.

- If the weather *is / will be* fine, the children *walk / will walk* to school.
- I *lend / will lend* you my laptop if you *promise / will promise* to be careful with it.
- If they *don't do / won't do* their homework, their teacher *punish / will punish* them.
- Jane *gets / will get* lost if she *doesn't have / won't have* the town map.
- If I *see / will see* Ken later today, I *tell / will tell* him to call you.
- My mother *buys / will buy* me a present if I *pass / will pass* my exams.
- If there *is / will be* no water, all living things *die / will die*.

8. You *aren't / won't* be able to sleep if you *watch / will watch* horror movies.

IX. Match the two halves of these conditional sentences.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. If man keeps polluting the environment, | a. we will endanger our oxygen supply. |
| 2. If we dump all sorts of chemicals into rivers, | b. sea levels will rise too. |
| 3. If we don't stop cutting down so many trees, | c. there won't be so much waste. |
| 4. If the global temperature rises, | d. they will run out of drinking water one day. |
| 5. If more people use reusable shopping bags, | e. we will save a lot of electricity. |
| 6. If people don't use water more wisely, | f. we won't be able to swim in them. |
| 7. If everyone turns off unwanted lights. | g. earth will be in danger. |

X. Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.

1. You can buy reusable shopping bags_____the check-out.
2. The three Rs stand _____ Reduce, Reuse and Recycle.
3. These shopping bags are made _____ natural materials.
4. Don't throw old things_____. Try to find another use for them.
5. You should turn the tap_____when you brush your teeth.
6. You shouldn't wrap the food_____a plastic bag.
7. Give your old clothes_____charity.
8. You should swap your clothes_____your friends or cousins.

XI. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. If people share their cars to go to work, there_____(not be) so many car fumes.
2. I_____(study) here for more than three years.
3. What a nice dress! Where_____(you/ buy) it?
4. Don't forget to take your umbrella. It_____(rain).
5. If we_____(recycle) paper products, we_____(save) more trees.
6. Our class_____(organise) a writing contest. We have to write about the environment.
7. Give old clothes to charity instead of_____(throw) them away.
8. Encouraging people_____(use) public transport is a great way to reduce traffic jams.

XII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Water in the area is severely_____. (pollute)
2. Recycling also helps control _____ pollution by reducing waste. (environment)
3. You shouldn't buy food wrapped in a lot of _____. (package)
4. These bags are_____. They can be used many times. (reuse)
5. _____causes global warming. (deforest)
6. Many paperboard cartons are made of_____paper. (recycle)
7. To save_____, turn off lights and television when not in use. (electric)
8. If we pollute the air, we will have_____problems,. (breathe)

XIII. Match the questions to the answers.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. What can be recycled? | a. Have a shower instead of a bath. |
| 2. What can you do with your old clothes? | b. In the recycling bin. |
| 3. What kind of bags should you use? | c. Walk, ride a bike or take a bus. |
| 4. How can you save water? | d. Swap them with your friends or give them to charity. |
| 5. Where should you put old newspapers? | e. Reusable bags. |
| 6. What can you do to reduce air pollution? | f. Paper, cardboard, cans and bottles. |

XIV. Choose the correct answers to complete the passage.

Three ways everyone can help make the Earth a greener place is to reduce, reuse, and recycle!

When people reduce it means they are using (1)_____of something. This allows us to create less waste. Turning off the faucet when we brush our teeth is a simple way to reduce. This is a small action that prevents us from wasting (2)_____.

Another small action people can take is to reuse things we already have. Taking bags to the store (3)_____ we shop for food is one way to reuse them. Using both (4)_____ of piece of paper before getting a new one is another way to reuse.

(5)_____ is when new materials are created from old ones. Paper, plastic, and metal are all materials that can be recycled. Things like newspapers, soda cans, and plastic bags can all be turned (6)_____ new objects if we take the time to recycle them!

- | | | | |
|---------------|----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. a. much | b. more | c. little | d. less |
| 2. a. energy | b. electricity | c. water | d. time |
| 3. a. when | b. what | c. how | d. while |
| 4. a. ways | b. sides | c. parts | d. points |
| 5. a. Reusing | b. Reducing | c. Recycling | d. Reacting |
| 6. a. out | b. up | c. down | d. into |

XV. Read the passage, then do the tasks.

Earth Day is a birthday! Just like a birthday is a special day to celebrate a person, Earth Day is a special day that celebrates the Earth. It is a day to remember to take care of our planet.

Earth Day was born on April 22, 1970, in San Francisco, California. It is now the largest, most celebrated environmental event worldwide. Every year, many countries around the world join together in the celebration of Earth Day on April 22nd. On Earth Day, people celebrate by doing things that help to protect the environment. Some things people do to help the Earth are: turn off the lights to conserve energy, plant trees, recycle, and pick up garbage in their communities.

You don't have to wait for Earth Day though, you can help the environment every day!

A. Decide whether the following statements are True (T) or False (F).

1. The first Earth Day was celebrated around the world.
2. Earth Day is a day to take care of our planet, Earth.
3. A few countries celebrate Earth Day.
4. On Earth Day, people do some good things that help the planet.
5. Turning lights off is a way to save energy.

B. Answer the questions.

1. Where was Earth Day started?
2. On what day is Earth Day celebrated?
3. What can people do to help the Earth?

XVI. Complete the passages with the words from the box.

what recycled protect later throw waste reuse natural

How people can help with recycling?

As inhabitants of the earth we all have a duty to (1)_____ the environment. We should contribute to environmental protection by finding new ways of using products we (2)_____ away. Nowadays recycling is an industry. As the world's (3)_____ resources run out, manufacturers must find ways of reusing products. (4)_____ can we do to help our environment?

- ◆ We can sort our (5)_____ by separating it and then taking it to the appropriate recycling bins.
- ◆ We can (6)_____ things such as jars and envelopes.
- ◆ We can buy (7)_____ products like stationery.
- ◆ We can transform our waste food into a fertilizer which we may use as compost for our gardens (8)_____.

XVII. Read the passage then choose the correct answers.

Green Cities

What makes a city green? It's a huge challenge for cities to be earth-friendly. Not only do they have lots of people, buildings, traffic, trash, and air pollution, but they also consume more than half of the world's energy.

Many cities in the world have taken up the challenge to be earth-friendly. Look at what some of these cities have done:

Reykjavik, Iceland, is run entirely on green energy. Its transit system uses hydrogen buses and most of its buildings use non-polluting energy sources like geothermal and hydroelectricity.

Malmo and Stockholm in Sweden are noted for their green spaces and parks and for successfully cleaning up their water and air.

Portland, Oregon, was one of the first American cities to focus on earth-friendly transit with light-rail and bike paths to encourage people to leave their cars at home.

Curitiba, Brazil, uses unique green methods for maintenance. Their grass parks are trimmed by sheep!

Vancouver, British Columbia, uses wind, solar, and water energy to generate power. Nearly all of the city is powered by clean hydroelectricity.

1. In what country is Malmo?
a. Brazil b. Spain c. Sweden d. Iceland
2. How much of the world's energy is consumed by cities?
a. one quarter b. one and a half c. more than half d. all
3. Which city is run entirely on green energy?
a. Reykjavik b. Seattle c. Stockholm d. Portland
4. How are the buses powered in Reykjavik?
a. diesel fuel b. hydrogen c. unleaded gasoline d. geothermal
5. How does the grass get cut in the parks of Curitiba?
a. They use push mowers. b. Children stomp on it.
c. People trim it off. d. Sheep graze on it.
6. None of Vancouver is powered by hydroelectricity.
a. True b. False c. No information
7. Portland, Oregon was one of the first US cities to focus on earth-friendly transit.
a. True b. False c. No information

XVIII. Write the first conditional sentences using the cues given.

1. If/ Sue/ not hurry/ she/ miss/ the bus
2. Rita/ pass/ the exam/ if/ she/ study/ hard
3. If/ he/ watch/ too much television/ he/ hurt/ his eyes
4. If/ it/ not be/ sunny/ tomorrow/ we/ not go/ to the beach
5. We/ visit/ her/ if / we/ have/ time
6. I/ not wait/ if/ you/ arrive/ late
7. They/ not play/ tennis/ tomorrow/ if/ it/ rain
8. If/ you/ not set/ your alarm clock/ you/ not wake up/ on time

XIX. Write the first conditional sentences.

1. You should work hard, or you won't pass the exam.
If _____
2. Henry fails his examination. His parents will be sad.
If _____
3. Sue shouldn't go out this weekend, or she won't have time to study.
If _____
4. I think it'll snow tomorrow. I will go skiing.
If _____
5. He should leave soon, or he'll miss the bus.
If _____
6. Don't play with matches. You will hurt yourself.
If _____

XX. Complete the sentences with your own words.

1. If we all use reusable shopping bags, _____
2. If more people cycle, _____
3. We will save a lot of trees if _____
4. A lot of fish will die if _____
5. If you have a shower instead of a bath, _____

XXI. Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as first one.

1. There are a few students taking part in the event.
There aren't _____
2. They have lived here for two years.
They moved _____
3. You should turn unwanted lights off, or you will waste a lot of electricity.
If _____
4. Let's write about the three Rs?
Why _____
5. Learning about recycling is fun.
It's _____
6. Plastic bags are cheaper than reusable bags.
Reusable bags are _____
7. It's not good to throw old clothes away.
You _____
8. Remember to turn the tap off when you are brushing your teeth.
Don't _____

UNIT 12: ROBOTS**A. VOCABULARY**

- play football	/pleɪ 'fʊt.bəl/ :	chơi bóng đá
- sing a song	/sɪŋ eɪ /sɒŋ/:	hát một bài hát
- teaching robot	/'tiː.tʃɪŋ 'roʊ.ba:t/:	người máy dạy học
- worker robot	/'wɜː.kər 'roʊ.ba:t/:	người máy công nhân
- doctor robot	/'dɒk.tər/:	người máy bác sĩ
- home robot	/hoʊm 'roʊ.ba:t/:	người máy gia đình
- laundry	/'laːn.dri/ (n):	giặt ủi
- make the bed	/meɪk ðə bed/:	dọn giường

- cut the hedge	/kʌt ðə hedʒ/:	cắt tỉa hàng rào
- do the dishes	/du ðə dɪʃ:ez/:	rửa chén
- (good/bad) habits	/'hæb.ɪt/:	thói quen (tốt /xấu)
- go to the pictures/the movies :		đi xem tranh/ đi xem phim
- there's a lot to do :		có nhiều việc cần phải làm
- go out	/gou aʊt/:	đi ra ngoài, đi chơi
- go/come to town:		đi ra thành phố
- gardening	/'gɑ:r.dən.ɪŋ/ (n):	công việc làm vườn
- guard	/gɑ:rd/ (v)	canh giữ, canh gác
- laundry	/'la:n.dri/ (n):	quần áo cần phải giặt
- lift	/lɪft/ (v):	nâng lên, nhấc lên, giơ lên
- minor	/'maɪ.nər/ (adj):	nhỏ, không quan trọng
- opinion	/ə'pɪn.jən/ (n):	ý kiến, quan điểm
- planet	/'plæn.ɪt/ (n):	hành tinh
- recognize	/'rek.əg.naɪz/ (v):	nhận ra
- robot	/'roʊ.bɑ:t/ (n):	người máy
- role	/roʊl/ (n):	vai trò
- space station	/speɪs 'steɪʃən/ (n):	trạm vũ trụ
- type	/taɪp/ (n):	kiểu, loại
- water	/'wɔ:ʔər/ (v):	tưới, tưới nước

B. GRAMMAR

1. Động từ khuyết thiếu “Can” (có thể)

“Can” là động từ khuyết thiếu, do đó nó không cần chia theo các ngôi và luôn cần một động từ nguyên thể không “to” đi đằng sau.

Thể Thể khẳng định + Thể phủ định

Cấu trúc S + can/ can't + V + (các thành phần khác).

Thể nghi vấn

Can + S + V + (các thành phần khác) ?

Yes, S + can.

No, S + can't.

Chức năng Diễn tả khả năng của một người có thể/ không thể làm được gì, hoặc một sự việc có thể/ không thể xảy ra **ở hiện tại**.

Dùng trong câu hỏi đề nghị, xin phép, yêu cầu.

Ví dụ - She can speak Spanish.
(Cô ấy có thể nói tiếng Tây Ban Nha)
- It can rain.
(Trời có thể mưa)

- Can I ask you a question?
(Tôi có thể hỏi bạn 1 câu không?)
- Can you swim? (Bạn có thể bơi không?)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Điền “can” hoặc “can't (cannot)” vào chỗ trống trong câu khẳng định (+) và phủ định (-) dưới đây.

- I _____ swim. (+/can)
- You _____ draw. (-/can)
- He _____ cook. (+/can)
- She _____ walk. (-/can)
- It _____ jump. (+/can)
- We _____ ski. (-/can)
- You _____ read. (+/can)
- They _____ count. (-/can)

9. Doris _____ sail. (+/can)
 10. Walter and Laura _____ sing. (-/can)

Bài 2: Chọn phương án đúng trong mỗi câu sau.

1. '_____ you swim?' 'Yes, I _____'
 A. Can/can't B. Can/can
2. I'm sorry I _____ help you today. I'm really busy.
 A. can B. can't
3. Please _____ you buy some milk on your way home? I _____ leave the house because I'm looking after the baby.
 A. can't/can't B. can/can't
4. I _____ ride a bike but I _____ drive a car.
 A. can/can't B. can/can
5. I just _____ manage to wake up on time, I'm always late.
 A. can't B. can
6. 'Hello, _____ I help you?' 'Actually, no you _____ this restaurant is awful and we've been waiting here for half an hour. We're leaving'.
 A. can/can't B. can't/can
7. I have a special talent, I _____ touch my nose with my tongue _____ you?
 A. can/can B. can't/can't
8. '_____ I go to the bathroom please?' 'Yes, of course you _____'.
 A. Can/can't B. Can/can
9. Look! It's right there! _____ you see it? It's so obvious!
 A. Can B. Can't
10. I've never been able to eat breakfast in the mornings. I _____ talk to anyone either!
 A. can B. can't

Bài 3: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. you/ can/ play/ the/ violin/ ?/
2. draw/ they/ can't/ well/.
3. play/ I/ basketball/ I/ can/.
4. we/ can/ come/ house/ to/ your/?
5. she/ sleep/ can't/
6. you/ cook/ can/?
7. watch/ can/ television/ I/ ?/

Bài 4: Khoanh vào câu trả lời đúng.

1. I (can/can't) speak French. I picked it up while I was in France.
2. I (can/can't) come to the party. I am really busy.
3. We (can/can't) hear you. The music is so loud.
4. Where are my keys? I (can/can't) find them.
5. I (can/can't) believe it. We won two million dollars.
6. We (can/can't) meet tomorrow if you want.

7. (Can/Can't) make me a cup of tea, please?
8. He (can/can't) jump. His leg hurt so much.
9. Illiterate people (can/can't) read and write.
10. Fish (can/can't) swim.

II. Động từ khuyết thiếu “ Could” (có thể)

Could là động từ khuyết thiếu, do đó không cần chia theo ngôi và luôn cần một động từ nguyên thể không “to” đi đằng sau.

Thể	Thể khẳng định + Thể phủ định	Thể nghi vấn
Cấu trúc	S + could/ couldn't + V + (các thành phần khác).	Could + S + V + (các thành phần khác) ? Yes, S + could. No, S + couldn't.
Chức năng	Diễn tả khả năng của một người có thể/ không thể làm được gì, hoặc một sự việc có thể/ không thể xảy ra trong quá khứ .	Dùng trong câu hỏi đề nghị, xin phép, yêu cầu.
Ví dụ	- My brother could speak English when he was five. (Anh trai tôi đã có thể nói tiếng Anh khi anh ấy 5 tuổi) - He couldn't read until he was 6. (Anh ấy đã không thể đọc cho đến khi anh ấy 6 tuổi)	- Could you please wait a moment? (Bạn có thể đợi 1 chút không?)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 5: Điền “ could” hoặc “couldn't” vào chỗ trống trong các câu sau.

1. When I was young, I _____ play the guitar: it was too difficult for me!
2. Her grandmother was bilingual: she _____ speak both English and Spanish.
3. Yesterday, Peter _____ do that exercise alone. So, he called me for help.
4. In 1950, people _____ use mobile phones.
5. When his mother was young, she _____ skate but she can't do it any longer.
6. We _____ open the door: it was locked from the inside!
7. In 1990, people _____ watch TV.
8. Mary's grandfather _____ play chess and he was the best!
9. In 1945, people _____ play video games.
10. But the _____ play chess!
11. Peter _____ play tennis last Monday: he had broken his arm!
12. When Ann was teenager, she _____ watch a horror film: it was too frightening for her!
13. Last Sunday, we _____ take any photos in the museum: it was forbidden.
14. Mozart _____ play the piano when he was 5.

III. Will be able to (sẽ có thể)

Thể	Thể khẳng định + Thể phủ định	Thể nghi vấn
Cấu trúc	S + will/ won't be able to + V + (các thành phần khác).	Will + S + be able to + V + (các thành phần khác) ? Yes, S + will. No, S + won't.
Chức năng	Diễn tả khả năng của một người có thể/ không thể làm được gì, hoặc một sự việc có thể/ không thể xảy ra ở tương lai .	
Ví dụ	- She will be able to ride a bike next year.	- Will robots be able to talk to people in

(Cô bé sẽ có thể đi xe đạp vào năm sau.)
- He won't be able to read or write until he is
6.(Cậu bé sẽ không thể đọc hay viết cho đến khi
cậu bé 6 tuổi)

the future?
(Người máy sẽ có thể nói chuyện được
với con người trong tương lai chứ?)

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 6: Điền “will be able to” hoặc “won’t be able to” vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp.

1. I _____ arrive tomorrow, I’ll be busy.
2. Kate _____ buy tickets for you, she’ll be free.
3. I _____ play the piano, I practice much.
4. Lena _____ help you, she knows this materials well.
5. Bill _____ lift this weight, he trains much.
6. I _____ cook this cake, I don’t know the recipe.
7. Liz _____ lend you money, she has some savings.
8. She _____ take you to the club, she is late.
9. We _____ jog, it is raining awfully.
10. I _____ arrive to you in 2 months.
11. They _____ run faster, they are good runners.
12. Helen _____ lend you money, she hasn’t it.
13. He _____ ride his bike well in three days.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 7: Điền ‘can’, ‘can’t’, ‘could’ hoặc ‘couldn’t’ vào chỗ trống.

1. _____ you swim when you were 10?
2. We _____ get to the meeting on time yesterday, because the train was delayed by one hour.
3. He’s amazing, he _____ speak five languages, including Chinese.
4. I looked everywhere for my glasses but I _____ find them anywhere.
5. She’s seven years old, but she _____ read yet. Her parents are getting her extra lessons.
6. I read the book three times, but I _____ understand it.
7. James _____ speak Japanese when he lived in Japan, but he’s forgotten most of it now.
8. I _____ understand the chapter we had to read for homework. It was so difficult.
9. I _____ lift this box – it’s too heavy! Would you help me?
10. Lucy _____ make it to our meeting after all. She’s stuck in traffic.
11. John _____ play tennis really well. He’s champion of his club.
12. Unfortunately, I really _____ sing at all. No-one in my family is musical either.
13. Julian _____ play golf excellently when he was only ten.
14. My grandmother _____ use a computer until last month. Since then she’s been taking lessons at the library.
15. I _____ open this window! I think it’s stuck.
16. Gill _____ play the piano. She has never studied it.

Bài 8: Chọn phương án đúng cho các câu sau.

1. I _____ show you this element right now.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
2. He _____ phone his mom yesterday.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
3. I _____ say at the hotel there next week.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
4. Paul _____ play the violin excellently
A. can B. could C. will be able to
5. Mona _____ get this invitation last month.

- A. can B. could C. will be able to
6. We _____ complete in basketball next week.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
7. They _____ ride their bikes well now.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
8. Pam _____ take that photo last year.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
9. Dan _____ repair his computer, he knows it well.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
10. I _____ cook this tasty cake now.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
11. Lola _____ run better last year.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
12. They _____ train in the gym in two days.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
13. We _____ talk about it for a long time.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
14. Do you think we _____ park over here?
A. can B. could C. will be able to
15. _____ you taste the garlic in this stew?
A. Can B. Could C. Will be able to
16. _____ you understand what he said?
A. can B. could C. will be able to
17. I don't think he _____ win the next competition.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
18. Listen! We _____ hear a train in the distance.
A. can B. could C. will be able to

Bài 9: Chọn và điền vào chỗ trống, sử dụng từ Can/ Can't, Could/ Couldn't, Must/ Mustn't.

1. You _____ work harder if you want to pass the exam.
2. I don't want anyone to know. You _____ tell anyone.
3. _____ you please open the door?
4. _____ I go out tonight? No, you _____ study English.
5. We haven't got much time. We _____ hurry.
6. He _____ play tennis very well now but he _____ play really well when he was young.
7. Tom _____ drive but he hasn't got a car.
8. The boy fell into the river but fortunately we _____ rescue him.
9. We haven't got enough food at home so we _____ go shopping today.
10. She wasn't at home when I phoned but I _____ contact her at her office.
11. I can't stay in bed tomorrow morning because I _____ work.
12. You _____ touch that switch. It's very dangerous.
13. _____ you post this letter for me?
14. Brian has got three houses, six cars, a yacht. He _____ be very rich.
15. You've only just had dinner. You _____ be hungry.

C.EXERCISES

TEST 1 UNIT 12

I. Circle the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

1. A. leaves B. arrives C. finishes D. goes
2. A. bread B. clean C. meal D. tea
3. A. orange B. post C. body D. copy

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 4. A. <u>w</u> ea <u>k</u> | B. <u>h</u> ea <u>d</u> | C. <u>h</u> ea <u>v</u> y | D. <u>b</u> rea <u>k</u> fast |
| 5. A. <u>l</u> amp | B. <u>t</u> ab <u>l</u> e | C. <u>f</u> am <u>i</u> ly | D. <u>b</u> ag |

II.Circle the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. A. cit <u>a</u> del | B. vaca <u>t</u> ion | C. destina <u>t</u> ion | D. lemo <u>n</u> ade |
| 2. A. tea <u>ch</u> ers | B. docto <u>r</u> s | C. studen <u>t</u> s | D. work <u>e</u> r <u>s</u> |
| 3. A. acc <u>i</u> dent | B. soc <u>c</u> er | C. <u>c</u> linic | D. <u>c</u> ame <u>r</u> a |
| 4. A. mou <u>th</u> | B. wea <u>th</u> er | C. <u>th</u> ick | D. <u>th</u> row |
| 5. A. language | B. engineer | C. sausage | D. jogging |

III. Choose the best answer.

- sports do you play?
A. How B. Who C. Which D. What's
- My mother wants a good pair of shoes because she often goes
A. jogging B. fishing C. sailing D. reading
- He often his kite when he's not busy.
A. does B. plays C. goes D. flies
- Why don't we go to the movies?
A. Because I like it. B. Good idea.
C. Yes, we do. D. I don't think so.
- Some people can speak many
A. countries B. nationalities C. languages D. speeches
- People are many forests because they need more land.
A. destroying B. producing C. growing D. polluting
- There is oil in this bottle. We should buy some more.
A. a few B. few C. little D. a little
- Can I help you?....., please. I need a kilo of beef.
A. Sorry B. Yes C. Can D. No
- Minh.....likes fish and beef.
A. isn't B. don't C. doesn't D. never
- He goes to work six days a week. Hegoes to work.
A. always B. usually C. often D. never

IV. Choose the best answer.

-you hear the fireworks from your house last night?
A. Can't B. Could C. Can D. Will
- Do you think you.....write that report by Tuesday? I know you're very busy.
A. have been able to B. couldn't
C. will be able to D. could
- I.....touch my toes. See!
A. can B. will be able to C. could D. can't
- I.....spend another moment in that restaurant. It was too noisy.
A. can't B. have been able to
C. can D. couldn't
- I.....never seem to get the temperature right
A. can't B. to be able to C. can D. could
-play professionally tennis, you must be extremely fit.
A. To be able to B. Couldn't C. can D. Will you be able
-you play an instrument?
A. Couldn't B. Able to C. Can D. Could
- I'm afraid I.....attend the meeting, I'm on business in Japan.
A. will be able to B. won't be able to C. can D. would
-you have brought it to me at work?
A. Couldn't B. Could C. Cannot D. Will be able to
- They.....save the men from the sinking ship.

- A. was able to B. could to C. are able D. were able to
11. Robots_____ lift heavy things many years ago.
A. can B. could C. couldn't D. are able to
12. _____robots be able to talk to us in the future?
A. Can B. Do C. Will D. Could
13. When she is 30, she will be able_____ a famous artist.
A. become B. to become C. becomes D. becoming
14. _____you swim when you were a child?
A. Can B. Will C. Could D. Do
15. _____robots can build space stations on the planets.
A. Space B. Doctor C. Workers D. Home
16. Which robot can make coffee?
A. Space robot B. Doctor robot C. Worker robot D. Home robot
17. Which robot can help sick people?
A. Space robot B. Doctor robot C. Worker robot D. Home robot
18. In the past, robots_____the laundry.
A. could do B. can do C. will do D. do
19. Yesterday, my mother_____me a robot toy as a birthday gift.
A. give B. gave C. giving D. to give
20. He _____be able to pass the final test because he doesn't work hard.
A. can B. can't C. will D. won't

V. Using "can", "can't" or "couldn't" to complete the sentences.

Ex: - You don't have to buy vegetables. I ...**can give**... (give) you some.
- I ...**couldn't watch**... (watch) that program last night because I had a lot of things to do.

- He.....(go) to school last week because he was ill.
- He eats in restaurants all the time because he..... (cook).
- I..... (give) you a lift in my car because it isn't working at the moment.
- I didn't have a good seat in the theatre, so I.....(see) the stage very well.
- Jane doesn't need a calculator. She..... (do) very difficult sums in her head.
- She's very good at music. She(sing) this song well.
- I..... (find) my tennis racquet. Have you seen it?
- He spoke very quickly and I..... (understand) anything he said.
- We (go) on the trip because we(afford) it. It was too expensive.
- I..... (do) any more work because I was very tired, so I stopped.

VI. Using "be able to" or "couldn't" to complete the sentences.

- The car fell into the river. The worker..... get it out but the driver was dead.
- I knew the town so Iadvise him where to go.
- Despite the arrival of the storm, they..... finish the football match.
- After his car crashes, he was so confused that he tell the police who he was or where he was going.
- I haven't.....concentrate recently on work. I don't know what it is.

VII. Complete these sentences with "could, couldn't" or "was, wereable to".

- A girl fell into the river but fortunately we..... rescue her.
- I.....walk when I was less than a year old.
- My grandfatherwalk without any help last night.
- you understand what he was saying?
- My grandmotherspeak Spanish.
- Suddenly all the lights went out. Wesee a thing.
- The computer went wrong, but luckily Emmaput it right again.
- There was a big party last night. Youhear the music half a mile away.
- I learnt to read sheet music as a child. I..... read it when I was five.
- People heard warnings about the food, and they move out in time.

11. She wasn't at home when I phoned but I.....contact her at her office.
12. Mrs Carter..... put out the fire before the house burnt down.
13. I looked everywhere for the books, but I..... find it.
14. The plane take off at eleven o'clock, after the fog had lifted.
15. Jack was an excellent tennis player. He..... beat anybody.

VIII. Give the correct form of the words.

1. There are lots of..... (beauty) beaches in Viet Nam.
2. Is Mr.Ha a (business)?
3. She's from Vietnam. What's her (nation)?
4. Air(pollute) is a big problem in big cities.
5. In the(neighbor), there is a hospital and a factory.

IX. Fill in the blank with a suitable word.

1. A few people are the mountain and they are danger.
2. I have to stay late because I don't finish my homework.
3. My father always goes to work.....his own car.
4. Our school starts.....six forty five to eleven o'clock.
5. The beef is on the table the eggs and the fish.

X. Give the correct form of the verbs.

1. What they (do) tonight? - They(listen) to music on the radio.
2. Your brother (can, swim) ? - Yes, he can. He (swim) very well.
3. He (be) tired and he'd like(sit) down.
4. Hoa (not do) her homework in the afternoon. She..... (do) it in the evening.
5. Look! The plane (fly) towards the airport. It.....(land).

XI. Read the text and then choose the best answer to complete it.

(1) the United States, many adults and children (2) overweight. Some people eat (3) food at meals. They also eat snacks between meals. Sometimes people eat healthy things like fruit or vegetables (4) many Americans eat a lot of junk food such as cookies, candies and potato chips. Eating junk food can (5) people gain weight. People also gain weight (6) they don't get enough (7) People need to walk, run, ride bicycles, or walk out in health clubs and gyms. When people exercise, they (8) good and have more energy. A good diet and exercise will help you (9) along and (10) life.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1. A. On | B. In | C. At | D. From |
| 2. A. is | B. was | C. were | D. are |
| 3. A. too many | B. too much | C. few | D. plenty |
| 4. A. but | B. because | C. although | D. so that |
| 5. A. get | B. lead | C. urge | D. make |
| 6. A. so | B. however | C. but | D. because |
| 7. A. exercises | B. work | C. money | D. energy |
| 8. A. make | B. taste | C. have | D. feel |
| 9. A. live | B. lives | C. living | D. to living |
| 10. A. health | B. safur | C. fair | D. healthy |

XII. Use the given words to make complete sentences.

1. Linh/ parents/ proud/ him/ because/ he/ always/ get/ good marks.
.....
2. We/ very interested/ play/ soccer/ when/ live/ countryside.
.....
3. I/ not talk/ uncle/ since/ he/ buy/ new house/ city center.
.....
.....
4. The Browns/ buy/ lot/ food/ because/ they/ go/ have/ party.
.....
.....

5. It/ only/ small car/ so/ there/ not/ enough room/ all/ us.

XIII. Arrange the given words to make the correct sentences.

1. at / tennis / the girls / playing / the moment / are.

2. always / by / John / goes to / car / school.

3. do / in / what / you / the afternoon / do?

4. chatting / the class / are / they / in / now.

5. doesn't / a new car / buy / sister / my.

XIV. Make questions for the underlined parts.

1. I would like to eat chocolate.

2. He goes to work by bus in the morning.

3. I like green and white.

4. He is a doctor.

5. She gets up at 6 o'clock in the morning.

XV. Rewrite the sentences.

Ex: *Why don't we go out for a walk?*

=> *My father suggested **going out for a walk**.*

1. Lan's hair is long.

→ Lan

2. Nam rides his bike to school everyday.

→ Nam goes

3. Are there four people in your family?

→ Does

4. Nobody in our class is taller than Nga.

→ Nga

5. Let's go swimming.

→ What about

6. My house is behind the post office.

→ The post office

7. She likes drinking milk.

→ Milk is

8. Ba has a sister, Lan.

→ Ba

9. What's the height of the Mount Everest?

→ How

10. This boy is strong.

→ He is

TEST 2 UNIT 12

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

1. A. house

B. mouse

C. shout

D. ought

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|
| 2. A. <u>noise</u> | B. <u>soil</u> | C. <u>doing</u> | D. <u>boil</u> |
| 3. A. <u>could</u> | B. <u>our</u> | C. <u>should</u> | D. <u>would</u> |
| 4. A. <u>so</u> | B. <u>told</u> | C. <u>now</u> | D. <u>go</u> |
| 5. A. <u>lesson</u> | B. <u>house</u> | C. <u>sound</u> | D. <u>noisy</u> |

II. Choose the correct answers.

- Robots can _____ our houses when we are away.
A. see B. guard C. look at D. look
- In the future, robots will be able to do more _____ things for us.
A. easy B. harder C. complicated D. much difficul
- I don't agree _____ you that robots will be able to write a letter to an English friend.
A. of B. about C. to D. with
- They will be very useful because they will be able to do _____ everything for us.
A. most B. most of C. almost D. almost of
- "Do you think robots can work longer than people _____ getting tired?"
A. but B. with C. without D. of
- My father always _____ coffee at home instead of going to the coffee shop.
A. do B. does C. make D. makes
- Robots will be able to _____ the personal computer in the future.
A. do B. replace C. make D. recognise
- Nowadays robots can't talk to people or play sport, but in the future I think they _____.
A. can B. could C. will D. do
- "Will robots be able _____ our voices?"
A. to recognise B. recognising C. to recognising D. for recognising
- Robots can't talk to people or recognise our voices, but scientists are working _____ the solution.
A. at B. on C. in D. with
- Many people think spending money on robots is a complete _____ of time and money.
A. cut B. number C. waste D. amount
- "_____ you walk when you were two?"
A. Can B. Could C. Will D. Do
- These robots can do many things for the _____ such as cleaning streets or watering plants.
A. common B. best C. human D. public
- Home robots can do things _____ repairing things around the house or looking after the garden.
A. such B. like C. with D. of
- "_____ do you think about the new kinds of robots?"
A. How B. What C. Why D. When
- Our future robot will be able to help us _____ the gardening.
A. do B. make C. try D. plant
- "Robots are helping us a lot in industry, education, and in our house" - "
A. I agree with you B. I hope not
C. Do you agree with that? D. What about you?
- "We waste a lot of money and time researching and making robots" " _____".
A. I think not. B. I don't think so. C. I agree with. D. I don't hope so.
- We must be careful because some people may use robots _____.
A. do good things B. to do good things C. do bad things D. to do bad things

20. Robots will be very useful for our lives but they use _____ energy.

A. some

B. a little

C. a few

D. too much

III. Put the words or phrases given in the box in the correct line with the appropriate verbs. There are some that can be put more than one line.

<i>bed</i>	<i>homework</i>	<i>faces</i>	<i>voices</i>	<i>breakfast</i>
<i>laundry</i>	<i>the factory</i>	<i>heavy boxes</i>	<i>furniture</i>	<i>the baby</i>
<i>hair</i>	<i>coffee</i>	<i>own clothes</i>	<i>the idea</i>	<i>housework</i>
<i>cakes</i>	<i>Cartons</i>	<i>the place</i>	<i>Suitcases</i>	<i>the palace</i>
<i>research</i>	<i>mistakes</i>	<i>our house</i>	<i>a phone call</i>	<i>suggestions</i>
<i>something</i>	<i>a desk</i>	<i>the lecture</i>	<i>this</i>	<i>this song</i>

1. recognize:

2. do:

3. make:

4. understand:

5. lift:

6. guard:

IV. Complete the sentences, using "couldn't" and the verbs in the box.

<i>find</i>	<i>finish</i>	<i>go</i>	<i>hear</i>
<i>listen</i>	<i>play</i>	<i>sleep</i>	<i>understand</i>

1. My dad _____ to work because he was ill.
2. John _____ his pen. It wasn't in his school bag.
3. Mary wasn't hungry - she _____ her lunch.
4. I _____ Jane because I don't speak German.
5. We _____ the teacher because the students were very noisy.
6. Tom _____ to music because his CD player was broken.
7. I was very tired but I _____.
8. We _____ tennis because the weather was bad.

V. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

1. I think robots are very useful _____ they won't be able to do all of our work.
2. _____ the bed when you get out of your bedroom.

3. Space robots can build space _____ on the Moon, and on many other planets.
4. Home robots can cook, make tea, or _____ the laundry.
5. _____ robots will be able to do most of our work and we will live more comfortably.
6. Our class are talking about the _____ of robots in the future.
7. Robots will be able to _____ our voices.
8. We think home robots will be able to do all of our work at home, and there will be _____ for us to do.
9. They will be able to do many things _____ humans.
10. Now robots can _____ the house and catch any robber trying to enter it.

VI. Read the text, and decide whether the statements are *True* or *False*.

Worker robots are becoming more popular in industries. Nowadays they can do more difficult jobs in many factories. The use of robots helps factories increase the quality of their products because robots can do the job well for many hours while humans can get tired and bored.

Engineers can make robots more effective and useful at home, at school, and at work.

However, a robot uses on average about 100 more times energy than a human to do the same job. The latest 20 kg robot can lift 2 kg, but a 5 kg human arm can lift 50 kg.

True

1. Factories are using more robots.
2. The use of robots helps make the quality of the products better.
3. Robots play an important role at homes, at schools, and in offices.
4. For the same job, a robot uses the same amount of energy as a worker does.
5. With the same weight, a robot lift things heavier than a man can do.

False

- | | |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| ☐ | ☐ |
| ☐ | ☐ |
| ☐ | ☐ |
| ☐ | ☐ |
| ☐ | ☐ |

VII. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

People are very interested in robots. Some of them look like mechanical dolls to play with. Most of them look like other machines of today's high technology.

Serious research on intelligent robots began in the 1960s in several countries. Now we are on the fifth generation of robots. The first robots were very expensive. They cost \$500,000 when a worker could do the same work for \$15 an hour. By the early 1970s, a robot brain, a computer, cost \$300,000. Today's robots cost from \$15,000 to \$150,000.

One of the advantages of robots is that they can work in situations that are dangerous or harmful for human workers.

Today there are millions of people who work at machines in the world. Robots will replace them. Part of the problem will be solved because of the decrease in the number of births. There will be fewer people looking for jobs. Many people will find changes in their jobs, and they will not like some of them.

The students of today must be sure that these changes are good. Robots must improve, not harm, the quality of human life.

1. What generation of robots are we on now?
2. What is one of the advantages of robots?
3. What makes a robot brain?
4. Why aren't people no longer worried that robots will replace them?
5. What is the thing that students of today are sure?

VIII. Read the passage, and then answer the questions.

Most robots today are industrial robots. Humans use them to make work easier and quicker. You often see them in car factories where they put the parts of the cars together. They are useful for this kind of work as it is 'dull, dirty and dangerous' – DVD. Robots are often used for DDD jobs and where a specific action needs to be repeated. It is very difficult for humans to do this.

There are many different types of robots. Some robots travel through space, work on the bottom of the ocean, or go inside volcanoes. They do the work of people, but for a different reason this time: there are places that are very dangerous for people, or impossible for people to go to.

Robots are everywhere. Most people don't know that robots help us everyday and in many different ways. In most houses, there are robots. For example, in some houses today there is a washing machine in the kitchen. Washing machines are robots. People can programme them and then they wash clothes automatically.

Some scientists make robots for fun. For example, the dogs are made as toys for small children.

Japan produces the most robots. Every year in the capital, Tokyo, there is a robot exhibition called Robodex. It is the largest robot exhibition in the world.

1. What can robots do in car factories?
2. Why are robots useful or this kind of work?
3. Why do people often use robots to work on the bottom of the ocean or inside volcanoes?
4. How can people make washing machines useful?
5. Can robots bring us fun? Give an example.

IX. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Rescue robots (1)_____hi-tech toys, but we are now using more robotic planes, helicopters. We can use them after storms, earthquakes, or fires to provide us with important (2)_____. They have cameras and microphones that help rescue workers understand how much damage (3)_____and (4) _____where the victims are. These planes work (5)_____between 30 and 120 metres in the air and they can rescue people in somewhere very dangerous.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. A. look | B. look like | C. looks like | D. look at |
| 2. A. information | | B. newspapers | C. ideas D. thing |
| 3. A. there | B. it was | C. there has | D. there is |
| 4. A. find | B. find out | C. finds | D. finds out |
| 5. A. much | B. more | C. the best | D. best |

X. Read the passage, and then decide whether the statements are *True* or *False*.

In South Korea, the robot Olympics takes place every year. It brings together groups from around the world who are interested in robots. At the event, people of all ages can take part in the competition. Children as young as six years old build and make programmes for robots that can do all kinds of things such as running or kicking a ball - that's very useful in sports. a bar

Robot Wars is another form of entertainment for robot lovers. It is a TV show and remote-controlled robot toy cars take part in games. The most popular game is when teams of people make the toy cars fight each other until there is the only one that can run - the winner. The first Robot Wars competition was held in San Francisco in August, 1994. People from over 45 countries, including Britain, Sweden, Italy and China now can watch that TV show.

Questions:**True/ False**

1. The robot Olympics takes place every four years. _____
2. Only the teams from South Korea take part in the robot Olympics. _____
3. Robot lovers are people who are interested in designing, making, using and watching robots. _____
4. Old and young children can build robots at the event. _____
5. Robots at the robot Olympics can be useful in sports. _____
6. Remote-controlled cars take part in the Robot Wars competitions. _____
7. The first Robot Wars competition was held in the USA. _____
8. People in Asia do not watch the Robot Wars competitions. _____
9. People from many countries in the world can watch the Robot Wars competitions on TV. _____
10. Robots can be used for fun. _____

XI. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Robots/ not only/ talk/ people/ but/ understand/ what/ they/ think.
2. Robots/ recognize/ our voices/ faces/ they/ not/ think/ like/ humans.
3. You/ think/ robots/ build houses/ sea/ us?
4. I/ agree/ you/ that/ life/ more comfortable/ future.
5. More people/ lose/ jobs/ robots/ do/ many kinds/ jobs.

TEST 3 UNIT 12**I. Choose the word whose underlined part is pronounced differently from the others.**

1. a. robot b. role c. coffee d. comb
2. a. minor b. simple c. recognise d. cimb
3. a. panet b. sation c. sace d. face
4. a. dressed b. stepped c. talked d. played
5. a. shout b. could c. house d. down

II. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

1. a. now b. down c. show d. cow
2. a. young b. ground c. cloud d. couch
3. a. toy b. join c. voice d. tortoise
4. a. could b. count c. town d. found
5. a. slow b. flower c. know d. bowl

III. Choose the correct answers a, b, c or d.

1. I do not agree _____ the idea that robots will be useful to us in the future.
a. with b. in c. on d. by
2. There were some amazing robots _____ the international robot show.
a. on b. at c. for d. of
3. _____ robots replace teachers in the classroom within the next ten years?
a. Do b. Could c. Are d. Will
4. In five years, some robots will be able to speak with human _____.
a. life b. body c. voice d. way
5. In the past, robots had a _____ role, but they will play a very important role in the future.

- a. useful b. minor c. complicated d. dangerous
6. Will some robots be _____ humans?
a. as intelligent as b. more intelligent c. more intelligent as d. most intelligent than
7. _____ can help children improve their basic learning skills.
a. Home robots b. Doctor robots c. Worker robots d. Teaching robots
8. _____ robots take our jobs, what will humans do all day?
a. When b. Whether c. If d. Although
9. It was so noisy that we _____ hear ourselves speak.
a. can b. mustn't c. could d. couldn't
10. 'Some experts say robots will be smarter than humans within two decades.'
'_____ A robot is just a machine, I think.'
a. Not for me. b. I totally disagree. c. Never mind d. I agree

IV. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

make recognise do understand lift guard cut speak

- Home Robots _____ all our housework, such as cleaning, washing the dishes, etc.
- Security Robots can patrol streets or _____ your home.
- ASIMO can _____ the faces and voices of multiple people speaking.
- Nao Robot _____ Japanese, English, and Chinese and can answer your questions about banking.
- Worker robots are good at _____ heavy things.
- The Bosch robot could _____ either a latte, a cappuccino or a coffee.
- Will future robots be able to _____ human emotions?
- Bill Shane now _____ his grass with a robotic lawnmower.

V. Put the words or phrases in the box in the correct lines.

homework, the bed, a word, heavy objects, the house, faces, housework, the instructions, the suitcase, dinner, his voice, the place, tea, the dishes, weights, the problem, the president, English, the laundry, coffee, the book, the office, the gardening, breakfast, what she is saying, the cooking, cake, the box, the entrance, the danger, a phone call,

- ♦ do: _____
- ♦ understand: _____
- ♦ lift: _____
- ♦ guard: _____
- ♦ recognise: _____

VI. Fill in each blank with *can*, *can't*, *could* or *couldn't*.

- Robots now _____ help astronauts perform very difficult tasks.
- _____ robots recognise our voices five years ago?
- I read the book three times, but I _____ understand it.
- I _____ remember his name. Do you know it?
- Ten years ago, my grandpa _____ ride a horse, but now he can't.
- Our daughter _____ read until she was seven years old.
- Sorry, I _____ help you. I must do my homework!
- Mozart _____ play the piano when he was only five years old.
- We _____ buy any bread because the baker's was closed.
- Jeanny _____ help you plant vegetables. She knows a lot about gardening.

VII. Complete the sentences with the correct form or tense of the verbs in brackets.

1. Robots_____ (change) our life in the near future.
2. Since 2014 we_____ (sell) millions robots helping in households.
3. Yesterday we_____ (study) the roles of robots in the future.
4. The children_____ (play) video games upstairs. It's really noisy!
5. _____ (you/ ever/ see) a humanoid robot?
6. What will happen if robots_____ (take) our jobs?
7. I_____ (have) dinner with my cousin tonight. It's her birthday.
8. We_____ (not play) tennis tomorrow if it rains.
9. Sofia robot is capable of_____ (hold) a conversation.
10. This robot is designed to be able_____ (open) doors, and reach for objects.

VIII. Complete the sentences with *can*, *can't*, *could*, *couldn't*, *will be able* or *won't be able*.

1. _____ robots in the past help astronauts on board the space station?
2. Robots of the future _____ to cook our food and even run our cars.
3. There are some things that robots_____ do but people can.
4. In 20 or 30 years, some robot_____ to talk like a human.
5. When he was young, he _____ speak English at all.
6. I'm really sorry, but I _____ to attend your birthday party.
7. I don't think robots_____ do all of our jobs.
8. My brother_____ to start school until next year.
9. Some years ago, robots_____ clean the house, but now they can.
10. By the age of eight she_____ speak English and French quite well.

IX. Complete each sentence with an appropriate preposition.

1. What do you think about the role of the robots_____ the future?
2. In some years, some robots will be able to talk_____ us.
3. Sofia robot is capable_____ answering a large number of questions.
4. Some robots will wake you_____ in the morning and make your coffee.
5. My robot could push me out_____ bed.
6. Buddy is designed to help you_____ your everyday activities.
7. Young people are interested_____ robots that can do household chores.
8. Space robots can build space stations_____ the Moon and other planets.

X. Complete each blank with a correct word.

1. In the future, robots will help us_____ the laundry.
2. My robot will help me do the_____. It will grow and take care of the plants in our small garden.
3. Will robots be_____ to understand what we say?
4. Robots in the past_____ talk, but now they can.
5. Space robots can build space_____ on the Moon and other planets.
6. Home robots can do all the_____, such as cooking, cleaning, washing the dishes.
7. In ten years, robots will wake you up in the morning and_____ your bed.
8. Doctor robots can help_____ people in a hospital.

XI. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find, circle and correct the mistakes.

1. If robots will do all of our work, we will have nothing to do.
2. We couldn't bought any bread because the baker's was closed.
3. Mona isn't busy today and she could help her mother at home.
4. Will you able to carry all the shopping back home on your bike?
5. Could you to ride a bike when you were in the fifth grade?
6. What do you think of the role of robots in the future?
7. We will be able to play football because it is raining heavily.

8. Robots will wake you up every morning and do your breakfast.

XII. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. Some robots will be able to do our household_____. (act)
2. Some robots will do voice_____in houses and commonplaces. (recognise)
3. Some robots will be_____than the eye can see. (small)
4. Today, robots are doing the jobs that are dangerous or_____for people. (healthy)
5. Robots will soon do all of our work and we will live more_____. (comfort)
6. People are very_____in robots. However, robots also scare people. (interest)
7. You can teach Siri how to_____a name in your contact list. (pronunciation)
8. In the future, robots will be more_____to human beings. (help)

XIII. Choose the correct answer to complete the passage.

Carrying your own bags is such a (1)_____. With Gita Robot, worry no more. This compact robot is designed to follow you around (2)_____you're out and about in town or on the way to work. The robot is capable (3)_____carrying the equivalent of a case of wine, a loaded rucksack or two shopping bags, so it's an (4)_____companion for a quick trip down to the shops. In the future, you (5)_____be able to leave the car at home and stretch your legs without the misery of carrying your (6)_____home.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|------------------|
| 1. a. work | b. chore | c. part | d. way |
| 2. a. because | b. though | c. whether | d. while |
| 3. a. in | b. for | c. of | d. on |
| 4. a. ideal | b. pleasant | c. expensive | d. uncomfortable |
| 5. a. can | b. could | c. will | d. might |
| 6. a. buying | b. shopping | c. selling | d. pushing |

XIV. Read the passage, then do the tasks.

ROBOTS

A robot is a machine. But it is not just any machine. It is a special kind of machine. It is a machine that moves. It follows instructions. The instructions come from a computer. Because it is a machine, it does not make mistakes. And it does not get tired. And it never complains. Unless you tell it to!

Robots are all around us. Some robots are used to make things. For example, robots can help make cars. Some robots are used to explore dangerous places. For example, robots can help explore volcanoes. Some robots are used to clean things. These robots can help vacuum your house. Some robots can even recognize words. They can be used to help answer telephone calls. Some robots look like humans. But most robots do not. Most robots just look like machines.

Long ago, people imagined robots. But nobody was able to make a real robot. The first real robot was made in 1961. It was called Unimate. It was used to help make cars. It looked like a giant arm.

In the future, we will have even more robots. They will do things that we can't do. Or they will do things that we don't want to do. Or they will do things that are too dangerous for us. They will help make life better.

A. Choose the correct answers.

1. As used in paragraph 1, we can understand that something special is NOT_____.
a. normal b. expensive c. perfect d. tired
2. According to the author, robots cannot be used to_____.
a. explore volcanoes b. make cars c. clean your house d. do the gardening
3. What is the main purpose of paragraph 2?
a. to show how easy it is to make a robot
b. to tell what a robot is
c. to describe the things a robot can do
d. to explain the difference between a robot and a machine
4. Which of these gives the best use of a robot?

- a. to help make a sandwich
- b. to help tie shoes
- c. to help read a book
- d. to help explore Mars
- 5. How does the author feel about robots?
 - a. Robots are useless.
 - b. Robots are helpful.
 - c. Robots are confusing.
 - d. Robots are dangerous.

B. Answer the questions.

1. What is a robot?
2. Why doesn't a robot make mistakes?
3. Do most robots look like humans?
4. When was the first robot made?
5. What did the first robot look like?
6. Will robots make our lives better or worse?

XV. Complete the passage with the words from the box.

freely used schoolwork more robots transmits health since

I have had my robot for 3 years now, and it has helped me enormously with my (1)_____. I can't go to school because I have a (2)_____ condition. So I send my robot to school in my place. The robot (3)_____ information to me in real time and I can ask it to perform a number of functions. It asks and responds to questions from teachers, can move (4)_____ around the school, and it even interacts with my classmates. I am really happy with it and my grades have improved dramatically (5)_____ I have had it.

Although it was pretty difficult to get (6)_____ to using the robot at first, I realise I am really lucky to have him. I was reading in the paper the other day that a lot of kids want (7)_____ to learn or play with, or help them with their chores. I suppose a lot (8)_____ people will have robots in the future as this type of technology continues to develop at a frightening pace.

XVI. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. was/ play/ I/ when/ chess/ six/ could/ I
2. couldn't/ football/ was/ we/ play/ it/ raining /because
3. understand/ not/ she/ anything/ said/ I/ could
4. when/ speak/ were/ you/ five/ could/ you/ English?
5. could/ my/ was/ two/ when/ brother/ he/ pictures/ draw
6. the/ could/ years/ house/ robots/ ten/ ago/ clean?
7. was/ very/ I/ couldn't/ this/ heavy/ it/ suitcase/ so/ lift
8. well/ Dave/ play/ could/ was/ when/ tennis/ he/ young

XVII. Reorder the words to make full sentences.

1. in/ today/ Robots/ intelligent/ are/ than/ more/ those/ the past.

2. robots/ ago/ couldn't/ years/ make/ Many/ or/ the floor/ clean/ coffee.
3. already/ many/ by/ tasks/ Robots/ do/ can/ traditionally/ humans/ done.
4. can/ pronunciation/ help/ their/ English/ children/ Teaching robots/ improve.
5. our/ will/ future/ robots/ in/ change/ life/ near/ the.
6. In 2030/ to/ robots/ will/ do/ housework/ able/ all/ the/ of/ us/ instead.
7. will/ Future robots/ the/ human beings/ ability/ interact/ have/ with/ to.
8. we/ In/ see/ years/ humanoid robots/ our home/ the next 20 or 30/ will/ in.

XVIII. **Complete the second sentence so that it means the same as first one. Use the word in brackets.**

1. Robotics doesn't really interest me. (in)
I'm _____
2. Jack participated in a robotics competition last month. (part)
Jack _____
3. This robot is capable of cooking a variety of different meals. (can)
This robot _____
4. My computer didn't work last night, so I couldn't email you. (because)
I _____
5. I do not run as fast as I did when I was young. (could)
When I _____
6. It wasn't necessary for me to finish my homework yesterday. (need)
I _____
7. She started to work at the school canteen two months ago. (for)
She _____
8. You should study hard, or you won't pass the exam. (will)
If you _____

TEST 1 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

I. Circle the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. A. ruler <u>s</u> | B. pencil <u>s</u> | C. book <u>s</u> | D. bag <u>s</u> |
| 2. A. <u>th</u> ank | B. <u>th</u> at | C. <u>th</u> is | D. <u>th</u> ose |
| 3. A. ab <u>o</u> ve | B. gl <u>o</u> ve | C. l <u>o</u> ve | D. m <u>o</u> ve |
| 4. A. h <u>a</u> s | B. n <u>a</u> me | C. f <u>a</u> my | D. l <u>a</u> mp |
| 5. A. <u>u</u> se | B. p <u>u</u> pil | C. n <u>u</u> mb <u>er</u> | D. m <u>u</u> sic |
| 6. A. city | B. fine | C. kind | D. like |
| 7. A. b <u>o</u> ttle | B. j <u>o</u> b | C. m <u>o</u> vie | D. ch <u>o</u> colate |
| 8. A. clim <u>b</u> | B. <u>b</u> ed | C. cl <u>u</u> b | D. <u>b</u> ench |
| 9. A. r <u>e</u> ad | B. t <u>e</u> acher | C. <u>e</u> at | D. a <u>h</u> ead |
| 10. A. qu <u>e</u> stion | B. n <u>a</u> tion | C. st <u>a</u> tion | D. infor <u>m</u> ation |

II. Choose the best answer.

1. She is the..... of all the girls in my class.
A. pretty B. prettiest C. prettier D. more prettier

2. My daughter..... English on Wednesday and Friday.
A. not have B. isn't have C. don't have D. doesn't have
3. Do you want photos for you ?
A. I take B. me take C. me taking D. me to take
4. My brother and I often go fishing in..... free time.
A. your B. my C. our D. their
5. I'm going to thenow. I want to buy some bread.
A. post office B. drugstore C. bakery D. toystore
6. Is this her ?
A. erasers B. books C. an eraser D. eraser
7. The opposite of "weak" is
A. thin B. small C. strong D. heavy
8. She doesn't have..... friends at school
A. a B. some C. many D. much
9. Hoa and I funny stories.
A. reading B. am reading C. is reading D. are reading
10. What does Lien do when..... warm?
A. it B. it's C. its D. they're
11. Don't be late your school.
A. on B. at C. to D. for
- 12..... do you get there? - We walk, of course.
A. Why B. What C. How by D. How
13. What about..... to Hue on Sunday.
A. to go B. go C. going D. goes
14. Mr & Mrs Brown & their father have..... legs.
A. four B. six C. eight D. ten
15. These are my clothes, and those are
A. you B. your C. yours D. your's
16. There arefingers in one hand.
A. two B. five C. ten D. one
17. It is twelve o'clock, Mai Anh. Let'slunch.
A. to have B. to having C. has D. have
18. His mother is a doctor. She works in a
A. hospital B. post office C. restaurant D. cinema
19. How.....kilos of rice do you want?
A. many B. much C. often D. about
20. It is twenty-five past
A. fifty B. a quarter C. four o'clock D. eleven

III. Find and correct the mistakes.

Ex: 0. He don't like apples. → Correct don't → doesn't

1. I'm twenty-one year old and I'm a worker.
2. She and he goes to work on foot.
3. That's my sister over there. She stands next to the window.
4. Let's going shopping!
5. My friends doesn't like watch TV after school.
6. He is the tallest of the two boys.
7. There is an big eraser on the desk.
8. We aren't understand what you are saying.
9. How many mans are there in the room?
10. We can't go out because it rains.

IV. Give the correct form of the verbs.

1. She (have).....a party tonight.

2. They(not watch) television at the moment.
3. Let's (help) your friend, Nam. She(do) her homework.
4. What you..... (do) this summer vacation?
- I.....(visit) Ha Long Bay.
5. She can.....(speak) English very well.
6. It often..... (rain) in summer.

V. Give the correct form of the words.

- | | |
|--|---------------|
| 1. We must be when we cross the road. | CARE |
| 2. There are lot of mountains in Viet Nam. | BEAUTY |
| 3. I'm Vietnamese. What's your? | NATION |
| 4. This is the building in our town. | TALL |
| 5. This tree has a lot of green | LEAF |
| 6. I don't like weather | SUN |
| 7. Mai's sister is a | SING |
| 8. His are small and white. | TOOTH |
| 9. Lee is from China. She is | CHINA |
| 10. It's very in the city. | NOISE |

VI. Rewrite each of the following sentences, beginning with the given words.

1. There / be / small / pond / front / Lam / house.
.....
2. You / can / games / afternoon / but / must / homework / evening.
.....
3. Lan / walk / ride / bike / school?
.....
4. When / it / hot / we / often / go / swim.
.....
5. What / there / front / your house?
.....
6. Where / your father / sit / now?
.....
7. My class / start / seven / morning.
.....
8. I / not often / swimming / friends.
.....

VII. Rewrite each of the following sentences, beginning with the given words.

Ex: It took her 3 hours to get to the city centre.

→ She spent 3 hours **getting to the city centre**.

1. Does your class have thirty students?
- Are there?
2. How much does a bowl of noodles cost?
- How much is?
3. He often walks to school.
- He often goes
4. Mr. Brown has a daughter, Hoa.
- Mr. Brown is
5. What is the length of this river?
- How?
6. What is the price of this hat?
- How?
7. What is the price of a cake and an orange?
- How?
8. That book belongs to Nam.

- That is

VIII. Read the passage below and write T (for TRUE) and F (for FALSE)

It's six o'clock in the evening. Many people are at home. They are having dinner. They are watching TV. They are listening to music. But Mrs. Bich is going to work. She's a doctor and she works at night in the hospital. Today she's late. The hospital is not in her neighborhood so she usually goes by car. Mrs. Bich is in her car now. She's driving fast. She should slow down but she must be at work by six thirty. A policeman stops her. "You are driving too fast!" he says. You are going to have an accident. It's six thirty. Mrs. Bich is not at the hospital. She's at the police station. Her car must stay there for fourteen days.

- 1. Many people are not working.
- 2. Mrs. Bich comes home every evening at six.
- 3. Mrs. Bich is a night doctor.
- 4. The hospital is near her house.
- 5. She goes to work by motorbike.
- 6. She is late for work.
- 7. She is a dangerous driver.
- 8. A policeman doesn't keep her car.
- 9. She arrives at the hospital at 6.30.
- 10. She isn't going to drive her car for two weeks.

TEST 2 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the underlined part.

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. <u>c</u> ard | B. <u>h</u> and | C. <u>b</u> and | D. <u>s</u> tand |
| 2. A. <u>th</u> ank | B. <u>th</u> ink | C. <u>th</u> rough | D. <u>th</u> en |
| 3. A. <u>to</u> wn | B. <u>o</u> wn | C. <u>c</u> ow | D. <u>to</u> wn |
| 4. A. <u>l</u> oud | B. <u>sh</u> ould | C. <u>s</u> ound | D. <u>m</u> ountain |
| 5. A. <u>y</u> ard | B. <u>b</u> ad | C. <u>c</u> at | D. <u>h</u> at |

II. Choose the correct answers.

6. If people can _____ wastes, they will save a lot of money.
 A. reuse B. reduce C. rebuild D. use
7. _____ new technology, we now have super smart TVs, smart phones.
 A. Because B. Because of C. Thanks D. Thanks to
8. Robots will do most of the housework, _____ we will have more time for our family.
 A. so B. but C. although D. if
9. _____ We should have recycling bins in each classroom for _____ things.
 A. use B. reuse C. reused D. reusable
10. If we plant more trees, the _____ will be greener.
 A. neighbour B. soil C. air D. neighbourhood
11. All of the machines will have a special card _____.
 A. start B. to start C. starting D. to starting
12. If we _____ all the trees, there will be no more oxygen for us to breathe.
 A. cuts B. cut off C. cutting D. cut down
13. We should open all the windows, so we don't _____ use air-conditioners.
 A. have B. have to C. needn't D. need
14. Plant more trees in the schoolyard because they will provide shade and _____ the atmosphere fresher.
 A. do B. make C. have D. use
15. Our dream house will use only solar energy so that we can make the _____ clean and green.
 A. nature B. environment C. kitchen D. home
16. Many products are now helping you _____ your energy bills.
 A. reduce B. reuse C. recycle D. cut down
17. It takes a lot of energy to keep food cool, so don't _____ the fridge door open or putting hot things inside.
 A. make B. have C. leave D. stop
18. Future houses will have hi-tech _____ rooms for all of the family members.
 A. read B. to read C. reading D. to reading
19. Our houses will use the sun or the wind _____ electricity.
 A. to have B. to do C. to make D. to give
20. In the future, cars might use energy from _____.
 A. gas B. water C. oil D. power
21. Our dream house will be located _____ the sea.
 A. on B. at C. in D. between
22. Don't _____ old things because perhaps you will need them later.
 A. throw B. throw away C. throwing D. throwing away

23. _____causes many breathing problems.
 A. Fresh air B. Fresher air C. Polluting air D. Polluted air
24. We won't use CD players because we will have smart watches that_____music.
 A. play B. plays C. hear D. listen to
25. If you eat _____fast food, you will be fatter easily.
 A. very B. very much C. too much D. most

III. Complete the first conditional sentences.

26. If we stay at home, we (miss)_____the show.
 27. We (ask)_____about it, if you want.
 28. If he (want)_____it, we'll buy it.
 29. If it (not/ work)_____, we'll take it back.
 30. They (not/ go)_____on holiday this year, if their friends come to see them.
 31. You will be tired tomorrow if you (not/ go)_____to bed early.
 32. (the boys/ wear)_____their new T-shirts tomorrow if it is sunny?
 33. The cake (burn)_____if he doesn't turn off the oven.
 34. We won't go to the beach tomorrow if it (rain)_____.
 35. Will you walk to school if the bus (not/ come)_____soon?

IV. Fill in each blank with ONE suitable word.

36. Soil pollution can make_____die.
 37. What do these three Rs_____for?
 38. If we all use this kind of bag, we'll help to protect the_____.
 39. We should find_____ways to reuse our old items before throwing them away.
 40. If the river is not_____, there will be more fish.

V. Complete the conversation with *will*, *won't* or *might*.

- A Do you think it (41)_____rain tomorrow?
 B I don't think so. I think it (42)_____be sunny. It (43)_____be cloudy but it certainly (44)_____be rainy.
 A I think I (45)_____go to the beach.
 B I (46)_____come with you or I (47)_____stay at home. I (48)_____help my sister make a poster. She (49)_____need a new one.
 A (50)_____you go to the library with me now?
 B OK!

VI. Complete the conversation. Use the first conditional.

- A _____ (51)_____?
 (you come to the concert/ I buy the tickets)
 B Yes, I (52)_____.
 A I (53. ask)_____Jack if he (54. want)_____to come too.
 B If Jack (55. come)_____, I (56)_____certainly go!
 A OK. If I (57. see)_____her, I (58. ask)_____her.
 B If she (59. not want)_____to come, I (60. ask)_____her out
 somewhere else.
 A That's fine.

VII. Read the passage, and then fill in each blank with ONE appropriate word. produce

I would like to live in one of the (61)_____modern houses in the world. It will produce all the energy it needs from the (62)_____energy, the wind energy, but not from gas, or oil. There will be modern electronic (63)____in the kitchen such as a smart refrigerator, a dishwasher, a microwave oven, and so on. The house will also have a hi-tech TV that helps us to watch TV programmes from space. A home robot will be able to do all of (64)_____, so our life will become more comfortable than ever (65).

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------|-----------------|
| 61. A. much | B. more | C. most | D. almost |
| 62. A. sun | B. solar | C. sunny | D. cloudy |
| 63. A. appliances | B. tools | C. machines | D. equip |
| 64. A. housework | B. the housework | C. homework | D. the homework |
| 65. A. until | B. after | C. before | D. then |

VIII. Read the text, and then decide whether the sentences are *True* or *False*.

As good as new

Do you think that people can make a fun bag with old juice cartons? The colourful T-shirt was once plastic bottles. It takes five large plastic bottles to make one large T-shirt. Scientists can make baseball caps from plastic bottles, too. They can also make sports shoes from car tyres.

People use old newspapers, comics, and bus tickets to make beautiful bracelets.

Next time you are out shopping, see how many recycled items you can find. Or why not try making something new from your old garbage? You can make greeting cards from old paper and magazines. You can make book covers from old plastic bags, posters, maps or even clothes. You save wrapping paper, gift boxes, and ribbons and use them again.

66. The shoes might be car tyres.
67. It is possible for scientists to recycle car tyres.
68. It takes one large bottle to make five large T-shirts.
69. You can make book covers from clothes.
70. You can reuse wrapping paper, gift boxes, and ribbons.

IX. Read the text, and then answer the questions.

Give your garbage a new home

Recycling is a great idea, but before you throw your garbage into a recycling bin, stop and think. There are lots of other things you can do with your garbage.

- How about giving your old books, toys, or clothes to a charity? The charity will sell your old things to make money.
- Why not take old boxes, wrapping paper, greeting cards, and ribbons to a local school? Teachers will use them for art classes.
- What about taking old boxes and newspapers to pet shops? They will use them to make beds for the animals.
- Why not take old magazines to a local doctors offices? They will put them in the waiting room for patients to read.
- Some supermarkets recycle plastic bags, so you can return your bags to them.

Your garbage is useful to other people. Find a new home for your old things and help your town.

71. Where can you take your old toys?
72. Where can you take your old boxes, wrapping paper, and greeting cards?
73. Where can you take your old newspapers?
74. Where can you take your old magazines?

75. Where can you take your plastic bags?

X. Make sentences using the words and phrases given.

76. When/ Nam/ ten/ he/ speak/ English/ phone.

77. My sister/ write/ poems/ she/ eight.

78. They/ worried/ that/ some people/ use/ robots/ bad things.

79. If/ people/ plant/more trees/ area/ there/ be/ no floods.

80. If/ we/ recycle/ old newspapers/ we/ save/ lot/ labour/ trees.

TEST 3 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

I. Choose the word that has the underlined part pronounced differently from the rest.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. a. n <u>at</u> ural | b. sol <u>a</u> r | c. pl <u>a</u> net | d. f <u>a</u> ct |
| 2. a. wind <u>ow</u> | b. sh <u>ow</u> | c. gr <u>ow</u> | d. all <u>ow</u> |
| 3. a. <u>th</u> ink | b. b <u>a</u> th | c. cl <u>o</u> thes | d. <u>th</u> rough |
| 4. a. poll <u>u</u> te | b. red <u>u</u> ce | c. re <u>u</u> se | d. f <u>u</u> ture |
| 5. a. la <u>u</u> ndry | b. dr <u>a</u> w | c. w <u>a</u> ter | d. la <u>u</u> gh |

II. Choose the correct answer a, b, c, or d.

- In the future, many cars will run _____ electricity, which doesn't cause air pollution.
a. in b. on c. by d. with
- You should turn the tap _____ when you brush your teeth to save water.
a. up b. down c. on d. off
- You should donate your old clothes, toys and furniture to people in _____.
a. order b. fact c. need d. case
- _____ robots can help to teach children in the classroom, they will never replace teachers.
a. When b. Although c. Because d. If
- _____ robots be able to feel and behave like us?
a. Will b. Can c. Do d. Are
- There are lots of _____ problems nowadays, mainly because of pollution.
a. natural b. social c. practical d. environmental
- In the future, we _____ go on holiday to the Moon or other planets.
a. could b. must c. might d. should
- Robots make car manufacturing _____ because they can take on dangerous jobs in place of humans.
a. stronger b. safer c. larger d. heavier
- To _____ waste we should avoid buying products with a lot of packaging.
a. recycle b. reuse c. reduce d. remake
- 'Will robots be more and more expensive?' '_____ Prices will become cheaper over time.'
a. Not at all. b. Sure. c. Sounds great! d. I think so.

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense or form.

- If we _____ (not stop) cutting down so many trees, we'll endanger our oxygen supply.
- Last year Mr. Johnson _____ (teach) us Robotics.
- My sister is really busy – she _____ (study) for the exam.

4. In the future, robots _____ (do) things that people can't do or don't want to do.
5. Mark _____ (be) to Sa Pa twice. The first time _____ (be) more than ten years ago.
6. How often _____ (you/ do) household chores? ~ Every day.
7. Twenty years ago, most people around the world _____ (not know) what the Internet was.
8. If we dump all sorts of chemicals into rivers, we _____ (not be able to) swim in them in the future.

IV. Supply the correct form of the words in brackets.

1. The smartphone is one of the most useful _____ devices. (wire)
2. Solar panels take energy from the sun to produce _____. (electric)
3. Household waste _____ the environment when not disposed of properly. (pollution)
4. More and more companies are making products from _____ materials. (recycle)
5. _____ water bottles reduce plastic waste and contribute to saving the environment. (reuse)
6. The International Robot _____ is the largest robot trade fair in the world. (exhibit)
7. Robotics helps to make work and your life _____. (easy)
8. Robots don't have the _____ to think about their action before they act. (able)

V. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find and correct it.

1. In the future, robots will do all the housework instead us.
2. I'm sorry I won't able to go to your party on Friday.
3. I can write with my right hand. I'm left-handed.
4. Using a lot of plastic bags are bad for the environment.
5. If we will go shopping tomorrow, I'll buy some reusable shopping bags.
6. Some people believe that robots will play a important role in our lives.

VI. Match the sentences.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. If we don't do something to stop pollution, | a. if we don't cut down on waste rapidly. |
| 2. I would love a self-cleaning house | b. if you switch off your TV when you're not watching. |
| 3. Smart refrigerators will help reduce waste | c. that could cook all my meals for me. |
| 4. Pepper is a Japanese humanoid robot | d. that does all the housework for me. |
| 5. You will save electricity | e. that can sense emotion and exhibit its own feelings. |
| 6. Robots won't replace teachers in the classroom | f. by letting you know when the food in your fridge are about to go bad. |
| 7. We'll threaten our own existence | g. we may kill most of the life forms living on our planet today. |
| 8. I'd like a robot chef | h. because they can't inspire students to do their best. |

VII. Choose the word which best fits each gap.

Eco-friendly houses

How 'eco-friendly' is your house? Here are some things that you can do to protect the environment and make the world a better place.

- ◆ Turn (1) _____ the lights when you are not in a room and don't leave computers and TVs on standby.
 - ◆ Turn down the heating. If you're cold, you can put on a jumper!
 - ◆ Put solar panels on the roof. Using energy from the (2) _____ can save a lot of money and electricity.
 - ◆ Don't keep the (3) _____ running when you brush your teeth or wash vegetables.
 - ◆ Don't (4) _____ away things you don't want anymore. Remember the three Rs - reuse, repair and recycle.
 - ◆ Grow your own vegetables in your garden - it's eco-friendly and (5) _____.
- Saving the planet starts at home and it could start as (6) _____ as you get home today!

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. a. on | b. off | c. up | d. down |
| 2. a. coal | b. wind | c. water | d. sun |
| 3. a. tap | b. pipe | c. knob | d. bin |
| 4. a. bring | b. give | c. throw | d. turn |
| 5. a. modern | b. healthy | c. useful | d. polluting |
| 6. a. long | b. much | c. good | d. soon |

VIII. Read the text carefully, then decide if the statements are true (T) or false (F).

TEEN LIFE IN THE FUTURE

What will life for teenagers be like in the year 2030? For the start, computers will be everywhere and they will do everything for us.

We won't have alarm clocks in the future. A picture in your bedroom will become a computer screen and it'll wake you up and say hello. You'll walk into the kitchen and the toaster and coffee machine will recognise your voice and automatically make you your breakfast.

Your computer will remind you to do your homework. You won't need a backpack, because all your text books will be digital and they'll be on one e-reader.

In your classroom, the top of your desk will become a computer screen. You'll touch the screen to connect to the Internet, but you won't be able to send or receive personal messages.

You won't have to go to the shopping centre to buy your clothes. You'll buy a sweater online and it'll be right size because a computer will scan your body.

Everyone will have a touch screen phone with GPS, so you'll never get lost. The bad news is that your parents will use the GPS to know exactly where you are!

- Life in the future will be better and more convenient.
- A robot will make your breakfast every morning.
- Students won't have to do their homework because their computer will do it.
- There will be no more textbooks in classes.
- At a clothes shop, a computer will scan your body for measurements.
- Students will be able to send and receive their personal messages in the classroom.
- GPS will be used to find out where you are.

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it has the same meaning to the first one. Use the word in brackets.

- What are your plans for the weekend? (do)
What _____
- Peter knew how to skate when he was 12. (could)
Peter _____
- The last time they visited Europe was two years ago. (not)
They _____
- Robots are not as intelligent as humans. (than)
Humans _____
- How long have you learned English? (start)
When _____

X. Write sentences, using the words or phrases given.

- Robots/ the future/ be/ able/ talk/ humans?
- You/ create/ more rubbish/ if/ you/ not recycle/ glass and bottles.
- Reusable bags/ better/ plastic bags/ because/ they/ made/ natural materials.

KEYS ANSWER

UNIT 7. TELEVISION

B. GRAMMAR

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Bài 1. Chọn từ thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống, một từ có thể dùng nhiều lần.

- | | | |
|----------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. Where | 6. How much | 11. What time |
| 2. When | 7. What | 12. How |
| 3. Which | 8. What | 13. When |
| 4. When | 9. Why | 14. Why |
| 5. Who | 10. How often | |

Bài 2. Chọn câu trả lời đúng nhất điền vào chỗ trống

1. Do you know..... language is spoken in Kenya?
A. which B. who C. What D. how
2. What is your blood type?
A. which B. who C. What D. how
3. Do you play tennis? For exercise
A. which B. who C. What D. why
4. Can I buy some milk? At the supermarket.
A. which B. where C. What D. how
5. How much do you weigh?
A. which B. who C. What D. how
6. What is this? It's my brother's?
A. which B. who C. What D. whose
7. Can I park my car? Over there.
A. where B. who C. What D. how
8. How tall are you?
A. which B. who C. What D. how
9. Do you like your tea? I like it with cream and sugar.
A. which B. who C. What D. how
10. Which picture do you prefer – this one or that one?
A. which B. who C. What D. how
11. Is that woman? I think she is a teacher.
A. which B. who C. What D. how
12. Which book is this? It's mine
A. which B. who C. What D. whose
13. Do you usually eat lunch? At noon.
A. which B. who C. What D. when
14. How does your father work? At City Hall
A. which B. where C. What D. how
15. Who usually gets up the earliest in your family?
A. which B. who C. What D. how
16. How do you think of this hotel? It's pretty good
A. which B. who C. What D. how
17. How does your father work at that company? Because It's near our house
A. which B. why C. What D. how
18. Who dances the best in your family?
A. which B. who C. What D. how

Bài 3. Tìm và sửa lỗi sai trong các câu sau

1. What does you like? **do**
2. Whose computer do you often use? **Which**
3. Where do that boy come from? **does**
4. When you dogo to the office? **do you**
5. Does why your brother like this film? **Why does**

6. Who you usually study with? Who do you
7. How does Susan comes home? come
8. Does Roger play tennis how often? How often does Roger play tennis?
9. Does you always run to school why? Why does
10. Where are you park your bike? do

Bài 4. Dựa vào câu trả lời, chọn Wh-word thích hợp điền vào chỗ trống

1. What..... do you want to eat? Paste or cheese.
2. How..... does John do to the beach? By car
3. How many..... floors does your school have? Four
4. When..... do we get up? Early in the morning
5. Where..... did you family go swimming yesterday? At the club
6. What..... do you usually eat for breakfast? Toast and eggs.
7. ... Where..... does Peter come from? London
- 8..... Who... do you usually have lunch with? – My friends
9. When..... do they go to school? – In the morning
10. How..... does mary come to class? – By bus
11. What time/ When do your sister and you usually get up? – Ten o'clock.
12. ... Which..... ice – cream does John like? – Chocolate
13. whose..... cap do you often borrow? - My brother's
- 14... Why..... does she sometimes come to work late? Because she misses the train.
15. How often..... do you go shopping? Once a week.
16. ... Who..... is good at English? Tom
17. How..... old is her son? - Seven
18. Where..... are your posters? Over my bed.
19. How..... much is this pullover? Twenty pounds.
20. Which..... colour is your car? - Red.

Bài 5. Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành một câu hoàn chỉnh

1. they/ what / doing/ are?
What are they doing?
2. up/ get/ you/ when/ in / the/ morning/ do?
When do you get up in the morning?
3. name/ you / do/ spell / how/ your?
How do you spell your name?
4. homework / is/ what/ for?
What is for homework?
5. does/ Tim/ like/ handball/ why?
Why does Tim like handball?
6. do/ what/ the girls / like sports?
What sports do the girls like?
7. for/ lunch/ your/ what/ have/ did/ friend?
What did your friend have for lunch?
8. Kevin/ saty/ in/ long/ how/ did/ Paris?
How long did Kavin stay in Paris?
9. the / what/ weather/ like/ was?
What was the weather like?
10. math/ who/ easy/ thinks/ is?
Who thinks math is easy?

Bài 6. Viết câu hỏi cho những câu trả lời dưới đây, bắt đầu bằng từ cho sẵn.

1. They live in Blooklyn.
Where.....do they live...?
2. The lesson begins at 8 o'clock.
What time.....does the lesson begin.....?

3. They get home at 6 o'clock every night.
What time.....**do they get home every night.**?
4. She speaks French very well.
What...**does she speak well**.....?
5. Those book costs one dollar.
How much.....**do those books cost.**?
6. They travel by car.
How...**do they travel..**?
7. She wants to learn English because she wants a better job.
Why**does she want to learn English**...?
8. They meet on the corner every morning.
Where **do they meet every morning**?
9. She teaches us grammar.
What **does she teach us**?
10. He gets up at seven every morning.
When **does he get up every morning**?
11. Those girls sell newspaper there.
What **do those girls sell there**?

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG

Bài 7. Chọn đáp án thích hợp để điền vào chỗ trống.

1. I like English.....I like French very much.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
2. My brother likes maths.....he doesn't like history.
A. and **B. but** C. or D. so
3. The children forgot their homework,the teacher was angry with them.
A. and B. but C. or **D. so**
4. Can you read.....write English words?
A. and B. but **C. or** D. so
5. Are the questions right wrong?
A. and B. but **C. or** D. so
6. It's great.....it's fun.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
7. Would ou like teahot chocolate for your breakfast?
A. and B. but **C. or** D. so
8. Our car is old, it drives beautifully.
A. and **B. but** C. or D. so
9. It was very warm, we all went swimming.
A. and B. but C. or **D. so**
10. Do we have French.....music after the break?
A. and B. but **C. or** D. so
11. I like sugar in my tea, I don't like milk in it.
A. and **B. but** C. or D. so
12. We were very tired happy after our flight to Sydney.
A. and **B. but** C. or D. so
13. Jeawon was cold,he put on a coat.
A. and B. but C. or **D. so**
14. Julia has a guitar, she plays it really well.
A. and B. but C. or D. so
15. Maria tried to read a novel in French,.....it was too difficult.
A. and **B. but** C. or D. so
16. He lives in london,.....he studies at a college.
A. and B. but C. or D. so

17. You can go to the tourist office.....ask them for any information you need.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
18. Does Miss Smith like the red boots.....the black and white sandals?
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
19. Lynda likes Tom.....he is in love with Annette.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so
20. Geraldine Chaplin is a great actress.....she is less well – known than father Charlie Chaplin.
 A. and B. but C. or D. so

Bài 8. Nối mệnh đề ở cột A với mệnh đề ở cột B sao cho câu có ý nghĩa, sau đó viết lại câu.

- We wanted to go to the show but there weren't any seats left.
- I often make omelettes because they are quick and easy .
- Shall we go to the cinema and watch that film you were talking about ?
- Burgers are very tasty although they are not film very healthy.
- My neighbors are friendly but they are noisy.
- Do you know if he's at home or at the football match?
- Pick me up early, please, so we don't get there late.
- We know he has great dreams because he laughs in his sleep.

Bài 9. Khoanh tròn vào liên từ thích hợp trong mỗi câu sau.

- I'd love to stay (so/ and/ but) I have to catch my bus.
- His hot chocolate was too hot (so/ and/ but) he put some cold milk in it.
- (Or/Although/Because) we had an umbrella, we got extremely wet.
- I only passed my exam (because/ but/ although) you helped me.
- They were hungry (but/ because/ so) they made some sandwiches.
- We can go to the pool (and/ but/ or) we can go horse-riding, whichever you prefer.
- She didn't want him to see her (and/ so/ although) she hid behind a plant.
- He's in the town centre (so/ because/ but) he wants to look for shoes.
- I'm definitely coming tonight, (or/ because/ although) I could be a bit late.
- We can go to the shop before we go to Clare's house (and/ or/ so) go to Clare's house first to see if she needs anything. What do you think?

Bài 10. Chọn liên từ thích hợp (and/ so/ but/ because) rồi điền vào chỗ trống

- | | | |
|------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. But | 12. So | 23. Because |
| 2. But | 13. Because | 24. And |
| 3. Because | 14. So | 25. Because |
| 4. So | 15. And | 26. Although |
| 5. And | 16. But | 27. But |
| 6. So | 17. Although | 28. So |
| 7. because | 18. Because | 29. But |
| 8. But | 19. And | 30. So |
| 9. Because | 20. But | 31. So |
| 10. So | 21. So | 32. And |
| 11. But | 22. but | |

Bài 11. Viết lại các câu sau, sử dụng các từ trong ngoặc.

- I don't eat cheese or butter
- He's annoying but I like him.
- We're not very hungry so we're having salad for lunch
- Although she doesn't use much suncream, she has very pale skin.
- This year, he's been to China and Brazil.
- Would you like to go to Paris or Budapest?
- He's very tired today because he went to bed very late last night.
- Although it looks very near, it's quite a long way away.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 12. Viết các câu sau dựa vào các từ cho sẵn

1. Which soup do you like? I like chicken soup.
2. Where does Ann usually go in the evening? - She usually goes to the cinema.
3. Who do Carol and Bill visit on Sundays? - They visit their grandparents.
4. What does David usually drink with his breakfast? - He usually drinks coffee.
5. When do you watch TV? - I watch TV in the evening.
6. Why does Rachel stay in bed? - She stays in bed because she is sick.
7. How do you go to the office? - I go to the office by bicycle.
8. Whose laptop does your sister carry? - She carries mine.

Bài 13. Đặt câu hỏi cho các cụm từ được gạch chân dưới đây

1. When does Minh usually take exercises?
2. How often do you brush your teeth?
3. What time does Nga has an appointment this morning?
4. Where do they live?
5. Why do you like Tom and Jerry?
6. How does she feel about the next examination?
7. What makes people different from all other animals.
8. When do they do their homework?
9. Which one do you like, the red blouse or the blue one?
10. What is that?
11. Where does he study piano?
12. What does your father do?
13. Who is your favorite musician?
14. How often do you take a holiday?
15. How long does it take to get there?
16. How much does he earn a week?
17. How much is this book?
18. How is the car?

Bài 14. Hoàn thành câu sau sử dụng các liên từ (although/ because/ but/ so)

1. **Although** Norway is a beautiful country, it is very cold in winter.
2. It is warm and sunny today.....**so**...we are going to the beach.
3. The car is very old ...**but**.....it is reliable.
4. today is my daughter's birthday,**so**.....I need to buy her a present.
5. You should take an umbrella ...**because**.....it is going to rain.
6. Thhe camera is very expensive.....**but**....it is very good.
7. I love chips...**although** it is not healthy.
8. His mother is not feeling well,**so**..... he needs to take care of her.
9. Your marks in English are low...**because**.....you don't study hard enough.
10. **Although** he is a good ski instructor, I don't like him very much.
11. I'd like to go with you...**but**.....I'm too busy right now.
12. There are no buses this hour, ...**so**.....we need to catch a taxi.
13. **Although**..... it rains a lot in winter, I like walking the dog in the park.
14. He fails his driving test, ...**so**.....he needs to do it again.
15. We invites them to the party.....**but**.....they don't want to come.
16. I don't like the concert...**because**..... the band doesn't play well.
17. We don't go on holiday..... **because** ...we don't have a lot of money.
18. I want to buy a car... **because**I need it for my job.
19. I'm learning French..... **because**I want to live in Paris.
20. **Although**he's got a car, he never drives to work.

Bài 15. Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh

1. She's in hospital because she had an accident.
2. They work many hours but they don't have much money.
3. Paul asked me a question, so I replied.
4. I buy peppers, potatoes and tomoatoes.
5. She can have an apple or a mango. She can't have both of them.
6. Karthik can play the piano but he can't play the violin.
7. She ia hard – working but her brother is very lazy.
8. She is clever and beautiful.

9. You can take a blue shirt or the green shirt.
10. I am short but my sister is tall.

Bài 16. Đọc đoạn văn và trả lời câu hỏi

1. We should visit our dentist twice a year.
2. We should brush our teeth with a toothbrush and flouride tooth paste
3. We can also use wooden toothpicks to clean between our teeth after a meal.
4. Milk, cheese, fish, brown bread, potatoes, red rice, raw vegetables, and fresh fruit
5. Chocolate, sweets, biscuits and cakes are bad

TEST 1 UNIT 7

I.

/ θ /	/ ð /
both, three, theme, thing, tooth, theater, bathroom, thunder, thrilling, birthday, earth	those, than, there, mother, feather, the, weather

II.

1. C 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. A

III.

1. D 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. C

IV.

1. B 2. B 3. A 4. B 5. A
6. B 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. B
11. C 12. D 13. B 14. D 15. D
16. C 17. B 18. D 19. B 20. B

V.

1. What 2. How 3. Where 4. Who
5. How far 6. How 7. When 8. Why

VI.

1. What 2. Who 3. Where 4. What time
5. How 6. When 7. Why 8. Where

VII.

1. when 2. because 3. until 4. unless 5. since
6. or 7. but 8. so 9. when 10. or
11. because 12. unless 13. so 14. or

VIII.

1. because 2. Although 3. so 4. but 5. and

IX.

1. entertainment 2. programmes 3. meet
4. world 5. laugh 6. comedians
7. competition 8. studio

X.

1. A 2. D 3. C 4. C

XI.

1. We'll travel to Nha Trang next week.
2. Nga and Lan will visit their grandparents.
3. They'll go to the movies tonight.
4. Hoa will have lots of friends soon.
5. I'll come after lunch.
6. He'll see you tomorrow afternoon.
7. My father will be free at 7.30 this evening.
8. The students will go camping next Sunday.

XII.

1. We know him and his friends.
2. The coat was both soft and warm.
3. It is stupid and quite unnecessary to do that.
4. I wanted to go but he wanted to stay.
5. Your arguments are strong but they don't convince me.
6. You can go there either by bus or by train.
7. I was feeling tired so I went to bed when I got home.

XIII.

1. When will the party start?
2. Who are you talking to?
3. How far is it from your house to the mountain?
4. What is her family name?
5. Where do they live?

TEST 2 UNIT 7

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. B 5. C 6. D 7. C 8. B 9. A 10. D
11. D 12. A 13. D 14. B 15. D 16. C 17. D 18. C 19. B 20. A
21. A 22. C 23. B 24. B 25. D 26. B 27. A 28. A 29. A 30. D
31. director 32. comedian 33. TV reporter 34. TV producer 35. cameraman
36. Why is watching too much TV not good?
37. What do you often do in your free time?
38. What is the Wingless Penguin about?
39. Why do children love the Wingless Penguin series?
40. Which channel is the programme on?
41. How many countries does The TV programme "Let's Learn" appear in?
42. Who enjoys the programme?
43. When is the Animals programme on?
44. How many hours do you watch TV a day?
45. How can you enough information for your essay?
46. e 47. f 48. g 49. h 50. i 51. j 52. a 53. c 54. d 55. b
56. c 57. b 58. d 59. b 60. D
61. True 62. True 63. False 64. False 65. True
66. There are many music programmes on TV nowadays.
67. The Discovery Channel makes education fun for children all over the world.
68. Would you like to go to the theater with me tonight?
69. Although I enjoy sports very much, but I don't often watch the Sports programmes.
70. The News programme helps TV viewers know about what happens every day in their country as well as all over the world.
71. Children enjoy watching cartoons because they are colourful and funny.
72. VTV Channels offer many interesting programmes in different subjects in several languages.
73. Not many Vietnamese people know that film although it is very famous in the USA.
74. Many people think the Fashion programme is only for women, but it is for everyone.
75. I am going to have a test tomorrow, so I can't watch the cartoon.
76. The game show this week tests our knowledge of rain forests.
77. The questions in the quiz show are about different subjects from grade one to grade six.
78. That singer in the live show at the theater will be on TV tomorrow.
79. That channel tells people about life animals in the world.
80. The show helps us remember our childhood.

TEST 3 UNIT 7

- I.** 1. /ð/ 2. /θ/ 3. /ð/ 4. /ð/ 5. /θ/ 6. /θ/ 7. /ð/ 8. /θ/ 9. /θ/ 10. /ð/ 11. /ð/

12. /θ/ 13. /ð/ 14. /θ/ 15. /θ/ 16. /θ/ 17. /ð/ 18. /ð/ 19. /θ/ 20. /ð/
- II.** 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b
- III.** 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. d
- IV.** 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b 6. d 7. b 8. a 9. d 10. c
- VII.** 1. do - watching 2. to listen 3. Did you watch 4. are you doing
5. does Linda like 6. is 7. watches 8. watch
- VIII.** 1. funny 2. interested 3. viewers 4. comedian
5. educational/ educative 6. best 7. useful 8. entertainment
- IX.** 1. d 2. f 3. a 4. g 5. h 6. b 7. e 8. c
- X.** 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. c
- XI.** 1. Children in the United States watch an average of three to four hours of TV a day.
2. Television can entertain, inform, and keep children company.
3. Watching too much television may lead to lower grades in school. / Children who watch too much television are likely to have lower grades in school
4. No, they shouldn't.
5. Children's shows on public TV are appropriate for children but soap operas, adult sitcoms and adult talk shows are not.
6. Parents can set certain periods when the television will be off to limit their child's screen time.
- XII.** Các em tự làm

TEST 4 UNIT 7

- I.** 1. cartoon 2. documentary 3. game show 4. weather forecast
5. comedy 6. animals 7. film 8. news
9. sports 10. music 11. science 12. education
- II.** 1. d 2. g 3. h 4. a 5. i 6. b 7. j 8. c 9. f 10. e
- III.** 1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. b 6. a 7. c 8. a 9. c 10. b
- IV.** 1. popular 2. funny 3. cute 4. national
5. educational 6. clumsy 7. boring 8. entertaining
- V.** 1. on 2. in 3. on - at 4. after 5. in 6. from 7. as 8. on
- VI.** 1. and 2. although 3. so 4. but 5. or 6. because 7. so 8. but
9. although 10. because
- VII.** 1. Nathan was late for school because he missed the bus.
2. Keep the food covered, or the flies will contaminate it.
3. Julie has a guitar and she plays it very well.
4. I need to study hard, so I can get a good score on the test.
5. Although he seemed a friendly person, I didn't like him.
6. The food looks delicious, but it tastes horrible.
7. Mason fell because the floor was wet.
8. Anna needed some money, so she took a part-time job.
- VIII.** 1. b 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. a 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. d 10. a
- IX.** 1. How often 2. How many 3. When 4. What kind
5. What 6. Why 7. Who 8. Where
9. How long 10. How much
- X.** 1. How often does your father watch the News?
2. Who is your favourite actor?
3. When do you usually watch TV?
4. What is Tim doing now?
5. What programme do you like best?
6. What time is the game show *Are you smarter than a 5th grader?* on?

7. Why do many children like cartoons?
 8. How long does *The Red Spotted Squirrel* last?
 9. How many hours do they watch TV every day?
 10. Where is The Old Town of Inca?
- XI.** 1. entertainment 2. programme 3. because 4. enjoy
 5. friends 6. fond 7. crazy 8. restrict
- .XIII.** 1. What is on television tonight?
 2. Who is your favourite television MC?
 3. How much time does Tina spend watching television?
 4. Why do they like to watch cartoons?
 5. What television programme do you like best?
 6. What time does the game show start?
 7. How often does Liz go to the cinema?
 8. When do you usually watch television?
- II.** 1. What's your favourite programme?
 2. Children shouldn't spend too much time watching television.
 3. Jim likes to watch Animal programme because he loves animals.
 4. My sister is fond of watching cartoons.
 5. How many hours do you spend watching television?
 6. Shall we go to the cinema tonight?
 7. The novel was much more interesting than the film.
 8. He seemed a friendly person, but I didn't like him.

UNIT 8: SPORTS AND GAMES

B. GRAMMAR

Bài 1: Cho dạng đúng của từ quá khứ đơn, dùng bảng động từ bất quy tắc nếu cần.

V	V-ed	V	V-ed
Meet (gặp)	Met	Enjoy (thích)	Enjoyed
Help (giúp đỡ)	Helped	Drive (lái xe)	Drove
Speak (nói)	Spoke	Plan (kế hoạch)	Planned
Live (sống)	Lived	Put (đặt)	Put
Write (viết)	Wrote	Stop (dừng lại)	Stopped
Study (học)	Studied	Sing (hát)	Sang
Do (làm)	Did	Agree (đồng ý)	Agreed
Cry (khóc)	Cried	Sit (ngồi)	Sat
Stand (đứng)	Stood	Borrow (mượn)	Borrowed
Play (chơi)	Played	Run (chạy)	Ran
Stay (ở)	Stayed	Begin(bắt đầu)	Began
Ask (hỏi)	Asked	Break (làm vỡ)	Broke
Laugh (cười)	Laughed	Bring (mang theo)	brought
Try (cố gắng)	tried	Build (xây)	Built
Tidy (dọn dẹp)	tidied	Buy (mua)	bought

Bài 2: Điền was/were vào chỗ trống:

- The teacher was nice.
- The students were clever.
- But one student was in trouble.
- We were for him.
- He was nice though.
- I was Canberra last spring.

7. We were at school last Saturday.
8. Tina was at home yesterday.
9. He was happy.
10. Robert and Stan were Garry's friends.
11. You were very busy on Friday.
12. They were in front of the supermarket.
13. I was in the museum.
14. She was in South Africa last month.
15. Jessica and Kimberly were late for school.

Bài 3: Viết các câu sau ở thể khẳng định (+), thể phủ định (-), thể nghi vấn (?)

1. (+) He wrote a book.
 (-) He didn't write a book.
 (?) Did he write a book?
2. (+) She was my boss.
 (-) She wasn't my boss.
 (?) Was she your boss?
3. (+) They built a new house.
 (-) They didn't build a new house.
 (?) Did they build a new house?
4. (+) I was at the concert last Sunday.
 (-) I wasn't at the concert last Sunday.
 (?) Were you at the concert last Sunday?
5. (+) I bought clothes in this clothes shop.
 (-) I didn't buy clothes in this clothes shop
 (?) Did you buy clothes in this clothes shop?
6. (+) They were born in Korea.
 (-) They were not born in Korea
 (?) Were they born in Korea?
7. (+) He swam in the lake.
 (-) He didn't swim in the lake
 (?) Did he swim in the lake?
8. (+) We were at the gym last week.
 (-) We weren't at the gym last week.
 (?) Were you at the gym last week?
9. (+) She went to her office by car.
 (-) She didn't go to her office by car.
 (?) Did she go to her office by car?
10. (+) He was a good boy.
 (-) He wasn't a good boy.
 (?) Was he good boy?

Bài 4. Chọn đáp án đúng (A, B, C hoặc D) để điền vào chỗ trống

1. They _____ the bus yesterday.
 A. don't catch B. weren't catch C. didn't catch D. not catch
2. My sister _____ home last night.
 A. comes B. come C. came D. was come
3. My father _____ tired when I _____ home.
 A. was – got B. is – get C. was – getted D. were – got
4. What _____ you _____ two days ago?
 A. do – do B. did – did C. do – did D. did – do
5. Where _____ your family _____ on the summer holiday last year?
 A. do – go B. does – go C. did – go D. did – went
6. We _____ David in town a few days ago.

7. It was cold, so I _____ the window.
 A. did see B. was saw C. did saw **D. saw**
8. I _____ to the cinema three times last week.
A. shut B. was shut C. am shut D. shutted
9. What _____ you _____ last weekend?
 A. were/do B. did/did **C. did/do** D. do/did
10. The police _____ on my way home last night.
 A. was stop **B. stopped** C. stops D. stopping
11. The film wasn't very good. I _____ it very much.
 A. enjoyed B. wasn't enjoy C. didn't enjoyed **D. didn't enjoy**
12. The bed was very uncomfortable. I _____ sleep very well.
A. didn't B. did C. wasn't D. not
13. The window was opened and a bird _____ into the room.
 A. fly **B. flew** C. was flew D. did fly
14. I _____ a lot of money yesterday. I _____ an expensive dress.
 A. spend/buy B. spent/buy **C. spent/bought** D. was spent/bought.

Bài 5: Lựa chọn và điền dạng đúng của động từ quá khứ đơn:

Teach	cook	want	spend	ring
Be	sleep	study	go	write

1. She...**went**.....out with her boyfriend last night.
2. Laura.....**cooked**.....a meal yesterday afternoon.
3. Mozart.....**wrote**.....more than 600 pieces of music.
4. I.....**was**.....tired when I came home.
5. The bed was very comfortable so they**slept**....very well.
6. Jamie passed the exam because he...**studied**.....very hard.
7. My father.....**taught**....the teenagers to drive when he was alive.
8. Dave...**wanted**.....to make a fire but there was no wood.
9. The little boy.....**spent**....hours in his room making his toys.
10. The telephone...**rang**.....several times and then stopped before I could answer it.

Bài 6: Chuyển các câu sau về thì quá khứ đơn:

1. We move to a new house.
moved
2. They **bring** a sandwich.
.....**brought**.
3. He **doesn't do** the homework.
.....**didn't do**
4. They **sell** cars.
.....**sold**...
5. **Does** he visit his friends?
Did
6. She buys a book.
bought
7. The teacher punishes the boy.
punished
8. The little girl laughs at the beggar.
laughed
9. They know it.
knew
10. He does not tell the lie.
Didn't tell

11. They do not wait for anybody.

Didn't wait

12. Who teaches you English?

taught

13. The mansons build the house.

built

14. They invite us to their party.

invited

15. His manners disgust me.

disgusted

16. She sings a lovely song.

sang

17. It is time to start.

was

18. He wants to kill the snake.

wanted

19. His conduct surprises me.

surprised

20. I want you to come with me.

wanted

Bài 7: Trả lời các câu hỏi dưới đây dựa vào gợi ý trong ngoặc:

1. He won the race.

8. He got up at seven.

2. He ate spaghetti.

9. She played basketball.

3. The film finished at ten o'clock.

10. She walked to school.

4. He felt happy.

11. He saw Maria.

5. He looked at the stars.

12. He had breakfast in the garden.

6. They went to the cinema

13. They wanted some chicken.

7. He watched cartoons on TV.

14. They arrived in the morning.

Bài 8: Cho dạng đúng của từ trong ngoặc ở thì quá khứ đơn:

1. Yesterday, I (go)went.... to the restaurant with a client.

2. We (drive) ...drove.....around the parking lot for 20 minutes to find a parking space.

3. When he (arrive) ...arrived.....at the restaurant, the place (be) ...was.....full.

4. The waitress (ask)asked.....us if we (have) ...had.....reservations.

5. I (say) ...said.....that he would come.

6. The waiter (tell) ...told.....us to come back in to hours.

7. My client and I slowly (walk)walked....back to the car.

8. We (stop)stopped.... at the grocery store and (buy) ...bought.....some cakes.

9. My sister (get) ...got.....married last month.

10. Daisy (come) ...came.....to her grandparents' house 3 days ago.

11. My computer (be) ...was.....broken yesterday.

12. He (buy) ...bought.....me a big teddy bear on my birthday last week.

13. My friend (give) ...gave.....me a bar of chocolate when I (be) ...was.....at school yesterday.

14. My children (not do) ...didn't go.....their homework last night.

15. You (live)Did you live....here five years ago?

16. They (watch) ...watched.....TV late at night yesterday.

17. (Be)Was....your friend at your house last weekend?

18. They (not be) ...weren't.....excited about the film last night.

19. Where (spend/you)Where did you spend....your last holiday?

20. I (visit) ...visited.....lots of interesting places. I (be)was....with two friends of mine.

Bài 9: Chuyển các câu mệnh lệnh sau đây từ dạng câu khẳng định sang phủ định:

1. Don't go straight.

3. Don't cross the road

2. Don't pass the bank

4. Don't turn left.

5. Don't walk to the corner
6. Don't look at the map.
7. Let them stop
8. Go tomorrow.

9. Have a shower.
10. Jump up now.
11. Play the piano
12. Be careful

Bài 10: Hoàn thành các câu sau bằng cách điền cụm từ thích hợp dưới đây vào chỗ trống:

1. Don't wait.....for me. I'm not coming tonight.
2. Have with you. It's raining.
3. Takea rest. You look tired.
4. Turn left.....at the end of the street.
5. Help me!I can't swim.
6. Don't forget.....to take your passport.
7. Stop the car.....There is a mouse in the road.
8. Come to my cocktail party, please.
9. Open your book at page 15.
10. Pass.....the salt, please.
11. Don't listen.....to that record. It's terrible.
12. Don't be late.....The train leaves at 8 o'clock.
13. Come in and have a glass of lemonade.
14. Catch.....the first train in the morning.

Bài 11: Viết câu mệnh lệnh dựa vào động từ cho sẵn:

1.Go.....upstairs. (to go)
2.Don't swim...in this lake. (not/to swim)
3.Do.....your homework. (to do)
4.Don'tfootball in the yard. (not/to play)
5.Brush.....your teeth. (to brush)
6.Don't talk.....during the lesson. (not/to talk)
7.Don't feed.....the animals in the zoo. (not/to feed)
8.Read the instructions. (to read)
9.Don't be.....late for school. (not/to be)
10.Switch off your mobiles. (to switch off)
11.Askour brother. (to ask)
12.Don't use a pencil. (not/to use)
13.Hurryup. (to hurry)
14.Bequiet. (to be)
15.Don't callthe police. (not/to call)
16.Make your beds. (to make)
17. Please ...mind.....(to mind)
18.Don't tell.....dad about my accident. (not/to tell)
19. PleaseDon't smoke.....in this room. (not/ to smoke)
20. Let's.....helpher mother in the kitchen. (to help)

Bài 12: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu mệnh lệnh hoàn chỉnh:

1. Do not let him use my umbrella.
2. Take the first turning on the right.
3. Don't tell me such things.
4. Don't speak like that.
5. Don't pay attention to her.
6. Don't drive too fast.
7. Close the doors.
8. Sit down and open your book page 26.

Bài 13: Chọn và ghép cụm từ ở cột A với cột B sao cho tạo thành câu mệnh lệnh hoàn chỉnh, sau đó viết lại câu:

1. Don't accept candies from strangers

2. Brush your teeth Before you go to bed
3. Turn off the light When you go to bed to save energy
4. Don't step On the lawn
5. Bring your dictionaries For language arts class
6. Don't open The door to Mike
7. Don't watch Adult programmes
8. Don't forget To bring the CDs

Bài 14: Điền trạng từ chỉ tần suất thích hợp vào chỗ trống:

Ví dụ: (100 percent) My friend.....always wears a hat.

1. (100 percent) Selina and Rick.....always..... go to the beach on summer weekends.
2. (0 percent) They.....never stay at home.
3. (40 percent)sometimes they bring their dog.
4. (80 percent) Theyusually..... go to the beach.
5. (20 percent) They.....seldom..... take the train.
6. (60 percent) They.....often.....friends with them.
7. (20 percent)They.....rarely They like to sit in the sun.
8. (100 percent) Antonia and Tomasalwaysstay in the city.
9. (80 percent) They.....usually..... eat dinner at home.
10. (20 percent) They.....seldom... eat dinners at restaurants.
11. (0 percent) They.....never eat at a very expensive restaurants.
12. (40 percent)sometimesTomas will cook dinner, but (80 percent)...usually. not.

Bài 15: Đặt trạng từ vào đúng vị trí trong các câu dưới đây:

1. We never play soccer in the street. (never)
2. My father is always busy on Sundays. (always)
3. He sometimes sends me a present. (sometimes)
4. They don't often go swimming in winter. (often)
5. The children are usually interested in computer games. (usually)
6. He often listens to the radio. (often)
7. They sometimes read a book. (sometimes)
8. Pete never gets angry. (never)
9. Tom is seldom very friendly. (seldom)
10. I rarely take sugar in my coffee. (rarely)

Bài 16: Tìm và sửa lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau:

2. =>is sometimes....
3. =>often give
4. =>usually write
5. =>is never
6. =>I hardly ever
7. =>usually revise

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 17: Hoàn thành câu sau đúng dạng ở thì quá khứ đơn:

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1.
It was cloudy yesterday. | 10. My mother made two cakes four days ago. |
| 2. In 1990 we moved to another city. | 11. Tyler visited his grandmother last month. |
| 3. When did you get the first gift? | 12. Joni went to the zoo five days ago. |
| 4. She didn't go to the church five days ago. | 13. We had fun yesterday. |
| 5. How was he yesterday? | 14. My father was not at the office the day before yesterday. |
| 6. Did Mr and Mrs James come back home and have dinner late last night? | 15. Janet missed the bus. |
| 7. Were they happy last holiday? | 16. She tidied her room. |
| 8. How did you get there? | 17. Nancy didn't watch television. |
| 9. I played football last Sunday? | 18. She read a book. |

19. It was not be cold.

20. They were late for the interview.

Bài 18: Chia động từ trong ngoặc đúng dạng thì quá khứ đơn:

1. Was
2. married
3. Ordered
4. Chased
5. Took

6. Lived
7. Loved
8. Changed
9. Made
10. Went

11. Put
12. Found
13. were

Bài 19: Chia các động từ các câu sau ở hiện tại đơn hoặc quá khứ đơn:

1. She.....**went**..... (go) to Australia in 1994 and she liked it very much.
2. My father usually.....**likes**..... (like) his steak well-done.
3. The dog.....**ate**..... (eat) its toy last night.
4. The policeman.....**talked**..... (talk) to the burglar yesterday.
5.**Did you have**..... (you/have) a test last week?
6. I often see her mother but she never.....**speaks**..... (speak) to me.
7. The gentleman.....**spoke**..... (speak) to his servant 2 hours ago.
8. The kangaroo always.....**carries**..... (carry) its baby.
9. My friend.....**talks**..... (talk) a lot everyday.
10. The man.....**drove**..... (drive) to the supermarket last weekend.
11. My brothers.....**left**..... (leave) for England last week.
12. My sisters.....**leave**..... (leave) for England every year in June.
13. I don't like that man because he often**laughs**..... (laugh) at me.
14. Her sister never.....**smokes**..... (smoke).
15. The cats usually.....**leave**..... (leave) its basket when it is hungry.
16. Mrs. Trang (teach)**taught**..... us English last year.
17. Daisy (wear)**wore**..... a very beautiful dress last night.
18. Nhung (write)**wrote**..... to her grandparents very often last year.
19. The teacher usually (give)**gives**..... the students a lot of homework on the weekend.

Bài 20: Chọn đáp án đúng nhất để trả lời các câu hỏi sau:

1. Did you buy a lot of souvenirs in Hanoi, Nga?
A. I bought a lot of souvenirs in Hanoi. B. I did
C. Yes, I bought **D. Yes, I did**
2. Where did you go during your summer vacation, Mai?
A. Yes, I went to Hanoi B. No, I didn't go to Hanoi
C. I went to Hue D. I went there with my mother.
3. Who went to the zoo with you last weekend, Nam?
A. My father B. I went to the zoo.
C. My father went to D. My father do.
4. When did you visit the Ngoc Son Temple, Mai?
A. On Sundays B. Next Sunday
C. Last Sunday D. Every Sunday
5. What did Ha make for herself last night?
A. She made a nice dress. B. She makes a nice dress
C. She is making a nice dress. D. She will make a nice dress.

Bài 21: Tìm và sửa lỗi sai trong mỗi câu sau:

1. We used to **playing** marbles many years ago. **play**
2. He didn't **used** to stay up late. **use**
3. What **do you did** yesterday? **Did you do**
4. We **go** swimming with our parents last week. **went**
5. My sister **is** born in 1970. **was**
6. **Childs** often receive toys and cakes from Santa Claus at Christmas. **Children**
7. They usually get up early **at** the morning. **in**

8. How often do you **takes** a nap? **take**

9. It is often **rains** in winter. **rain**

Bài 22: Tom đang viết thư gửi đến một người bạn. Đặt động từ đã cho vào khoảng trống:

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|----------|
| (1) forget | (4) bring | (7) make |
| (2) turn | (5) wait | (8) have |
| (3) be | (6) open | |

Bài 23: Hãy viết các câu sau ở dạng câu mệnh lệnh sao cho nghĩa không đổi:

Eg: You must do your homework. – Do your homework!

- | | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Listen to your teacher! | 8. Pay attention! | 16. Let's not wait for him! |
| 2. Don't be noisy! | 9. Let him have a job! | 17. Let's have a show first! |
| 3. Don't cheat! | 10. Let's not stop now! | 18. Don't park in this street! |
| 4. Sit at your desk! | 11. Go to bed! | 19. Be here soon! |
| 5. Don't be late! | 12. Get up early! | 20. Let them taste this cake! |
| 6. Write test! | 13. Don't stand here! | |
| 7. Don't bully your classmates! | 14. Let her have a drink! | |
| | 15. Let them clean the carpet | |

Bài 24: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh:

1. My mother always does the grocery shopping.
2. My father always cooks dinner.
3. My mother usually does the dishes.
4. I sometimes do the dishes.
5. My brother seldom does anything.
6. He is always lazy.
7. We often watch TV after dinner.
8. Dan's students are usually on time.
9. British athlete rarely win Olympic medals.
10. The students usually do their homework.

TEST 1 UNIT 8

I.

II.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. C | 3. A | 4. A | 5. D |
| 6. C | 7. B | 8. A | 9. B | 10. C |
| 11. B | 12. B | 13. A | 14. D | 15. A |
| 16. C | 17. A | 18. D | 19. A | 20. C |

III. 1. do

5. do

2. played

6. playing

3. playing

7. does

4. plays

8. does

IV. 1. did

5. began

9. wrote

13. took

17. saw

2. taught

6. cut

10. was/were

14. went

18. ate

3. sent

7. put

11. bought

15. made

19. sang

4. spent

8. gave

12. had

16. thought

20. wore

V.

/id/	/t/	/d/
painted needed visited rented invited	wrapped looked watched helped practiced stopped worked talked liked washed	listened raised rained opened seemed learned remembered arrived lived received

- VI.** 1. Was 2. get up 3. were 4. have 5. go
6. mine 7. was 8. Did 9. by 10. to use

VII.

1. wasn't 2. weren't 3. left 4. was
5. told 6. didn't 7. didn't know 8. bought

VIII. 1. arrived

2. Wasn't 3. did 4. took
5. hired 6. drove 7. stopped 8. found
9. went 10. didn't get back 11. got up 12. decided

IX.

1. forget 2. turn 3. Be 4. Bring
5. wait 6. Open 7. make 8. Have

X.

- How often does Minh brush his teeth?
- Why is Simon in a lot of pain now?
- How did you feel after eating that food?
- When did Nga go to see the dentist last week?
- Who will check my teeth?
- How long did it take Dr Phong to fill Van's tooth?
- Where is your mother going?
- What did Mr Cuong do at 5.30 yesterday?
- Whose letter did Hoa receive five days ago?
- How many students are there in Lien's Class having toothache?

XI.

- (1. Don't wait) 2. Don't forget 3. Have
4. Turn left 5. Help me! 6. Come in
7. Stop the car! 8. Take 9. Open
10. Pass 11. Don't listen 12. Don't be late!
13. Come 14. Catch

XII.

- Brush your teeth after meals.
- Don't play soccer in the street.
- Wash and iron your own clothes.
- Don't eat too much candies.
- Wash your hands before meals.
- Don't worry about the examination.
- Tidy your room every day.

8. Don't forget to write to your parents

TEST 2 UNIT 8

I.

/eə/there; care; wear; bear; pear; prepare; share; where; fair; chair; air; pair; aerobics here; fear; series; ear;

/ɪə/appear; beer; idea; cheer; year; dear; near; sphere;

II.

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. D 5. B

III.

1. A 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. B

IV.

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. B 6. A 7. D 8. C 9. B 10. B
11. A 12. C 13. D 14. B 15. B 16. B 17. B 18. B 19. B 20. C

V.

1. c 2. e 3. a 4. b 5. d

VI.

Do: homework; aerobics; housework; cycling

Go: shopping; swimming; fishing; jogging; camping;

Play: table tennis; badminton; tennis; video games; volleyball; soccer;

VII.

1. bounce 2. hit 3. kick 4. throw 5. catch 6. pick up

VIII.

1. cycling 2. boxing 3. table-tennis 4. football 5. basketball 6. badminton
7. volleyball 8. swimming 9. skiing 10. sailing 11. tennis 12. chess

IX.

1. wasn't 2. bought 3. didn't know 4. didn't have 5. Was 6. left 7. told 8. weren't

X.

1. rescued 2. studied 3. laughed 4. asked 5. started 6. closed 7. walked
8. jumped 9. tried 10. stopped

XI.

1. was 2. arrived 3. were 4. wanted 5. were 6. waved 7. cheered
8. walked 9. called 10. asked 11. answered 12. looked 13. was 14. cancelled

XII.

1. went 2. met 3. took 4. stayed 5. were 6. had 7. hit
8. cut 9. read 10. played 11. did 12. left 13. was 14. told

XIII.

1. False 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. False 6. False 7. False 8. True

XIV.

1. False 2. True 3. False 4. True 5. False

XV.

1. He is going to the sports club to play table tennis with Lan and Ba.

2. He

is going to buy some books at the bookstore and after that he's going to go swimming with Thanh and Tan.

3. No. he isn't.

4. He is going to the movie theater.

5. He is going to the movie theater with his parents and his sister.

XVI.

1. They love sport.

2. Because there are thousands of great beaches in Australia.

3. They are football, Australian Rules football, and cricket.

4. They are netball, gymnastics, and horse riding.

XVII.

1. False 2. False 3. False 4. True 5. False

XVIII.

1. B 2. A 3. C 4. C 5. B

XIX.

1. Do their parents always go fishing on weekend?
2. Does Lan play badminton every day?
3. She is doing aerobics now.
4. How often do the children go to the movies?
5. Nam often plays video games in the afternoon.
6. The students sometimes have a picnic.
7. Do they sometimes go camping?
8. He usually goes swimming with his friends.
9. I went sailing with my classmate Nam on the river near my house last summer.
10. When you go swimming, you should wear goggles to protect your eyes.

XX.

1. How often are the Olympics Games held?
2. What are the children doing?
3. When and where did the first Olympic Games take place?
4. When did Pelé begin his career?
5. Why do you really like swimming?

XXI.

1. Unluckily, we lost the game although we practised a lot.
2. His team promise that they will win the match next summer.
3. His favourite sport is table tennis, and/ so his father will give him a racket for his 13th birthday.
4. Can you tell the difference between a sport and a game?
5. In my spare time, I do judo and practise a lot of running.

XXII.

1. My brother is a good football player.
2. Badminton is Mai's favourite sport.
3. Sports and games play a very important part/ role in children's lives.
4. Children do many after-school activities when school finishes.
5. Lan can play basketball very well.

XXIII.

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. Which sports do you do at school? | 2. When do you do sports? |
| 3. Who are your favourite sports stars? | 4. How often do you go running? |
| 5. Do you play team sports? | 6. What sports do you watch on TV? |
| 7. What is your favourite football team? | 8. How often do you go swimming? |

TEST 3 UNIT 8

I. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. a

II. 1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d

III. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. c 6. b 7. d 8. d 9. d 10. a

IV.

PLAY: badminton, football, tennis, basketball, soccer, golf

GO: cycling, swimming, skateboarding, hiking, skiing, jogging

DO: karate, yoga, boxing, aerobics, judo, gymnastics

V.

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------|----------------|
| 1. does | 2. is playing | 3. went | 4. Did... play |
| 5. didn't play | 6. played | 7. go | 8. am doing |

VI.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------|------------|---------------|
| 1. running shoes | 2. ring | 3. goggles | 4. gloves |
| 5. paddle | 6. racket | 7. skis | 8. skateboard |

VII.

- | | | | | |
|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. went | 2. enjoyed | 3. won | 4. scored | 5. played |
| 6. taught | 7. bought | 8. became | 9. did | 10. lost |

VIII.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. saw-didn't like | 2. Did Marco win | 3. didn't play - lost | 4. did your team score |
| 5. was - went | 6. Did you go | 7. weren't - didn't eat | 8. came |
| 9. had | 10. wasn't - didn't know | | |

- IX.** 1. at 2. on 3. for 4. at 5. on 6. in 7. on 8. In - at

- X.** 1. enjoyment 2. fitness 3. sporty 4. interested
5. widely 6. footballer 7. national 8. achievement

XI.

1. Rob lives in Australia.
2. Rob goes swimming every Wednesday.
3. No, it isn't. Football in Australia is different to soccer.
4. Rob goes to a surfing club on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
5. Rob goes to the beach to learn how to surf.
6. Yes, he does.

- XII.** 1. sport 2. play 3. without 4. game
5. positions 6. score 7. boring 8. each

XIII.

1. Sports and games play an important part in our lives.
2. How many players are there in a football match?
3. She tries to keep fit by jogging every day.
4. Who did you play football with yesterday?
5. Sports are necessary for building physical strength.
6. Don't forget to switch off the TV before you go to bed.
7. I usually go swimming with my friends on Sunday mornings.
8. Did you watch the basketball match on television last night?

XIV.

1. What is your favourite sport?
2. Tim doesn't play football as well as Mark (does).
3. Beckham played football very well.
4. When did you start to play/playing basketball?
5. How about playing badminton this weekend?
6. Football is the most popular sport in Britain.
7. I am more interested in basketball than my brother (is).
8. You should do morning exercise regularly

XV.

1. We went skiing yesterday.
2. Did you watch the men's basketball final on TV last night?
3. I didn't play badminton last Sunday because I was ill.
4. Sue and her friends are doing yoga at the gym now.
5. Last week we studied how to surf. It was very interesting.
6. He usually plays football with his friends on Saturdays.
7. Where were the children yesterday morning? They were at the swimming pool.
8. His father taught him how to play football at a very young age

UNIT 9

Bài 1.

V	V3	V	V3
Be	been	Speak (nói)	Spoken
Want (muốn)	wanted	Leave (rời đi)	Left
Arrive (đến)	Arrived	Bring (mang theo)	Brought
Run (chạy)	Ran	Tell (nói)	Told
Go (đi)	went	Come (đến)	Come
Write (viết)	Written	Forget (quên)	Forgot
Send (gửi)	Sent	Give (đưa)	Given
Cry (khóc)	Cry (khóc)	Look (nhìn)	Looked
See (nhìn)	Seen	Work (làm việc)	Worked
Take (lấy)	Taken	Win (chiến thắng)	Won
Live (sống)	Lived	Cut (cắt)	Cut
Buy (mua)	Bought	Steal (lấy)	Stolen
Know (biết)	Known	Fly (bay)	Flied
Do (làm)	Done	Sing (hát)	Sung
Eat (ăn)	Eaten	Grow (phát triển)	Grown

Bài 2.

1. has 2. has 3. has 4. have 5. have
 6. has 7. have 8. have 9. have 10. has

Bài 3.

1. Yes, he has/ No, he hasn't. 5. Yes, she has/ No, she hasn't.
 2. Yes, we have/ No, we don't. 6. Yes, I have/ No, I haven't.
 3. Yes, he has/ No, he hasn't. 7. Yes, she has/ No, she hasn't.
 4. Yes, they have/ No, they don't. 8. Yes, he has/ No, he hasn't.

Bài 4.

1. He hasn't lived here for three years.
 Has he lived here for three years?
 2. We have been here for two weeks.
 Have we been here for two weeks?
 3. They have missed the train.
 They haven't missed the train.
 4. I haven't had breakfast this morning.
 Have I had breakfast this morning?
 5. She has passed the exam.
 Has she passed the exam?
 6. You have met his mother.
 You haven't met his mother.
 7. We haven't eaten too much chocolate.
 Have we eaten too much chocolate?
 8. I haven't known David for ten years.
 Have I known David for ten years?
 9. She has read that book.
 She hasn't read that book.

Bài 5

1. Has she been late for the meeting?
 2. Has he met his family?
 3. Has she worked in this company for fifteen years?
 4. How long has she been in London?
 5. How much coffee have you drunk today?
 6. What have you done today?
 7. How many books have you read this week?
 8. Why have you bought that?
 9. Have they gone to the USA?
 10. How much food have you bought?

Bài 6.

- 1.C 2.C 3.C 4.A 5.C 6.B
 7. B 8.C 9.C 10.D 11.A 12.D
 13. B 14.C 15.C

Bài 7

1. since 2. since 3. since 4. for 5. since
6. for 7. since 8. for 9. since 10. since

Bài 8

1. have lived 2. have worked 3. has read 4. have known
5. haven't seen 6. haven't worked 7. have bought 8. haven't planned
9. have you been 10. has written 11. have you been 12. hasn't started
13. has he spoken 14. hasn't had 15. has just caught
16. has already invited 17. has made 18. has lost
19. has just cleaned 20. have given up

Bài 9

1. I have had this computer for three years.
(three years là khoảng thời gian nên dùng for)
2. They have lived in Da Lat since last year.
(last year là mốc thời gian nên dùng since)
3. She has been happy since she had the mobile phone.
(she had the mobile phone là mốc thời gian nên dùng since)
4. We have learned French for a month.
(a month là khoảng thời gian nên dùng for)
5. She has worked in this school since 2012.
(2012 là mốc thời gian nên dùng since)
6. I have used this computer for 5 years.
(5 years là khoảng thời gian nên dùng for)
7. The washing machine has stopped working since this morning.
(this morning là mốc thời gian nên dùng since)
8. They have known her for a long time
(a long time là khoảng thời gian nên dùng for)
9. He has read this novel since 9 o'clock.
(9 o'clock là mốc thời gian nên dùng since)

Bài 10

Tính từ	So sánh nhất	Tính từ	So sánh nhất
Strong(khỏe)	The strongest	Dangerous(nguy hiểm)	The most dangerous
Colourful (nhiều màu sắc)	The most colourful	Hot(nóng)	The hottest
Tall(cao)	The tallest	Beautiful(đẹp)	The most beautiful
Comfortable (thoải mái)	the most comfortable	Intelligent(thông minh)	The most intelligent
Heavy(nặng)	The heaviest	Ugly(xấu xí)	The ugliest
Expensive (đắt)	The most expensive	Fashionable(thời trang)	The most fashionable
Good(tốt)	The best	Interesting(thú vị)	The most interesting
Wonderful (tuyệt vời)	The most wonderful	Important(quan trọng)	The most important

Bài 11.

1. the funniest 8. the tidiest 15. the latest
2. the heaviest 9. the oldest 16. the nicest
3. the cutest 10. the strangest 17. the cheapest
4. the most comfortable 11. the farthest 18. the best
5. the worst 12. the most dangerous 19. the most dangerous
6. the most difficult 13. the sunniest 20. the most beautiful
7. the sadest 14. the hottest

Bài 12.

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. the coldest | 7. the longest | 13. the easiest |
| 2. the worst | 8. the luckiest | 14. the dirtiest |
| 3. the most delicious | 9. the most boring | 15. the cheapest |
| 4. the smartest | 10. the highest | 16. the scariest |
| 5. the funniest | 11. the most valuable | |
| 6. the largest | 12. the richest | |

Bài 13

1. Nga is the most beautiful in her class.
2. We like wearing the latest fashion.
3. You are the prettiest girl in the class.
4. The red dress is the most attractive in the shop.
5. I always tell the funniest jokes.
6. Who is the shortest person in your family?
7. Who is the most independent person you know?
8. My brother is the tallest in the class.
9. Who is the best singer in the world?
10. He is the most popular singer in the world.

Bài 14.

1. We lived here for 2 years.
2. They lived in Washington in 1960
3. Lan left Hanoi last month and she worked in Ho Chi Minh since then.
4. Mr Nam has taught English since 2000/
5. We bought this car 2 years ago.
6. How long have you learned English?
7. I haven't seen him since he said goodbye.
8. Yesterday I visited my parents.
9. I have learned English for 10 years.
10. Lan and Nga have been close friend since last year.
11. What did you do yesterday?
12. I have read the novel written by Jack London several times.
13. She was born in 1980.
14. Mr Nam has taught English in this School since he graduated from university in 2000.
15. Last month I was in the hospital.
16. I have had a computer since my nineteenth birthday.
17. The last time I went to Ho Chi Minh city was in 2012.
18. We moved in 1998. we have been here for a long time.
19. She has come to visit China four times. She loves this country.
20. It was so hot that I went swimming with my friends yesterday.

Bài 15.

1. We have lived here for 15 years.
2. How long have you learnt/learned English?
3. I haven't written a letter to my sister since May.
4. Mr Minh has collected stamps since 2000.
5. Nga has learned/ learnt French since last year.
6. I haven't seen her since 2000.

Bài 16.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. A | 2. C | 3. C | 4. C | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. B | 8. C | 9. B | 10. D |

Bài 17

- | | | |
|---------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1. the most popular | 3. the shortest | 5. more comfortable than |
| 2. more intelligent | 4. bigger than | 6. worse |

7. more peaceful
8. the cleverest
9. the most delicious
10. the most boring
11. the most intelligent

12. the oldest
13. more comfortable
14. more important
15. healthier
16. the most difficult

17. most expensive
18. faster
19. more interesting
20. earlier

Bài 18

1. Gary is taller than Rick.
2. John has got new light trousers.
3. Mary likes bigger clothes.
4. Rick is wearing an expensive coat.
5. Carol has got the shortest scarf.

6. he is the tallest student.
7. Mary plays better than you.
8. He was the best football player.
9. Mary plays better than you.
10. Your father is stronger than mine.

Bài 19

My wife and I have(0) travel as much as possible since we retired. We've visited cousins in Australia, and we (1) has been to New Zealand twice. We've also went on safari in Africa. We've been to Europe a lot. Gina and I (3) has spent time in Paris, in Madrid, and in several cities in Italy. We (4) hasn't gone to Eastern Europe yet, though. We hope to visit Prague and Budapest next year.

My sister Betty was born in the United States, and she has never traveled outside the country-except once when she was very young. But she (5) have been to a lot of places in the U.S. She has (6) visit most of the national parks: the Grand Canyon, Yellowstone, Yosemite, and so on. She has been to all of the big cities, too. In fact, she (7) is lived in four different cities in the U.S. New York, Boston, Los Angeles and San Francisco. I think she (8) seen more of her own country than most people.

1. has --> have

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành chủ ngữ là "we" nên dùng "have"

2. went --> go

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, sau "have" phải là động từ ở dạng phân từ 2

3. has --> have

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, chủ ngữ là "Gina and I" nên dùng "have"

4. hasn't --> haven't

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, chủ ngữ là "we" nên dùng "have"

5. have --> has

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, chủ ngữ là "she" nên dùng "has"

6. visit --> visited

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, sau "has" phải là động từ ở dạng phân từ 2

7. is --> has

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, chủ ngữ là "she" nên dùng has.

8. seen --> has seen

Câu ở hiện tại hoàn thành, trước động từ chính phải có "have/has". Chủ ngữ là "she" nên dùng "has"

I

I

16. for 17. since 18. for 19. for 20. since

V.

- | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. have done | 2. has written, hasn't finished |
| 3. left, have never met | 4. have you had |
| 5. did.. .do, did.. ..play | 6. bought, hasn't worn |
| 7. has taught, graduated | 8. Have you heard, is, Have you read |
| 9. got, was, went | 10. earned, has already spent |

VI.

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1. have never watched | 2. watched |
| 3. have read | 4. read |
| 5. had | 6. have had |
| 7. haven't seen / saw | 8. rang |
| 9. met/ became | 10. hasn't drunk |

VII.

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. has seen | 2. have finished |
| 3. have lived | 4. has just washed |
| 5. have discussed | 6. has never been |
| 7. have known | 8. have learnt |
| 9. have been | 10. have stayed |

VIII.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. have - has | 2. finish - finished |
| 3. forget - have forgotten | 4. graduates - has graduates |
| 5. am trying - have tried | 6. not come - hasn't come |
| 7. reads - has read | 8. wait - has waited |
| 9. rests - has rested | 10. have - has |

IX.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|------|
| 1. A | 2. B | 3. C | 4. A | 5. A |
|------|------|------|------|------|

X.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. B | 3. A | 4. B | 5. C |
| 6. B | 7. C | 8. A | 9. C | 10. C |

XI.

1. It has a population of nearly 800,000 people.
2. The city part on the east bank is more spacious.
3. The city part on the west bank is more crowded.
4. The Han River Bridge is the newest one.
5. Non Nuoc Beach is one of the most beautiful beaches in the world.

XII.

1. We haven't seen her since Christmas day.
2. This is the first time, I have eaten this kind of food.
3. It has rained for an hours.
4. The last time we visited my grandfather was two months ago.
5. I began studying English for three years.
6. It's for nearly five years since my brother saw his best friend.
7. How long have you learnt English?
8. We have lived here for fifteen years.
9. She hasn't visited me for five years.
10. I haven't written to my uncle since July.
11. We have become close friends for a long time.
12. Minh has collected stamps since 2000.

XIII.

1. He hasn't been to abroad before.
2. She has driven for one month.

3. We have eaten since it began to rain.
4. I haven't had my hair cut since I left her.
5. She hasn't kissed me for 5 months.
6. We haven't met each other for a long time.
7. How long have you had it?
8. I haven't had such a delicious meal before.
9. The last time I saw him was 8 days ago.
10. It is Monday since I took a bath.

TEST 2 UNIT 9

I.

/əʊ/: wardrobe; boat; pagoda; well-known; only; judo; robot; show; poem; motor; sofa; postcard; slow; both; most; role

/aɪ/: behind; design; skyscraper; write; shy; high; diverse; fine; dry; price; type; excited; nice; drive; height; title; decide; minor; right

II.

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. C 5. A

III.

1. C 2. D 3. A 4. C 5. B

IV.

1. C 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. B 7. D 8. D 9. A 10. C
11. A 12. D 13. D 14. D 15. B 16. C 17. B 18. D 19. C 20. A

V.

Adjective	Opposite	The superlative
new	old	the oldest
cheap	expensive	the most expensive
small	big	the biggest
bad	good	the best
cold	hot	the hottest
unpopular	popular	the most popular
dirty	clean	the cleanest
clean	dirty	the dirtiest

1. the cleanest 2. the biggest 3. the hottest 4. the dirtiest
5. the most popular 6. the oldest 7. the best 8. the most expensive

VI.

1. have learned 2. has played 3. hasn't rained 4. haven't seen 5. have studied
6. has worked 7. has seen 8. has been 9. have had 10. has played

VII.

1. is looking 2. has learned 3. have you known
4. Has she fed 5. haven't seen – were 6. Has she finished
7. Has your dog ever bitten – bit 8. have just made
9. Have you ever been 10. started

VIII.

1. has stopped 2. have arrived 3. have had 4. have spoken 5. has finished

IX.

1. d 2. a 3. e 4. c 5. b

X.

1. C 2. B 3. B 4. D 5. D

XI.

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C

XII.

1. C 2. B 3. B 4. B 5. C

XIII.

1. D 2. B 3. D 4. C 5. B

XIV.

1. Because he missed his flight in Washington. 2. It is very cold.
3. They have breakfast in a little Italian place next to the hotel. 4. He just has coffee.
5. He likes/ loves the skyscrapers.

XV.

1. Where is London?
2. When did the Eiffel Tower first open?
3. What are you going to do tomorrow?
4. Where did you in your last vacation?
5. How was the weather in London?

XVI.

1. The Royal Palace is one of the largest palaces in Europe.
2. "Have you ever eaten Ha Noi Pho, Steven?"
3. Up to now, I have visited Da Lat three times.
4. Do you think the most popular Vietnamese writer for children is To Hoai?
5. Sydney Opera House is a UNESCO World Heritage building.
6. The Merlion is a creature with the head of a lion and the body of a fish.
7. New York is an exciting city with many skyscrapers.
8. You can go boating on the West Lake and it is very nice.
9. I have been to the beaches in Nha Trang many times with my family.
10. Is Chicago or Los Angeles the second biggest city in the United States?

XVII.

1. I have just come back from a vacation in Nha Trang.
2. Quoc Tu Giam was the first university in Viet Nam.
3. There are six continents in the world.
4. It is the most famous tower in England.
5. The building is new, but it looks more than 100 years old.

XVIII.

1. Da Nang attracts lots of tourists because it has the most beautiful beaches in Viet Nam.
2. Hoi An is famous for the old houses and buildings, and traditional crafts.
3. Have you ever seen the latest Batman film?
4. The Temple of Literature is one of Ha Noi's famous landmarks.
5. Merlion with a lion's head and a fish's body is the symbol of Singapore.

XIX.

1. In Viet Nam, April is the hottest month of the year.
2. Do you think money is the most important thing in the world?
3. My father thinks Brazil has the best football team in the world.
4. New York is the most exciting city in the world.
5. Because Nha Trang has clean and beautiful beaches, it attracts lots of tourists.

TEST 3 UNIT 9

- I.** 1. cloth 2. litter 3. town 4. lion 5. Cycle
II. 1. d 2. c 3. b 4. d 5. a
III. 1. c 2. a 3. d 4. a 5. c 6. c 7. c 8. d 9. c 10. b
IV. 1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. B
V.

Weather	Building	City
awful	modern	modern
sunny	new	new
windy	huge	beautiful
cold	beautiful	big

wet	tall	quiet
	ugly	polluted
	small	dangerous
		historic
		small
		noisy
		exciting
		safe

VI.

1. the most beautiful
2. the most interesting
3. the most amazing
4. the most difficult
5. the most boring
6. the most delicious
7. the most polluted
8. the most valuable

VII.

1. warmer
2. the most beautiful
3. more difficult
4. the oldest
5. the most populated
6. worse
7. the best
8. more crowded
9. largest
10. the most modern

VIII.

1. more crowded than
2. the most romantic
3. more expensive than
4. the most famous
5. the biggest
5. more interesting than
7. hotter than
8. the most beautiful

IX.

1. have had
2. has taught
3. haven't stopped
4. have found
5. hasn't seen
6. has broken
7. haven't decided
8. have already finished
9. hasn't played
10. have been

X.

1. was
2. have been
3. are cycling
4. am staying
5. didn't do
6. has taught
7. went - had
8. arrives

XI.

1. What continent is Brazil in?
2. What is the capital city of Australia?
3. How has the weather been like in Stockholm?
4. How big is New York?
5. How long have you lived in New York?
6. When did your family move to Sydney?
7. What countries have you never been to?
8. How did he travel to Mexico?

XII.

1. haven't had
2. didn't have
3. has gone
4. moved
5. Have ...visited
6. lived
7. Did... go
8. have worked
9. Have... seen
10. broke

XIII.

2. What awful weather!
3. What a beautiful city!
4. What attractive buildings!
5. What a delicious cake!
6. What lovely flowers!
7. What strong coffee!
8. What an interesting Maths lesson!

XIV.

- A. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T

B. 1. Los Angeles is in California.

2. Hollywood's 'Walk of Fame' is the most famous place in LA.

3. There are 2,000 stars on Hollywood Walk of Fame.

4. The weather is always sunny in LA.

XV.

1. Seoul is located in the northern part of South Korea.

2. Nearly 10 million people live in Seoul.

3. Yes, it is.

4. It takes forty minutes to travel from Seoul to Incheon Airport by train.

5. No, they aren't.

6. The War Memorial of Korea and Namsan Seoul Tower are popular tourist destinations in Seoul.

XVI.

1. We are having a wonderful time in Hanoi.

2. We have been here for two days.

3. Hanoi is a large city and it is also interesting.

4. The people are very friendly and the weather has been warm and sunny.

5. Yesterday we visited the Temple of Literature.

6. It is one of the most popular tourist attractions in Vietnam.

7. Today we are going to Bat Trang Pottery Village.

8. I will buy some pottery to make a gift for my family and friends.

1. This is the first time I have ever been to Sa Pa.

2. I haven't seen him since 2010.

3. It's the most amazing sight she has ever seen.

4. The weather in Sydney is not so/as hot as in Rio de Janeiro.

5. They have lived in New York since 2004.

6. The last time we went to Hanoi was three years ago.

7. Big Ben is the most famous tower in England.

8. New York is more modern than London.

TEST 1 FOR UNIT 7,8,9

I.

1. A

2. B

3. B

4. B

5. D

6. B

7. B

8. B

9. D

10. B

II.

1. A

2. D

3. B

4. C

5. B

6. C

7. B

8. D

9. C

10. B

11. C

12. A

13. B

14. C

15. A

16. C

17. D

18. C

19. B

20. A

III.

1. so

2. so

3. and

4. and

5. because

IV.

1. wasn't

2. weren't

3. left

4. was

5. told

6. didn't have

7. didn't know

8. bought

V.

1. won

2. haven't studied

3. took

4. has visited

5. have read

6. haven't seen

VI.

1. How often does your father play tennis?
2. What does your/our class have on Monday?
3. Who might Hi-tech robots look after?
4. What might people do on smart phones?
5. Where will you/we travel to by a super car?

TEST 2 FOR UNIT 7,8,9

1. D 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. B 6. B 7. C 8. C 9. A 10. C
 11. A 12. D 13. D 14. B 15. C 16. B 17. C 18. A 19. D 20. B
 21. A 22. C 23. A
 24. was 25. walked 26. Phoned 27. waited 28. arrived 29. walked 30. were
 31. pushed 32. Jumped 33. phoned 34. arrived 35. interviewed 36. have just heard
 37. Didn't you know 38. flew 39. Have you heard 40. got 41. told
 42. didn't say 43. liked 44. has been 45. has never been 46. have been
 47. hope 48. have you lived 49. Is 50. is 51. want 52. looks
 53. is 54. Have you ever been 55. will go
 56. b 57. a 58. g 59. e 60. h 61. j 62. d 63. d 64. i 65. f
 66. False 67. True 68. True 69. False 70. False
 71. It became very popular in the 1970s.
 72. They are 'freestyle' skateboarding, 'ramp' skateboarding, and 'street-style' skateboarding.
 73. It is a combination of freestyle and ramp.
 74. Because it allows them to skateboard safely.
 75. Yes, because there are lots of skateboarding competitions.
 76. I took part in the swimming competition at my school last week and won the third prize.
 77. I can't play soccer with my classmates this afternoon because I have to visit my grandmother in hospital.
 78. I should finish my homework before I play/ playing sports.
 79. I do judo twice a week and I go to the dance class too.
 80. Soccer or football is the most popular sport in Viet Nam.

TEST 3 FOR UNIT 7,8,9

- I.** 1. b 2. a 3. d 4. c 5. b
IV. 1. b 2. d 3. c 4. c 5. d 6. b 7. c 8. b 9. a 10. c
V. 1. watches 2. Have you ever met 3. didn't spend 4. has taught
 5. are flying 6. designed 7. is knocking 8. don't play
VI. 1. interesting 2. enjoyment 3. polluted 4. designer
 5. historic 6. widely
IX. 1. How long have they studied?
 2. What sport do the students usually play after the class?
 3. How often does Minh go to the karate club?
 4. Who are you meeting at the cinema?
 5. How many goals did Pelé score in his 22-year career.
 6. What continent is Vietnam in?
X. 1. a 2. c 3. b 4. a 5. d 6. c
XI. A. 1. F 2. T 3. T 4. F 5. T 6. F
 B. 1. The Eiffel Tower is in Paris.
 2. The tower was constructed for two years.
 3. Gustave Eiffel designed the Eiffel Tower.
 4. The tower has to be painted frequently to keep it from rusting.
 5. Over 250 million people have visited the Eiffel Tower since its opening.
XII. 1. What subject did you enjoy most at school?
 2. The last time I visited my family was in 2005.

3. My parents have lived in New Zealand since 2010.
4. I think Paris is the most beautiful city in the world.
5. I didn't have enough money to buy the computer.
6. Jane suggested going to Bali on summer vacation. / Jane suggested we (should) go to Bali on summer vacation.
7. If you don't study harder you won't pass the exam.
8. Matt hasn't finished his homework yet.

UNIT 10. OUR HOUSE IN THE FUTURE

Bài 1.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. I will do this later 2. we will go shopping 3. The sun will shine 4. Peter will call you 5. They will be there | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. You will ask 7. Jenny will lock the door 8. It will rain 9. The teacher will test our English 10. They will buy a car |
|---|--|

Bài 2

- | | |
|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. It won't/ will not rain tomorrow. 2. I promise I won't/ will not be late 3. We won't/ will not start to watch the film without you. 4. The bus won't/ will not wait for us. 5. He won't/ will not believe us. | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. I won't/ will not pass the test. 7. She won't/ will not come with us. 8. You won't/ will not enjoy visiting Paris 9. I won't/ will not pay for lunch. 10. He won't/ will not answer the question. |
|--|--|

Bài 3

- | | |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. What will they learn? 2. Will it snow? 3. When will you get home? 4. Will she forgive me? 5. What will he say? | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 6. What will they do? 7. When will she be back? 8. Who will drive us into town? 9. When will we meet? 10. When will I be famous? |
|---|--|

Bài 4.

- | | | |
|--|--|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Yes, it will 2. No, I won't 3. Yes, it will 4. No, he/ I won't | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 5. Yes, they will 6. Yes, he will 7. No, I won't 8. Yes, I will | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 9. No, he won't 10. No, I won't |
|--|--|--|

Bài 5

- | | | |
|--|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Will you do 2. will have 3. will give 4. will help 5. will cook 6. will change 7. will move 8. will you come 9. will you go | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 10. will meet 11. will make 12. will ask 13. will call 14. will have 15. will be 16. will come 17. will cover 18. will know | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 19. will meet 20. will freeze 21. will buy 22. will go 23. will take 24. will be 25. will understand |
|--|---|--|

Bài 6

1. Lan will be 13 on Sunday May 25th.
2. I will call her again after six o'clock.
3. Will you be free tomorrow morning?
4. Her parents will visit Ho Chi Minh city next week.
5. We will go to her birthday party.

Bài 7.

1. might rain

Mang theo ô khi bạn đi ra ngoài. Trời có thể mưa

2. might wake

Đừng gây ra quá nhiều tiếng ồn. Bạn có thể làm đứa trẻ thức giấc

3. might bite

Cẩn thận với con chó đó. Nó có thể cắn bạn

4. might need

Tôi không nghĩ chúng ta nên ném lá thư ấy đi. Chúng ta có thể cần đến nó sau này

5. might slip

Cẩn thận. Con đường đang bị đóng băng. Bạn có thể bị trượt chân đấy

6. might break

Đừng để trẻ chơi trong phòng. Chúng có thể làm vỡ thứ gì đó

Bài 8

1. Helen might be busy

2. She might be working

3. Liz might not come to the party.

4. She might want to be alone

5. She might be ill yesterday.

6. Sue might not be able to come out with us this evening.

7. She might go home alone.

8. I might not go out this evening.

9. She might have to go home early.

10. She might be working yesterday.

11. She might not want to see me.

12. She might not be working today.

13. She might not get tickets for the concert.

14. She might not be feeling well yesterday.

Bài 9

1. The python may be sleeping.

2. She might become an explorer.

3. He can make anyone laugh.

4. She may agree with this plan.

5. They may not be happy about what happened.

6. I might go to see a doctor.

7. I might not go to work tomorrow.

8. Sue might not come to the party.

Bài 10.

1. will travel

2. will be

3. will eat

4. will be

5. will spend

6. will study

7. will know

8. will feel

9. will buy

10. will take

Bài 11

1-f 2-b 3-d 4-e 5-c 6-a

1. Bạn nên mang theo ô, trời có thể mưa.

2. Bạn không nên tắm nắng quá nhiều. Nó có thể không tốt cho da của bạn

3. bạn không nên lái xe quá nhanh. Bạn có thể gặp tai nạn

4. Bạn không nên hút thuốc. Bạn có thể gặp vấn đề về sức khỏe.

5. Bạn không nên nghe nhạc Rock với tai nghe. Nó có thể không tốt cho tai của bạn.

6. Bạn nên mặc áo dày. Trời có thể lạnh

Bài 12.

1. mustn't

Giải thích: mustn't diễn tả ý cấm đoán

2. shouldn't

Giải thích: "shouldn't" dùng để khuyên ai không làm gì

3. don't have to

Giải thích: "don't have to" để diễn tả ý không phải làm gì

4. might

Giải thích: "might" diễn tả sự không chắc chắn

5. should

Giải thích: "should" dùng để khuyên ai đó làm gì

6. must

Giải thích: "must" diễn tả sự bắt buộc

Bài 13

1. It may rain
2. He might go to sleep
3. I may not go to class on time
4. She might buy some clothes.
5. They may meet each other.
6. He might be cold
7. He may eat something
8. I might not go to work today.
9. Susan may know the address.
10. Joannamight not recieve my message.

Bài 14.

Goal post(cột gôn)

1.C

2.C

operation(ca phẫu thuật)

3.B

4.D

5.C

TEST 1 UNIT 10**I.**

1. B

2. C

3. D

4. A

5. C

II.

1. D

2. C

3. B

4. A

5. A

6. A

7. B

8. C

9. A

10. B

III.

1. A

2. B

3. B

4. C

5. A

6. C

7. C

8. D

9. A

10. B

11. A

12. A

13. B

14. D

15. C

16. C

17. C

18. B

19. A

20. D

21. B

22. C

23. B

24. C

25. C

IV.

1. might

2. mightn't

3. might

4. mightn't

5. might

V.

1. does Hoa speak?

2. borrows

3. starts

4. is climbing

5. Do you like?

6. get up

7. is not doing

8. be

9. do you take?

10. are

VI.

1. in

2. on

3. on

4. in

5. in front

6. left

7. at

8. into

9. at

10. after

VII.

1. dishwasher

2. smart washing machine

3. Hi-tech robots

4. wireless TV

5. modern fridge

VIII.

1. a

2. small

3. gets

4. breakfast

5. goes

6. teaches

7. at

8. Sundays

9. much

10. Brother

IX.**A.**

1. T

2. T

3. F

4. T

5. F

6. F

7. F

B.

1. There are four rooms in his house.

2. They are: a sitting room, his parents' room, his room and a kitchen.

3. Yes, there is

X.

1. What will she buy?

2. When will he arrive?

3. When will you have a meeting?

4. Where will you go?

5. How will they travel?

XI.

1. My mother will make a big meal tonight.

2. I will finish my work at 6 p.m.

3. I won't have a birthday party this year.

4. Will you meet Lan tonight?

5. We will take our cousins on this holiday with us.

6. My friends won't come tonight.

7. He will catch the train to London at 9 o'clock.

8. I won't come to the class tomorrow.

9. My grandmother will visit us on Saturday.
10. Will you stay at home this weekend?

XII.

1. play => to play
2. drinking => to drink
3. go => going
4. on => in
5. doesn't => isn't

TEST 2 UNIT 10

I.

1. A
2. D
3. D
4. A
5. B

II.

11. C
12. A
13. B
14. C
15. A
16. C
17. C
18. B
19. B
20. C
21. B
22. D
23. B
24. A
25. C
26. C
27. D
28. B
29. D
30. C

III.

1. dishwasher
2. smart washing machine
3. Hi-tech robots
4. wireless TV
5. modern fridge

IV.

1. will live
2. will drive
3. will wear
4. will do
5. will grow
6. will be
7. will speak
8. will win
9. will listen
10. will go

V.

1. might
2. might not
3. might
4. might not
5. Might

VI.

1. e
2. c
3. d
4. g
5. h
6. b
7. f
8. a

VII.

1. won't
2. will
3. will
4. won't
5. won't
6. will
7. will
8. will

VIII.

41. will invite
42. will see
43. will play
44. will buy
45. will borrow
46. will write
47. will visit
48. will give
49. will have
50. will wear

IX.

1. B
2. A
3. D
4. B
5. A

X.

1. C
2. B
3. D
4. A
5. C

XI.

1. C
2. A
3. B
4. C
5. A

XII.

1. B
2. C
3. C
4. D
5. B

XIII.

1. Smart bed: it controls the temperature; it makes me a cup of tea.
2. Smart mirror: it speaks to me.
3. Smart shower: it stops after five minutes; it speaks to my sister.
4. Smart fridge: it orders our food; it speaks to my family.
5. Smart TV: it doesn't listen to other people.
6. Smart robot: it looks after my dog.

XIV.

1. Everything will be different in 20 years.
2. They will talk to all the machines in our kitchen.
3. Frige will have computer too.
4. Because you will tell the frige what you want to eat and the frige will know what food to buy
5. A teenager from supermarket will cycle to your house with your food

XV.

1. My mother will make a big meal tonight.
2. I will finish work at 6 pm.
3. I will not have a birthday party this year.
4. Will you meet Lan tonight?
5. We will take our cousins on holiday with us.
6. My friends will not come tonight.
7. He will catch the train to London at 9 o'clock.
8. I will not come to class tomorrow.
9. My grandmother will visit us on Saturday.
10. Will you stay at home this weekend?

TEST 3 UNIT 10

I.

II.

IV.

1.c 2. f 3. e 4. b 5. a 6. d

V.

1. robots 2. hi- tech fridge 3. wireless TV 4. automatic dishwasher
5.smart alarm clock 6. washing machine 7. supercars

VI.

1. will cure 2. will recognize 3. won't use 4. will watch
5. won't be 6. will pay 7. won't go 8. will check

VII.

1. will 2. will 3. won't 4. will
5. won't 6. will 7. won't 8. will

VIII.

1. might 2. might not 3. might 4. might
5. might not 6. might 7. might not 8. might not
9. might 10. might not

IX.

1. on 2. like 3. in - on 4. with 5. in 6. of 7. In - by 8. in

X.

1. will live 2. Have you ever lived 3. will show 4. is drawing
5. won't drive - will have 6. to live 7. happen 8. cooking - cleaning

XI.

1. draw → am drawing 2. in → on 6. doing → do/to do
4. What → Where 5. to travel → travel 6. an → a
7.think → thinks 8. surrounding → surrounded

XII.

XIII.X

IV.

XV. My future home will be far away from the city crowd and pollutions It will be located near a small river. It will be a cottage surrounded by a lot of different plants, trees and flowers I will have a large library in my house and modern facilities like the internet connection, satellite phone, wireless TV, modern household appliances and a security system. My living room will be large and the window must have a lovely view.

XVI.

1.It's very exciting to live on Mars.
2.This is the third time I've been to this restaurant.
3.You won't need computers because your TV will do everything.
4.Peter might not come to the party tonight.
5. I didn't have your number, so I couldn't phone you.
6.He has learned English for three years.
7.Da Nang is one of the richest cities in Vietnam.

8. In spite of the noise, we continued to study our lesson.

UNIT 11: OUR GREENER WORLD

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Khoanh vào phương án thích hợp để đặt trong các câu điều kiện loại 1 dưới đây.

1. If she (**reads/ read**) in bad light, she will run her eyes.
2. If I find your book, I (**will phone/ could phone**) you at once.
3. I will get angry if you (**make/ will make**) more mistakes.
4. If you don't believe what I said, (**Ask/ Will ask**) your father.
5. If I study hard, I (**pass/ will pass**) this year's exam.
6. If the weather is fine, we (**go/ will go**) on a picnic.
7. If I (**go/ will go**) to Paris, I will visit the Eiffel Tower.
8. If they don't invite me, I (**don't go/ won't go**).
9. If he (**got/ gets**) my email, he will send the information we need.
10. If she travels to London, she (**will visit/ visits**) the museums.
11. If I (**will get/ get**) the money, I will buy a mobile phone.
12. If you make trouble, I (**will send/ will sent**) you to the principal.
13. If I (**had/ have**) enough time this evening, I will watch a movie.
14. If he has money, he (**will lends/ will lend**) me what I need.
15. If you (**eat/ will eat**) greasy food, you will become fat.
16. If your sister goes to Paris, she (**has/ will have**) a good time.
17. If he (**will do/ does**) that, he will be sorry.
18. If I leave now, I (**will arrive/ arrive**) in New York by 8:00 pm.
19. You (**won't do well/ don't do well**) on your test if you don't study.
20. They won't know the truth if you (**won't tell/ don't tell**) them.
21. If I bake a cake, (**will you/ do you**) have some?
22. If he (**will call/ calls**) you, will you answer the phone?
23. If you don't go to the party, I (**am/ will be**) very upset.
24. If you get a haircut, you (**will look/ look**) much better.

Bài 2: Chọn câu trả lời đúng cho mỗi câu sau.

1. My dog____bark unless it is hungry.
A. don't **B. won't**
2. Unless you____to go to bed early, we should go out.
A. wants **B. want**
3. ____you don't slow down, we are going to crash!
A. If B. Unless
4. You cannot go into bars____you are over 18.
A. If **B. unless**
5. In my country,____you cannot speak English, it's hard to get a good job.
A. if B. unless
6. She'll fail the exam if she____study.
A. if **B. doesn't**
7. We'll be late____we leave soon.
A. if **B. unless**
8. ____I am not feeling better tomorrow I will go to the doctor's.
A. Unless **B. If**
9. ____you do not make the payment in time, your car will be confiscated.
A. If B. Unless
10. You will lose your job____you change your attitude and become friendlier.
A. unless B. If
11. She won't know the truth____you tell it to her.

12. ____you arrive early, you'll be able to meet the customers before the meeting.
 A. Unless B. If
13. ____she eats healthy food, she won't lose some weight.
 A. Unless B. If
14. They won't arrive on time ____they finish the work early.
 A. unless B. if
15. Will she able to eat some cake ____I put eggs in it?
 A. unless B. if

Bài 3: Hoàn thành các câu sau đây theo điều kiện loại 1 của những từ trong ngoặc.

- If you **send** this letter now, she **will receive** it tomorrow.
- If I **do** this test, I **will improve** my English.
- If I **find** your ring, I **will give** it back to you.
- Peggy **will go** shopping if she **has** time in the afternoon.
- Simon **will go** to London next week if he **gets** a cheap flight.
- If her boyfriend **doesn't phone** today, she **will leave** him.
- If they **don't study** harder, they **won't pass** the exam.
- If it **rains** tomorrow, I **won't have to** water plants.
- You **won't be able** to sleep if you **watch** this scary film.
- Susan **cannot move** into the new house if it **is not** ready on time.
- If I **study**, I **will pass** the exams.
- If the sun **shines**, we **will walk** into town.
- If he **has** a temperature, he **will see** the doctor.
- If my friends **come**, I **will be** very happy.
- If she **earns** a lot of money, she **will fly** to New York.
- If we **travel** to London, we **will visit** the museums.
- If you **wear** sandals in the mountains, you **will slip** on the rocks.
- If Rita **forgets** her homework, the teacher **will give** her low mark.
- If they **go** to the disco, they **will listen** to loud music.
- If you **wait** a minute, I **will ask** my parents.

Bài 4: Viết lại câu sau đây ở dạng câu điều kiện loại 1.

- He can't go out because he has to study for his exam.
 => **If he doesn't have to study for the exam, he can go out.**
- She is lazy so she can't pass the exam.
 => **If she isn't lazy, she can pass the exam**
- He will pay me tonight; I will have enough money to buy a car.
 => **If he pays me tonight, I will have enough money to buy a car.**
- He smokes too much; that's why he can't get rid of his cough.
 => **If he doesn't smoke too much, he can get rid of his cough.**
- She is very shy, so she doesn't enjoy the party.
 => **If she isn't shy, she will enjoy the party.**
- I will get work permit. I will stay for another month.
 => **If I get a work permit, I will stay for another month.**
- He doesn't take any exercises. He is so unhealthy.
 => **If he doesn't take nay exercises, he will be so unhealthy.**
- We can't get the ticket because I don't have money.
 => **If I have money, we can get ticket**
- Study hard or you won't pass the exam.
 => **If you study hard, you will pass the exam.**
- Don't be impatient or you will make mistakes.
 => **If you are not patient, you will make mistakes.**

Bài 5: Chọn đáp án đúng để điền vào đoạn văn sau.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. has | B. have | C. having | D. to have |
| 2. A. on | B. in | C. at | D. to |
| 3. A. saw | B. seeing | C. see | D. to see |
| 4. A. is | B. be | C. will be | D. are |

5. A. swimming

B. swim

C. to swim

D. swam

TEST 1 UNIT 11

I.

/ɑ:/	/æ/
car, start, aren't, park, calm, dark, father, castle	map, hand, rapid, fat, man, natural, bag, cat, apple, stand

II.

1. C 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. C

III.

1. D 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. D

IV.

1. A 2. A 3. B 4. D 5. B
6. A 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. B
11. D 12. A 13. C 14. A 15. D
16. B 17. A 18. A 19. A 20. C
21. D 22. A 23. A 24. D 25. B

V.

1. miss/ will take 2. will come/ rent
3. will see/ go 4. will go/ invite
5. will/ run 6. doesn't stop/ will have
7. help/ will lend 8. don't eat/ will get

VI.

1. will give 2. stand 3. eats 4. will telephone
5. will arrest 6. reads 7. will steal 8. doesn't open
9. washes 10. needs

VII.

1. was - caught 2. is waiting 3. go 4. will feel
5. to eat 6. didn't come 7. takes 8. was - arrived

VIII.

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. D 5. C
6. D 7. A 8. A 9. B 10. D

IX.

1. discussion 2. surprised 3. thrown 4. recycling
5. requires 6. waste 7. labor 8. resources
9. ton 10. preserved

X.

1. Eco homes don't produce dangerous chemicals.
2. Eco homes don't use coal or oil.
3. The house was very cheap to build.
4. The eco home has wooden walls, and floors.
5. John and Kathy grow vegetables in the mud on top of the house.

XI.

1. They used stone and mud to build it
2. There are skylights - windows in the roof to let light in.
3. Because they don't want to damage the environment
4. We can see lots of local wildlife.
5. Enjoying a boat trip on the lake, you can see amazing waterfalls, or visit beautiful caves.

XII.

1. If he doesn't smoke so much, he can get rid of his cough.
2. If she isn't very shy, she will enjoy parties.
3. If I have the right change, we can get tickets from the machine.
4. If they speak English to her, her English will improve.
5. If he works overtime, he will earn as much as I do.

6. If my number is in the directory, people will ring me up.
7. If he isn't very thin, he won't feel very cold.
8. If I'm not fat, I can get through the bathroom's window.
9. If I ask him for help, he will help me.
10. If I can drive, we can take the car.

TEST 2 UNIT 11

I. 1. A 2. A 3. A 4. A 5. D

II. 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. C 5. A

III. 1. B 2. A 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. D 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B
11. D 12. B 13. B 14. B 15. D 16. B 17. D 18. D 19. C 20. C

IV.

Reduce: waste; dirty water; kitchen waste

Reuse: plastic bags; old newspapers; plastic; rubber; rubber; cotton; old clothes; ink

Recycle: waste; waste paper; bottles; empty cans; rubbish; plastic; metal; glass; batteries; dirty water; engine oil; aluminum; iron

V.

1. will buy 2. will go 3. need 4. won't write 5. won't be 6. will do

VI.

1. miss – will take 2. don't eat – will lend 3. help – will lend
4. doesn't stop – will have 5. are – will run 6. will go – invite
7. will see – go 8. will come – rent

VII.

1. e 2. h 3. a 4. g 5. b 6. c 7. d 8. f

VIII.

1. B 2. B 3. D 4. A 5. C

IX.

1. About twenty million paper bags and newspapers are screwed and thrown away every day.
2. They have had plans to recycle waste paper.
3. Paper mills recycle as much as sixty percent of waste paper.
4. They take away the ink, crush it up and make it into pulp again.
5. Twelve trees can be saved for every ton of recycled newsprint.

X.

1. discussion 2. surprised 3. thrown 4. recycling 5. requires
6. waste 7. labor 8. resources 9. ton 10. preserved

XI.

1. They used stone and mud to build the hotel.
2. They give us light in the day, so we don't use electric lights.
3. Because they don't want to damage the environment.
4. You can see lots of local wildlife.
5. You can enjoy a boat trip on the lake, see the amazing waterfalls, or visit the beautiful caves.

XII.

I. 1. C 2. E 3. A 4. B 5. D

XIII.

1. If we plant more trees, the air will be fresher.
2. If we use fewer cars, we will reduce pollution.
3. If we cycle to school every day, we will keep fitter.
4. If we use recycled products, we will save money.
5. If people throw rubbish into the right bin, they will keep the environment clean.
6. If we turn off the tap when brushing the teeth, we will save a lot of water.
7. If we travel more by public transport, the harmful gases in big cities will be reduced.
8. If we start at 6.00, we will arrive there before noon.
9. If the boy eats so many green apples, he will be ill.
10. If we use reusable bags for shopping, we will reduce waste.

XIV.

1. If we plant more trees, our neighbourhood will be greener.
2. If we cycle to school every day, we will keep the air clean and fresh.

3. If we keep hunting animals, they will disappear soon.
4. If we cut down all the trees, there will be floods.
5. If we use buses, we will reduce pollution.

XV.

1. We should try to recycle rubbish.
2. Don't throw the plastic bags because you can reuse them.
3. You should use reusable bags when you go shopping.
4. If the river is polluted, fish will die.
5. If people cycle more, there will be less pollution.

TEST 3 UNIT 11

I.

1. c 2. a 3. b 4. d 5. b

II.

1. a 2. c 3. d 4. d 5. b

III.

1. d 2. b 3. c 4. c 5. a 6. b 7. c 8. a 9. c 10. d

IV.

1. c 2. e 3. h 4. a 5. f 6. b 7. d 8. g

V.

1. environment	2. Deforestation	3. Air	4. Water
5. Soil	6. Noise		

VI.

1. recycled	2. reusable	3. reduce	4. off
5. recycling	6. less	7. Reuse	8. save

VII.

1. will stay	2. has	3. doesn't rain
4. recycles - won't produce	5. don't water - will die	6. is - won't go
7. will save - don't waste	8. will happen - keep	9. don't stop - will endanger
10. dump - won't be		

VIII.

1. is - will walk	2. will lend - promise	3. don't do - will punish
4. will get - doesn't have	5. see - will tell	6. will buy - pass
7. is - will die	8. won't be - watch	

IX.

1. g 2. f 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. d 7. e

X.

1. at 2. for 3. of 4. away 5. off 6. in 7. to 8. with

XI.

1. won't be	2. have studied	3. did you buy	4. is raining
5. recycle - will save	6. is organising	7. throwing	8. to use

XII.

1. polluted	2. environmental	3. packaging	4. reusable
5. Deforestation	6. recycled	7. electricity	8. breathing

XIII.

1. f 2. d 3. e 4. a 5. b 6. c

XIV.

1. d 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. c 6. d

XV.

- A. 1. F 2. T 3. F 4. T 5. T
- B. 1. Earth Day was started in San Francisco, California.

2. Earth Day is celebrated on April 22.

3. People can turn off the lights, plant trees, recycle and pick up garbage in their communities.

XVI.

- | | | | |
|------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| 1. protect | 2. throw | 3. natural | 4. What |
| 5. waste | 6. reuse | 7. recycled | 8. later |

XVII.

1. c 2. c 3. a 4. b 5. d 6. b 7. a

XVIII.

1. If Sue doesn't hurry she will miss the bus.
2. Rita will pass the exam if she studies hard.
3. If he watches too much television he will hurt his eyes.
4. If it isn't sunny tomorrow we won't go to the beach.
5. We will visit her if we have time.
6. I won't wait if you arrive late.
7. They won't play tennis tomorrow if it rains.
8. If you don't set your alarm clock, you won't wake up on time.

XIX.

1. If you work hard, you will pass the exam.
2. If Henry fails his examination, his parents will be sad.
3. If Sue goes out this weekend, she won't have time to study.
4. If it snows tomorrow, I will go skiing.
5. If he doesn't leave soon, he will miss the bus.
6. If you play with matches, you will hurt yourself.

XX. Suggested answer:

1. If we all use reusable shopping bags, there won't be so much waste.
2. If more people cycle, there will be less air pollution.
3. We will save a lot of trees if we recycle waste paper.
4. A lot of fish will die if we dump chemical waste into rivers.
5. If you have a shower instead of a bath, you will save a lot of water.

XXI.

1. There aren't many students taking part in the event.
2. They moved here two years ago.
3. If you don't turn unwanted lights off, you will waste a lot of electricity.
4. Why not write about the three Rs?/ Why don't we write about the three Rs?
5. It's fun to learn about recycling.
6. Reusable bags are more expensive than plastic bags.
7. You shouldn't throw old clothes away.
8. Don't forget to turn the tap off when you are brushing your teeth.

UNIT 12: ROBOTS

BÀI TẬP VẬN DỤNG CƠ BẢN

Bài 1: Điền “can” hoặc “can't (cannot)” vào chỗ trống trong câu khẳng định (+) và phủ định (-) dưới đây.

1. I **can** swim. (+/can)
2. You **can't/ cannot** draw. (-/can)
3. He **can** cook. (+/can)
4. She **can't/ cannot** walk. (-/can)
5. It **can** jump. (+/can)
6. We **can't/ cannot** ski. (-/can)
7. You **can** read. (+/can)
8. They **can't/ cannot** count. (-/can)

9. Doris **can** sail. (+/can)
 10. Walter and Laura **can't/ cannot** sing. (-/can)

Bài 2: Chọn phương án đúng trong mỗi câu sau.

1. '____you swim?' 'Yes, I____'
 A. Can/can't **B. Can/can**
2. I'm sorry I____help you today. I'm really busy.
 A. can **B. can't**
3. Please____you buy some milk on your way home? I____leave the house because I'm looking after the baby.
 A. can't/can't **B. can/can't**
4. I____ride a bike but I____drive a car.
A. can/can't B. can/can
5. I just____manage to wake up on time, I'm always late.
A. can't B. can
6. 'Hello,____I help you?' 'Actually, no you____this restaurant is awful and we've been waiting here for half an hour. We're leaving'.
 A. **can/can't** B. can't/can
7. I have a special talent, I____touch my nose with my tongue____you?
A. can/can B. can't/can't
8. '____I go to the bathroom please?' 'Yes, of course you____'.
 A. Can/can't **B. Can/can**
9. Look! It's right there!____you see it? It's so obvious!
A. Can B. Can't
10. I've never been able to eat breakfast in the mornings. I____talk to anyone either!
 A. can **B. can't**

Bài 3: Sắp xếp các từ sau để tạo thành câu hoàn chỉnh.

1. you/ can/ play/ the/ violin/ ?/
Can you play the violin?
2. draw/ they/ can't/ well/.
They can't draw well.
3. play/ I/ basketball/ I/ can/.
I can play basketball.
4. we/ can/ come/ house/ to/ your/?
Can we come to your house?
5. she/ sleep/ can't/.
She can't sleep.
6. you/ cook/ can/?
Can you cook?
7. watch/ can/ television/ I/ ?/
Can I watch television?

Bài 4: Khoanh vào câu trả lời đúng.

1. I (**can/can't**) speak French. I picked it up while I was in France.
2. I (can/**can't**) come to the party. I am really busy.
3. We (can/**can't**) hear you. The music is so loud.
4. Where are my keys? I (can/**can't**) find them.
5. I (can/**can't**) believe it . We won two million dollars.
6. We (**can/can't**) meet tomorrow if you want.
7. (**Can/Can't**) make me a cup of tea, please?
8. He (can/**can't**) jump. His leg hurt so much.
9. Illiterate people (can/**can't**) read and write.
10. Fish (**can/can't**) swim.

Bài 5: Điền “ could” hoặc “couldn’t” vào chỗ trống trong các câu sau.

1. When I was young, I **couldn't** play the guitar: it was too difficult for me!
2. Her grandmother was bilingual: she **could** speak both English and Spanish.
3. Yesterday, Peter **couldn't** do that exercise alone. So, he called me for help.
4. In 1950, people **couldn't** use mobile phones.
5. When his mother was young, she **could** skate but she can't do it any longer.
6. We **couldn't** open the door: it was locked from the inside!
7. In 1990, people **could** watch TV.
8. Mary's grandfather **could** play chess and he was the best!
9. In 1945, people **couldn't** play video games.
10. But the **could** play chess!
11. Peter **couldn't** play tennis last Monday: he had broken his arm!
12. When Ann was teenager, she **couldn't** watch a horror film: it was too frightening for her!
13. Last Sunday, we **couldn't** take any photos in the museum: it was forbidden.
14. Mozart **could** play the piano when he was 5.

Bài 6: Điền “ will be able to” hoặc “won't be able to” vào chỗ trống sao cho thích hợp.

1. I **won't be able** to arrive tomorrow, I'll be busy.
2. Kate **will be able to** buy tickets for you, she'll be free.
3. I **will be able to** play the piano, I practice much.
4. Lena **will be able to** help you, she knows this materials well.
5. Bill **will be able to** lift this weight, he trains much.
6. I **won't be able** cook this cake, I don't know the recipe.
7. Liz **will be able to** lend you money, she has some savings.
8. She **won't be able** take you to the club, she is late.
9. We **won't be able** jog, it is raining awfully.
10. I **will be able to** arrive to you in 2 months.
11. They **will be able to** run faster, they are good runners.
12. Helen **won't be able** land you money, she hasn't it.
13. He **will be able to** ride his bike well in three days.

BÀI TẬP TỔNG HỢP NÂNG CAO

Bài 7: Điền ‘can’, ‘can’t’, ‘could’ hoặc ‘couldn’t’ vào chỗ trống.

1. **Could** you swim when you were 10?
2. We **couldn't** get to the meeting on time yesterday, because the train was delayed by one hour.
3. He's amazing, he **can** speak five languages, including Chinese.
4. I looked everywhere for my glasses but I **couldn't** find them anywhere.
5. She's seven years old, but she **can't** read yet. Her parents are getting her extra lessons.
6. I read the book three times, but I **couldn't** understand it.
7. James **could** speak Japanese when he lived in Japan, but he's forgotten most of it now.
8. I **couldn't** understand the chapter we had to read for homework. It was so difficult.
9. I **can't** lift this box – it's too heavy! Would you help me?
10. Lucy **can't** make it to our meeting after all. She's stuck in traffic.
11. John **can** play tennis really well. He's champion of his club.
12. Unfortunately, I really **can't** sing at all. No-one in my family is musical either.
13. Julian **could** play golf excellently when he was only ten.
14. My grandmother **couldn't** use a computer until last month. Since then she's been taking lessons at the library.
15. I **can't** open this window! I think it's stuck.
16. Gill **can't** play the piano. She has never studied it.

Bài 8: Chọn phương án đúng cho các câu sau.

1. I _____ show you this element right now.
A. **can** B. could C. will be able to
2. He _____ phone his mom yesterday.
A. can B. **could** C. will be able to

3. I _____ say at the hotel there next week.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
4. Paul _____ play the violin excellently
A. can B. could C. will be able to
5. Mona _____ get this invitation last month.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
6. We _____ complete in basketball next week.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
7. They _____ ride their bikes well now.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
8. Pam _____ take that photo last year.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
9. Dan _____ repair his computer, he knows it well.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
10. I _____ cook this tasty cake now.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
11. Lola _____ run better last year.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
12. They _____ train in the gym in two days.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
13. We _____ talk about it for a long time.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
14. Do you think we _____ park over here?
A. can B. could C. will be able to
15. _____ you taste the garlic in this stew?
A. Can B. Could C. Will be able to
16. _____ you understand what he said?
A. can B. could C. will be able to
17. I don't think he _____ win the next competition.
A. can B. could C. will be able to
18. Listen! We _____ hear a train in the distance.
A. can B. could C. will be able to

Bài 9: Chọn và điền vào chỗ trống, sử dụng từ Can/ Can't, Could/ Couldn't, Must/ Mustn't.

1. You **must** work harder if you want to pass the exam.
2. I don't want anyone to know. You **mustn't** tell anyone.
3. **Can** you please open the door?
4. **Can** I go out tonight? No, you **must** study English.
5. We haven't got much time. We **must** hurry.
6. He **can't** play tennis very well now but he **could** play really well when he was young.
7. Tom **can** drive but he hasn't got a car.
8. The boy fell into the river but fortunately we **could** rescue him.
9. We haven't got enough food at home so we **must** go shopping today.
10. She wasn't at home when I phoned but I **could** contact her at her office.
11. I can't stay in bed tomorrow morning because I **must** work.
12. You **mustn't** touch that switch. It's very dangerous.
13. **Can** you post this letter for me?
14. Brian has got three houses, six cars, a yacht. He **must** be very rich.
15. You've only just had dinner. You **can't** be hungry.

TEST 1 UNIT 12

- I.**
 1. C 2. A 3. B 4. A 5. B
- II.**
 1. A 2. C 3. A 4. B 5. D
- III.**
 1. C 2. A 3. D 4. B 5. C

6. A 7. D 8. B 9. C 10. B

IV.

1. B 2. C 3. A 4. C 5. C
6. A 7. C 8. B 9. C 10. D
11. B 12. C 13. B 14. C 15. A
16. D 17. B 18. A 19. B 20. D

V.

1. couldn't go 2. can't cook 3. can't give 4. couldn't see
5. can do 6. can sing 7. can't find 8. couldn't understand
9. couldn't go, couldn't afford 10. couldn't

VI.

1. was able to 2. could 3. were able to
4. couldn't/wasn't able to 5. been able to

VII.

1. were able to 2. could 3. was able to
4. Could 5. could 6. couldn't
7. was able to 8. could 9. could
10. were able to 11. was able to 12. was able to
13. couldn't 14. was able to 15. could

VIII.

1. beautiful 2. businessman 3. nationality
4. pollution 5. Neighborhood

IX.

1. on, in 2. up, Φ 3. by 4. from 5. between

X.

1. will they do, will listen 2. Can...swim, can
3. is, to sit
4. doesn't do, does 5. is flying, is going to land

XI.

1. B 2. D 3. B 4. A 5. D
6. D 7. A 8. D 9. A 10. D

XII.

1. Linh's parents are very proud of him because he always gets good marks.
2. We were very interested in playing soccer when we lived in the countryside.
3. I haven't talked to your/ my uncle since he bought a new house in the city center.
4. The Browns have bought a lot of food because they are going to have a party.
5. It is only a small car, so there isn't enough room for all of us.

XIII.

1. The girls are playing tennis at the moment.
2. John always goes to school by car.
3. What do you do in the afternoon?
4. They are chatting in the class now.
5. My sister doesn't buy a new car.

XIV.

1. What would you like to eat?
2. How does he go to work in the morning?
3. What color do you like?
4. What's his job? Or What does he do?
5. What time does she get up in the morning?

XV.

1. Lan has long hair.
2. Nam goes to school by his bike everyday.
3. Does your family have four people?
4. Nga is the tallest girl in our class.
5. What about going swimming?
6. The post office is in front of my house.

7. Milk is her favorite drink.
8. Ba is Lan's younger sister.
9. How high is the Mount Everest?
10. He is a strong boy.

TEST 2 UNIT 12

I.

1. D 2. C 3. B 4. C 5. D

II.

1. B 2. C 3. D 4. C 5. C 6. C 7. B 8. C 9. A 10. B
 11. C 12. B 13. D 14. B 15. B 16. A 17. A 18. B 19. D 20. D

III.

1. recognize: faces; voices; the place
2. do: homework; laundry; hair; housework; something; this
3. make: bed; breakfast; furniture; coffee; own clothes; cakes; mistakes; a phone call; suggestions; a desk
4. understand: the idea; the lecture; this song
5. lift: heavy boxes; the baby; cartons; suitcases
6. guard: the factory; the palace; our house

IV.

1. couldn't go 2. couldn't find 3. couldn't finish 4. couldn't understand
 5. couldn't hear 6. couldn't listen 7. couldn't sleep 8. couldn't play

V.

1. but 2. Make 3. stations 4. do 5. Home
 6. use 7. recognise 8. Nothing 9. for 10. guard

VI.

1. True 2. True 3. True 4. False 5. False

VII.

1. Now we are on the fifth generation of robots.
2. They can work in situations that are dangerous or harmful for human workers.
3. A computer makes a robot brain.
4. Because there will be fewer people looking for jobs.
5. These changes are good: robots must improve, not harm, the quality of human life.

VIII.

1. They can put the parts of the cars together.
2. Because it is 'dull, dirty and dangerous' – DDD.
3. Because these places are very dangerous for people, or impossible for people to go to.
4. People can programme them and then they wash clothes automatically.
5. Yes, they can. For example, the dogs are made as toys for small children.

IX.

1. B 2. A 3. D 4. A 5. D

X.

1. False 2. False 3. True 4. True 5. True
 6. True 7. True 8. False 9. True 10. True

XI.

1. Robots will be able to not only talk with/ to people but also understand what they think.
2. Robots will be able to recognise our voices and faces, but they won't be able to think like humans.
3. Do you think robots will be able to build houses on the sea for us?
4. I agree with you that life will be more comfortable in the future.
5. More people might lose jobs because robots will be able to do many kinds of jobs.

TEST 3 UNIT 12

I.

1. c 2. b 3. a 4. d 5. b

II.

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. a 5. b

III.

1.a 2.b 3. d 4. c 5.b 6. a 7. d 8. c 9. d 10. b

IV.

1. do 2. guard 3. recognize 4. speaks
5. lifting 6. make 7. understand 8. cuts

V.

♦do: homework, housework, the dishes, the laundry, the gardening, the cooking
♦make: the bed, dinner, tea, cake, coffee, breakfast, a phone call
♦understand: a word, the instructions, English, the book, what she is saying
♦lift: heavy objects, the suitcase, weights, the box
♦guard: the house, the place, the president, the office, the entrance
♦recognise: faces, his voice, the problem, the danger

VI.

1. can 2. Could 3. couldn't 4. can't 5. could
6. couldn't 7. can't 8. could 9. couldn't 10. can

VII.

1. will change 2. have sold 3. studied
4. are playing 5. Have you ever seen 6. take
7. am having 8. won't play 9. holding
10. to open

VIII.

1. Could 2. will be able 3. can't 4. will be able
5. couldn't 6. won't be able 7. can 8. won't be able
9. couldn't 10. could

IX.

1. in 2. to/with 3. of 4. up 5. of 6. with 7. in 8. on

X.

1. with 2. gardening 3. able 4. couldn't
5. station 6. housework 7. make 8. sick

XI.

1. will do → do 2. bought → buy 3. could → can
4. able → be able 5. to ride → ride 6. of → about
7. will → won't 8. do → make

XII.

1. activities 2. recognition 3. smaller
4. unhealthy 5. comfortably 6. interested
7. pronounce 8. helpful

XIII.

1.b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. c 6. B

XIV.

A. 1. a 2. d 3. c 4. d 5. b
B. 1. A robot is a special kind of machine.
2. A robot doesn't make mistakes because it is a machine.
3. No, they don't. Just some robots look like human.
4. The first robot was made in 1961.
5. The first robot looked like a giant arm.
6. They will make our lives better.

XV.

1. schoolwork 2. health 3. transmits 4. freely
5. since 6. used 7. robots 8. more

XVI.

1. I could play chess when I was six.

2. We couldn't play football because it was raining.
3. I couldn't understand anything she said.
4. Could you speak English when you were five?
5. My brother could draw pictures when he was two.
6. Could robots clean the house ten years ago?
7. This suitcase was very heavy so I couldn't lift it.
8. Dave could play tennis well when he was young.

XVII.

1. Robots today are more intelligent than those in the past.
2. Many years ago, robots couldn't make coffee or clean the floor.
3. Robots can already do many tasks traditionally done by humans.
4. Teaching robots can help children improve their English pronunciation.
5. Robots will change our life in the near future.
6. In 2030, robots will be able to do all the household instead of us.
7. Future robots will have the ability to interact with human beings.
8. In the next 20 or 30 years, we will see humanoid robots in our home.

XVIII.

1. I'm not really interested in robotics.
2. Jack took part in a robotics competition last month.
3. This robot can cook a variety of different meals.
4. I couldn't email you because my computer didn't work last night.
5. When I was young I could run faster.
6. I didn't need to finish my homework yesterday.
7. She has worked at the school canteen for two months.
8. If you study hard, you will pass the exam.

TEST 1 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

I.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. C | 2. A | 3. D | 4. B | 5. C |
| 6. A | 7. C | 8. A | 9. D | 10. A |

II.

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1. B | 2. D | 3. D | 4. C | 5. C |
| 6. D | 7. C | 8. C | 9. D | 10. B |
| 11. D | 12. D | 13. C | 14. B | 15. C |
| 16. B | 17. D | 18. A | 19. A | 20. D |

III.

- | | | |
|---------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. year → years | 2. goes → go | 3. stands → is standing |
| 4. going → go | 5. doesn't → don't | 6. tallest → taller |
| 7. an → a | 8. aren't → don't | 9. mans → men |
| 10. rains → raining | | |

IV.

- | | | |
|----------------------------|--------------------|-------------------|
| 1. is going to have | 2. aren't watching | 3. help, is doing |
| 4. will you do, will visit | 5. speak | 6. rains |

V.

- | | | | | |
|------------|--------------|----------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. careful | 2. beautiful | 3. nationality | 4. tallest | 5. leaves |
| 6. sunny | 7. singer | 8. teeth | 9. Chinese | 10. noisy |

VI.

1. There are some small ponds in front of Lam's house.
2. You can play games in the afternoon but you must do your homework in the evening.
3. Does Lan walk or ride her bike to school?
4. When it is hot, we often go swimming.
5. What is there in front of your house?
6. Where is your father sitting now?

7. My class starts at seven in the morning.
8. I don't often go swimming with friends.

VII.

1. Are there thirty students in your class?
2. How much is a bowl of noodles?
3. He often goes to school on foot.
4. Mr. Brown is Hoa's father.
5. How long is this river?
6. How much does this hat cost?
7. How much are a cake and an orange?
8. That is Nam's book.

VIII.

- | | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|-------|
| 1. T | 2. F | 3. T | 4. F | 5. F |
| 6. T | 7. T | 8. F | 9. F | 10. T |

TEST 3 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

I.

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. d

II.

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. c 10. a

III.

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------------|----------------|
| 1. don't stop | 2. taught | 3. is studying |
| 4. will do | 5. has been - was | 6. do you do |
| 7. didn't know | 8. won't be able to | |

IV.

- | | | |
|-------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. wireless | 2. electricity | 3. pollutes |
| 4. recycled | 5. Reusable | 6. exhibition |
| 7. easier | 8. ability | |

V.

1. instead → instead of
2. able → be able
3. can → can't
4. are → is
5. will go → go
- 6a → an

VI.

1. g 2. d 3. f 4. e 5. b 6. h 7. a 8. c

VII.

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. b 6. d

VIII.

1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. T

IX.

1. What will you do at the weekend?
2. Peter could skate when he was 12.
3. They have not visited Europe for two years.
4. Humans are more intelligent than robots.
5. When did you start learning/to learn English?

X.

1. Will robots in the future be able to talk to humans?
2. You will create more rubbish if you don't recycle glass and bottles.
3. Reusable bags are better than plastic bags because they are made of natural materials.

TEST 2 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

1. A 2. D 3. B 4. B 5. A 6. A 7. D 8. A 9. D 10. D
 11. B 12. D 13. D 14. B 15. B 16. A 17. C 18. C 19. C 20. B
 21. A 22. B 23. D 24. A 25. C
 26. will miss 27. will ask 28. wants 29. doesn't work 30. won't go
 31. don't go 32. Will the boys wear 33. will burn 34. rains 35. doesn't come
 36. plants 37. stand 38. environment 39. out 40. polluted
 41. will 42. will 43. might 44. won't 45. will
 46. might 47. might 48. might 49. will 50. Will
 51. Will you come to the concert if I buy the tickets?
 52. will 53. will ask 54. wants 55. comes 56. will 57. see
 58. will ask 59. doesn't want 60. will ask 61. C 62. B 63. A 64. B
 65. C 66. True 67. True 68. False 69. True 70. True
 71. You can take your old toys to the charity.
 72. You can take your old boxes, wrapping paper, and greeting cards to a local school.
 73. You can take your old newspapers to pet shops.
 74. You can take your old magazines to a local doctor's offices.
 75. You take your plastic bags to some supermarkets.
 76. When Nam was ten, he could speak English on the phone.
 77. My sister could write poems when she was eight.
 78. They are worried that some people will use robots for bad things.
 79. If people plant more trees in the area, there will be no floods.
 80. If we recycle old newspapers, we will save a lot of labour and trees.

TEST 3 FOR UNIT 10,11,12

I.

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a 5. d

II.

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. b 5. a 6. d 7. c 8. b 9. c 10. a

III.

1. don't stop 2. taught 3. is studying
 4. will do 5. has been - was 6. do you do
 7. didn't know 8. won't be able to

IV.

1. wireless 2. electricity 3. pollutes
 4. recycled 5. Reusable 6. exhibition
 7. easier 8. ability

V.

1. instead → instead of
 2. able → be able
 3. can → can't
 4. are → is
 5. will go → go
 6a → an

VI.

1. g 2. d 3. f 4. e 5. b 6. h 7. a 8. c

VII.

1. b 2. d 3. a 4. c 5. b 6. d

VIII.

1. T 2. F 3. F 4. T 5. F 6. F 7. T

IX.

1. What will you do at the weekend?
 2. Peter could skate when he was 12.
 3. They have not visited Europe for two years.

4. Humans are more intelligent than robots.
5. When did you start learning/to learn English?

X.

1. Will robots in the future be able to talk to humans?
2. You will create more rubbish if you don't recycle glass and bottles.
3. Reusable bags are better than plastic bags because they are made of natural materials.